

# Standard ECMA-334

4<sup>th</sup> Edition / June 2006

# C# Language Specification

a formation



ECMA-334

4<sup>th</sup> Edition / June 2006

# **C# Language Specification**

Ecma International Rue du Rhône 114 CH-1204 Geneva T/F: +41 22 849 6000/01 www.ecma-international.org



### **Table of Contents**

r oreword	XVII
Introduction	xix
1. Scope	1
2. Conformance	3
3. Normative references	5
4. Definitions	7
5. Notational conventions	9
6. Acronyms and abbreviations	11
7. General description	13
8. Language overview	15
8.1 Getting started	15
8.2 Types	
8.2.1 Predefined types	
8.2.2 Conversions.	
8.2.3 Array types	20
8.2.4 Type system unification	
8.3 Variables and parameters	
8.4 Automatic memory management	
8.5 Expressions	
8.6 Statements	
8.7 Classes	31
8.7.1 Constants	33
8.7.2 Fields	
8.7.3 Methods	34
8.7.4 Properties	35
8.7.5 Events	
8.7.6 Operators	37
8.7.7 Indexers	
8.7.8 Instance constructors	39
8.7.9 Finalizers	40
8.7.10 Static constructors	
8.7.11 Inheritance	41
8.7.12 Static classes	42
8.7.13 Partial type declarations	42
8.8 Structs	
8.9 Interfaces	
8.10 Delegates	
8.11 Enums	
8.12 Namespaces and assemblies	
8.13 Versioning	
8.14 Extern aliases.	
8.15 Attributes	
8.16 Generics	

8.16.1 Why generics?	52
8.16.2 Creating and consuming generics	53
8.16.3 Multiple type parameters	
8.16.4 Constraints	54
8.16.5 Generic methods	56
8.17 Anonymous methods	56
8.18 Iterators	59
8.19 Nullable types	62
9. Lexical structure	65
9.1 Programs	65
9.2 Grammars	
9.2.1 Lexical grammar	
9.2.2 Syntactic grammar	
9.2.3 Grammar ambiguities	
9.3 Lexical analysis	
9.3.1 Line terminators	
9.3.2 Comments	
9.3.3 White space	
9.4 Tokens	
9.4.1 Unicode escape sequences	
9.4.2 Identifiers	
9.4.3 Keywords	
9.4.4 Literals	
9.4.4.1 Boolean literals.	
9.4.4.2 Integer literals	
9.4.4.3 Real literals	
9.4.4.4 Character literals	
9.4.4.5 String literals	
9.4.4.6 The null literal	
9.4.5 Operators and punctuators	
9.5 Pre-processing directives.	
9.5.1 Conditional compilation symbols	78
9.5.2 Pre-processing expressions	
9.5.3 Declaration directives	
9.5.4 Conditional compilation directives	
9.5.5 Diagnostic directives	
9.5.6 Region control	
9.5.7 Line directives	
9.5.8 Pragma directives	
10. Basic concepts	
<del>-</del>	
10.1 Application startup	
10.2 Application termination	
10.3 Declarations	
10.4 Members	
10.4.1 Namespace members	
10.4.2 Struct members	
10.4.3 Enumeration members	
10.4.4 Class members	
10.4.5 Interface members	
10.4.6 Array members	90
10.4.7 Delegate members	90
10.5 Member access	90
10.5.1 Declared accessibility	90

10.5.2 Accessibility domains	
10.5.3 Protected access for instance members	93
10.5.4 Accessibility constraints	94
10.6 Signatures and overloading	95
10.7 Scopes	96
10.7.1 Name hiding	98
10.7.1.1 Hiding through nesting	98
10.7.1.2 Hiding through inheritance	99
10.8 Namespace and type names	
10.8.1 Unqualified name	
10.8.2 Fully qualified names	
10.9 Automatic memory management	
10.10 Execution order	
11. Types	
11.1 Value types	
11.1.1 The System.ValueType type	
11.1.2 Default constructors	
11.1.3 Struct types	
11.1.4 Simple types	
11.1.5 Integral types	
11.1.6 Floating point types	
11.1.7 The decimal type	
11.1.8 The bool type	
11.1.9 Enumeration types	
11.2 Reference types	
11.2.1 Class types	
11.2.2 The object type	
11.2.3 The string type	
11.2.4 Interface types	
11.2.5 Array types	
11.2.6 Delegate types	
11.2.7 The null type	
11.3 Boxing and unboxing	
11.3.1 Boxing conversions	
11.3.2 Unboxing conversions	
11.4 Nullable types	
11.4.1 Members	
11.4.2 Implemented interfaces	117
12. Variables	119
12.1 Variable categories	
12.1.1 Static variables	
12.1.2 Instance variables	
12.1.2.1 Instance variables in classes	
12.1.2.1 Instance variables in crasses	
12.1.3 Array elements	
12.1.4 Value parameters	
12.1.4 value parameters	
•	
12.1.6 Output parameters	
12.1.7 Local variables	
12.3 Definite assignment	
12.3.1 Initially assigned variables	
12.3.1 Initially assigned variables	
141.4 IIIIII III UII UII ANNI EII CU VAI I ADICN	I Z.

12.3.3 Precise rules for determining definite assignment	
12.3.3.1 General rules for statements	
12.3.3.2 Block statements, checked, and unchecked statements	
12.3.3.3 Expression statements	124
12.3.3.4 Declaration statements	124
12.3.3.5 If statements	
12.3.3.6 Switch statements	
12.3.3.7 While statements	125
12.3.3.8 Do statements	125
12.3.3.9 For statements	125
12.3.3.10 Break, continue, and goto statements	126
12.3.3.11 Throw statements	126
12.3.3.12 Return statements	126
12.3.3.13 Try-catch statements	126
12.3.3.14 Try-finally statements	127
12.3.3.15 Try-catch-finally statements	127
12.3.3.16 Foreach statements	128
12.3.3.17 Using statements	128
12.3.3.18 Lock statements	
12.3.3.19 General rules for simple expressions	128
12.3.3.20 General rules for expressions with embedded expressions	129
12.3.3.21 Invocation expressions and object creation expressions	129
12.3.3.22 Simple assignment expressions	129
12.3.3.23 && expressions	130
12.3.3.24    expressions	131
12.3.3.25! expressions	131
12.3.3.26 ?: expressions	132
12.3.3.27 Anonymous method expressions	132
12.3.3.28 Yield statements	133
12.3.3.29 ?? expressions	133
12.4 Variable references	133
12.5 Atomicity of variable references	133
13. Conversions	135
13.1 Implicit conversions	
13.1.1 Identity conversion.	
13.1.2 Implicit numeric conversions	
*	
13.1.3 Implicit enumeration conversions	
-	
13.1.5 Boxing conversions	
13.1.7 Implicit constant expression conversions	
13.1.8 User-defined implicit conversions	
13.2 Explicit conversions	
13.2.1 Explicit conversions	
13.2.2 Explicit numeric conversions	
13.2.3 Explicit reference conversions	
13.2.4 Unboxing conversions	
13.2.5 Explicit type parameter conversions	
13.2.6 User-defined explicit conversions	
13.3.1 Standard implicit conversions	
13.3.2 Standard explicit conversions	
13.4 User-defined conversions	
13.4.1 Permitted user-defined conversions	
15.1.1 1 crimined user derined conversions	142

13.4.2 Evaluation of user-defined conversions	143
13.4.3 User-defined implicit conversions	
13.4.4 User-defined explicit conversions	
13.5 Anonymous method conversions	145
13.6 Method group conversions	
13.7 Conversions involving nullable types	
13.7.1 Null type conversions	
13.7.2 Nullable conversions	
13.7.3 Lifted conversions	148
14. Expressions	149
14.1 Expression classifications	
14.1.1 Values of expressions	
14.1.1 Values of expressions	
14.2.1 Operator precedence and associativity	
14.2.1 Operator precedence and associativity	
14.2.3 Unary operator overload resolution	
14.2.4 Binary operator overload resolution	
14.2.5 Candidate user-defined operators	
14.2.6 Numeric promotions	
14.2.6.1 Unary numeric promotions	
14.2.6.2 Binary numeric promotions	
14.2.7 Lifted operators	
14.3 Member lookup	
14.3.1 Base types	
14.4 Function members	
14.4.1 Argument lists	
14.4.2 Overload resolution	
14.4.2.1 Applicable function member	
14.4.2.2 Better function member	
14.4.2.3 Better conversion	
14.4.3 Function member invocation	
14.4.3.1 Invocations on boxed instances	
14.5 Primary expressions	
14.5.1 Literals	
14.5.2 Simple names	
14.5.2.1 Invariant meaning in blocks	
14.5.3 Parenthesized expressions	
14.5.4 Member access	
14.5.4.1 Identical simple names and type names	
14.5.5 Invocation expressions	
14.5.5.1 Method invocations	
14.5.5.2 Delegate invocations	
14.5.6 Element access	
14.5.6.1 Array access	
14.5.6.2 Indexer access	
14.5.7 This access	
14.5.8 Base access	
14.5.9 Postfix increment and decrement operators	
14.5.10 The new operator	
14.5.10.1 Object creation expressions	
14.5.10.2 Array creation expressions	
14.5.10.3 Delegate creation expressions	
14.5.11 The typeof operator	
14.5.12 The size of operator	

14.5.13 The checked and unchecked operators	
14.5.14 Default value expression	
14.5.15 Anonymous methods	187
14.5.15.1 Anonymous method signatures	187
14.5.15.2 Anonymous method blocks	188
14.5.15.3 Outer variables	188
14.5.15.4 Anonymous method evaluation	191
14.5.15.5 Implementation example	191
14.6 Unary expressions	
14.6.1 Unary plus operator	194
14.6.2 Unary minus operator	194
14.6.3 Logical negation operator	195
14.6.4 Bitwise complement operator	195
14.6.5 Prefix increment and decrement operators	195
14.6.6 Cast expressions	196
14.7 Arithmetic operators	197
14.7.1 Multiplication operator	197
14.7.2 Division operator	198
14.7.3 Remainder operator	199
14.7.4 Addition operator	200
14.7.5 Subtraction operator	202
14.8 Shift operators	204
14.9 Relational and type-testing operators	205
14.9.1 Integer comparison operators	
14.9.2 Floating-point comparison operators	
14.9.3 Decimal comparison operators	
14.9.4 Boolean equality operators	
14.9.5 Enumeration comparison operators	
14.9.6 Reference type equality operators	
14.9.7 String equality operators	
14.9.8 Delegate equality operators	
14.9.9 Equality operators and null	
14.9.10 is operator	
14.9.11 as operator	
14.10 Logical operators	
14.10.1 Integer logical operators	
14.10.2 Enumeration logical operators	
14.10.3 Boolean logical operators	
14.10.4 The bool? logical operators	
14.11 Conditional logical operators	
14.11.1 Boolean conditional logical operators	
14.11.2 User-defined conditional logical operators	
14.12 The null coalescing operator	
14.13 Conditional operator.	
14.14 Assignment operators	
14.14.1 Simple assignment	
14.14.2 Compound assignment	
14.14.3 Event assignment	
14.15 Expression	
14.17 Boolean expressions	
•	
15. Statements	
15.1 End points and reachability	225
15.2 Blocks	227

15.2.1 Statement lists	227
15.3 The empty statement	
15.4 Labeled statements	
15.5 Declaration statements	
15.5.1 Local variable declarations	
15.5.2 Local constant declarations	
15.6 Expression statements	
15.7 Selection statements	
15.7.1 The if statement	
15.7.2 The switch statement	
15.8 Iteration statements	
15.8.1 The while statement	
15.8.2 The do statement	
15.8.3 The for statement	
15.8.4 The foreach statement	
15.9 Jump statements	
15.9.1 The break statement	
15.9.2 The continue statement	
15.9.3 The goto statement	
15.9.4 The return statement	
15.9.5 The throw statement	
15.10 The try statement	
15.11 The checked and unchecked statements	
15.12 The lock statement	
15.13 The using statement	
15.14 The yield statement	249
16. Namespaces	251
16.1 Compilation units	251
16.2 Namespace declarations	
16.3 Extern alias directives	
16.4 Using directives	
16.4.1 Using alias directives	
16.4.2 Using namespace directives	
16.5 Namespace members	
16.6 Type declarations	
16.7 Qualified alias member	
17. Classes	
17.1 Class declarations	
17.1.1 Class modifiers	
17.1.1.1 Abstract classes	
17.1.1.2 Sealed classes	
17.1.1.3 Static classes	
17.1.2 Class base specification	
17.1.2.1 Base classes	
17.1.2.2 Interface implementations	
17.1.3 Class body	
17.1.4 Partial declarations	
17.2 Class members	
17.2.1 Inheritance	271
17.2.1 Inheritance	271 272
17.2.1 Inheritance	271 272 272
17.2.1 Inheritance	

17.2.6 Nested types	273
17.2.6.1 Fully qualified name	273
17.2.6.2 Declared accessibility	274
17.2.6.3 Hiding	274
17.2.6.4 this access	
17.2.6.5 Access to private and protected members of the containing type	
17.2.7 Reserved member names	276
17.2.7.1 Member names reserved for properties	
17.2.7.2 Member names reserved for events	
17.2.7.3 Member names reserved for indexers	
17.2.7.4 Member names reserved for finalizers	
17.2.7.4 Method hames reserved for infanzers	
17.4 Fields	
17.4.1 Static and instance fields	
17.4.2 Readonly fields	
17.4.2.1 Using static readonly fields for constants	
17.4.2.2 Versioning of constants and static readonly fields	
17.4.3 Volatile fields	
17.4.4 Field initialization	
17.4.5 Variable initializers	
17.4.5.1 Static field initialization	
17.4.5.2 Instance field initialization	
17.5 Methods	
17.5.1 Method parameters	
17.5.1.1 Value parameters	288
17.5.1.2 Reference parameters	288
17.5.1.3 Output parameters	289
17.5.1.4 Parameter arrays	290
17.5.2 Static and instance methods	292
17.5.3 Virtual methods	292
17.5.4 Override methods	294
17.5.5 Sealed methods	296
17.5.6 Abstract methods	
17.5.7 External methods	297
17.5.8 Method body	
17.5.9 Method overloading	299
17.6 Properties	299
17.6.1 Static and instance properties	
17.6.2 Accessors	
17.6.3 Virtual, sealed, override, and abstract accessors	
17.7 Events	
17.7.1 Field-like events	
17.7.2 Event accessors	
17.7.3 Static and instance events.	
17.7.4 Virtual, sealed, override, and abstract accessors	
17.7.4 virtual, scaled, override, and abstract accessors	
17.8.1 Indexer overloading	
17.9 Uporty operators	
17.9.1 Unary operators	
17.9.2 Binary operators	
17.10 Instance constructors	
17.10 Instance constructors	
17.10.1 Constructor initializers	
17.10.2 Instance variable initializers	
17.10.3 Constructor execution	323

17.10.4 Default constructors	324
17.10.5 Private constructors	325
17.10.6 Optional instance constructor parameters	325
17.11 Static constructors	326
17.12 Finalizers	327
18. Structs	
18.1 Struct declarations	331
18.1.1 Struct modifiers	331
18.1.2 Struct interfaces	332
18.1.3 Struct body	332
18.2 Struct members	332
18.3 Class and struct differences	332
18.3.1 Value semantics	332
18.3.2 Inheritance	333
18.3.3 Assignment	333
18.3.4 Default values	333
18.3.5 Boxing and unboxing	334
18.3.6 Meaning of this	334
18.3.7 Field initializers	334
18.3.8 Constructors	335
18.3.9 Finalizers	335
18.3.10 Static constructors	335
19. Arrays	337
19.1 Array types	
19.1.1 The System.Array type	
19.2 Array creation.	
19.3 Array element access	
19.4 Array members	
19.5 Array covariance	
19.6 Arrays and the generic IList interface	
19.7 Array initializers	
20. Interfaces	343
20.1 Interface declarations	343
20.1.1 Interface modifiers	
20.1.2 Base interfaces	
20.1.3 Interface body	
20.2 Interface members	
20.2.1 Interface methods	
20.2.2 Interface properties	346
20.2.3 Interface events	
20.2.4 Interface indexers	
20.2.5 Interface member access	
20.3 Fully qualified interface member names	
20.4 Interface implementations	
20.4.1 Explicit interface member implementations	
20.4.2 Interface mapping	
20.4.3 Interface implementation inheritance	
20.4.4 Interface re-implementation	
20.4.5 Abstract classes and interfaces	
21. Enums	
21.1 Enum declarations	
21.2 Enum modifiers	

21.3 Enum members	360
21.4 The System.Enum type	362
21.5 Enum values and operations	362
22. Delegates	363
22.1 Delegate declarations	363
22.2 Delegate instantiation	
22.3 Delegate invocation.	
23. Exceptions	
23.1 Causes of exceptions	369
23.2 The System.Exception class	369
23.3 How exceptions are handled	369
23.4 Common exception classes	370
24. Attributes	373
24.1 Attribute classes	373
24.1.1 Attribute usage	
24.1.2 Positional and named parameters	
24.1.3 Attribute parameter types	
24.2 Attribute specification	
24.3 Attribute instances	
24.3.1 Compilation of an attribute	
24.3.2 Run-time retrieval of an attribute instance	
24.4 Reserved attributes	
24.4.1 The AttributeUsage attribute	
24.4.2 The Conditional attribute	
24.4.2.1 Conditional methods	
24.4.2.2 Conditional attribute classes	
24.4.3 The Obsolete attribute	
25. Generics	
25.1 Generic class declarations	
25.1.1 Type parameters	
25.1.2 The histance type	
25.1.4 Static fields in generic classes	
25.1.4 Static fields in generic classes	
25.1.6 Accessing protected members	
25.1.7 Overloading in generic classes	
25.1.8 Parameter array methods and type parameters	
25.1.9 Overriding and generic classes	
25.1.10 Operators in generic classes	
25.1.11 Nested types in generic classes	
25.2 Generic struct declarations	
25.3 Generic interface declarations	
25.3.1 Uniqueness of implemented interfaces	
25.3.2 Explicit interface member implementations	
25.4 Generic delegate declarations.	
25.5 Constructed types	
25.5.1 Type arguments	
25.5.2 Open and closed types	
25.5.3 Base classes and interfaces of a constructed type	
25.5.4 Members of a constructed type	
25.5.5 Accessibility of a constructed type	
25.5.6 Conversions	

25.5.7 Using alias directives	400
25.6 Generic methods	400
25.6.1 Generic method signatures	401
25.6.2 Virtual generic methods	401
25.6.3 Calling generic methods	403
25.6.4 Inference of type arguments	403
25.6.5 Using a generic method with a delegate	
25.6.6 No generic properties, events, indexers, operators, constructors, or finalizers	
25.7 Constraints	
25.7.1 Satisfying constraints	410
25.7.2 Member lookup on type parameters	
25.7.3 Type parameters and boxing	
25.7.4 Conversions involving type parameters	
26. Iterators	
26.1 Iterator blocks	
26.1.1 Enumerator interfaces	
26.1.2 Enumerable interfaces	
26.1.3 Yield type	
26.1.4 This access	
26.2 Enumerator objects	
26.2.1 The MoveNext method	
26.2.2 The Current property	
26.2.3 The Dispose method	
26.3 Enumerable objects	
26.3.1 The GetEnumerator method	
26.4 Implementation example	419
27. Unsafe code	425
27.1 Unsafe contexts	425
27.2 Pointer types	
27.3 Fixed and moveable variables	
27.4 Pointer conversions	
27.5 Pointers in expressions	431
27.5.1 Pointer indirection	
27.5.2 Pointer member access	
27.5.3 Pointer element access	
27.5.4 The address-of operator	
27.5.5 Pointer increment and decrement	
27.5.6 Pointer arithmetic	
27.5.7 Pointer comparison	
27.5.8 The size of operator	
27.6 The fixed statement	
27.6 The fixed statement	439
27.7 Stack allocation	
27.7 Stack allocation	440
27.7 Stack allocation	440 443
27.7 Stack allocation	440443
27.7 Stack allocation	440 443 443
27.7 Stack allocation	440 443 443 443
27.7 Stack allocation	440 443 443 443 444
27.7 Stack allocation 27.8 Dynamic memory allocation  Annex A. Grammar  A.1 Lexical grammar  A.1.1 Line terminators  A.1.2 White space  A.1.3 Comments  A.1.4 Tokens	440 443 443 443 444 444
27.7 Stack allocation	
27.7 Stack allocation 27.8 Dynamic memory allocation  Annex A. Grammar  A.1 Lexical grammar  A.1.1 Line terminators  A.1.2 White space  A.1.3 Comments  A.1.4 Tokens  A.1.5 Unicode escape sequences  A.1.6 Identifiers	440 443 443 443 444 444 445
27.7 Stack allocation	440 443 443 443 444 444 445

A.1.9 Operators and punctuators	
A.1.10 Pre-processing directives	448
A.2 Syntactic grammar	450
A.2.1 Basic concepts	450
A.2.2 Types	451
A.2.3 Variables	452
A.2.4 Expressions	452
A.2.5 Statements	
A.2.6 Classes	460
A.2.7 Structs	465
A.2.8 Arrays	
A.2.9 Interfaces	
A.2.10 Enums	
A.2.11 Delegates	
A.2.12 Attributes	
A.2.13 Generics.	
A.3 Grammar extensions for unsafe code	
Annex B. Portability issues	473
B.1 Undefined behavior	473
B.2 Implementation-defined behavior	473
B.3 Unspecified behavior	474
B.4 Other Issues	474
Annex C. Naming guidelines	475
Annex C. Naming guidennes	4/5
Annex D. Standard Library	477
Annex D. Standard Library	
Annex D. Standard Library  Annex E. Documentation Comments	
	487
Annex E. Documentation Comments	<b>487</b>
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction	<b></b>
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags	<b></b>
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction.  E.2 Recommended tags.  E.2.1 <c>  E.2.2 <code>  E.2.3 <example></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.5 <li>E.2.5 <li>E.2.5</li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction.  E.2 Recommended tags.  E.2.1 <c>  E.2.2 <code>  E.2.3 <example>  E.2.4 <exception>  E.2.5 <li>st&gt;  E.2.6 <para></para></li></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.5 <list> E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/>  E.2.7 <param/>  E.2.7 </para></list></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.5 <li>E.2.5 <li>E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref></paramref></para></li></li></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.5 <li>E.2.5 <li>E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref> E.2.9 <person of="" p<="" product="" td="" the=""><td></td></person></paramref></para></li></li></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.5 <li>E.2.5 <li>E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref> E.2.9 <permission> E.2.10 <remarks></remarks></permission></paramref></para></li></li></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments         E.1 Introduction       E.2 Recommended tags         E.2.1 <c>       E.2.2 <code>         E.2.3 <example>       E.2.4 <exception>         E.2.5 &lt; list&gt;       E.2.6 <para>         E.2.7 <param/>       E.2.8 <paramref>         E.2.9 <permission>       E.2.10 <remarks>         E.2.11 <returns>       E.2.11</returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments         E.1 Introduction       E.2 Recommended tags         E.2.1 <c>       E.2.2 <code>         E.2.3 <example>       E.2.4 <exception>         E.2.5 &lt; list&gt;       E.2.6 <para>         E.2.7 <param/>       E.2.8 <paramref>         E.2.9 <permission>       E.2.10 <remarks>         E.2.11 <returns>       E.2.12 <see></see></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments         E.1 Introduction       E.2 Recommended tags         E.2.1 <c>       E.2.2 <code>         E.2.3 <example>       E.2.4 <exception>         E.2.5 &lt; list&gt;       E.2.6 <para>         E.2.7 <param/>       E.2.8 <paramref>         E.2.9 <permission>       E.2.10 <remarks>         E.2.11 <returns>       E.2.12 <see>         E.2.13 <seealso>       E.2.13</seealso></see></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.5 <li>E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref> E.2.9 <permission> E.2.10 <remarks> E.2.11 <returns> E.2.11 <returns> E.2.12 <see> E.2.13 <seealso> E.2.14 <summary></summary></seealso></see></returns></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></li></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.5 <li>E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref> E.2.9 <permission> E.2.10 <remarks> E.2.11 <returns> E.2.11 <returns> E.2.12 <see> E.2.13 <seealso> E.2.14 <summary> E.2.15 <typeparam> E.2.15 <typeparam></typeparam></typeparam></summary></seealso></see></returns></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></li></exception></example></code></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments         E.1 Introduction       E.2 Recommended tags         E.2.1 <c></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments         E.1 Introduction       E.2 Recommended tags         E.2.1 <c></c>	
Annex E. Documentation Comments  E.1 Introduction  E.2 Recommended tags  E.2.1 <c>  E.2.2 <code>  E.2.3 <example>  E.2.4 <exception>  E.2.6 <para>  E.2.7 <param/>  E.2.8 <paramref>  E.2.9 <permission>  E.2.10 <remarks>  E.2.11 <returns>  E.2.12 <see>  E.2.13 <seealso>  E.2.14 <summary>  E.2.15 <typeparamref>  E.2.16 <typeparamref>  E.2.17 <value>  E.3 Processing the documentation file</value></typeparamref></typeparamref></summary></seealso></see></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></exception></example></code></c>	
E.1 Introduction E.2 Recommended tags E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref> E.2.9 <permission> E.2.10 <remarks> E.2.11 <returns> E.2.12 <see> E.2.13 <seealso> E.2.13 <seealso> E.2.14 <summary> E.2.15 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparam> E.2.17 <value> E.2.17 <value> E.3.1 ID string format</value></value></typeparam></typeparam></typeparam></summary></seealso></seealso></see></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></exception></example></code></c>	
E.1 Introduction	
E.1 Introduction E.2 Recommended tags E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref> E.2.9 <permission> E.2.10 <remarks> E.2.11 <returns> E.2.12 <see> E.2.13 <seealso> E.2.14 <summary> E.2.15 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparamref> E.2.17 <value> E.3.1 ID string format E.3.2 ID string examples E.4 An example</value></typeparamref></typeparam></typeparam></typeparam></summary></seealso></see></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></exception></example></code></c>	
E.1 Introduction E.2 Recommended tags E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.5 <li>st&gt; E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref> E.2.9 <permission> E.2.10 <remarks> E.2.11 <returns> E.2.11 <see> E.2.12 <see> E.2.13 <seealso> E.2.14 <summary> E.2.15 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparam> E.2.17 <value> E.3 Processing the documentation file E.3.1 ID string format E.3.2 ID string examples E.4.1 C# source code</value></typeparam></typeparam></summary></seealso></see></see></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></li></exception></example></code></c>	
E.1 Introduction E.2 Recommended tags E.2.1 <c> E.2.2 <code> E.2.3 <example> E.2.4 <exception> E.2.6 <para> E.2.7 <param/> E.2.8 <paramref> E.2.9 <permission> E.2.10 <remarks> E.2.11 <returns> E.2.12 <see> E.2.13 <seealso> E.2.14 <summary> E.2.15 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparam> E.2.16 <typeparamref> E.2.17 <value> E.3.1 ID string format E.3.2 ID string examples E.4 An example</value></typeparamref></typeparam></typeparam></typeparam></summary></seealso></see></returns></remarks></permission></paramref></para></exception></example></code></c>	

Annex G. Index	508
----------------	-----

# **Foreword**

This fourth edition cancels and replaces the third edition. Changes from the previous edition were made to align this Standard with ISO/IEC 23270:2006.

### Introduction

This International Standard is based on a submission from Hewlett-Packard, Intel, and Microsoft, that described a language called C#, which was developed within Microsoft. The principal inventors of this language were Anders Hejlsberg, Scott Wiltamuth, and Peter Golde. The first widely distributed implementation of C# was released by Microsoft in July 2000, as part of its .NET Framework initiative.

Ecma Technical Committee 39 (TC39) Task Group 2 (TG2) was formed in September 2000, to produce a standard for C#. Another Task Group, TG3, was also formed at that time to produce a standard for a library and execution environment called Common Language Infrastructure (CLI). (CLI is based on a subset of the .NET Framework.) Although Microsoft's implementation of C# relies on CLI for library and runtime support, other implementations of C# need not, provided they support an alternate way of getting at the minimum CLI features required by this C# standard (see Annex D).

As the definition of C# evolved, the goals used in its design were as follows:

- C# is intended to be a simple, modern, general-purpose, object-oriented programming language.
- The language, and implementations thereof, should provide support for software engineering principles such as strong type checking, array bounds checking, detection of attempts to use uninitialized variables, and automatic garbage collection. Software robustness, durability, and programmer productivity are important.
- The language is intended for use in developing software components suitable for deployment in distributed environments.
- Source code portability is very important, as is programmer portability, especially for those programmers already familiar with C and C++.
- Support for internationalization is very important.
- C# is intended to be suitable for writing applications for both hosted and embedded systems, ranging from the very large that use sophisticated operating systems, down to the very small having dedicated functions.
- Although C# applications are intended to be economical with regard to memory and processing power requirements, the language was not intended to compete directly on performance and size with C or assembly language.

The following companies and organizations have participated in the development of this standard, and their contributions are gratefully acknowledged: ActiveState, Borland, CSK Corp., Hewlett-Packard, IBM, Intel, IT University of Copenhagen, Jaggersoft (UK), Microsoft, Mountain View Compiler, Monash University (AUS), Netscape, Novell, Pixo, Plum Hall, Sun, and the University of Canterbury (NZ).

The development of this version of the standard started in January 2003

# 1. Scope

This International Standard specifies the form and establishes the interpretation of programs written in the C# programming language. It specifies

- The representation of C# programs;
- The syntax and constraints of the C# language;
- The semantic rules for interpreting C# programs;
- The restrictions and limits imposed by a conforming implementation of C#.

This International Standard does not specify

- The mechanism by which C# programs are transformed for use by a data-processing system;
- The mechanism by which C# applications are invoked for use by a data-processing system;
- The mechanism by which input data are transformed for use by a C# application;
- The mechanism by which output data are transformed after being produced by a C# application;
- The size or complexity of a program and its data that will exceed the capacity of any specific data-processing system or the capacity of a particular processor;
- All minimal requirements of a data-processing system that is capable of supporting a conforming implementation.

### 2. Conformance

Conformance is of interest to the following audiences:

- Those designing, implementing, or maintaining C# implementations.
- Governmental or commercial entities wishing to procure C# implementations.
- Testing organizations wishing to provide a C# conformance test suite.
- Programmers wishing to port code from one C# implementation to another.
- Educators wishing to teach Standard C#.
- Authors wanting to write about Standard C#.

As such, conformance is most important, and the bulk of this International Standard is aimed at specifying the characteristics that make C# implementations and C# programs conforming ones.

The text in this International Standard that specifies requirements is considered *normative*. All other text in this specification is *informative*; that is, for information purposes only. Unless stated otherwise, all text is normative. Normative text is further broken into *required* and *conditional* categories. *Conditionally normative* text specifies a feature and its requirements where the feature is optional. However, if that feature is provided, its syntax and semantics must be exactly as specified.

Undefined behavior is indicated in this International Standard only by the words "undefined behavior."

A *strictly conforming program* shall use only those features of the language specified in this International Standard as being required. (This means that a strictly conforming program cannot use any conditionally normative feature.) It shall not produce output dependent on any unspecified, undefined, or implementation-defined behavior.

A *conforming implementation* of C# must accept any strictly conforming program.

A conforming implementation of C# must provide and support all the types, values, objects, properties, methods, and program syntax and semantics described in the normative (but not the conditionally normative) parts in this International Standard.

A conforming implementation of C# shall interpret characters in conformance with the Unicode Standard, Version 4.0, and ISO/IEC 10646-1. Conforming implementations must accept Unicode source files encoded with the UTF-8 encoding form.

A conforming implementation of C# shall not successfully translate source containing a #error preprocessing directive unless it is part of a group skipped by conditional compilation.

A conforming implementation of C# shall produce at least one diagnostic message if the source program violates any rule of syntax, or any negative requirement (defined as a "shall" or "shall not" or "error" or "warning" requirement), unless that requirement is marked with the words "no diagnostic is required".

A conforming implementation of C# is permitted to provide additional types, values, objects, properties, and methods beyond those described in this International Standard, provided they do not alter the behavior of any strictly conforming program. Conforming implementations are required to diagnose programs that use extensions that are ill formed according to this International Standard. Having done so, however; they can compile and execute such programs. (The ability to have extensions implies that a conforming implementation reserves no identifiers other than those explicitly reserved in this International Standard.)

A conforming implementation of C# shall be accompanied by a document that defines all implementation-defined characteristics, and all extensions.

A conforming implementation of C# shall support the class library documented in Annex D. This library is included by reference in this International Standard.

A *conforming program* is one that is acceptable to a conforming implementation. (Such a program is permitted to contain extensions or conditionally normative features.)

### 3. Normative references

The following normative documents contain provisions, which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this International Standard. For dated references, subsequent amendments to, or revisions of, any of these publications do not apply. However, parties to agreements based on this International Standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the normative documents indicated below. For undated references, the latest edition of the normative document referred to applies. Members of ISO and IEC maintain registers of currently valid International Standards.

ISO/IEC 23271:2005, Common Language Infrastructure (CLI), Partition IV: Base Class Library (BCL), Extended Numerics Library, and Extended Array Library.

ISO 31.11:1992, Quantities and units — Part 11: Mathematical signs and symbols for use in the physical sciences and technology.

ISO/IEC 2382.1:1993, Information technology — Vocabulary — Part 1: Fundamental terms.

ISO/IEC 10646 (all parts), Information technology — Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS).

IEC 60559:1989, *Binary floating-point arithmetic for microprocessor systems* (previously designated IEC 559:1989). (This standard is widely known by its U.S. national designation, ANSI/IEEE Standard 754-1985, *IEEE Standard for Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic.*)

The Unicode Consortium. The Unicode Standard, Version 4.0, defined by: *The Unicode Standard, Version 4.0* (Boston, MA, Addison-Wesley, 2003. ISBN 0-321-18578-1).

### 4. Definitions

For the purposes of this International Standard, the following definitions apply. Other terms are defined where they appear in *italic* type or on the left side of a syntax rule. Terms explicitly defined in this International Standard are not to be presumed to refer implicitly to similar terms defined elsewhere. Terms not defined in this International Standard are to be interpreted according to ISO/IEC 2382.1. Mathematical symbols not defined in this International Standard are to be interpreted according to ISO 31.11.

**Application** — refers to an assembly that has an entry point (§10.1). When an application is run, a new application domain is created. Several different instantiations of an application can exist on the same machine at the same time, and each has its own application domain.

**Application domain** — an entity that enables application isolation by acting as a container for application state. An application domain acts as a container and boundary for the types defined in the application and the class libraries it uses. Types loaded into one application domain are distinct from the same type loaded into another application domain, and instances of objects are not directly shared between application domains. For instance, each application domain has its own copy of static variables for these types, and a static constructor for a type is run at most once per application domain. Implementations are free to provide implementation-specific policy or mechanisms for the creation and destruction of application domains.

**Argument** — an expression in the comma-separated list bounded by the parentheses in a method or instance constructor call expression or bounded by the square brackets in an element access expression. It is also known as an *actual argument*.

Assembly — refers to one or more files that are output by the compiler as a result of program compilation. An assembly is a configured set of loadable code modules and other resources that together implement a unit of functionality. An assembly can contain types, the executable code used to implement these types, and references to other assemblies. The physical representation of an assembly is not defined by this specification. Essentially, an assembly is the output of the compiler.

**Behavior** — external appearance or action.

**Behavior, implementation-defined** — unspecified behavior where each implementation documents how the choice is made.

**Behavior, undefined** — behavior, upon use of a non-portable or erroneous construct or of erroneous data, for which this International Standard imposes no requirements. [Possible handling of undefined behavior ranges from ignoring the situation completely with unpredictable results, to behaving during translation or execution in a documented manner characteristic of the environment (with or without the issuance of a diagnostic message), to terminating a translation or execution (with the issuance of a diagnostic message)].

**Behavior, unspecified** — behavior where this International Standard provides two or more possibilities and imposes no further requirements on which is chosen in any instance.

Class library — refers to an assembly that can be used by other assemblies. Use of a class library does not cause the creation of a new application domain. Instead, a class library is loaded into the application domain that uses it. For instance, when an application uses a class library, that class library is loaded into the application domain for that application. If an application uses a class library A that itself uses a class library B, then both A and B are loaded into the application domain for the application.

**Diagnostic message** — a message belonging to an implementation-defined subset of the implementation's output messages.

**Error, compile-time** — an error reported during program translation.

**Exception** — an error condition that is outside the ordinary expected behavior.

**Implementation** — particular set of software (running in a particular translation environment under particular control options) that performs translation of programs for, and supports execution of methods in, a particular execution environment.

**Namespace** — a logical organizational system that provides a way of presenting program elements that are exposed to other programs.

**Parameter** — a variable declared as part of a method, instance constructor, operator, or indexer definition, which acquires a value on entry to that function member. It is also known as a *formal parameter*.

**Program** — refers to one or more source files that are presented to the compiler. Essentially, a program is the input to the compiler.

**Program, valid** — a C# program constructed according to the syntax rules and diagnosable semantic rules.

**Program instantiation** — the execution of an application.

**Recommended practice** — specification that is strongly recommended as being aligned with the intent of the standard, but that might be impractical for some implementations

**Source file** — an ordered sequence of Unicode characters. Source files typically have a one-to-one correspondence with files in a file system, but this correspondence is not required.

**Unsafe code** — code that is permitted to perform such lower-level operations as declaring and operating on pointers, performing conversions between pointers and integral types, and taking the address of variables. Such operations provide functionality such as permitting interfacing with the underlying operating system, accessing a memory-mapped device, or implementing a time-critical algorithm.

**Warning, compile-time** — an informational message reported during program translation, that is intended to identify a potentially questionable usage of a program element.

### 5. Notational conventions

Lexical and syntactic grammars for C# are interspersed throughout this specification. The lexical grammar defines how characters can be combined to form *tokens* (§9.4), the minimal lexical elements of the language. The syntactic grammar defines how tokens can be combined to make valid C# programs.

Grammar productions include both non-terminal and terminal symbols. In grammar productions, *non-terminal* symbols are shown in italic type, and terminal symbols are shown in a fixed-width font. Each non-terminal is defined by a set of productions. The first line of a set of productions is the name of the non-terminal, followed by one or two colons. One colon is used for a production in the syntactic grammar, two colons for a production in the lexical grammar. Each successive indented line contains the right-hand side for a production that has the non-terminal symbol as the left-hand side. For example:

```
class-modifier:
new
public
protected
internal
private
abstract
sealed
static
```

defines the *class-modifier* non-terminal as having seven productions.

Alternatives are normally listed on separate lines, as shown above, though in cases where there are many alternatives, the phrase "one of" precedes a list of the options. This is simply shorthand for listing each of the alternatives on a separate line. For example:

```
decimal-digit: one of 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
```

is equivalent to:

```
decimal-digit:
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
```

A subscripted suffix " $_{opt}$ ", as in  $identifier_{opt}$ , is used as shorthand to indicate an optional symbol. The example:

```
for-statement: for ( for-initializer_{opt} ; for-condition_{opt} ; for-iterator_{opt} ) embedded-statement is equivalent to:
```

```
for statement:

for (;;) embedded-statement

for (for-initializer;;) embedded-statement

for (; for-condition;) embedded-statement

for (;; for-iterator) embedded-statement

for (for-initializer; for-condition;) embedded-statement

for (for-initializer;; for-iterator) embedded-statement

for (for-initializer;; for-condition; for-iterator) embedded-statement

for (for-initializer; for-condition; for-iterator) embedded-statement
```

All terminal characters are to be understood as the appropriate Unicode character from the range U+0020 to U+007F, as opposed to any similar-looking characters from other Unicode character ranges.

# 6. Acronyms and abbreviations

#### This clause is informative.

The following acronyms and abbreviations are used throughout this International Standard:

BCL — Base Class Library, which provides types to represent the built-in data types of the CLI, simple file access, custom attributes, security attributes, string manipulation, formatting, streams, and collections.

CLI — Common Language Infrastructure

CLS — Common Language Specification

IEC — the International Electrotechnical Commission

IEEE — the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers

ISO — the International Organization for Standardization

The name C# is pronounced "C Sharp".

The name C# is written as the LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C (U+0043) followed by the NUMBER SIGN # (U+0023).

#### End of informative text.

# 7. General description

#### This text is informative.

This International Standard is intended to be used by implementers, academics, and application programmers. As such, it contains a considerable amount of explanatory material that, strictly speaking, is not necessary in a formal language specification.

This standard is divided into the following subdivisions:

- 1. Front matter (clauses 1–7);
- 2. Language overview (clause 8);
- 3. The language syntax, constraints, and semantics (clauses 9–27);
- 4. Annexes

Examples are provided to illustrate possible forms of the constructions described. References are used to refer to related clauses. Notes are provided to give advice or guidance to implementers or programmers. Annexes provide additional information and summarize the information contained in this International Standard.

Clauses 1–5, part of 7, 9–26, the beginning of 27, and most of annex D form a normative part of this standard; all of clause 27 with the exception of the beginning is conditionally normative; and Foreword, Introduction, clause 6, part of 7, 8, annexes A, B, C, part of D, E, and F, notes, examples, and the index are informative.

#### End of informative text.

Informative text is indicated in the following ways:

- 1. Whole or partial clauses or annexes delimited by "This clause/text is informative" and "End of informative text".
- 2. [Example: The following example ... code fragment, possibly with some narrative ... end example]
- 3. [Note: narrative ... end note]

All text not marked as being informative is normative.

# 8. Language overview

#### This clause is informative.

C# (pronounced "C Sharp") is a simple, modern, object oriented, and type-safe programming language. It will immediately be familiar to C and C++ programmers. C# combines the high productivity of Rapid Application Development (RAD) languages and the raw power of C++.

The rest of this clause describes the essential features of the language. While later clauses describe rules and exceptions in a detail-oriented and sometimes mathematical manner, this clause strives for clarity and brevity at the expense of completeness. The intent is to provide the reader with an introduction to the language that will facilitate the writing of early programs and the reading of later clauses.

# 8.1 Getting started

The canonical "hello, world" program can be written as follows:

```
using System;
class Hello
{
    static void Main() {
        Console. WriteLine("hello, world");
    }
}
```

The source code for a C# program is typically stored in one or more text files with a file extension of . cs, as in hello.cs. Using a command-line compiler, such a program can be compiled with a command line like

```
csc hello.cs
```

which produces an application named **hello**. **exe**. The output produced by this application when it is run is:

```
hello, world
```

Close examination of this program is illuminating:

- The using System; directive references a namespace called System that is provided by the Common Language Infrastructure (CLI) class library. This namespace contains the Consol e class referred to in the Main method. Namespaces provide a hierarchical means of organizing the elements of one or more programs. A using directive enables unqualified use of the types that are members of the namespace. The "hello, world" program uses Consol e. WriteLine as shorthand for System. Consol e. WriteLine.
- The Main method is a member of the class Hello. It has the static modifier, and so it is a method on the class Hello rather than on instances of this class.
- The entry point for an application—the method that is called to begin execution—is always a static method named Mai n.
- The "hello, world" output is produced using a class library. This standard does not include a class library. Instead, it references the class library provided by CLI.

For C and C++ developers, it is interesting to note a few things that do *not* appear in the "hello, world" program.

• The program does not use a global method for Mai n. Methods and variables are not supported at the global level; such elements are always contained within type declarations (e.g., class and struct declarations).

- The program does not use either "::" or "->" operators. The "::" token is used only to separate a namespace alias from a member of the namespace, and the "->" operator is used in only a small fraction of programs (which involve unsafe code). The separator "." is used in compound names such as Consol e. WriteLine.
- The program does not contain forward declarations. Forward declarations are never needed, as declaration order is not significant.
- The program does not use #i ncl ude to import program text. Dependencies among programs are handled symbolically rather than textually. This approach eliminates barriers between applications written using multiple languages. For example, the Consol e class need not be written in C#.

# 8.2 Types

C# supports two kinds of types: *value types* and *reference types*. Value types include simple types (e.g., char, int, and float), enum types, and struct types. Reference types include class types, interface types, delegate types, and array types.

Value types differ from reference types in that variables of the value types directly contain their data, whereas variables of the reference types store references to objects. With reference types, it is possible for two variables to reference the same object, and thus possible for operations on one variable to affect the object referenced by the other variable. With value types, the variables each have their own copy of the data, and it is not possible for operations on one to affect the other.

The example

```
using System;
struct Struct1
{
    public int Value;
}

class Class1
{
    public int Value = 0;
}

class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Struct1 val 1 = new Struct1();
        Struct1 val 2 = val 1;
        val 2. Val ue = 123;
        Class1 ref1 = new Class1();
        Class1 ref2 = ref1;
        ref2. Val ue = 123;
        Console. WriteLine("Values: {0}, {1}", val 1. Value, val 2. Value);
        Console. WriteLine("Refs: {0}, {1}", ref1. Value, ref2. Value);
    }
}
```

shows this difference. The output produced is

```
Values: 0, 123
Refs: 123, 123
```

The assignment to a field of the local variable val 2 does not impact the local variable val 1 because both local variables are of a value type (the type Struct1) and each local variable of a value type has its own storage. In contrast, the assignment ref2. Value = 123; affects the object that both ref1 and ref2 reference.

The lines

```
Consol e. WriteLine("Values: \{0\}, \{1\}", val 1. Value, val 2. Value); Consol e. WriteLine("Refs: \{0\}, \{1\}", ref1. Value, ref2. Value);
```

deserve further comment, as they demonstrate some of the string formatting behavior of Consol e. Wri teLi ne, which, in fact, takes a variable number of arguments. The first argument is a string, which can contain numbered placeholders like {0} and {1}. Each placeholder refers to a trailing argument with {0} referring to the second argument, {1} referring to the third argument, and so on. Before the output is sent to the console, each placeholder is replaced with the formatted value of its corresponding argument.

Developers can define new value types through enum and struct declarations, and can define new reference types via class, interface, and delegate declarations. The example

```
using System;
public enum Color
   Red, Blue, Green
public struct Point
   public int x, y;
public interface IBase
   void F();
public interface IDerived: IBase
   voi d G();
public class A
   protected virtual void H() {
      Consol e. WriteLine("A. H");
public class B: A, IDerived
   public void F() {
      Console. WriteLine("B. F, implementation of IDerived. F");
   public void G() {
      Console. WriteLine("B. G, implementation of IDerived. G");
   override protected void H() {
      Console. WriteLine("B. H, override of A. H");
}
public delegate void EmptyDelegate();
```

shows an example of each kind of type declaration. Later clauses describe type declarations in detail.

# 8.2.1 Predefined types

C# provides a set of predefined types, most of which will be familiar to C and C++ developers.

The predefined reference types are object and string. The type object is the ultimate base type of all other types. The type string is used to represent Unicode string values. Values of type string are immutable.

The predefined value types include signed and unsigned integral types, floating-point types, and the types bool, char, and deci mal. The signed integral types are sbyte, short, int, and long; the unsigned integral types are byte, ushort, uint, and ulong; and the floating-point types are float and double.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

The bool type is used to represent Boolean values: values that are either true or false. The inclusion of bool makes it easier to write self-documenting code; it also helps eliminate the all-too-common C++ coding error in which a developer mistakenly uses "=" when "==" should have been used. In C#, the example

```
\begin{array}{lll} i \ nt & i & = \ ...; \\ F(i); & \\ i \ f & (i & = 0) & // \ Bug: \ the \ test \ should \ be \ (i & == 0) \\ G(); & \end{array}
```

results in a compile-time error because the expression i = 0 is of type i nt, and i f statements require an expression of type bool.

The char type is used to represent Unicode code units. A variable of type char represents a single 16-bit Unicode code unit.

The deci mal type is appropriate for calculations in which rounding errors caused by floating point representations are unacceptable. Common examples include financial calculations such as tax computations and currency conversions. The deci mal type provides for at least 28 significant digits.

The table below lists the predefined types, and shows how to write literal values for each of them.

Type	Description	Example
obj ect	The ultimate base type of all other types	object o = null;
string	String type; a string is a sequence of Unicode code units	string s = "hello";
sbyte	8-bit signed integral type	sbyte val = 12;
short	16-bit signed integral type	short val = 12;
i nt	32-bit signed integral type	int val = 12;
long	64-bit signed integral type	l ong val 1 = 12; l ong val 2 = 34L;
byte	8-bit unsigned integral type	byte val 1 = 12;
ushort	16-bit unsigned integral type	ushort val 1 = 12;
ui nt	32-bit unsigned integral type	uint val 1 = 12; uint val 2 = 34U;
ul ong	64-bit unsigned integral type	ul ong val 1 = 12; ul ong val 2 = 34U; ul ong val 3 = 56L; ul ong val 4 = 78UL;
float	Single-precision floating point type	float val = 1.23F;
doubl e	Double-precision floating point type	double val 1 = 1.23; double val 2 = 4.56D;
bool	Boolean type; a bool value is either true or false	bool val 1 = true; bool val 2 = fal se;
char	Character type; a char value is a Unicode code unit	char val = 'h';
deci mal	Precise decimal type with at least 28 significant digits	decimal val = 1.23M;

Each of the predefined types is shorthand for a system-provided type. For example, the keyword intrefers to the struct System. Int32. As a matter of style, use of the keyword is favored over use of the complete system type name.

Predefined value types such as int are treated specially in a few ways but are for the most part treated exactly like other structs. Operator overloading enables developers to define new struct types that behave much like the predefined value types. For instance, a Di gi t struct can support the same mathematical

operations as the predefined integral types, and can define conversions between Di gi t and predefined types.

The predefined types employ operator overloading themselves. For example, the comparison operators == and != have different semantics for different predefined types:

- Two expressions of type i nt are considered equal if they represent the same integer value.
- Two expressions of type **obj ect** are considered equal if both refer to the same object, or if both are **null**.
- Two expressions of type stri ng are considered equal if the string instances have identical lengths and identical characters in each character position, or if both are null.

The example

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        string s = "Test";
        string t = string.Copy(s);
        Console.WriteLine(s == t);
        Console.WriteLine((object)s == (object)t);
    }
}
```

produces the output

True Fal se

because the first comparison compares two expressions of type string, and the second comparison compares two expressions of type object. (Note that when the Standard Library produces a string representation of a Boolean value, as is the case with System. WriteLine above, it uses "True" and "False", while the corresponding C# language Boolean literals are spelled true and false.)

## 8.2.2 Conversions

The predefined types also have predefined conversions. For instance, conversions exist between the predefined types i nt and l ong. C# differentiates between two kinds of conversions: *implicit conversions* and *explicit conversions*. Implicit conversions are supplied for conversions that can safely be performed without careful scrutiny. For instance, the conversion from i nt to l ong is an implicit conversion. This conversion always succeeds, and never results in a loss of information. The following example

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        int intValue = 123;
        long longValue = intValue;
        Console. WriteLine("{0}, {1}", intValue, longValue);
    }
}
```

implicitly converts an int to a long.

In contrast, explicit conversions are performed with a cast expression. The example

using System;

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
       long longValue = Int64. MaxValue;
       int intValue = (int) longValue;
       Console. WriteLine("(int) {0} = {1}", longValue, intValue);
    }
}
```

uses an explicit conversion to convert a long to an int. The output is:

```
(int) 9223372036854775807 = -1
```

because an overflow occurs. Cast expressions permit the use of both implicit and explicit conversions.

# 8.2.3 Array types

Arrays can be single-dimensional or multi-dimensional. Both "rectangular" and "jagged" arrays are supported.

Single-dimensional arrays are the most common type. The example

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        int[] arr = new int[5];
        for (int i = 0; i < arr. Length; i++)
            arr[i] = i * i;
        for (int i = 0; i < arr. Length; i++)
            Console. WriteLine("arr[{0}] = {1}", i, arr[i]);
    }
}</pre>
```

creates a single-dimensional array of i nt values, initializes the array elements, and then prints each of them out. The output produced is:

```
arr[0] = 0
arr[1] = 1
arr[2] = 4
arr[3] = 9
arr[4] = 16
```

The type int[] used in the previous example is an array type. Array types are written using a non-array-type followed by one or more rank specifiers. The example

shows a variety of local variable declarations that use array types with i nt as the element type.

Array types are reference types, and so the declaration of an array variable merely sets aside space for the reference to the array. Array instances are actually created via array initializers and array creation expressions. The example

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        int[] a1 = new int[] {1, 2, 3};
        int[,] a2 = new int[,] {{1, 2, 3}, {4, 5, 6}};
        int[,,] a3 = new int[10, 20, 30];

        int[][] j2 = new int[3][];
        j2[0] = new int[] {1, 2, 3};
        j2[1] = new int[] {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6};
        j2[2] = new int[] {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9};
    }
}
```

shows a variety of array creation expressions. The variables a1, a2 and a3 denote *rectangular arrays*, and the variable j 2 denotes a *jagged array*. It should be no surprise that these terms are based on the shapes of the arrays. Rectangular arrays always have a rectangular shape. Given the length of each dimension of the array, its rectangular shape is clear. For example, the lengths of a3's three dimensions are 10, 20, and 30, respectively, and it is easy to see that this array contains 10\*20\*30 elements.

In contrast, the variable j 2 denotes a "jagged" array, or an "array of arrays". Specifically, j 2 denotes an array of an array of i nt, or a single-dimensional array of type i nt []. Each of these i nt [] variables can be initialized individually, and this allows the array to take on a jagged shape. The example gives each of the i nt [] arrays a different length. Specifically, the length of j 2[0] is 3, the length of j 2[1] is 6, and the length of j 2[2] is 9.

[Note: In C++, an array declared as i nt x[3][5][7] would be considered a three dimensional rectangular array, while in C#, the declaration i nt [][][] declares a jagged array type. end note]

The element type and shape of an array—including whether it is jagged or rectangular, and the number of dimensions it has—are part of its type. On the other hand, the size of the array—as represented by the length of each of its dimensions—is not part of an array's type. This split is made clear in the language syntax, as the length of each dimension is specified in the array creation expression rather than in the array type. For instance the declaration

```
int[,,] a3 = new int[10, 20, 30];
```

has an array type of int[,,] and an array creation expression of new int[10, 20, 30].

For local variable and field declarations, a shorthand form is permitted so that it is not necessary to re-state the array type. For instance, the example

```
int[] a1 = new int[] {1, 2, 3};
```

can be shortened to

```
int[] a1 = \{1, 2, 3\};
```

without any change in program semantics.

The context in which an array initializer such as {1, 2, 3} is used determines the type of the array being initialized. The example

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        short[] a = {1, 2, 3};
        int[] b = {1, 2, 3};
        long[] c = {1, 2, 3};
}
```

shows that the same array initializer syntax can be used for several different array types. Because context is required to determine the type of an array initializer, it is not possible to use an array initializer in an expression context without explicitly stating the type of the array.

# 8.2.4 Type system unification

C# provides a "unified type system". All types—including value types—derive from the type obj ect. It is possible to call object methods on any value, even values of "primitive" types such as int. The example

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Console. WriteLine(3. ToString());
    }
}
```

calls the object-defined ToString method on an integer literal, resulting in the output "3".

The example

is more interesting. An int value can be converted to object and back again to int. This example shows both *boxing* and *unboxing*. When a variable of a value type needs to be converted to a reference type, an object *box* is allocated to hold the value, and the value is copied into the box. *Unboxing* is just the opposite. When an object box is cast back to its original value type, the value is copied out of the box and into the appropriate storage location.

This type system unification provides value types with the benefits of object-ness without introducing unnecessary overhead. For programs that don't need i nt values to act like objects, i nt values are simply 32-bit values. For programs that need i nt values to behave like objects, this capability is available on demand. This ability to treat value types as objects bridges the gap between value types and reference types that exists in most languages. For example, a Stack class can provide Push and Pop methods that take and return object values.

```
public class Stack
{
    public object Pop() {...}
    public void Push(object o) {...}
}
```

Because C# has a unified type system, the Stack class can be used with elements of any type, including value types like int.

# 8.3 Variables and parameters

*Variables* represent storage locations. Every variable has a type that determines what values can be stored in the variable. *Local variables* are variables that are declared in function members such as methods, properties, and indexers. A local variable is defined by specifying a type name and a declarator that specifies the variable name and an optional initial value, as in:

```
int a;
int b = 1;
```

but it is also possible for a local variable declaration to include multiple declarators. The declarations of a and b can be rewritten as:

```
int a, b = 1;
```

A variable shall be assigned before its value can be obtained. The example

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        int a;
        int b = 1;
        int c = a + b; // error, a not yet assigned
        ...
    }
}
```

results in a compile-time error because it attempts to use the variable a before it is assigned a value. The rules governing definite assignment are defined in §12.3.

A *field* (§17.4) is a variable that is associated with a class or struct, or an instance of a class or struct. A field declared with the static modifier defines a *static variable*, and a field declared without this modifier defines an *instance variable*. A static variable is associated with a type, whereas an instance variable is associated with an instance. The example

```
using Personnel.Data;
class Employee
{
   private static DataSet ds;
   public string Name;
   public decimal Salary;
   ...
}
```

shows an Empl oyee class that has a private static variable and two public instance variables.

Formal parameter declarations also define variables. There are four kinds of parameters: value parameters, reference parameters, output parameters, and parameter arrays.

A *value parameter* is used for "in" parameter passing, in which the value of an argument is passed into a method, and modifications of the parameter do not impact the original argument. A value parameter refers to its own variable, one that is distinct from the corresponding argument. This variable is initialized by copying the value of the corresponding argument. The example

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void F(int p) {
        Console. WriteLine("p = {0}", p);
        p++;
    }
    static void Main() {
        int a = 1;
        Console. WriteLine("pre: a = {0}", a);
        F(a);
        Console. WriteLine("post: a = {0}", a);
    }
}
```

shows a method F that has a value parameter named p. The example produces the output:

```
pre: a = 1
p = 1
post: a = 1
```

even though the value parameter p is modified.

A *reference parameter* is used for "by reference" parameter passing, in which the parameter acts as an alias for a caller-provided argument. A reference parameter does not itself define a variable, but rather refers to the variable of the corresponding argument. Modifications of a reference parameter impact the corresponding argument. A reference parameter is declared with a ref modifier. The example

```
using System;
```

```
class Test
{
    static void Swap(ref int a, ref int b) {
        int t = a;
        a = b;
        b = t;
    }
    static void Main() {
        int x = 1;
        int y = 2;

        Console. WriteLine("pre: x = {0}, y = {1}", x, y);
        Swap(ref x, ref y);
        Console. WriteLine("post: x = {0}, y = {1}", x, y);
    }
}
```

shows a Swap method that has two reference parameters. The output produced is:

```
pre: x = 1, y = 2
post: x = 2, y = 1
```

The ref keyword shall be used in both the declaration of the formal parameter and in uses of it. The use of ref at the call site calls special attention to the parameter, so that a developer reading the code will understand that the value of the argument could change as a result of the call.

An *output parameter* is similar to a reference parameter, except that the initial value of the caller-provided argument is unimportant. An output parameter is declared with an **out** modifier. The example

shows a **Di vi de** method that includes two output parameters—one for the result of the division and another for the remainder.

For value, reference, and output parameters, there is a one-to-one correspondence between caller-provided arguments and the parameters used to represent them. A *parameter array* enables a many-to-one relationship: many arguments can be represented by a single parameter array. In other words, parameter arrays enable variable length argument lists.

A parameter array is declared with a params modifier. There can be only one parameter array for a given method, and it shall always be the last parameter specified. The type of a parameter array is always a single dimensional array type. A caller can either pass a single argument of this array type, or any number of arguments of the element type of this array type. For instance, the example

```
using System;
```

shows a method F that takes a variable number of int arguments, and several invocations of this method. The output is:

```
# of arguments: 0
# of arguments: 1
    args[0] = 1
# of arguments: 2
    args[0] = 1
    args[1] = 2
# of arguments: 3
    args[0] = 1
    args[1] = 2
    args[2] = 3
# of arguments: 4
    args[0] = 1
    args[1] = 2
    args[2] = 3
    args[2] = 3
    args[3] = 4
```

Most of the examples presented in this introduction use the WriteLine method of the Consol e class. The argument substitution behavior of this method, as exhibited in the example

```
int a = 1, b = 2;
Console. WriteLine("a = \{0\}, b = \{1\}", a, b);
```

is accomplished using a parameter array. The WriteLine method provides several overloaded methods for the common cases in which a small number of arguments are passed, and one method that uses a parameter array.

```
namespace System
{
    public class Console
    {
        public static void WriteLine(string s) {...}
        public static void WriteLine(string s, object a) {...}
        public static void WriteLine(string s, object a, object b) {...}
        ...
        public static void WriteLine(string s, params object[] args) {...}
    }
}
```

# 8.4 Automatic memory management

**Manual memory management** requires developers to manage the allocation and de-allocation of blocks of memory. Manual memory management can be both time-consuming and difficult. In C#, **automatic memory management** is provided so that developers are freed from this burdensome task. In the vast majority of cases, automatic memory management increases code quality and enhances developer productivity without negatively impacting either expressiveness or performance.

The example

```
using System;
```

```
public class Stack
   private Node first = null;
   public bool Empty {
      get {
         return (first == null);
   }
   public object Pop()
      if (first == null)
         throw new Exception("Can't Pop from an empty Stack.");
      else {
         object temp = first. Value;
         first = first. Next;
         return temp;
      }
   }
   public void Push(object o) {
      first = new Node(o, first);
   class Node
      public Node Next;
      public object Value;
      public Node(object value): this(value, null) {}
      public Node(object value, Node next) {
         Next = next;
         Value = value:
      }
   }
```

shows a **Stack** class implemented as a linked list of **Node** instances. Node instances are created in the **Push** method and are garbage collected when no longer needed. A **Node** instance becomes eligible for garbage collection when it is no longer possible for any code to access it. For instance, when an item is removed from the **Stack**, the associated **Node** instance becomes eligible for garbage collection.

The example

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Stack s = new Stack();
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
            s. Push(i);
        s = null;
    }
}</pre>
```

shows code that uses the <code>Stack</code> class. A <code>Stack</code> is created and initialized with 10 elements, and then assigned the value <code>null</code>. Once the variable <code>s</code> is assigned null, the <code>Stack</code> and the associated 10 <code>Node</code> instances become eligible for garbage collection. The garbage collector is permitted to clean up immediately, but is not required to do so.

The garbage collector underlying C# might work by moving objects around in memory, but this motion is invisible to most C# developers. For developers who are generally content with automatic memory management but sometimes need fine-grained control or that extra bit of performance, C# provides the ability to write "unsafe" code. Such code can deal directly with pointer types and object addresses; however, C# requires the programmer to *fix* objects to temporarily prevent the garbage collector from moving them.

This "unsafe" code feature is in fact a "safe" feature from the perspective of both developers and users. Unsafe code shall be clearly marked in the code with the modifier unsafe, so developers can't possibly use unsafe language features accidentally, and the compiler and the execution engine work together to ensure

that unsafe code cannot masquerade as safe code. These restrictions limit the use of unsafe code to situations in which the code is trusted.

The example

shows an unsafe block in a method named **WriteLocations** that fixes an array instance and uses pointer manipulation to iterate over the elements. The index, value, and location of each array element are written to the console. One possible example of output is:

```
arr[0] at 0x8E0360 is 1
arr[1] at 0x8E0361 is 2
arr[2] at 0x8E0362 is 3
arr[3] at 0x8E0363 is 4
arr[4] at 0x8E0364 is 5
```

but, of course, the exact memory locations can be different in different executions of the application.

# 8.5 Expressions

C# includes unary operators, binary operators, and one ternary operator. The following table summarizes the operators, listing them in order of precedence from highest to lowest:

Subclause	Category	Operators
14.5	Primary	x. y f(x) a[x] x++ x new
		typeof checked unchecked
14.5.14	Unary	+ - ! ~ ++xx (T)x
14.7	Multiplicative	* / %
14.7	Additive	+ -
14.8	Shift	<< >>
14.9	Relational and type-testing	< > <= >= is as
14.9	Equality	== !=
14.10	Logical AND	&
14.10	Logical XOR	^
14.10	Logical OR	
14.11	Conditional AND	&&
14.11	Conditional OR	11
14.13	Conditional	?:
14.14	Assignment	= *= /= %= += -= <<= >>= &= ^=  =

When an expression contains multiple operators, the *precedence* of the operators controls the order in which the individual operators are evaluated. For example, the expression  $\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} * \mathbf{z}$  is evaluated as  $\mathbf{x} + (\mathbf{y} * \mathbf{z})$  because the \* operator has higher precedence than the + operator.

When an operand occurs between two operators with the same precedence, the *associativity* of the operators controls the order in which the operations are performed:

- Except for the assignment operators, all binary operators are *left-associative*, meaning that operations are performed from left to right. For example, x + y + z is evaluated as (x + y) + z.
- The assignment operators and the conditional operator (?: ) are *right-associative*, meaning that operations are performed from right to left. For example, x = y = z is evaluated as x = (y = z).

Precedence and associativity can be controlled using parentheses. For example, x + y \* z first multiplies y by z and then adds the result to x, but (x + y) \* z first adds x and y and then multiplies the result by z.

# 8.6 Statements

C# borrows most of its statements directly from C and C++, though there are some noteworthy additions and modifications. The table below lists the kinds of statements that can be used, and provides an example for each.

```
Statement
                              Example
                              static void Main() {
Statement lists and block
                                   F();
G();
statements
                                        H();
I();
                              }
                              static void Main(string[] args) {
  if (args.Length == 0)
     goto done;
  Console.WriteLine(args.Length);
Labeled statements and goto
statements
                              done:
                                   Consol e. Wri teLi ne("Done");
                              static void Main() {
   const float pi = 3.14f;
Local constant declarations
                                   const int r = 123;
                                   Console. WriteLine(pi * r * r);
                              static void Main() {
Local variable declarations
                                   int a;
                                   int b = 2, c = 3;
                                   a = 1:
                                   Console. WriteLine(a + b + c);
                              static int F(int a, int b) {
Expression statements
                                   return a + b;
                              }
                              static void Main() {
                                   F(1, 2); // Expression statement
                              static void Main(string[] args) {
if statements
                                   if (args. Length == 0)
                                        Console. WriteLine("No args");
                                        Consol e. WriteLine("Args");
                              }
                              static void Main(string[] args) {
swi tch statements
                                   switch (args. Length) {
                                        case 0:
                                             Consol e. WriteLine("No args");
                                             break:
                                        case 1:
                                             Consol e. Wri teLi ne("One arg ");
                                             break;
                                        default:
                                             int n = args. Length;
Console. WriteLine("{0} args", n);
                                             break;
                                   }
                              }
                              static void Main(string[] args) {
while statements
                                   int i = 0;
                                   while (i < args. Length) {
                                        Consol e. WriteLine(args[i]);
                                        i ++;
                                   }
```

```
static void Main() {
do statements
                                 string s;
do { s = Console. ReadLine(); }
                                 while (s != "Exit");
                             static void Main(string[] args) {
for statements
                                 for (int i = 0; i < args. Length; i++)
Consol e. WriteLine(args[i]);
                             static void Main(string[] args) {
foreach statements
                                 foreach (string s in args)
                                      Consol e. WriteLine(s);
                            static void Main(string[] args) {
break statements
                                 int i = 0;
                                 while (true) {
   if (i == args. Length)
                                           break;
                                      Consol e. WriteLine(args[i++]);
                                 }
                             }
                             static void Main(string[] args) {
continue statements
                                 int i = 0;
                                 while (true) {
   Console. WriteLine(args[i++]);
                                     if (i < args. Length)
                                          continue:
                                     break;
                                 }
                             static int F(int a, int b) {
return statements
                                 return a + b;
                             static void Main() {
                                 Consol e. WriteLine(F(1, 2));
                                 return:
                             static IEnumerable<int> FromTo(int a, int b) {
yi el d statements
                                 if (a > b)
                                 yield break;
for (;; a++) {
yield return a;
                                      if (a == b)
                                           break:
                                 }
                            }
                             static int F(int a, int b) {
throw statements and try
                                 if (b == 0)
statements
                                 throw new Exception("Divide by zero"); return a / b;
                            }
                            static void Main() {
                                 try {
   Console.WriteLine(F(5, 0));
                                 catch(Exception e) {
                                      Console. WriteLine("Error");
                                 }
                             }
```

```
static void Main() {
   int x = Int32. MaxValue;
   Console. WriteLine(x + 1);
checked and unchecked
statements
                                                                              // Overflow
                                     checked {
                                          Console. WriteLine(x + 1); // Exception
                                     unchecked {
                                         Console. WriteLine(x + 1); // Overflow
                                }
                                static void Main() {
lock statements
                                     A a = ...;
lock(a) {
a. P = a. P + 1;
                                }
                                static void Main() {
usi ng statements
                                     using (Resource r = new Resource()) {
r. F();
                                     }
```

## 8.7 Classes

Class declarations define new reference types. A class can inherit from another class, and can implement interfaces. Generic class declarations (§25.1) have one or more type parameters.

Class members can include constants, fields, methods, properties, events, indexers, operators, instance constructors, finalizers, static constructors, and nested type declarations. Each member has an associated accessibility (§10.5), which controls the regions of program text that are able to access the member. There are five possible forms of accessibility. These are summarized in the table below.

Form	Intuitive meaning
publ i c	Access not limited
protected	Access limited to the containing class or types derived from the containing class
internal	Access limited to this program
protected internal	Access limited to this program or types derived from the containing class
pri vate	Access limited to the containing type

The example

```
using System;
class MyClass
{
  public const int MyConst = 12;
  public int MyField = 34;
  public static int MyStaticField = 34;
  public void MyMethod() {
     Console. WriteLine("MyClass. MyMethod");
  }
  public int MyProperty {
     get {
        return MyField;
     }
}
```

```
set {
                MyField = value;
         public event EventHandler MyEvent;
         public int this[int index] {
             get {
                return 0;
             }
             set {
                Consol e. WriteLine("this[\{0\}] = \{1\}", index, value);
             }
         }
         public MyClass() {
             Console. WriteLine("Instance constructor");
         public MyClass(int value) {
             MyField = value;
             Console. WriteLine("Instance constructor");
         }
         ~MyCl ass()
             Consol e. WriteLine("Finalizer");
         static MyClass() {
   MyStaticField *= 2;
             Consol e. WriteLine("Static constructor");
         internal class MyNestedClass
shows a class that contains each kind of member. The example
      class Test
         static void Main() {
             // Instance constructor usage
             MyClass a = new MyClass();
MyClass b = new MyClass(123);
             // Constant usage
             Consol e. WriteLine("MyConst = {0}", MyClass. MyConst);
             // Field usage
             a. MyFi el d++;
             Console. WriteLine("a. MyField = {0}", a. MyField);
             // Method usage
             a. MyMethod();
             // Property usage
             a. MyProperty++;
             Consol e. WriteLine("a. MyProperty = {0}", a. MyProperty);
             // Indexer usage a[3] = a[1] = a[2]; Consol e. Wri teLi ne("a[3] = \{0\}", a[3]);
             // Event usage
             a. MyEvent += new EventHandler(MyHandler);
             // Overloaded operator usage
             MyClass c = a + b;
```

```
// Nested type usage
   MyClass. MyNestedClass d = new MyClass. MyNestedClass();
}
static void MyHandler(object sender, EventArgs e) {
   Console. WriteLine("Test. MyHandler");
}
```

shows uses of these members.

## 8.7.1 Constants

A *constant* is a class member that represents a constant value: a value that can be computed at compile-time. Constants are permitted to depend on other constants within the same program as long as there are no circular dependencies. The rules governing constant expressions are defined in §14.16. The example

```
class Constants
{
    public const int A = 1;
    public const int B = A + 1;
}
```

shows a class named Constants that has two public constants.

Even though constants are considered static members, a constant declaration neither requires nor allows the modifier static. Constants can be accessed through the class, as in

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Console. WriteLine("{0}, {1}", Constants. A, Constants. B);
    }
}
```

which prints out the values of Constants. A and Constants. B, respectively.

## **8.7.2 Fields**

A *field* is a member that represents a variable associated with an object or class. The example

```
class Color
{
   internal ushort redPart;
   internal ushort bluePart;
   internal ushort greenPart;

public Color(ushort red, ushort blue, ushort green) {
    redPart = red;
    bluePart = blue;
    greenPart = green;
}

public static Color Red = new Color(0xFF, 0, 0);
   public static Color Blue = new Color(0, 0xFF, 0);
   public static Color Green = new Color(0, 0, 0xFF);
   public static Color White = new Color(0xFF, 0xFF);
}
```

shows a Col or class that has internal instance fields named redPart, bl uePart, and greenPart, and static fields named Red, Bl ue, Green, and White

The use of static fields in this manner is not ideal. The fields are initialized at some point before they are used, but after this initialization, there is nothing to stop a client from changing them. Such a modification could cause unpredictable errors in other programs that use **Col or** and assume that the values do not change. **Readonly fields** can be used to prevent such problems. Assignments to a readonly field can only occur as part of the declaration, or in an instance constructor or static constructor in the same class. A static readonly field can be assigned in a static constructor, and a non-static readonly field can be assigned in an

instance constructor. Thus, the Col or class can be enhanced by adding the modifier readonly to the static fields:

```
class Color
{
  internal ushort redPart;
  internal ushort bluePart;
  internal ushort greenPart;

  public Color(ushort red, ushort blue, ushort green) {
     redPart = red;
     bluePart = blue;
     greenPart = green;
  }

  public static readonly Color Red = new Color(0xFF, 0, 0);
  public static readonly Color Blue = new Color(0, 0xFF, 0);
  public static readonly Color Green = new Color(0, 0, 0xFF);
  public static readonly Color White = new Color(0xFF, 0xFF);
}
```

#### 8.7.3 Methods

A *method* is a member that implements a computation or action that can be performed by an object or class. Methods have a (possibly empty) list of formal parameters, a return value (unless the method's *return-type* is voi d), and are either static or non-static. *Static methods* are accessed through the class. *Non-static methods*, which are also called *instance methods*, are accessed through instances of the class. A *generic method* (§25.6) has a list of one or more type parameters. The example

```
using System;
public class Stack
   public static Stack Clone(Stack s) {...}
   public static Stack Flip(Stack s) {...}
   public object Pop() {...}
   public void Push(object o) {...}
   public void PushMultiple<T>(T[] a) {...}
   public override string ToString() {...}
}
class Test
   static void Main() {
        Stack s = new Stack();
        for (int i = 1; i < 10; i++)
           s. Push(i);
       Stack flipped = Stack.Flip(s);
        Stack cloned = Stack. Clone(s);
       Console. WriteLine("Original stack: " + s.ToString());
Console. WriteLine("Flipped stack: " + flipped.ToString());
Console. WriteLine("Cloned stack: " + cloned.ToString());
   }
}
```

shows a Stack that has several static methods (Cl one and Fl i p) and several instance methods (Pop, Push, and ToString) and a generic method (PushMul tiple<T>).

Methods can be overloaded, which means that multiple methods can have the same name so long as they have unique signatures. The signature of a method consists of the name of the method and the number, modifiers, and types of its formal parameters, and the number of generic type parameters. The signature of a method does not include the return type or the names of the formal parameters or type parameters. The example

```
using System;
       class Test
          static void F() {
              Consol e. WriteLine("F()");
          static void F(object o) {
              Consol e. WriteLine("F(object)");
          static void F(int value) {
              Consol e. Wri teLi ne("F(i nt)");
          }
          static void F(ref int value) {
   Console. WriteLine("F(ref int)");
          static void F(int a, int b) {
              Consol e. WriteLine("F(int, int)");
          static void F(int[] values)
              Consol e. WriteLine("F(int[])");
          static void F<T>(T t)
              Consol e. WriteLine("F<T>(T)");
          static void Main() {
              F();
              F(1):
              int i = 10;
              F(ref i);
              F((object) 1);
F(1, 2);
              F(\text{new int}[] \{1, 2, 3\});
              F("Hello");
F<string>("World");
shows a class with a number of methods called F. The output produced is
       F(int)
       F(ref int)
       F(object)
       F(int, int)
F(int[])
       F < T > (T)
```

## 8.7.4 Properties

F < T > (T)

A *property* is a member that provides access to a characteristic of an object or a class. Examples of properties include the length of a string, the size of a font, the caption of a window, the name of a customer, and so on. Properties are a natural extension of fields. Both are named members with associated types, and the syntax for accessing fields and properties is the same. However, unlike fields, properties do not denote storage locations. Instead, properties have accessors that specify the statements to be executed when their values are read or written.

Properties are defined with property declarations. The first part of a property declaration looks quite similar to a field declaration. The second part includes a get accessor and/or a set accessor. In the example below, the **Button** class defines a **Capti** on property.

```
public class Button
{
    private string caption;
    public string Caption {
        get {
            return caption;
        }
        set {
            caption = value;
            Repaint();
        }
    }
    ...
}
```

Properties that can be both read and written, such as **Caption**, include both get and set accessors. The get accessor is called when the property's value is read; the set accessor is called when the property's value is written. In a set accessor, the new value for the property is made available via an implicit parameter named **value**.

The declaration of properties is relatively straightforward, but the real value of properties is seen when they are used. For example, the **Capti** on property can be read and written in the same way that fields can be read and written:

```
Button b = new Button();
b. Caption = "ABC";    // set; causes repaint
string s = b. Caption;    // get
b. Caption += "DEF";    // get & set; causes repaint
```

#### **8.7.5 Events**

An *event* is a member that enables an object or class to provide notifications. A class defines an event by providing an event declaration (which resembles a field declaration, though with an added event keyword) and an optional set of event accessors. The type of this declaration shall be a delegate type.

An instance of a delegate type encapsulates one or more callable entities. For instance methods, a callable entity consists of an instance and a method on that instance. For static methods, a callable entity consists of just a method. Given a delegate instance and an appropriate set of arguments, one can invoke all of that delegate instance's methods with that set of arguments.

In the example

```
public delegate void EventHandler(object sender, System EventArgs e);
public class Button
{
    public event EventHandler Click;
    public void Reset() {
        Click = null;
    }
}
```

the Button class defines a Click event of type EventHandler. Inside the Button class, the Click member is exactly like a private field of type EventHandler. However, outside the Button class, the Click member can only be used on the left-hand side of the += and -= operators. The += operator adds a handler for the event, and the -= operator removes a handler for the event. The example

```
using System;
public class Form1
{
   public Form1() {
      // Add Button1_Click as an event handler for Button1's Click event
      Button1. Click += new EventHandler(Button1_Click);
   }
   Button Button1 = new Button();
```

```
void Button1_Click(object sender, EventArgs e) {
    Console.WriteLine("Button1 was clicked!");
}

public void Disconnect() {
    Button1.Click -= new EventHandler(Button1_Click);
}
```

shows a Form1 class that adds Button1\_Click as an event handler for Button1's Click event. In the Disconnect method, that event handler is removed.

For a simple event declaration such as

```
public event EventHandler Click;
```

the compiler automatically provides the implementation underlying the += and -= operators.

An implementer who wants more control can get it by explicitly providing add and remove accessors. For example, the **Button** class could be rewritten as follows:

```
public class Button
{
    private EventHandler handler;
    public event EventHandler Click {
        add { handler += value; }

        remove { handler -= value; }
}
```

This change has no effect on client code, but allows the **Button** class more implementation flexibility. For example, the event handler for **Click** need not be represented by a field.

## 8.7.6 Operators

An *operator* is a member that defines the meaning of an expression operator that can be applied to instances of the class. Three kinds of operators can be defined: unary, binary, and conversion.

The following example defines a **Di gi t** type that represents decimal digits—integral values between **0** and 9.

```
using System;
public struct Digit
{
    byte value;
    public Digit(int value) {
        if (value < 0 || value > 9) throw new ArgumentException();
        this.value = (byte)value;
    }
    public static implicit operator byte(Digit d) {
        return d.value;
    }
    public static explicit operator Digit(int value) {
        return new Digit(value);
    }
    public static Digit operator+(Digit a, Digit b) {
        return new Digit(a.value + b.value);
    }
    public static Digit operator-(Digit a, Digit b) {
        return new Digit(a.value - b.value);
    }
    public static bool operator==(Digit a, Digit b) {
        return a.value == b.value;
    }
}
```

```
public static bool operator!=(Digit a, Digit b) {
        return a. value != b. value;
    public override bool Equals(object value) {
        if (value == null) return false;
if (GetType() == value.GetType()) return this == (Digit)value;
        return false;
    public override int GetHashCode() {
        return value.GetHashCode();
    public override string ToString() {
        return value. ToString();
}
class Test
    static void Main() {
        Digit a = (Digit)
        Digit b = (Digit) 3;
        Digit plus = a + b;
        Digit minus = a - b;
       bool equals = (a == b);

Console. WriteLine("{0} + {1} = {2}", a, b, plus);

Console. WriteLine("{0} - {1} = {2}", a, b, minus);

Console. WriteLine("{0} == {1} = {2}", a, b, equals);
    }
}
```

The Di gi t type defines the following operators:

- An implicit conversion operator from Di gi t to byte.
- An explicit conversion operator from i nt to Di gi t.
- An addition operator that adds two Di git values and returns a Di git value.
- A subtraction operator that subtracts one Di gi t value from another, and returns a Di gi t value.
- The equality (==) and inequality (!=) operators, which compare two **Di gi t** values.

## 8.7.7 Indexers

An *indexer* is a member that enables an object to be indexed in the same way as an array. Whereas properties enable field-like access, indexers enable array-like access.

As an example, consider the **Stack** class presented earlier. The designer of this class might want to expose array-like access so that it is possible to inspect or alter the items on the stack without performing unnecessary **Push** and **Pop** operations. That is, class **Stack** is implemented as a linked list, but it also provides the convenience of array access.

Indexer declarations are similar to property declarations, with the main differences being that indexers are nameless (the "name" used in the declaration is this, since this is being indexed) and that indexers include indexing parameters. The indexing parameters are provided between square brackets. The example

using System;

```
public class Stack
   private Node GetNode(int index) {
      Node temp = first;
      while (true) {
  if (temp == null || index < 0)
             throw new Exception("Index out of range.");
         if (index == 0)
            return temp;
         temp = temp. Next;
         i ndex--;
      }
   }
   public object this[int index] {
      get {
         return GetNode(index). Value;
      set {
         GetNode(index). Value = value;
   }
}
class Test
   static void Main() {
      Stack s = new Stack();
      s. Push(1);
      s. Push(2);
      s. Push(3);
      s[0] = 33:
                   // Changes the top item from 3 to 33
      s[1] = 22;
                   // Changes the middle item from 2 to 22
      s[2] = 11;
                   // Changes the bottom item from 1 to 11
}
```

shows an indexer for the Stack class.

## 8.7.8 Instance constructors

An *instance constructor* is a member that implements the actions required to initialize an instance of a class.

The example

```
using System;
class Point
{
   public double x, y;
   public Point() {
      this.x = 0;
      this.y = 0;
   }
   public Point(double x, double y) {
      this.x = x;
      this.y = y;
   }
   public static double Distance(Point a, Point b) {
      double xdiff = a.x - b.x;
      double ydiff = a.y - b.y;
      return Math.Sqrt(xdiff * xdiff + ydiff * ydiff);
   }
}
```

```
public override string ToString() {
    return string.Format("({0}, {1})", x, y);
}
}
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Point a = new Point();
        Point b = new Point(3, 4);
        double d = Point.Distance(a, b);
        Console.WriteLine("Distance from {0} to {1} is {2}", a, b, d);
}
```

shows a **Poi** nt class that provides two public instance constructors, one of which takes no arguments, while the other takes two **doubl** e arguments.

If no instance constructor is supplied for a class, then one having no parameters is automatically provided, which simply invokes the parameterless constructor of the direct base class.

#### 8.7.9 Finalizers

A *finalizer* is a member that implements the actions required to finalize an instance of a class. Finalizers cannot have parameters, they cannot have accessibility modifiers, and they cannot be called explicitly. The finalizer for an instance is called automatically during garbage collection.

The example

```
using System;
class Point
{
  public double x, y;
  public Point(double x, double y) {
     this.x = x;
     this.y = y;
  }
  ~Point() {
     Console. WriteLine("Finalized {0}", this);
  }
  public override string ToString() {
     return string. Format("({0}, {1})", x, y);
  }
}
```

shows a Poi nt class with a finalizer.

#### 8.7.10 Static constructors

A *static constructor* is a member that implements the actions required to initialize a class. Static constructors cannot have parameters, they cannot have accessibility modifiers, and they cannot be called explicitly. The static constructor for a class is called automatically.

The example

```
using Personnel.Data;
class Employee
{
   private static DataSet ds;
   static Employee() {
      ds = new DataSet(...);
}
```

```
public string Name;
public decimal Salary;
...
}
```

shows an **Empl** oyee class with a static constructor that initializes a static field.

#### 8.7.11 Inheritance

Classes support single inheritance, and the type object is the ultimate base class for all classes.

The classes shown in earlier examples all implicitly derive from object. The example

```
using System;
      class A
          public void F() { Console. WriteLine("A. F"); }
shows a class A that implicitly derives from object. The example
      class B: A
          public void G() { Console. WriteLine("B.G"); }
      class Test
          static void Main() {
             B b = new B();
             b. F();
                              // Inherited from A
             b. G();
                              // Introduced in B
                              // Treat a B as an A
             A a = b;
             a. F();
          }
      }
```

shows a class B that derives from A. The class B inherits A's F method, and introduces a G method of its own.

Methods, properties, and indexers can be *virtual*, which means that their implementation can be overridden in derived classes. The example

```
using System;
class A
   public virtual void F() { Console. WriteLine("A. F"); }
class B: A
   public override void F() {
      base. F()
      Consol e. WriteLine("B. F");
   }
class Test
   static void Main() {
      B b = new B();
      b. F();
      A a = b;
      a. F();
   }
}
```

shows a class A with a virtual method F, and a class B that overrides F. The overriding method in B contains a call, base. F(), which calls the overridden method in A.

A class can indicate that it is incomplete, and is intended only as a base class for other classes, by including the modifier abstract. Such a class is called an *abstract class*. An abstract class can specify *abstract members*—members that a non-abstract derived class shall implement. The example

```
using System;
abstract class A
{
   public abstract void F();
}
class B: A
{
   public override void F() { Console. WriteLine("B. F"); }
}
class Test
{
   static void Main() {
      B b = new B();
      b. F();
      A a = b;
      a. F();
   }
}
```

introduces an abstract method F in the abstract class A. The non-abstract class B provides an implementation for this method.

## 8.7.12 Static classes

Classes that are not intended to be instantiated, and which contain only static members should be declared as static classes. Examples of such classes are **System. Console** and **System. Envi ronment**. Static classes are implicitly sealed and have no instance constructors. Static classes can be used only with the typeof operator and to access elements of the class. In particular, a static class cannot be used as the type of a variable or be used as a type argument.

```
public static class Months
{
    static Months() { ... }
    private static readonly string[] monthName = { ... }
    public static string GetMonthName(int mm) { ... }
    private static readonly int[,] daysInMonth = { ... }
    public static int GetDaysInMonth(bool isLeapYear, int mm) { ... }
    public static bool IsLeapYear(int yy) { ... }
}
```

## 8.7.13 Partial type declarations

In certain situations, the declaration of a type may grow so large that keeping it in a single source file becomes impractical or difficult. In such cases, it is often desirable to split that class declaration into multiple source files, with each source file focusing on one or more semi-independent concerns.

Another common situation occurs when code is generated from a program rather than written by a person. In rich frameworks and development environments, it is often most efficient to have parts of a project's source code generated automatically from visual form designers, database schemas, RPC descriptions, etc. While these kinds of tools produce huge productivity gains, they suffer from problems when we wish to customize the output, possibly by adding members to generated classes. If we directly modify the output of the code generator, then those changes will be lost if the code generator needs to be run again. By placing the customized additions in a different source file, lost modifications can be greatly reduced or eliminated.

Partial type declarations allow greater flexibility in these situations by allowing the definition of a class, struct, or interface to be split into as many different pieces as needed. For example, when the following source files are compiled together:

```
// machine-generated code in file #1
partial class Widget
{
    private int[] counts;
    public string ToString() {
        ...
    }
}

// programmer-generated code in file #2
partial class Widget
{
    private int value;
    private void Helper() {
        // ...
    }
    public int Process(object obj) {
        ...
    }
}
```

Wi dget's members are the union of all the members in all its parts.

#### 8.8 Structs

The list of similarities between classes and structs is long—structs can implement interfaces, and can have the same kinds of members as classes. Structs differ from classes in several important ways, however: structs are value types rather than reference types, and inheritance is not supported for structs. Struct values are stored "on the stack" or "in-line". Careful programmers can sometimes enhance performance through judicious use of structs.

For example, the use of a struct rather than a class for a **Poi nt** can make a large difference in the number of memory allocations performed at run time. The program below creates and initializes an array of 100 points. With **Poi nt** implemented as a class, 101 separate objects are instantiated—one for the array and one each for the 100 elements.

```
class Point
           public int x, y;
           public Point(int x, int y) {
              this. x = x;
              this. y = y;
           }
       }
       class Test
           static void Main() {
              Point[] points = new Point[100];
for (int i = 0; i < 100; i++)
                  points[i] = new Point(i, i*i);
           }
       }
If Poi nt is instead implemented as a struct, as in
       struct Point
           public int x, y;
           public Point(int x, int y) {
              this. x = x;
              this. y = y;
       }
```

only one object is instantiated—the one for the array. The **Poi** nt instances are allocated in-line within the array. This optimization can be misused. Using structs instead of classes can also make an application run

slower or take up more memory, as passing a struct instance by value causes a copy of that struct to be created.

## 8.9 Interfaces

An interface defines a contract. A class or struct that implements an interface shall adhere to its contract. Interfaces can contain methods, properties, events, and indexers as members.

The example

```
interface IExample
{
    string this[int index] { get; set; }
    event EventHandler E;
    void F(int value);
    string P { get; set; }
}
public delegate void EventHandler(object sender, EventArgs e);
```

shows an interface that contains an indexer, an event E, a method F, and a property P.

Interfaces can employ multiple inheritance. In the example

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
interface ITextBox: IControl
{
    void SetText(string text);
}
interface IListBox: IControl
{
    void SetItems(string[] items);
}
interface IComboBox: ITextBox, IListBox {}
```

the interface I ComboBox inherits from both I TextBox and I Li stBox.

Classes and structs can implement multiple interfaces. In the example

```
interface IDataBound
{
    void Bind(Binder b);
}

public class EditBox: Control, IControl, IDataBound
{
    public void Paint() {...}
    public void Bind(Binder b) {...}
}
```

the class EditBox derives from the class Control and implements both I Control and I DataBound.

In the previous example, the Paint method from the I Control interface and the Bind method from I DataBound interface are implemented using public members on the EditBox class. C# provides an alternative way of implementing these methods that allows the implementing class to avoid having these members be public. Interface members can be implemented using a qualified name. For example, the EditBox class could instead be implemented by providing I Control. Paint and I DataBound. Bind methods.

```
public class EditBox: IControl, IDataBound
{
    void IControl.Paint() {...}
    void IDataBound.Bind(Binder b) {...}
}
```

Interface members implemented in this way are called *explicit interface members* because each member explicitly designates the interface member being implemented. Explicit interface members can only be called via the interface. For example, the **EditBox**'s implementation of the **Paint** method can be called only by casting to the **IControl** interface.

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        EditBox editbox = new EditBox();
        editbox. Paint(); // error: no such method
        IControl control = editbox;
        control. Paint(); // calls EditBox's Paint implementation
    }
}
```

# 8.10 Delegates

Delegates enable scenarios that some other languages have addressed with function pointers. However, unlike function pointers, delegates are object-oriented and type-safe.

A delegate declaration defines a class that is derived from the class **System. Del egate**. A delegate instance encapsulates one or more methods, each of which is referred to as a *callable entity*. For instance methods, a callable entity consists of an instance and a method on that instance. For static methods, a callable entity consists of just a method. Given a delegate instance and an appropriate set of arguments, one can invoke all of that delegate instance's methods with that set of arguments.

An interesting and useful property of a delegate instance is that it does not know or care about the classes of the methods it encapsulates; all that matters is that those methods be consistent (§22.1) with the delegate's type. This makes delegates perfectly suited for "anonymous" invocation. This is a powerful capability.

There are three steps in defining and using delegates: declaration, instantiation, and invocation. Delegates are declared using delegate declaration syntax. The example

```
del egate voi d SimpleDel egate();
```

declares a delegate named Si mpl eDel egate that takes no arguments and returns no result.

The example

```
class Test
{
    static void F() {
        System. Console. WriteLine("Test. F");
    }
    static void Main() {
        SimpleDelegate d = new SimpleDelegate(F);
        d();
    }
}
```

creates a Si mpl eDel egate instance and then immediately calls it.

There is not much point in instantiating a delegate for a method and then immediately calling that method via the delegate, as it would be simpler to call the method directly. Delegates really show their usefulness when their anonymity is used. The example

```
void MultiCall(SimpleDelegate d, int count) {
   for (int i = 0; i < count; i++) {
      d();
   }
}</pre>
```

shows a MultiCall method that repeatedly calls a SimpleDelegate. The MultiCall method doesn't know or care about the type of the target method for the SimpleDelegate, what accessibility that method has, or whether or not that method is static. All that matters is that the target method is consistent (§22.1) with SimpleDelegate.

## **8.11 Enums**

An enum type declaration defines a type name for a related group of symbolic constants. Enums are used for "multiple choice" scenarios, in which a runtime decision is made from a fixed number of choices that are known at compile-time.

The example

```
enum Color
   Red.
   Bl ue,
   Green
class Shape
   public void Fill(Color color) {
      switch(color)
          case Col or. Red:
             break:
          case Color. Blue:
             break;
          case Color. Green:
             break:
          default:
             break;
      }
   }
```

shows a Col or enum and a method that uses this enum. The signature of the Fill method makes it clear that the shape can be filled with one of the given colors.

The use of enums is superior to the use of integer constants—as is common in languages without enums—because the use of enums makes the code more readable and self-documenting. The self-documenting nature of the code also makes it possible for the development tool to assist with code writing and other "designer" activities. For example, the use of **Col or** rather than **i** nt for a parameter type enables smart code editors to suggest **Col or** values.

# 8.12 Namespaces and assemblies

The programs presented so far have stood on their own except for dependence on a few system-provided classes such as <code>System</code>. Consol e. It is far more common, however, for real-world applications to consist of several different pieces, each compiled separately. For example, a corporate application might depend on several different components, including some developed internally and some purchased from independent software vendors.

Namespaces and assemblies enable this component-based system. Namespaces provide a logical organizational system. Namespaces are used both as an "internal" organization system for a program, and as an "external" organization system—a way of presenting program elements that are exposed to other programs.

Assemblies are used for physical packaging and deployment. An assembly can contain types, the executable code used to implement these types, and references to other assemblies.

To demonstrate the use of namespaces and assemblies, this subclause revisits the "hello, world" program presented earlier, and splits it into two pieces: a class library that provides messages and a console application that displays them.

The class library will contain a single class named HelloMessage. The example

shows the HelloMessage class in a namespace named CSharp. Introduction. The HelloMessage class provides a read-only property named Message. Namespaces can nest, and the declaration

```
namespace CSharp. Introduction \{...\}
```

is shorthand for two levels of namespace nesting:

```
namespace CSharp
{
    namespace Introduction
    {...}
}
```

The next step in the componentization of "hello, world" is to write a console application that uses the **HelloMessage** class. The fully qualified name (§10.8.2) for the class—

**CSharp.** Introducti on. HelloMessage—could be used, but this name is quite long and unwieldy. An easier way is to use a *using namespace directive*, which makes it possible to use all of the types in a namespace without qualification. The example

```
// HelloApp.cs
using CSharp.Introduction;
class HelloApp
{
    static void Main() {
        HelloMessage m = new HelloMessage();
        System.Console.WriteLine(m.Message);
    }
}
```

shows a using namespace directive that refers to the CSharp. Introduction namespace. The occurrences of HelloMessage are shorthand for CSharp. Introduction. HelloMessage.

C# also enables the definition and use of aliases. A *using alias directive* defines an alias for a type or namespace. Such aliases can be useful in situation in which name collisions occur between two class libraries, or when a small number of types from a much larger namespace are being used. The example

```
using MessageSource = CSharp. Introduction. HelloMessage;
```

shows a using alias directive that defines MessageSource as an alias for the HelloMessage class.

The code we have written can be compiled into a class library containing the class **HelloMessage** and an application containing the class **HelloApp**. The details of this compilation step might differ based on the compiler or tool being used. A command-line compiler might enable compilation of a class library and an application that uses that library with the following command-line invocations:

```
csc /target:library HelloLibrary.cs
csc /reference:HelloLibrary.dll HelloApp.cs
```

which produce a class library named HelloLi brary. dll and an application named HelloApp. exe.

# 8.13 Versioning

**Versioning** is the process of evolving a component over time in a compatible manner. A new version of a component is **source compatible** with a previous version if code that depends on the previous version can, when recompiled, work with the new version. In contrast, a new version of a component is **binary-compatible** if an application that depended on the old version can, without recompilation, work with the new version.

Most languages do not support binary compatibility at all, and many do little to facilitate source compatibility. In fact, some languages contain flaws that make it impossible, in general, to evolve a class over time without breaking at least some client code.

As an example, consider the situation of a base class author who ships a class named Base. In the first version, Base contains no method F. A component named Deri ved derives from Base, and introduces an F. This Deri ved class, along with the class Base on which it depends, is released to customers, who deploy to numerous clients and servers.

So far, so good, but now the versioning trouble begins. The author of Base produces a new version, giving it its own method F.

This new version of Base should be both source and binary compatible with the initial version. (If it weren't possible to simply add a method then a base class could never evolve.) Unfortunately, the new F in Base makes the meaning of Deri ved's F unclear. Did Deri ved mean to override Base's F? This seems unlikely, since when Deri ved was compiled, Base did not even have an F! Further, if Deri ved's F does override Base's F, then it shall adhere to the contract specified by Base—a contract that was unspecified when Deri ved was written. In some cases, this is impossible. For example, Base's F might require that overrides of it always call the base. Deri ved's F could not possibly adhere to such a contract.

C# addresses this versioning problem by requiring developers to state their intent clearly. In the original code example, the code was clear, since Base did not even have an F. Clearly, Deri ved's F is intended as a new method rather than an override of a base method, since no base method named F exists.

If **Base** adds an **F** and ships a new version, then the intent of a binary version of **Deri ved** is still clear—**Deri ved**'s **F** is semantically unrelated, and should not be treated as an override.

However, when **Deri ved** is recompiled, the meaning is unclear—the author of **Deri ved** might intend its **F** to override **Base**'s **F**, or to hide it. Since the intent is unclear, the compiler produces a warning, and by default makes **Deri ved**'s **F** hide **Base**'s **F**. This course of action duplicates the semantics for the case in which **Deri ved** is not recompiled. The warning that is generated alerts **Deri ved**'s author to the presence of the **F** method in **Base**.

If **Deri ved**'s **F** is semantically unrelated to **Base**'s **F**, then **Deri ved**'s author can express this intent—and, in effect, turn off the warning—by using the **new** keyword in the declaration of **F**.

```
// Author A
namespace A
{
   public class Base
                                // version 2
       public virtual void F() { // added in version 2
          System. Consol e. WriteLine("Base. F");
   }
}
// Author B
namespace B
   class Derived: A. Base
                                // version 2a: new
       new public virtual void F() {
   System. Console. WriteLine("Derived. F");
   }
}
```

On the other hand, **Deri ved**'s author might investigate further, and decide that **Deri ved**'s F should override **Base**'s F. This intent can be specified by using the **overri de** keyword, as shown below.

```
// Author A
namespace A
                                              // version 2
    public class Base
        \begin{array}{c} public\ virtual\ void\ F()\ \{\ //\ added\ in\ version\ 2\\ System.\ Console.\ WriteLine("Base.\ F"); \end{array}
    }
}
// Author B
namespace B
    class Derived: A. Base
                                      // versi on 2b: overri de
        public override void F() {
            base. F():
            System. Consol e. WriteLine("Derived. F");
        }
    }
```

The author of **Deri ved** has one other option, and that is to change the name of **F**, thus completely avoiding the name collision. Although this change would break source and binary compatibility for **Deri ved**, the importance of this compatibility varies depending on the scenario. If **Deri ved** is not exposed to other programs, then changing the name of **F** is likely a good idea, as it would improve the readability of the program—there would no longer be any confusion about the meaning of **F**.

#### 8.14 Extern aliases

By default types from all referenced assemblies and the current program are placed into a single namespace hierarchy. With only a single namespace hierarchy, it is not possible to reference types with the same fully

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

qualified name from different assemblies, a situation that arises when types are independently given the same name, or when a program needs to reference several versions of the same assembly. *Extern aliases* make it possible to create and reference separate namespace hierarchies in such situations.

Consider the following two assemblies:

A command-line compiler might allow compilation of this program with a command-line something like this:

```
csc /r: a1. dll /r: a2. dll test. cs
```

where the types contained in a1. dl l and a2. dl l are all placed in the *global namespace hierarchy*, and an error occurs because the type N. B exists in both assemblies. With extern aliases, it becomes possible to place the types contained in a1. dl l and a2. dl l into separate namespace hierarchies.

The following program declares and uses two extern aliases, X and Y, each of which represent the root of a distinct namespace hierarchy created from the types contained in one or more assemblies.

```
extern alias X;
extern alias Y;
class Test
{
    X:: N. A a;
    X:: N. B b1;
    Y:: N. B b2;
    Y:: N. C c;
}
```

The program declares the existence of the extern aliases X and Y, but the actual definitions of the aliases are external to the program. A command line compiler can enable the definition of the extern aliases X and Y such that the extern alias X is the root of a namespace hierarchy formed by the types in a1. dl l and Y is the root of a namespace hierarchy formed by the types in a2. dl l. A compiler might enable the above example with a command-line like:

```
csc /r: X=a1. dll /r: Y=a2. dll test. cs
```

The identically named N. B classes can now be referenced as X. N. B and Y. N. B, or, using the namespace alias qualifier, X: N. B and Y: N. B. An error occurs if a program declares an extern alias for which no external definition is provided.

An extern alias can include multiple assemblies, and a particular assembly can be included in multiple extern aliases. For example, given the assembly

```
// Assembly a3. dll:
namespace N
{
   public class D {}
   public class E {}
}
```

a command line like

```
csc /r: X=a1. dll /r: X=a3. dll /r: Y=a2. dll /r: Y=a3. dll test. cs
```

might define the extern alias X to be the root of a namespace hierarchy formed by the types in a1. dl 1 and a3. dl 1 and Y to be the root of a namespace hierarchy formed by the types in a2. dl 1 and a3. dl 1. Because of this definition, it is possible to refer to the class N. D in a3. dl 1 as both X:: N. D and Y:: N. D.

An assembly can be placed in the global namespace hierarchy even if it is also included in one or more extern aliases. For example, the command line

```
csc /r: a1. dll /r: X=a1. dll /r: Y=a2. dll test. cs
```

places the assembly a1. dl l in both the global namespace hierarchy and the namespace hierarchy rooted by the extern alias X. Consequently, the class N. A can be referred to as N. A or X:: N. A.

It is possible to ensure that a lookup always starts at the root of the global namespace hierarchy by using the identifier global with the namespace alias qualifier, such as global::System. IO. Stream.

A using directive may reference an extern alias that was defined in the same immediately enclosing namespace declaration or compilation unit. For example:

## 8.15 Attributes

C# is an imperative language, but like all imperative languages, it does have some declarative elements. For example, the accessibility of a method in a class is specified by declaring it public, protected, internal, protected internal, or private. C# generalizes this capability, so that programmers can invent new kinds of declarative information, attach this declarative information to various program entities, and retrieve this declarative information at run-time. Programs specify this additional declarative information by defining and using attributes (§24).

For instance, a framework might define a **Hel pAttri bute** attribute that can be placed on program elements such as classes and methods, enabling developers to provide a mapping from program elements to documentation for them. The example

```
using System;
[AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.All)]
public class HelpAttribute: Attribute
{
    public HelpAttribute(string url) {
        this.url = url;
    }
    public string Topic = null;
    private string url;
    public string Url {
        get { return url; }
    }
}
```

defines an attribute class named Hel pAttri bute, or Hel p for short, that has one positional parameter (string url) and one named parameter (string Topic). Positional parameters are defined by the formal parameters for public instance constructors of the attribute class, and named parameters are defined by public non-static read-write fields and properties of the attribute class.

The example

```
[Help("http://www.mycompany.com/.../Class1.htm")]
public class Class1
{
    [Help("http://www.mycompany.com/.../Class1.htm", Topic = "F")]
    public void F() {}
}
```

shows several uses of the attribute Hel p.

Attribute information for a given program element can be retrieved at run-time by using reflection support. The example

checks to see if Class1 has a Help attribute, and writes out the associated Url and Topic values if the attribute is present.

#### 8.16 Generics

C# allows classes, structs, interfaces, and methods to be parameterized by the types of data they store and manipulate. This feature is really a set of features known collectively as *generics*. C# generics will immediately be familiar to users of generics in Eiffel or Ada, or to users of templates in C++.

Many common classes and structs can be parameterized by the types of data being stored and manipulated—these are called *generic class declarations* and *generic struct declarations*, respectively. Similarly, many interfaces define contracts that can be parameterized by the types of data they handle—these are called *generic interface declarations*. In order to implement "generic algorithms," methods can also be parameterized by type; such methods are known as *generic methods*.

# 8.16.1 Why generics?

Without generics, programmers can store data of any type in variables of the base type object. To illustrate, let's create a simple Stack type with two actions, "Push" and "Pop". The Stack class stores its data in an array of object, and the Push and Pop methods use the object type to accept and return data, respectively:

```
public class Stack
{
    private object[] items = new object[100];
    public void Push(object data) {...}
    public object Pop() {...}
}
```

We can then push a value of any type, such as a **Customer** type, for example, onto the stack. However, when we wanted to retrieve that value, we would need to cast explicitly the result of the **Pop** method, an

**obj** ect, into a **Customer** type, which is tedious to write, and carries a performance penalty for run-time type checking:

```
Stack s = new Stack();
s. Push(new Customer());
Customer c = (Customer)s. Pop();
```

If we pass to the **Push** method a value type, such as an **i** nt, it will automatically be boxed. Similarly, if we want to retrieve an **i** nt from the stack, we would need to unbox explicitly the object type we obtain from the **Pop** method:

```
Stack s = new Stack();
s. Push(3);
int i = (int)s. Pop();
```

Such boxing and unboxing operations can affect performance.

Furthermore, in the implementation shown, it is not possible to enforce the kind of data placed in the stack. Indeed, we could create a stack and push a **Customer** type onto it. However, later, we could use the same stack and try to pop data off of it and cast it into an incompatible type:

```
Stack s = new Stack();
s. Push(new Customer());
Employee e = (Employee)s. Pop(); // runtime error
```

While the code above is an improper use of the **Stack** class we presumably intended to implement, and *should* be a compile-time error, it is actually valid code. However, at run-time, the application will fail because we have performed an invalid cast operation.

# 8.16.2 Creating and consuming generics

Generics provide a facility for creating high-performance data structures that are specialized by the compiler and/or execution engine based on the types that they use. These so-called *generic type declarations* are created so that their internal algorithms remain the same, yet the types of their external interface and internal data can vary based on user preference.

In order to minimize the learning curve for developers, generics are used in much the same way as C++ templates. Programmers can create classes and structures just as they normally have, and by using the angle bracket notation (< and >) they can specify type parameters. When the generic class declaration is used, each type parameter shall be replaced by a type argument that the user of the class supplies.

In the example below, we create a Stack generic class declaration where we specify a *type parameter*, called I temType, declared in angle brackets after the declaration. Rather than forcing conversions to and from object, instances of the generic Stack class will accept the type for which they are created and store data of that type without conversion. The type parameter I temType acts as a placeholder until an runtime type is specified at use. Note that I temType is used as the element type for the internal items array, the type for the parameter to the Push method, and the return type for the Pop method:

```
public class Stack<ItemType>
{
    private ItemType[] items = new ItemType[100];
    public void Push(ItemType data) {...}
    public ItemType Pop() {...}
}
```

When we use the generic class declaration **Stack**, as in the short example below, we can specify the runtime type to be used by the generic class. In this case, we instruct the **Stack** to use an **i** nt type by specifying it as a *type argument* using the angle brackets after the name:

```
Stack<int> s = new Stack<int>();
s. Push(3);
int x = s. Pop();
```

In so doing, we have created a new *constructed type*, Stack<i nt>, for which every I temType inside the declaration of Stack is replaced with the supplied type argument i nt. Indeed, when we create our new instance of Stack<i nt>, the native storage of the items array is now an int[] rather than object[],

providing substantial storage efficiency. Additionally, we have eliminated the boxing penalty associated with pushing an **i** nt onto the stack. Further, when we pop an item off the stack, we no longer need to cast it explicitly to the appropriate type because this particular kind of **Stack** class natively stores an **i** nt in its data structure.

If we wanted to store items other than an int into a Stack, we would have to create a different constructed type from Stack, specifying a new type argument. Suppose we had a simple Customer type and we wanted to use a Stack to store it. To do so, we simply use the Customer class as the type argument to Stack and easily reuse our code:

```
Stack<Customer> s = new Stack<Customer>();
s. Push(new Customer());
Customer c = s. Pop();
```

Of course, once we've created a **Stack** with a **Customer** type as its type argument, we are now limited to storing only **Customer** objects (or objects of a class derived from **Customer**). Generics provide strong typing, meaning we can no longer improperly store an integer into the stack, like so:

# 8.16.3 Multiple type parameters

Generic type declarations can have any number of type parameters. In our **Stack** example, we used only one type parameter. Suppose we created a simple **Di cti onary** generic class declaration that stored values alongside keys. We could define a generic version of a **Di cti onary** by declaring two type parameters, separated by commas within the angle brackets of the declaration:

```
public class Dictionary<KeyType, ElementType>
{
    public void Add(KeyType key, ElementType val) {...}
    public ElementType this[KeyType key] {...}
}
```

When we use **Di cti onary**, we need to supply two type arguments within the angle brackets. Then when we call the **Add** function or use the indexer, the compiler checks that we supplied the right types:

```
Dictionary<string, Customer> dict = new Dictionary<string, Customer>(); dict.Add("Peter", new Customer()); Customer c = dict["Peter"];
```

#### 8.16.4 Constraints

In many cases, we will do more than store data based on a given type parameter. Often, we will also want to use members of the type parameter to execute statements within our generic type declaration.

For example, suppose in the Add method of our Di cti onary we wanted to compare items using the CompareTo method of the supplied key, like so:

```
public class Dictionary<KeyType, ElementType>
{
   public void Add(KeyType key, ElementType val)
   {
        ...
        if (key.CompareTo(x) < 0) {...} // compile-time error
        ...
   }
}</pre>
```

Unfortunately, at compile-time the type parameter KeyType is, as expected, generic. As written, the compiler will assume that only the operations available to object, such as ToString, are available on the variable key of type KeyType. As a result, the compiler will display an error because the CompareTo method would not be found. However, we can cast the key variable to a type that does contain a CompareTo method, such as an I Comparable interface, allowing the program to compile:

```
public class Dictionary<KeyType, ElementType>
{
    public void Add(KeyType key, ElementType val)
    {
        if (((IComparable)key).CompareTo(x) < 0) {...}
        ...
    }
}</pre>
```

However, if we now construct a type from **Di cti onary** and supply a type argument, which does not implement **I Comparabl e**, we will encounter a run-time error, specifically an **I nval i dCastExcepti on**. Since one of the objectives of generics is to provide strong typing and to reduce the need for casts, a more elegant solution is needed.

We can supply an optional list of *constraints* for each type parameter. A constraint indicates a requirement that a type shall fulfill in order to be accepted as a type argument. (For example, it might have to implement a given interface or be derived from a given base class.) A constraint is declared using the word where, followed by a type parameter and colon (:), followed by a comma-separated list of constraints, which can include a class type, interface types, other type parameters, the reference type constraint "class", the value type constraint "struct", and the constructor constraint "new()".

In order to satisfy our need to use the CompareTo method inside Di cti onary, we can impose a constraint on KeyType, requiring any type passed as the first argument to Di cti onary to implement I Comparable, like so:

When compiled, this code will now be checked to ensure that each time we construct a **Di cti onary** type we are passing a first type argument that implements **I Comparabl e**. Further, we no longer have to cast variable **key** to **I Comparabl e** explicitly before calling the **CompareTo** method.

Constraints are most useful when they are used in the context of defining a *framework*, i.e. a collection of related classes, where it is advantageous to ensure that a number of types support some common signatures and/or base types. Constraints can be used to help define "generic algorithms" that plug together functionality provided by different types. This can also be achieved by subclassing and runtime polymorphism, but static, constrained polymorphism can, in many cases, result in more efficient code, more flexible specifications of generic algorithms, and more errors being caught at compile-time rather than runtime. However, constraints need to be used with care and taste. Types that do not implement the constraints will not easily be usable in conjunction with generic code.

For any given type parameter, we can specify any number of interfaces and type parameters as constraints, but no more than one class. Each constrained type parameter has a separate where clause. In the example below, the **KeyType** type parameter has two interface constraints, while the **El ementType** type parameter has one class type constraint:

```
public class Dictionary<KeyType, ElementType >
    where KeyType: IComparable, IEnumerable
    where ElementType: Customer
{
    public void Add(KeyType key, ElementType val)
    {
```

```
if (key.CompareTo(x) < 0) {...}
    ...
}</pre>
```

#### 8.16.5 Generic methods

In some cases, a type parameter is not needed for an entire class, but only when calling a particular method. Often, this occurs when creating a method that takes a generic type as a parameter. For example, when using the Stack described earlier, we might often find ourselves pushing multiple values in a row onto a stack, and decide to write a method to do so in a single call. If we are only using a single kind of Stack, say Stack<int>, writing such a method is easy:

```
static void PushMultiple(Stack<int> s, params int[] values) {
   foreach (int v in values) {
      s. Push(v);
   }
}
```

We can use this method to push multiple i nt values onto a Stack<i nt>:

```
Stack<int> s = new Stack<int>();
PushMultiple(s, 1, 2, 3, 4);
```

However, the method above only works with one particular constructed type: Stack<i nt>. While we can easily write similar code for other constructed Stack types, we would like to write a single method that can work with any Stack, no matter what type argument was used.

We do this by writing a *generic method*. Like a generic class declaration, a generic method is written with type parameters enclosed in angle brackets. With a generic method, the type parameters are written immediately after the method name, and can be used within the parameter list, return type, and body of the method. A generic **PushMul tiple** method would look like this:

Using this generic method, we can now push multiple items onto a **Stack** of any kind. Furthermore, the compiler type checking will ensure that the pushed items have the correct type for the kind of **Stack** being used. When calling a generic method, we place type arguments to the method in angle brackets. The generic **PushMultiple** method can be called this way:

```
Stack<int> s = new Stack<int>();
PushMultiple<int>(s, 1, 2, 3, 4);
```

This generic **PushMul tipl** e method is much better than the previous version, since it works on any kind of **Stack**. However, it appears to be less convenient to call, since the desired **ItemType** shall be supplied as a type argument to the method. In many cases, however, the compiler can deduce the correct type argument from the other arguments passed to the method, using a process called *type inferencing*. In the example above, since the first regular argument is of type **Stack**<int>, and the subsequent arguments are of type int, the compiler can reason that the type parameter shall also be int. Thus, the generic **PushMul tipl** e method can be called without specifying the type parameter:

```
 \begin{array}{lll} Stack < i & nt > s = new Stack < i & nt > (); \\ Push Multiple(s, 1, 2, 3, 4); \\ \end{array}
```

## 8.17 Anonymous methods

In C# code, a callback method is often invoked strictly through a delegate and not invoked directly. The purpose of such a method is obscured by the necessary separation of the method declaration from the delegate instantiation. In contrast, the body of an *anonymous method* is written "in-line" where the delegate is used, conveniently tying the method source code to the delegate instance. Besides this convenience,

anonymous methods have shared access to the local state of the containing function member. To achieve the same state sharing using named methods requires "lifting" local variables into fields of some object, further obscuring the source code.

An anonymous method is declared using an *anonymous-method-expression*:

```
anonymous-method-expression:
del egate anonymous-method-signature<sub>opt</sub> block
```

The optional *anonymous-method-signature* defines the names and types of the formal parameters for the anonymous method. If the *anonymous-method-signature* is omitted, the *block* does not use any formal parameters. The *block* defines the body of the anonymous method.

An *anonymous-method-expression* is classified as a special kind of value that references the anonymous method. This value has no intrinsic type, but is implicitly convertible to any delegate type that has parameter types and a return type compatible with the anonymous method. If an anonymous method is declared without a signature, any delegate parameter types that do not include an **out** parameter are compatible with the anonymous method. If an anonymous method is declared with a signature, only delegate parameter types that exactly match in type and order are compatible. The return type of a delegate is compatible with an anonymous method if the expressions associated with all **return** statements in the anonymous method can be implicitly converted to the return type of the delegate. A **voi** d delegate return type is compatible with an anonymous method that has no **return** statements, or only has **return** statements with no expression.

Local variables and value parameters (including this) whose scope contains an anonymous method declaration are called *outer variables* of the anonymous method.

In the absence of anonymous methods, the lifetime of a local variable or value parameter ends when execution of its scope ends, as described in §12.1.7. However, an anonymous method can access an outer variable instance after execution has left the scope of the outer variable. In this case, the lifetime of the outer variable extends until all referencing anonymous method delegates are eligible for garbage collection, as described in §10.9.

An anonymous method cannot access ref or out parameters of an outer scope. The reason for this is that the caller of a function member allocates the storage for such parameters, so their lifetimes cannot be extended arbitrarily by the called function member. Consequently, since the this value of an instance method of a struct is equivalent to a ref parameter, an anonymous method in a struct is not allowed to access this.

Semantically, an anonymous method contained in a class or struct T is considered a method of T. If T is a class type, the anonymous method is considered an instance method or static method according to whether the containing function member is instance or static, respectively. In contrast, if T is a struct type, the anonymous method is always considered static and, as indicated above, cannot access thi s.

The following code defines an Acti on delegate type and a Walk method. The Walk method invokes an action sequentially on nodes in a linked list until either the action returns false or the end of the list is encountered.

```
delegate bool Action(Node n);
static void Walk(Node n, Action a) {
   while (n != null && a(n)) n = n. Next;
}
```

The following invocation of Wal k employs an anonymous method to display the names of the nodes in a list:

```
Walk(list,
    delegate(Node n) {
        Console. WriteLine(n. Name);
        return true;
    }
);
```

This code could easily be implemented using a named method, but doing so would require separating the method declaration from the invocation, obscuring the purpose of the method and the result of the invocation:

```
Walk(list, new Action(DisplayNodeName));
...
bool DisplayNodeName(Node n) {
   Console. WriteLine(n. Name);
   return true;
}
```

The following code uses an outer local variable c to display the ordinal position of each node:

```
int c = 0;
Walk(list,
    delegate(Node n) {
        Console. WriteLine("{0}: {1}", ++c, n. Name);
        return true;
    }
);
Console. WriteLine("Processed {0} nodes", c);
```

Implementing this example using a named method would require "lifting" the outer local variable c into a field, which would further obscure the code, would introduce additional overhead in the type, and could introduce concurrency issues.

The following code uses an outer local variable c and an instance field max to restrict the number of items displayed:

Since F is an instance method of class A, the anonymous method is considered to be an instance method of A, and the field max is accessed through the anonymous method's this variable (which is the same as F's this variable). That is, max is a field, not an outer variable, and the anonymous method can access max just as any other instance method does.

Implementing this example in a safe way (considering the possibility of concurrency) without an anonymous method requires a significant amount of work and decreases clarity:

```
class A
{
   int max;
   ...
   void F(Node list) {
     NodeNameDisplayer nnd = new NodeNameDisplayer(this);
     nnd. c = 0;
```

```
Walk(list, new Action(nnd. DisplayNodeName));
      Console. WriteLine("Processed {0} nodes", nnd. c);
   }
   internal class NodeNameDisplayer
      A outer:
      internal int c;
      public NodeNameDisplayer(A outer) {
          this. outer = outer;
      bool DisplayNodeName(Node n) {
          if (c >= outer.max) {
   Console.WriteLine("... display truncated");
             return false:
          Consol e. WriteLine("\{0\}: \{1\}", ++c, n. Name);
          return true;
      }
   }
}
```

#### 8.18 Iterators

The foreach statement is used to iterate over the elements of an *enumerable* collection. In order to be enumerable, a collection shall have a parameterless GetEnumerator method that returns an *enumerator*. Generally, enumerators are difficult to implement, but the task is significantly simplified with iterators.

An *iterator* is a statement block that *yields* an ordered sequence of values. An iterator is distinguished from a normal statement block by the presence of one or more yi el d statements:

- The yi eld return statement produces the next value of the iteration.
- The yi el d break statement indicates that the iteration is complete.

An iterator can be used as the body of a function member as long as the return type of the function member is one of the *enumerator interfaces* or one of the *enumerable interfaces*:

- The enumerator interfaces are System. Collections. I Enumerator and types constructed from System. Collections. Generic. I Enumerator<T>.
- The enumerable interfaces are System. Collections. I Enumerable and types constructed from System. Collections. Generic. I Enumerable <T>.

It is important to understand that an iterator is not a kind of member, but is a means of implementing a function member. A member implemented via an iterator can be overridden or overloaded by other members, which may or may not be implemented with iterators.

The following Stack<T> class implements its GetEnumerator method using an iterator, which enumerates the elements of the stack in top-to-bottom order.

```
using System Collections Generic;
public class Stack<T>: IEnumerable<T>
{
    T[] items;
    int count;
    public void Push(T data) {...}
    public T Pop() {...}
    public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator() {
        for (int i = count - 1; i >= 0; --i) {
            yield return items[i];
        }
    }
}
```

The presence of the **GetEnumerator** method makes **Stack**<**T**> an enumerable type, allowing instances of **Stack**<**T**> to be used in a **foreach** statement. The following example pushes the values 0 through 9 onto an integer stack and then uses a **foreach** loop to display the values in top-to-bottom order.

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Stack<int> s = new Stack<int>();
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) s. Push(i);
        foreach (int i in s) Console. Write("{0} ", i);
        Console. WriteLine();
    }
}</pre>
```

The output of the example is:

```
9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
```

The foreach statement implicitly calls a collection's parameterless GetEnumerator method to obtain an enumerator. There can only be one such parameterless GetEnumerator method defined by a collection, yet it is often appropriate to have multiple ways of enumerating, and ways of controlling the enumeration through parameters. In such cases, a collection can use iterators to implement properties or methods that return one of the enumerable interfaces. For example, Stack<T> might introduce two new properties, TopToBottom and BottomToTop, of type I Enumerable e<T>:

```
using System. Collections. Generic;
public class Stack<T>: IEnumerable<T>
   T[] items;
   int count;
   public void Push(T data) {...}
   public T Pop() {...}
   public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator() {
   for (int i = count - 1; i >= 0; --i) {
          yield return items[i];
       }
   }
   public IEnumerable<T> TopToBottom {
       get {
          return this;
       }
   }
   public IEnumerable<T> BottomToTop {
       get {
          for (int i = 0; i < count; i++) {
              yield return items[i];
       }
   }
```

The get accessor for the TopToBottom property just returns this since the stack itself is an enumerable. The BottomToTop property returns an enumerable implemented with an iterator. The following example shows how the properties can be used to enumerate stack elements in either order:

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Stack<int> s = new Stack<int>();
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) s. Push(i);</pre>
```

```
foreach (int i in s. TopToBottom) Console. Write("{0} ", i);
      Consol e. WriteLine();
      foreach (int i in s. BottomToTop) Console. Write("{0} ", i);
      Consol e. Wri teLi ne();
}
```

Of course, these properties can be used outside of a foreach statement as well. The following example passes the results of invoking the properties to a separate Pri nt method. The example also shows an iterator used as the body of a **FromToBy** method that takes parameters:

```
using System;
using System Collections. Generic;
class Test
   static void Print(IEnumerable<int> collection) {
  foreach (int i in collection) Console.Write("{0} ", i);
        Consol e. WriteLine();
    static IEnumerable<int> FromToBy(int from, int to, int by) {
        for (int i = from; i \le to; i += by) {
            yield return i;
    }
    static void Main() {
       Stack<int> s = new Stack<int>();
for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) s. Push(i);
Print(s. TopToBottom);
        Print(s. BottomToTop)
        Print(FromToBy(10, 20, 2));
}
```

The output of the example is:

```
9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 12 14 16 18 20
```

The generic and non-generic enumerable interfaces contain a single member, a GetEnumerator method that takes no arguments and returns an enumerator interface. An enumerable acts as an *enumerator factory*. Properly implemented enumerables generate independent enumerators each time their Get Enumerator method is called. Assuming the internal state of the enumerable has not changed between two calls to **GetEnumerator**, the two enumerators returned should produce the same set of values in the same order. This should hold even if the lifetimes of the enumerators overlap as in the following code sample:

```
using System;
using System Collections. Generic;
class Test
   static IEnumerable<int> FromTo(int from, int to) {
       while (from <= to) yield return from++;</pre>
   static void Main() {
   IEnumerable<int> e = FromTo(1, 10);
       foreach (int x in e) {
           foreach (int y in e) {
   Console. Write("{0,3} ", x * y);
           Consol e. WriteLine();
       }
   }
}
```

The code above prints a simple multiplication table of the integers 1 through 10. Note that the FromTo method is invoked only once to generate the enumerable e. However, e. GetEnumerator() is invoked multiple times (by the foreach statements) to generate multiple equivalent enumerators. These enumerators all encapsulate the iterator code specified in the declaration of FromTo. Note that the iterator code modifies the from parameter. Nevertheless, the enumerators act independently because each enumerator is given its own copy of the from and to parameters. The sharing of transient state between enumerators is one of several common subtle flaws that should be avoided when implementing enumerables and enumerators. Iterators are designed to help avoid these problems and to implement robust enumerables and enumerators in a simple intuitive way.

## 8.19 Nullable types

Support for nullability across all types, including value types, is essential when interacting with databases; yet, historically, general-purpose programming languages have provided little or no support in this area. Many approaches exist for handling nulls and value types without direct language support, but all have shortcomings. For example, one approach is to use a "special" value (such as -1 for integers) to indicate null, but this only works when an unused value can be identified. Another approach is to maintain Boolean null indicators in separate fields or variables, but this doesn't work well for parameters and return values. A third approach is to use a set of user-defined nullable types, but this only works for a closed set of types. C#'s *nullable types* solve this long-standing problem by providing complete and integrated support for nullable forms of all value types.

Nullable types are constructed using the? type modifier. For example, int? is the nullable form of the predefined type int. A nullable type's underlying type must be a non-nullable value type.

A nullable type is a structure that combines a value of the underlying type with a Boolean null indicator. An instance of a nullable type has two public read-only properties: <code>HasVal ue</code>, of type bool, and <code>Val ue</code>, of the nullable type's underlying type. <code>HasVal ue</code> is true for a non-null instance and false for a null instance. When <code>HasVal ue</code> is true, the <code>Val ue</code> property returns the contained value. When <code>HasVal ue</code> is false, an attempt to access the <code>Val ue</code> property throws an exception.

An implicit conversion exists from any non-nullable value type to a nullable form of that type. Furthermore, an implicit conversion exists from the nul 1 type (§11.2.7) to any nullable type. In the example

```
int? x = 123;
int? y = null;
if (x. HasValue) Console. WriteLine(x. Value);
if (y. HasValue) Console. WriteLine(y. Value);
```

the i nt value 123 and the null literal are implicitly converted to the nullable type i nt?. The example outputs 123 for x, but the second Consol e. WriteLi ne isn't executed because y. HasValue is false.

*Nullable conversions* and *lifted conversions* permit predefined and user-defined conversions that operate on non-nullable value types also to be used with nullable forms of those types. Likewise, *lifted operators* permit predefined and user-defined operators that work for non-nullable value types also to work for nullable forms of those types.

For every predefined conversion from a non-nullable value type S to a non-nullable value type T, a predefined nullable conversion automatically exists from S? to T?. This nullable conversion is a *null propagating* form of the underlying conversion: It converts a null source value directly to a null target value, but otherwise performs the underlying non-nullable conversion. Nullable conversions are furthermore provided from S to T? and from S? to T, the latter as an explicit conversion that throws an exception if the source value is null.

Some examples of nullable conversions are shown in the following.

A user-defined conversion operator has a lifted form when the source and target types are both non-nullable value types. A? modifier is added to the source and target types to create the lifted form. Similar to predefined nullable conversions, lifted conversion operators propagate nulls.

A non-comparison operator has a lifted form when the operand types and result type are all non-nullable value types. For non-comparison operators, a ? modifier is added to each operand type and the result type to create the lifted form. For example, the lifted form of the predefined + operator that takes two i nt operands and returns an i nt, is an operator that takes two i nt? operands and returns an i nt?. Similar to lifted conversions, lifted non-comparison operators are null-propagating: If either operand of a lifted operator is null, the result is null.

The following example uses a lifted + operator to add two i nt? values:

```
int? x = GetNullableInt();
int? y = GetNullableInt();
int? z = x + y;
```

the assignment to z effectively corresponds to:

```
int? z = x. HasValue && y. HasValue ? x. Value + y. Value : (int?) null;
```

Because an implicit conversion exists from a non-nullable value type to its nullable form, a lifted operator is applicable when just one operand is of a nullable type. The following example uses the same lifted + operator as the example above:

```
int? x = GetNullableInt();
int? y = x + 1;
```

If x is null, y is assigned null. Otherwise, y is assigned the value of x plus one.

The null-propagating semantics of C#'s nullable conversions, lifted conversions, and lifted non-comparison operators are very similar to the corresponding conversions and operators in SQL. However, C#'s lifted comparison operators produce regular Boolean results rather than introducing SQL's three-valued Boolean logic.

A comparison operator (==, !=, <, >, <=, >=) has a lifted form when the operand types are both non-nullable value types and the result type is **bool**. The lifted form of a comparison operator is formed by adding a ? modifier to each operand type (but not to the result type). Lifted forms of the == and != operators consider two null values equal, and a null value unequal to a non-null value. Lifted forms of the <, >, <=, and >= operators return false if one or both operands are null.

When one of the operands of the == or != operator has the nul 1 type (§11.2.7), the other operand may be of any nullable type regardless of whether the underlying value type actually declares that operator. In cases where no operator == or != implementation is available, a check of the operand's HasVal ue property is substituted. The effect of this rule is that statements such as

```
if (x == null) Console.WriteLine("x is null");
if (x != null) Console.WriteLine("x is non-null");
```

are permitted for an x of any nullable type or reference type, thus providing a common way of performing null checks for all types that can be null.

A new *null coalescing operator*, ??, is provided. The result of a ?? b is a if a is non-null; otherwise, the result is b. Intuitively, b supplies the value to use when a is null.

When a is of a nullable type and b is of a non-nullable type, a ?? b returns a non-nullable value, provided the appropriate implicit conversions exist between the operand types. In the example

```
int? x = GetNullableInt();
int? y = GetNullableInt();
int? z = x ?? y;
int i = z ?? -1;
```

the type of x ?? y is i nt?, but the type of z ?? -1 is i nt. The latter operation is particularly convenient because it removes the ? from the type and at the same time supplies the default value to use in the null case.

# C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

The null coalescing operator also works for reference types. The example

```
string s = GetStringValue();
Console. WriteLine(s ?? "Unspecified");
```

outputs the value of s, or outputs Unspeci fied if s is null.

End of informative text.

# 9. Lexical structure

# 9.1 Programs

A C# program consists of one or more source files, known formally as compilation units (§16.1). A source file is an ordered sequence of Unicode characters. Source files typically have a one-to-one correspondence with files in a file system, but this correspondence is not required.

Conceptually speaking, a program is compiled using three steps:

- 1. Transformation, which converts a file from a particular character repertoire and encoding scheme into a sequence of Unicode characters.
- 2. Lexical analysis, which translates a stream of Unicode input characters into a stream of tokens.
- 3. Syntactic analysis, which translates the stream of tokens into executable code.

Conforming implementations shall accept Unicode source files encoded with the UTF-8 encoding form (as defined by the Unicode standard), and transform them into a sequence of Unicode characters. Implementations can choose to accept and transform additional character encoding schemes (such as UTF-16, UTF-32, or non-Unicode character mappings).

[Note: It is beyond the scope of this standard to define how a file using a character representation other than Unicode might be transformed into a sequence of Unicode characters. During such transformation, however, it is recommended that the usual line-separating character (or sequence) in the other character set be translated to the two-character sequence consisting of the Unicode carriage-return character followed by Unicode line-feed character. For the most part this transformation will have no visible effects; however, it will affect the interpretation of verbatim string literal tokens (§9.4.4.5). The purpose of this recommendation is to allow a verbatim string literal to produce the same character sequence when its source file is moved between systems that support differing non-Unicode character sets, in particular, those using differing character sequences for line-separation. end note]

# 9.2 Grammars

This specification presents the syntax of the C# programming language using two grammars. The *lexical grammar* (§9.2.1) defines how Unicode characters are combined to form line terminators, white space, comments, tokens, and pre-processing directives. The *syntactic grammar* (§9.2.2) defines how the tokens resulting from the lexical grammar are combined to form C# programs.

#### 9.2.1 Lexical grammar

The lexical grammar of C# is presented in §9.3, §9.4, and §9.5. The terminal symbols of the lexical grammar are the characters of the Unicode character set, and the lexical grammar specifies how characters are combined to form tokens (§9.4), white space (§9.3.3), comments (§9.3.2), and pre-processing directives (§9.5).

Every source file in a C# program shall conform to the *input* production of the lexical grammar (§9.3).

## 9.2.2 Syntactic grammar

The syntactic grammar of C# is presented in the clauses, subclauses, and appendices that follow this subclause. The terminal symbols of the syntactic grammar are the tokens defined by the lexical grammar, and the syntactic grammar specifies how tokens are combined to form C# programs.

Every source file in a C# program shall conform to the *compilation-unit* production (§16.1) of the syntactic grammar.

## 9.2.3 Grammar ambiguities

The productions for *simple-name* (§14.5.2) and *member-access* (§14.5.4) can give rise to ambiguities in the grammar for expressions. [*Example*: The statement:

$$F(G < A, B > (7))$$
:

could be interpreted as a call to F with two arguments, G < A and B > (7). Alternatively, it could be interpreted as a call to F with one argument, which is a call to a generic method G with two type arguments and one regular argument. *end example*]

If a sequence of tokens can be parsed (in context) as a *simple-name* (§14.5.2), *member-access* (§14.5.4), or *pointer-member-access* (§27.5.2) ending with a *type-argument-list* (§25.5.1), the token immediately following the closing > token is examined. If it is one of

```
( ) ] : ; , . ? == !=
```

then the *type-argument-list* is retained as part of the *simple-name*, *member-access* or *pointer-member-access* and any other possible parse of the sequence of tokens is discarded. Otherwise, the *type-argument-list* is not considered part of the *simple-name*, *member-access* or *pointer-member-access*, even if there is no other possible parse of the sequence of tokens. [*Note*: These rules are not applied when parsing a *type-argument-list* in a *namespace-or-type-name* (§10.8). *end note*] [*Example*: The statement:

```
F(G < A, B > (7));
```

will, according to this rule, be interpreted as a call to F with one argument, which is a call to a generic method G with two type arguments and one regular argument. The statements

```
\begin{array}{ll} F(\,\text{G}{<}\text{A}, & \text{B}{>}7)\,; \\ F(\,\text{G}{<}\text{A}, & \text{B}{>}7)\,; \end{array}
```

will each be interpreted as a call to F with two arguments. The statement

```
x = F < A > + y;
```

will be interpreted as a less-than operator, greater-than operator and unary-plus operator, as if the statement had been written  $\mathbf{x}=(\mathbf{F}<\mathbf{A})>(+\mathbf{y})$ , instead of as a *simple-name* with a *type-argument-list* followed by a binary-plus operator. In the statement

$$x = y is C < T > + z;$$

the tokens C<T> are interpreted as a *namespace-or-type-name* with a *type-argument-list. end example*]

#### 9.3 Lexical analysis

The *input* production defines the lexical structure of a C# source file. Each source file in a C# program shall conform to this lexical grammar production.

```
input::
    input-section<sub>opt</sub>

input-section::
    input-section-part
    input-section input-section-part

input-section-part::
    input-elements<sub>opt</sub> new-line
    pp-directive

input-elements::
    input-element
    input-element
```

```
input-element::
whitespace
comment
token
```

Five basic elements make up the lexical structure of a C# source file: Line terminators (§9.3.1), white space (§9.3.3), comments (§9.3.2), tokens (§9.4), and pre-processing directives (§9.5). Of these basic elements, only tokens are significant in the syntactic grammar of a C# program (§9.2.2), except in the case of a > token being combined with another token to form a single operator (§9.4.5).

The lexical processing of a C# source file consists of reducing the file into a sequence of tokens which becomes the input to the syntactic analysis. Line terminators, white space, and comments can serve to separate tokens, and pre-processing directives can cause sections of the source file to be skipped, but otherwise these lexical elements have no impact on the syntactic structure of a C# program.

When several lexical grammar productions match a sequence of characters in a source file, the lexical processing always forms the longest possible lexical element. [*Example*: The character sequence // is processed as the beginning of a single-line comment because that lexical element is longer than a single / token. *end example*]

#### 9.3.1 Line terminators

Line terminators divide the characters of a C# source file into lines.

```
new-line::
Carriage return character (U+000D)
Line feed character (U+000A)
Carriage return character (U+000D) followed by line feed character (U+000A)
Next line character (U+2085)
Line separator character (U+2028)
Paragraph separator character (U+2029)
```

For compatibility with source code editing tools that add end-of-file markers, and to enable a source file to be viewed as a sequence of properly terminated lines, the following transformations are applied, in order, to every source file in a C# program:

- If the last character of the source file is a Control-Z character (U+001A), this character is deleted.
- A carriage-return character (U+000D) is added to the end of the source file if that source file is non-empty and if the last character of the source file is not a carriage return (U+000D), a line feed (U+000A), a next line character (U+2085), a line separator (U+2028), or a paragraph separator (U+2029). [Note: The additional carriage-return allows a program to end in a pp-directive (§9.5) that does not have a terminating new-line. end note]

#### 9.3.2 Comments

Two forms of comments are supported: delimited comments and single-line comments.

A *delimited comment* begins with the characters /\* and ends with the characters \*/. Delimited comments can occupy a portion of a line, a single line, or multiple lines. [*Example*: The example

includes a delimited comment. end example]

A *single-line comment* begins with the characters // and extends to the end of the line. [*Example*: The example

```
// Hello, world program
                This program writes "hello, world" to the console
        //
        class Hello // any name will do for this class
            static\ voi\ d\ Mai\ n()\ \{\ //\ this\ method\ must\ be\ named\ "Mai\ n"\ System.\ Console.\ WriteLine("hello,\ world");
        }
shows several single-line comments. end example]
        comment::
            single-line-comment
            delimited-comment
        single-line-comment::
            // input-characters<sub>ont</sub>
        input-characters::
            input-character
            input-characters input-character
        input-character::
            Any Unicode character except a new-line-character
        new-line-character::
            Carriage return character (U+000D)
            Line feed character (U+000A)
            Next line character (U+0085)
            Line separator character (U+2028)
            Paragraph separator character (U+2029)
        delimited-comment::
            /* delimited-comment-text<sub>opt</sub> asterisks /
        delimited-comment-text::
            delimited-comment-section
            delimited-comment-text delimited-comment-section
        delimited-comment-section::
            not-asterisk
            asterisks not-slash
        asterisks::
            asterisks *
        not-asterisk::
            Any Unicode character except *
        not-slash::
            Any Unicode character except /
```

Comments do not nest. The character sequences /\* and \*/ have no special meaning within a single-line comment, and the character sequences // and /\* have no special meaning within a delimited comment.

Comments are not processed within character and string literals.

## 9.3.3 White space

White space is defined as any character with Unicode class Zs (which includes the space character) as well as the horizontal tab character, the vertical tab character, and the form feed character.

```
whitespace::
    whitespace-characters

whitespace-characters::
    whitespace-character
    whitespace-characters whitespace-character

whitespace-character::
    Any character with Unicode class Zs
    Horizontal tab character (U+0009)
    Vertical tab character (U+000B)
    Form feed character (U+000C)
```

#### 9.4 Tokens

There are several kinds of *tokens*: identifiers, keywords, literals, operators, and punctuators. White space and comments are not tokens, though they act as separators for tokens.

```
token::

identifier

keyword

integer-literal

real-literal

character-literal

string-literal

operator-or-punctuator
```

#### 9.4.1 Unicode escape sequences

A Unicode escape sequence represents a Unicode character. Unicode escape sequences are processed in identifiers (§9.4.2), regular string literals (§9.4.4.5), and character literals (§9.4.4.4). A Unicode character escape is not processed in any other location (for example, to form an operator, punctuator, or keyword).

```
unicode-escape-sequence::
\u hex-digit hex-dig
```

A Unicode escape sequence represents the single Unicode character formed by the hexadecimal number following the "\u" or "\u" characters. Since C# uses a 16-bit encoding of Unicode characters in characters and string values, a Unicode code point in the range U+10000 to U+10FFFF is represented using two Unicode surrogate code units. Unicode code points above 0x10FFFF are invalid and are not supported.

Multiple translations are not performed. For instance, the string literal "\u005Cu005C" is equivalent to "\u005C" rather than "\". [*Note*: The Unicode value \u005C is the character "\". end note]

shows several uses of \u0066, which is the escape sequence for the letter "f". The program is equivalent to

```
class Class1
{
    static void Test(bool f) {
        char c = 'f';
        if (f)
            System. Console. WriteLine(c. ToString());
    }
}
end example]
```

## 9.4.2 Identifiers

The rules for identifiers given in this subclause correspond exactly to those recommended by the Unicode Standard Annex 15 except that underscore is allowed as an initial character (as is traditional in the C programming language), Unicode escape sequences are permitted in identifiers, and the "@" character is allowed as a prefix to enable keywords to be used as identifiers.

```
identifier::
    available-identifier
    @ identifier-or-keyword
available-identifier::
    An identifier-or-keyword that is not a keyword
identifier-or-keyword::
    identifier-start-character identifier-part-characters<sub>opt</sub>
identifier-start-character::
    letter-character
    _ (the underscore character U+005F)
identifier-part-characters::
    identifier-part-character
    identifier-part-characters identifier-part-character
identifier-part-character::
    letter-character
    decimal-digit-character
    connecting-character
    combining-character
    formatting-character
letter-character::
    A Unicode character of classes Lu, Ll, Lt, Lm, Lo, or Nl
    A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of classes Lu, Ll, Lt, Lm, Lo, or Nl
combining-character::
    A Unicode character of classes Mn or Mc
    A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of classes Mn or Mc
decimal-digit-character::
    A Unicode character of the class Nd
    A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of the class Nd
connecting-character::
    A Unicode character of the class Pc
    A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of the class Pc
formatting-character::
    A Unicode character of the class Cf
    A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of the class Cf
```

[*Note*: For information on the Unicode character classes mentioned above, see *The Unicode Standard*, *Verson 3.0*, §4.5. *end note*]

[Example: Examples of valid identifiers include "i denti fi er1", "\_i denti fi er2", and "@i f". end example]

An identifier in a conforming program shall be in the canonical format defined by Unicode Normalization Form C, as defined by Unicode Standard Annex 15. The behavior when encountering an identifier not in Normalization Form C is implementation-defined; however, a diagnostic is not required.

The prefix "@" enables the use of keywords as identifiers, which is useful when interfacing with other programming languages. The character @ is not actually part of the identifier, so the identifier might be seen in other languages as a normal identifier, without the prefix. An identifier with an @ prefix is called a *verbatim identifier*. [Note: Use of the @ prefix for identifiers that are not keywords is permitted, but strongly discouraged as a matter of style. *end note*]

[Example: The example:

```
class @class
{
   public static void @static(bool @bool) {
      if (@bool)
          System Console WriteLine("true");
      else
          System Console WriteLine("false");
   }
}
class Class1
{
   static void M() {
      cl\u0061ss.st\u0061tic(true);
   }
}
```

defines a class named "class" with a static method named "static" that takes a parameter named "bool". Note that since Unicode escapes are not permitted in keywords, the token "cl\u0061ss" is an identifier, and is the same identifier as "@class". end example

Two identifiers are considered the same if they are identical after the following transformations are applied, in order:

- The prefix "@", if used, is removed.
- Each unicode-escape-sequence is transformed into its corresponding Unicode character.
- Any *formatting-characters* are removed.

Identifiers containing two consecutive underscore characters (U+005F) are reserved for use by the implementation; however, no diagnostic is required if such an identifier is defined. [*Note*: For example, an implementation might provide extended keywords that begin with two underscores. *end note*]

## 9.4.3 Keywords

A *keyword* is an identifier-like sequence of characters that is reserved, and cannot be used as an identifier except when prefaced by the @ character.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

<i>keyword::</i> one of				
abstract	as	base	bool	break
byte	case	catch	char	checked
class	const	conti nue	deci mal	defaul t
del egate	do	doubl e	el se	enum
event	expl i ci t	extern	false	finally
fixed	float	for	foreach	goto
i f	implicit	i n	i nt	interface
internal	is	lock	l ong	namespace
new	nul l	obj ect	operator	out
overri de	params	pri vate	protected	publ i c
readonl y	ref	return	sbyte	seal ed
short	si zeof	stackalloc	stati c	string
struct	swi tch	thi s	throw	true
try	typeof	ui nt	ul ong	unchecked
unsafe	ushort	usi ng	vi rtual	voi d
vol ati l e	whi l e			

The following identifiers have special meaning in the syntactic grammar, but they are not keywords: add (§17.7), alias (§16.3), get (§17.6.2), global (§16.7), partial (§17.1.4), remove (§17.7), set (§17.6.2), value (§17.6.2, §17.7.2), where (§25.7), and yield (§15.14). For convenience and clarity, these identifiers appear as terminals in the syntactic grammar; however, they are identifiers. [*Note*: As a result, unlike keywords, these identifiers can be written with a @ prefix and can contain *unicode-escape-sequences*. *end note*]

#### 9.4.4 Literals

A *literal* (§14.5.1) is a source code representation of a value.

## 9.4.4.1 Boolean literals

There are two Boolean literal values: true and fal se.

boolean-literal::
true
fal se

The type of a boolean-literal is bool.

#### 9.4.4.2 Integer literals

Integer literals are used to write values of types int, uint, long, and ulong. Integer literals have two possible forms: decimal and hexadecimal.

```
integer-literal::
    decimal-integer-literal
hexadecimal-integer-literal:
decimal-integer-literal::
    decimal-digits integer-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>

decimal-digits::
    decimal-digit
decimal-digits decimal-digit

decimal-digit:: one of
    0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

integer-type-suffix:: one of
    U u L 1 UL Ul uL ul LU Lu 1U lu
```

```
hexadecimal-integer-literal::

0x hex-digits integer-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
0X hex-digits integer-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>

hex-digits::

bex-digit

bex-digits hex-digit

hex-digit:: one of

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F a b c d e f
```

The type of an integer literal is determined as follows:

- If the literal has no suffix, it has the first of these types in which its value can be represented: int, uint, long, ulong.
- If the literal is suffixed by U or u, it has the first of these types in which its value can be represented: ui nt, ul ong.
- If the literal is suffixed by L or 1, it has the first of these types in which its value can be represented: 1 ong, ul ong.
- If the literal is suffixed by UL, Ul, uL, ul, LU, Lu, lU, or lu, it is of type ul ong.

If the value represented by an integer literal is outside the range of the **ul ong** type, a compile-time error occurs.

[Note: As a matter of style, it is suggested that "L" be used instead of "1" when writing literals of type l ong, since it is easy to confuse the letter "1" with the digit "1". end note]

To permit the smallest possible i nt and l ong values to be written as decimal integer literals, the following two rules exist:

- When a *decimal-integer-literal* with the value 2147483648 (2<sup>31</sup>) and no *integer-type-suffix* appears as the token immediately following a unary minus operator token (§14.6.2), the result (of both tokens) is a constant of type i nt with the value -2147483648 (-2<sup>31</sup>). In all other situations, such a *decimal-integer-literal* is of type ui nt.
- When a *decimal-integer-literal* with the value 9223372036854775808 (2<sup>63</sup>) and no *integer-type-suffix* or the *integer-type-suffix* L or l appears as the token immediately following a unary minus operator token (§14.6.2), the result (of both tokens) is a constant of type l ong with the value -9223372036854775808 (-2<sup>63</sup>). In all other situations, such a *decimal-integer-literal* is of type ul ong.

#### 9.4.4.3 Real literals

Real literals are used to write values of types float, double, and decimal.

```
real-literal::

decimal-digits . decimal-digits exponent-part<sub>opt</sub> real-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
. decimal-digits exponent-part real-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
decimal-digits exponent-part real-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
decimal-digits real-type-suffix

exponent-part::

e sign<sub>opt</sub> decimal-digits
E sign<sub>opt</sub> decimal-digits
sign:: one of
+ -

real-type-suffix:: one of
F f D d M m
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

If no *real-type-suffix* is specified, the type of the real literal is **doubl** e. Otherwise, the *real-type-suffix* determines the type of the real literal, as follows:

- A real literal suffixed by F or f is of type float. [Example: The literals 1f, 1. 5f, 1e10f, and 123. 456F are all of type float. end example]
- A real literal suffixed by **D** or **d** is of type **doubl e**. [*Example*: The literals **1d**, **1**. **5d**, **1e10d**, and **123**. **456D** are all of type **doubl e**. *end example*]
- A real literal suffixed by Mor m is of type deci mal. [Example: The literals 1m, 1. 5m, 1e10m, and 123. 456M are all of type deci mal. end example] This literal is converted to a deci mal value by taking the exact value, and, if necessary, rounding to the nearest representable value using banker's rounding (§11.1.7). Any scale apparent in the literal is preserved unless the value is rounded. [Note: Hence, the literal 2. 900m will be parsed to form the deci mal with sign 0, coefficient 2900, and scale 3. end note]

If the specified literal is too large to be represented in the indicated type, a compile-time error occurs. [*Note*: In particular, a *real-literal* will never produce a floating-point infinity. A non-zero *real-literal* may, however, be rounded to zero. *end note*]

The value of a real literal having type float or double is determined by using the IEC 60559 "round to nearest" mode.

#### 9.4.4.4 Character literals

A character literal represents a single character, and usually consists of a character in quotes, as in 'a'.

[*Note*: A character that follows a backslash character (\) in a *character* shall be one of the following characters: ', ", \, 0, a, b, f, n, r, t, u, U, x, v. Otherwise, a compile-time error occurs. *end note*]

A hexadecimal escape sequence represents a single Unicode character, with the value formed by the hexadecimal number following "\x".

If the value represented by a character literal is greater than U+FFFF, a compile-time error occurs.

A Unicode character escape sequence (§9.4.1) in a character literal shall be in the range U+0000 to U+FFFF.

A simple escape sequence represents a Unicode character encoding, as described in the table below.

Escape sequence	Character name	Unicode code point	
\'	Single quote	0x0027	
\"	Double quote	0x0022	
\\	Backslash	0x005C	
\0	Null	0x0000	
∖a	Alert	0x0007	
\b	Backspace	0x0008	
\f	Form feed	0x000C	
\n	New line	0x000A	
\r	Carriage return	0x000D	
\t	Horizontal tab	0x0009	
\v	Vertical tab	0x000B	

The type of a *character-literal* is char.

## 9.4.4.5 String literals

C# supports two forms of string literals: *regular string literals* and *verbatim string literals*. A regular string literal consists of zero or more characters enclosed in double quotes, as in "hello, world", and can include both simple escape sequences (such as \t for the tab character), and hexadecimal and Unicode escape sequences.

A verbatim string literal consists of an @ character followed by a double-quote character, zero or more characters, and a closing double-quote character. [Example: A simple example is @"hello, world". end example] In a verbatim string literal, the characters between the delimiters are interpreted verbatim, with the only exception being a quote-escape-sequence, which represents one double-quote character. In particular, simple escape sequences, and hexadecimal and Unicode escape sequences are not processed in verbatim string literals. A verbatim string literal can span multiple lines.

```
string-literal::
    regular-string-literal
    verbatim-string-literal
regular-string-literal::
    " regular-string-literal-characters<sub>opt</sub> "
regular-string-literal-characters::
    regular-string-literal-character
    regular-string-literal-characters regular-string-literal-character
regular-string-literal-character::
    single-regular-string-literal-character
    simple-escape-sequence
    hexadecimal-escape-sequence
    unicode-escape-sequence
single-regular-string-literal-character::
    Any character except " (U+0022), \ (U+005C), and new-line-character
verbatim-string-literal::
    @" verbatim-string-literal-characters<sub>opt</sub> "
```

```
verbatim-string-literal-characters::
    verbatim-string-literal-character
    verbatim-string-literal-characters verbatim-string-literal-character

verbatim-string-literal-character::
    single-verbatim-string-literal-character
    quote-escape-sequence

single-verbatim-string-literal-character::
    Any character except "

quote-escape-sequence::
```

[Note: A character that follows a backslash character ( $\setminus$ ) in a regular-string-literal-character shall be one of the following characters: ', ",  $\setminus$ , 0, a, b, f, n, r, t, u, U, x, v. Otherwise, a compile-time error occurs. end note]

[Example: The example

shows a variety of string literals. The last string literal, **j**, is a verbatim string literal that spans multiple lines. The characters between the quotation marks, including white space such as new line characters, are preserved verbatim, and each pair of double-quote characters is replaced by one such character. *end example*]

[Note: Since a hexadecimal escape sequence can have a variable number of hex digits, the string literal "\x123" contains a single character with hex value 123. To create a string containing the character with hex value 12 followed by the character 3, one could write "\x00123" or "\x12" + "3" instead. end note]

The type of a string-literal is string.

Each string literal does not necessarily result in a new string instance. When two or more string literals that are equivalent according to the string equality operator (§14.9.7), appear in the same assembly, these string literals refer to the same string instance. [Example: For instance, the output produced by

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
       object a = "hello";
       object b = "hello";
       System. Console. WriteLine(a == b);
    }
}
```

is True because the two literals refer to the same string instance. *end example*]

#### 9.4.4.6 The null literal

```
null-literal::
```

The type of a *null-literal* is the null type (§11.2.7).

## 9.4.5 Operators and punctuators

```
operator-or-punctuator:: one of
                                    (
    {
            }
                                    %
                                                                    !
                            /
                                            &
    +
                            ?
                                    ??
                                                                             &&
                                                    ++
    - >
                                                                    /=
                    ! =
                                            +=
                                                    - =
                                                                             %=
                            <=
                                    >=
    &=
                                    <<=
right-shift::
    > >
right-shift-assignment::
```

right-shift is made up of the two tokens > and >. Similarly, right-shift-assignment is made up of the two tokens > and >=. Unlike other productions in the syntactic grammar, no characters of any kind (not even whitespace) are allowed between the two tokens in each of these productions. [Note: Prior to the addition of generics to C#, >> and >>= were both single tokens. However, the syntax for generics uses the < and > characters to delimit type parameters and type arguments. It is often desirable to use nested constructed types, such as List<Dictionary<string, int>>. Rather than requiring the programmer to separate the > and > by a space, the definition of the two operator-or-punctuators was changed. end note]

## 9.5 Pre-processing directives

The pre-processing directives provide the ability to skip conditionally sections of source files, to report error and warning conditions, and to delineate distinct regions of source code. [*Note*: The term "pre-processing directives" is used only for consistency with the C and C++ programming languages. In C#, there is no separate pre-processing step; pre-processing directives are processed as part of the lexical analysis phase. *end note*]

```
pp-directive::
    pp-declaration
    pp-conditional
    pp-line
    pp-diagnostic
    pp-region
    pp-pragma
```

The following pre-processing directives are available:

- #defi ne and #undef, which are used to define and undefine, respectively, conditional compilation symbols (§9.5.3).
- #i f, #el i f, #el se, and #endi f, which are used to skip conditionally sections of source code (§9.5.4).
- #l i ne, which is used to control line numbers emitted for errors and warnings (§9.5.7).
- #error and #warni ng, which are used to issue errors and warnings, respectively (§9.5.5).
- #regi on and #endregi on, which are used to explicitly mark sections of source code (§9.5.6).
- #pragma, which is used to provide contextual information to a compiler (§9.5.8).

A pre-processing directive always occupies a separate line of source code and always begins with a # character and a pre-processing directive name. White space can occur before the # character and between the # character and the directive name.

A source line containing a #defi ne, #undef, #i f, #el i f, #el se, #endi f, or #l i ne directive can end with a single-line comment. Delimited comments (the /\* \*/ style of comments) are not permitted on source lines containing pre-processing directives.

Pre-processing directives are not tokens and are not part of the syntactic grammar of C#. However, pre-processing directives can be used to include or exclude sequences of tokens and in that way can affect the meaning of a C# program. [Example: When compiled, the program

```
#define A
#undef B

class C
{
    #if A
        void F() {}
#else
        void G() {}
#endif

#if B
        void H() {}
#else
        void I() {}
#endif
}
```

results in the exact same sequence of tokens as the program

```
class C
{
    void F() {}
    void I() {}
}
```

Thus, whereas lexically, the two programs are quite different, syntactically, they are identical. end example]

# 9.5.1 Conditional compilation symbols

The conditional compilation functionality provided by the #if, #elif, #elif, #else, and #endif directives is controlled through pre-processing expressions (§9.5.2) and conditional compilation symbols.

```
conditional-symbol::
   identifier
   Any keyword except true or fal se
```

A conditional compilation symbol has two possible states: *defined* or *undefined*. At the beginning of the lexical processing of a source file, a conditional compilation symbol is undefined unless it has been explicitly defined by an external mechanism (such as a command-line compiler option). When a #define directive is processed, the conditional compilation symbol named in that directive becomes defined in that source file. The symbol remains defined until a #undef directive for that same symbol is processed, or until the end of the source file is reached. An implication of this is that #define and #undef directives in one source file have no effect on other source files in the same program.

The name space for conditional compilation symbols is distinct and separate from all other named entities in a C# program. Conditional compilation symbols can only be referenced in #defi ne and #undef directives and in pre-processing expressions.

## 9.5.2 Pre-processing expressions

Pre-processing expressions can occur in  $\#i\ f$  and  $\#el\ i\ f$  directives. The operators !, ==, !=, && and || are permitted in pre-processing expressions, and parentheses can be used for grouping.

```
pp-expression::
   whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-or-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub>
```

```
pp-or-expression::
    pp-and-expression
    pp-or-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub> | | whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-and-expression
pp-and-expression::
    pp-equality-expression
    pp-and-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub> && whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-equality-expression
pp-equality-expression::
    pp-unary-expression
    pp-equality-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub> == whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-unary-expression
    pp-equality-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub> != whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-unary-expression
pp-unary-expression::
    pp-primary-expression
     ! whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-unary-expression
pp-primary-expression::
    true
    false
    conditional-symbol
     ( whitespace_{opt} pp-expression whitespace_{opt} )
```

When referenced in a pre-processing expression, a defined conditional compilation symbol has the Boolean value true, and an undefined conditional compilation symbol has the Boolean value fal se.

Evaluation of a pre-processing expression always yields a Boolean value. The rules of evaluation for a pre-processing expression are the same as those for a constant expression (§14.16), except that the only user-defined entities that can be referenced are conditional compilation symbols.

#### 9.5.3 Declaration directives

The declaration directives are used to define or undefine conditional compilation symbols.

```
pp-declaration::
whitespace_{opt} # whitespace_{opt} define whitespace conditional-symbol pp-new-line whitespace_{opt} # whitespace_{opt} undef whitespace conditional-symbol pp-new-line pp-new-line::
whitespace_{opt} single-line-comment_{opt} new-line
```

The processing of a #defi ne directive causes the given conditional compilation symbol to become defined, starting with the source line that follows the directive. Likewise, the processing of a #undef directive causes the given conditional compilation symbol to become undefined, starting with the source line that follows the directive.

Any #defi ne and #undef directives in a source file shall occur before the first *token* (§9.4) in the source file; otherwise a compile-time error occurs. In intuitive terms, #defi ne and #undef directives shall precede any "real code" in the source file.

[Example: The example:

```
#define Enterprise
#if Professional || Enterprise
    #define Advanced
#endif

namespace Megacorp. Data
{
    #if Advanced
    class PivotTable {...}
    #endif
}
```

is valid because the #defi ne directives precede the first token (the namespace keyword) in the source file.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

end example]

[Example: The following example results in a compile-time error because a #defi ne follows real code:

```
#define A
namespace N
{
    #define B
    #if B
    class Class1 {}
    #endif
}
```

end example]

A #defi ne can define a conditional compilation symbol that is already defined, without there being any intervening #undef for that symbol. [Example: The example below defines a conditional compilation symbol A and then defines it again.

```
#define A #define A
```

For compilers that allow conditional compilation symbols to be defined as compilation options, an alternative way for such redefinition to occur is to define the symbol as a compiler option as well as in the source. *end example*]

A #undef can "undefine" a conditional compilation symbol that is not defined. [*Example*: The example below defines a conditional compilation symbol A and then undefines it twice; although the second #undef has no effect, it is still valid.

```
#define A
#undef A
#undef A
```

end example]

#### 9.5.4 Conditional compilation directives

The conditional compilation directives are used to conditionally include or exclude portions of a source file.

```
pp-conditional::
    pp-if-section pp-elif-sections<sub>opt</sub> pp-else-section<sub>opt</sub> pp-endif
pp-if-section::
     whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> if whitespace pp-expression pp-new-line
          conditional-section<sub>opt</sub>
pp-elif-sections::
    pp-elif-section
    pp-elif-sections pp-elif-section
pp-elif-section::
     whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> elif whitespace pp-expression pp-new-line
         conditional-section<sub>opt</sub>
pp-else-section::
     whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> else pp-new-line conditional-section<sub>opt</sub>
pp-endif::
     whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> endi f pp-new-line
conditional-section::
     input-section
     skipped-section
```

```
skipped-section::
    skipped-section-part
    skipped-section skipped-section-part

skipped-section-part::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> skipped-characters<sub>opt</sub> new-line
    pp-directive

skipped-characters::
    not-number-sign input-characters<sub>opt</sub>

not-number-sign::
    Any input-character except #
```

[*Note*: As indicated by the syntax, conditional compilation directives shall be written as sets consisting of, in order, a #i f directive, zero or more #el i f directives, zero or one #el se directive, and a #endi f directive. Between the directives are conditional sections of source code. Each section is controlled by the immediately preceding directive. A conditional section can itself contain nested conditional compilation directives provided these directives form complete sets. *end note*]

A pp-conditional selects at most one of the contained conditional-sections for normal lexical processing:

- The *pp-expressions* of the #i f and #el i f directives are evaluated in order until one yields true. If an expression yields true, the *conditional-section* of the corresponding directive is selected.
- If all *pp-expressions* yield false, and if a #else directive is present, the *conditional-section* of the #else directive is selected.
- Otherwise, no *conditional-section* is selected.

The selected *conditional-section*, if any, is processed as a normal *input-section*: the source code contained in the section shall adhere to the lexical grammar; tokens are generated from the source code in the section; and pre-processing directives in the section have the prescribed effects.

The remaining *conditional-sections*, if any, are processed as *skipped-sections*: except for pre-processing directives, the source code in the section need not adhere to the lexical grammar; no tokens are generated from the source code in the section; and pre-processing directives in the section shall be lexically correct but are not otherwise processed. Within a *conditional-section* that is being processed as a *skipped-section*, any nested *conditional-sections* (contained in nested #i f...#endi f and #regi on...#endregi on constructs) are also processed as *skipped-sections*.

[Example: The following example illustrates how conditional compilation directives can nest:

Except for pre-processing directives, skipped source code is not subject to lexical analysis. For example, the following is valid despite the unterminated comment in the #el se section:

```
#define Debug // Debugging on
```

Note, however, that pre-processing directives are required to be lexically correct even in skipped sections of source code.

Pre-processing directives are not processed when they appear inside multi-line input elements. For example, the program:

```
class Hello
{
    static void Main() {
        System Console. WriteLine(@"hello,
    #if Debug
        world
    #else
        Nebraska
    #endif
        ");
    }
}
results in the output:
    hello,
    #if Debug
        world
#else
        Nebraska
#endif
```

In peculiar cases, the set of pre-processing directives that is processed might depend on the evaluation of the *pp-expression*. The example:

```
#if X
    /*
#else
    /* */ class Q { }
#endif
```

always produces the same token stream (class Q  $\{$   $\}$ ), regardless of whether or not X is defined. If X is defined, the only processed directives are #i f and #endi f, due to the multi-line comment. If X is undefined, then three directives (#i f, #el se, #endi f) are part of the directive set. end example]

# 9.5.5 Diagnostic directives

The diagnostic directives are used to generate explicitly error and warning messages that are reported in the same way as other compile-time errors and warnings.

```
pp-diagnostic::
    whitespaceopt # whitespaceopt error pp-message
    whitespaceopt # whitespaceopt warning pp-message

pp-message::
    new-line
    whitespace input-charactersopt new-line

[Example: The example
```

#warning Code review needed before check-in

```
#if Debug && Retail
    #error A build can't be both debug and retail
#endif
class Test {...}
```

always produces a warning ("Code review needed before check-in"), and produces a compile-time error if the pre-processing identifiers Debug and Retail are both defined. Note that a *pp-message* can contain arbitrary text; specifically, it need not contain well-formed tokens, as shown by the single quote in the word can't. *end example*]

## 9.5.6 Region control

The region directives are used to mark explicitly regions of source code.

```
pp-region::
     pp-start-region conditional-section<sub>opt</sub> pp-end-region

pp-start-region::
     whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> region pp-message

pp-end-region::
     whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> endregion pp-message
```

No semantic meaning is attached to a region; regions are intended for use by the programmer or by automated tools to mark a section of source code. The message specified in a **#regi on** or **#endregi on** directive likewise has no semantic meaning; it merely serves to identify the region. Matching **#regi on** and **#endregi on** directives can have different *pp-messages*.

The lexical processing of a region:

```
#regi on
...
#endregi on
```

corresponds exactly to the lexical processing of a conditional compilation directive of the form:

```
#if true
...
#endif
```

#### 9.5.7 Line directives

Line directives can be used to alter the line numbers and source file names that are reported by the compiler in output such as warnings and errors.

[*Note*: Line directives are most commonly used in meta-programming tools that generate C# source code from some other text input. *end note*]

```
pp-line::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> line whitespace line-indicator pp-new-line
line-indicator::
    decimal-digits whitespace file-name
    decimal-digits
    identifier-or-keyword

file-name::
    " file-name-characters "

file-name-characters::
    file-name-character
    file-name-character
    file-name-character
    file-name-character
    file-name-character::
    Any character except " (U+0022), and new-line-character
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

When no #line directives are present, the compiler reports true line numbers and source file names in its output. When processing a #line directive that includes a *line-indicator* that is not *identifier-or-keyword*, the compiler treats the line *after* the directive as having the given line number (and file name, if specified).

A #line directive in which the *line-indicator* is an *identifier-or-keyword* whose value equals **default** (using equality as specified in §9.4.2) reverses the effect of all preceding #line directives. The compiler reports true line information for subsequent lines, precisely as if no #line directives had been processed.

The purpose of a *line-indicator* with an *identifier-or-keyword* whose value does not equal **default** is implementation-defined. An implementation that does not recognize such an *identifier-or-keyword* in a line-indicator shall issue a warning.

[*Note*: Note that a *file-name* differs from a regular string literal in that escape characters are not processed; the '\' character simply designates an ordinary back-slash character within a *file-name*. *end note*]

## 9.5.8 Pragma directives

The **#pragma** directive is a preprocessing directive used to specify contextual information to a compiler. [*Note*: For example, a compiler might provide **#pragma** directives that

- Enable or disable particular warning messages when compiling subsequent code.
- Specify which optimizations to apply to subsequent code.
- Specify information to be used by a debugger.

end note]

```
pp-pragma:
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pragma pp-pragma-text

pp-pragma-text:
    new-line
    whitespace input-characters<sub>opt</sub> new-line
```

The *input-characters* in the *pp-pragma-text* are interpreted by the compiler in an implementation-defined manner. The information supplied in a **#pragma** directive shall not change program semantics. A **#pragma** directive shall only change compiler behavior that is outside the scope of this language specification. If the compiler cannot interpret the *input-characters*, the compiler can produce a warning; however, it shall not produce a compile-time error.

[Note: pp-pragma-text can contain arbitrary text; specifically, it need not contain well-formed tokens. end note]

# 10. Basic concepts

# 10.1 Application startup

**Application startup** occurs when the execution environment calls a designated method, which is referred to as the application's **entry point**. This entry point method is always named **Mai n**, and shall have one of the following signatures:

```
static void Main() {...}
static void Main(string[] args) {...}
static int Main() {...}
static int Main(string[] args) {...}
```

As shown, the entry point can optionally return an int value. This return value is used in application termination (§10.2).

The entry point can optionally have one formal parameter, and this formal parameter can have any name. If such a parameter is declared, it shall obey the following constraints:

- The implementation shall ensure that the value of this parameter is not null.
- Let args be the name of the parameter. If the length of the array designated by args is greater than zero, the array members args[0] through args[args. Length-1], inclusive, shall refer to strings, called *application parameters*, which are given implementation-defined values by the host environment prior to application startup. The intent is to supply to the application information determined prior to application startup from elsewhere in the hosted environment. If the host environment is not capable of supplying strings with letters in both uppercase and lowercase, the implementation shall ensure that the strings are received in lowercase. [Note: On systems supporting a command line, application parameters correspond to what are generally known as command-line arguments. end note]

Since C# supports method overloading, a class or struct can contain multiple definitions of some method, provided each has a different signature. However, within a single program, no class or struct shall contain more than one method called Mai n whose definition qualifies it to be used as an application entry point. Other overloaded versions of Mai n are permitted, however, provided they have more than one parameter, or their only parameter is other than type string[].

An application can be made up of multiple classes or structs. It is possible for more than one of these classes or structs to contain a method called **Mai n** whose definition qualifies it to be used as an application entry point. In such cases, one of these **Mai n** methods shall be chosen as the entry point so that application startup can occur. This choice of an entry point is beyond the scope of this specification—no mechanism for specifying or determining an entry point is provided.

In C#, every method shall be defined as a member of a class or struct. Ordinarily, the declared accessibility (§10.5.1) of a method is determined by the access modifiers (§17.2.3) specified in its declaration, and similarly the declared accessibility of a type is determined by the access modifiers specified in its declaration. In order for a given method of a given type to be callable, both the type and the member shall be accessible. However, the application entry point is a special case. Specifically, the execution environment can access the application's entry point regardless of its declared accessibility and regardless of the declared accessibility of its enclosing type declarations.

The entry point method shall not be defined in a generic class declaration (§25.1) or a generic struct declaration (§25.2).

In all other respects, entry point methods behave like those that are not entry points.

# 10.2 Application termination

Application termination returns control to the execution environment.

If the return type of the application's entry point method is int, the value returned serves as the application's *termination status code*. The purpose of this code is to allow communication of success or failure to the execution environment.

If the return type of the entry point method is **voi d**, reaching the right brace (}) which terminates that method, or executing a **return** statement that has no expression, results in a termination status code of **0**.

Prior to an application's termination, finalizers for all of its objects that have not yet been garbage collected are called, unless such cleanup has been suppressed (by a call to the library method GC. SuppressFi nal i ze, for example).

#### 10.3 Declarations

Declarations in a C# program define the constituent elements of the program. C# programs are organized using namespace declarations (§16), which can contain type declarations and nested namespace declarations. Type declarations (§16.6) are used to define classes (§17), structs (§18), interfaces (§20), enums (§21), and delegates (§22). The kinds of members permitted in a type declaration depend on the form of the type declaration. For instance, class declarations can contain declarations for constants (§17.3), fields (§17.4), methods (§17.5), properties (§17.6), events (§17.7), indexers (§17.8), operators (§17.9), instance constructors (§17.10), finalizers (§17.12), static constructors (§17.11), and nested types.

A declaration defines a name in the *declaration space* to which the declaration belongs. It is a compile-time error to have two or more declarations that introduce members with the same name in a declaration space, except in the following cases:

- Two or more namespace declarations with the same name are allowed in the same declaration space.
   Such namespace declarations are aggregated to form a single logical namespace and share a single declaration space.
- Declarations in separate programs but in the same namespace declaration space are allowed to share the same name.
- Two or more methods with the same name but distinct signatures are allowed in the same declaration space (§10.6).
- Two or more type declarations with the same name but distinct numbers of type parameters are allowed in the same declaration space (§10.8.2).
- Two or more type declarations with the partial modifier in the same declaration space may share the same name, same number of type parameters and same classification (class, struct or interface). In this case, the type declarations contribute to a single type and are themselves aggregated to form a single declaration space (§17.1.4).
- A namespace declaration and a type declaration in the same declaration space can share the same name as long as the type declaration has at least one type parameter (§10.8.2).

It is never possible for a type declaration space to contain different kinds of members with the same name. [*Example*: A type declaration space can never contain a field and a method by the same name. *end example*]

There are several different types of declaration spaces, as described in the following.

- Within all source files of a program, *namespace-member-declarations* with no enclosing *namespace-declaration* are members of a single combined declaration space called the *global declaration space*.
- Within all source files of a program, *namespace-member-declarations* within *namespace-declarations* that have the same fully qualified namespace name are members of a single combined declaration space.

- Each *compilation-unit* and *namespace-body* has an *alias declaration space*. Each *extern-alias-directive* and *using-alias-directive* of the *compilation-unit* or *namespace-body* contributes a member to the alias declaration space (§16.4.1).
- Each non-partial class, struct, or interface declaration creates a new declaration space. Each partial class, struct, or interface declaration contributes to a declaration space shared by all matching parts in the same program (§17.1.4). Names are introduced into this declaration space through the *type-parameter-list* and *class-member-declarations*, *struct-member-declarations*, or *interface-member-declarations*. Except for overloaded instance constructor declarations and static constructor declarations, a class or struct member declaration cannot introduce a member by the same name as the class or struct. A class, struct, or interface permits the declaration of overloaded methods and indexers. Furthermore, a class or struct permits the declaration of overloaded instance constructors, operators, and types. [*Example*: A class, struct, or interface can contain multiple method declarations with the same name, provided these method declarations differ in their signature (§10.6). A class or struct can contain multiple nested types with the same name provided the types differ in the number of type parameters. *end example*] Base classes do not contribute to the declaration space of a class, and base interfaces do not contribute to the declaration space of an interface. Thus, a derived class or interface is allowed to declare a member with the same name as an inherited member.
- Each enumeration declaration creates a new declaration space. Names are introduced into this declaration space through *enum-member-declarations*.
- Each block, switch-block, for-statement, foreach-statement, or using-statement creates a declaration space for local variables and local constants called the local variable declaration space. Names are introduced into this declaration space through local-variable-declarations and local-constant-declarations. If a block is the body of an instance constructor, method, or operator declaration, or a get or set accessor for an indexer declaration, the parameters declared in such a declaration are members of the block's local variable declaration space. If a block is the body of a generic method, the type parameters declared in such a declaration are members of the block's local variable declaration space. It is an error for two members of a local variable declaration space to have the same name. It is an error for a local variable declaration space and a nested local variable declaration space to contain elements with the same name. [Note: Thus, within a nested block it is not possible to declare a local variable or constant with the same name as a local variable or constant in an enclosing block. It is possible for two nested blocks to contain elements with the same name as long as neither block contains the other. end note]
- Each *block* or *switch-block* creates a separate declaration space for labels called the *label declaration space* of the block. Names are introduced into this declaration space through *labeled-statements*, and the names are referenced through *goto-statements*. It is an error for the label declaration space of a block and the label declaration space of a nested block to contain elements with the same name. Thus, within a nested block it is not possible to declare a label with the same name as a label in an enclosing block. [*Note*: It is possible for two nested blocks to contain elements with the same name as long as neither block contains the other. *end note*]

The textual order in which names are declared is generally of no significance. In particular, textual order is not significant for the declaration and use of namespaces, constants, methods, properties, events, indexers, operators, instance constructors, finalizers, static constructors, and types. Declaration order is significant in the following ways:

- Declaration order for field declarations and local variable declarations determines the order in which their initializers (if any) are executed. When there are field declarations in multiple partial type declarations for the same type, the order of the parts is unspecified. However, within each part the field initializers are executed in order.
- Local variables and local constants shall be defined before they are used (§10.7).
- Declaration order for enum member declarations (§21.3) is significant when *constant-expression* values are omitted.

[Example: The declaration space of a namespace is "open ended", and two namespace declarations with the same fully qualified name contribute to the same declaration space. For example

```
namespace Megacorp. Data
{
    class Customer
    {
        ...
    }
}
namespace Megacorp. Data
{
    class Order
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

The two namespace declarations above contribute to the same declaration space, in this case declaring two classes with the fully qualified names Megacorp. Data. Customer and Megacorp. Data. Order. Because the two declarations contribute to the same declaration space, it would have caused a compile-time error if each contained a declaration of a class with the same name.

All declarations of a partial type contribute to the same declaration space:

The two partial declarations for C combine to form a single declaration space and a single type. The field named F in the first part conflicts with the method named F in the second part. The struct named N1 in the first part conflicts with the class named N1 in the second part. The non-partial class N2 in the second part conflicts with the partial class N2 in the first part. The two partial declarations for N3 combine to form a single type C. N3. end example]

[Note: As specified above, the declaration space of a block cannot share names with the declaration spaces of any nested blocks. Thus, in the following example, the F and G methods result in a compile-time error because the name i is declared in the outer block and cannot be redeclared in the inner block. However, the H and I methods are valid since the two i 's are declared in separate non-nested blocks.

```
class A
{
    void F() {
        int i = 0;
        if (true) {
            int i = 1;
        }
    void G() {
        if (true) {
            int i = 0;
        }
        int i = 1;
}
```

```
void H() {
    if (true) {
        int i = 0;
    }
    if (true) {
        int i = 1;
    }
}

void I() {
    for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
        H();
    for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
        H();
}</pre>
```

*end note*]

# 10.4 Members

Namespaces and types have *members*. [*Note*: The members of an entity are generally available through the use of a qualified name that starts with a reference to the entity, followed by a ". " token, followed by the name of the member. *end note*]

Members of a type are either declared in the type or *inherited* from the base class of the type. When a type inherits from a base class, all members of the base class, except instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors become members of the derived type. The declared accessibility of a base class member does not control whether the member is inherited—inheritance extends to any member that isn't an instance constructor, static constructor, or finalizer. However, an inherited member might not be accessible in a derived type, either because of its declared accessibility (§10.5.1) or because it is hidden by a declaration in the type itself (§10.7.1.2).

# 10.4.1 Namespace members

Namespaces and types that have no enclosing namespace are members of the *global namespace*. This corresponds directly to the names declared in the global declaration space.

Namespaces and types declared within a namespace are members of that namespace. This corresponds directly to the names declared in the declaration space of the namespace.

Namespaces have no access restrictions. It is not possible to declare private, protected, or internal namespaces, and namespace names are always publicly accessible.

#### 10.4.2 Struct members

The members of a struct are the members declared in the struct and the members inherited from the struct's direct base class **System**. Val ueType and the indirect base class **object**.

The members of a simple type are the members of the struct type aliased by the simple type ( $\S11.1.4$ ).

### 10.4.3 Enumeration members

The members of an enumeration are the constants declared in the enumeration and the members inherited from the enumeration's direct base class System. Enum and the indirect base classes System. ValueType and object.

### 10.4.4 Class members

The members of a class are the members declared in the class and the members inherited from the base class (except for class **obj** ect which has no base class). The members inherited from the base class include the constants, fields, methods, properties, events, indexers, operators, and types of the base class, but not the instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors of the base class. Base class members are inherited without regard to their accessibility.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

A class declaration can contain declarations of constants, fields, methods, properties, events, indexers, operators, instance constructors, finalizers, static constructors, and types.

The members of object and string correspond directly to the members of the class types they alias:

- The members of object are the members of the System. Object class.
- The members of string are the members of the System. String class.

#### 10.4.5 Interface members

The members of an interface are the members declared in the interface and in all base interfaces of the interface. [*Note*: The members in class **obj ect** are not, strictly speaking, members of any interface (§20.2). However, the members in class **obj ect** are available via member lookup in any interface type (§14.3). *end note*]

# 10.4.6 Array members

The members of an array are the members inherited from class System. Array.

### 10.4.7 Delegate members

The members of a delegate are the members inherited from class System. Del egate.

### 10.5 Member access

Declarations of members allow control over member access. The accessibility of a member is established by the declared accessibility (§10.5.1) of the member combined with the accessibility of the immediately containing type, if any.

When access to a particular member is allowed, the member is said to be *accessible*. Conversely, when access to a particular member is disallowed, the member is said to be *inaccessible*. Access to a member is permitted when the textual location in which the access takes place is included in the accessibility domain (§10.5.2) of the member.

# 10.5.1 Declared accessibility

The *declared accessibility* of a member can be one of the following:

- Public, which is selected by including a publ i c modifier in the member declaration. The intuitive meaning of publ i c is "access not limited".
- Protected, which is selected by including a **protected** modifier in the member declaration. The intuitive meaning of **protected** is "access limited to the containing class or types derived from the containing class".
- Internal, which is selected by including an internal modifier in the member declaration. The intuitive meaning of internal is "access limited to this program".
- Protected internal, which is selected by including both a protected and an internal modifier in the member declaration. The intuitive meaning of protected internal is "access limited to this program or types derived from the containing class".
- Private, which is selected by including a **private** modifier in the member declaration. The intuitive meaning of **private** is "access limited to the containing type".

Depending on the context in which a member declaration takes place, only certain types of declared accessibility are permitted. Furthermore, when a member declaration does not include any access modifiers, the context in which the declaration takes place determines the default declared accessibility.

• Namespaces implicitly have **publ** i c declared accessibility. No access modifiers are allowed on namespace declarations.

- Types declared in compilation units or namespaces can have **public** or **internal** declared accessibility and default to **internal** declared accessibility.
- Class members can have any of the five kinds of declared accessibility and default to **pri vate** declared accessibility. [*Note*: A type declared as a member of a class can have any of the five kinds of declared accessibility, whereas a type declared as a member of a namespace can have only **public** or **internal** declared accessibility. *end note*]
- Struct members can have **public**, **internal**, or **private** declared accessibility and default to **private** declared accessibility because structs are implicitly sealed. Struct members introduced in a struct (that is, not inherited by that struct) cannot have **protected** or **protected internal** declared accessibility. [Note: A type declared as a member of a struct can have **public**, **internal**, or **private** declared accessibility, whereas a type declared as a member of a namespace can have only **public** or **internal** declared accessibility. end note]
- Interface members implicitly have **public** declared accessibility. No access modifiers are allowed on interface member declarations.
- Enumeration members implicitly have **public** declared accessibility. No access modifiers are allowed on enumeration member declarations.

# 10.5.2 Accessibility domains

The *accessibility domain* of a member consists of the (possibly disjoint) sections of program text in which access to the member is permitted. For purposes of defining the accessibility domain of a member, a member is said to be *top-level* if it is not declared within a type, and a member is said to be *nested* if it is declared within another type. Furthermore, the text of a program is defined as all source text contained in all source files of that program, and the source text of a type is defined as all source text contained between the opening and closing "{" and "}" tokens in the *class-body*, *struct-body*, *interface-body*, or *enum-body* of all declarations for the type (including, possibly, multiple partial declarations and all types that are nested within the type).

The accessibility domain of a predefined type (such as object, int, or double) is unlimited.

The accessibility domain of a top-level type T that is declared in a program P is defined as follows:

- If the declared accessibility of T is **public**, the accessibility domain of T is the program text of P and any program that references P.
- If the declared accessibility of T is internal, the accessibility domain of T is the program text of P.

[*Note*: From these definitions, it follows that the accessibility domain of a top-level type is always at least the program text of the program in which that type is declared. *end note*]

The accessibility domain of a nested member M declared in a type T within a program P, is defined as follows (noting that Mitself might possibly be a type):

- If the declared accessibility of M is publ i c, the accessibility domain of M is the accessibility domain of T.
- If the declared accessibility of Mis protected internal, let D be the union of the program text of P and the program text of any type derived from T, which is declared outside P. The accessibility domain of Mis the intersection of the accessibility domain of T with D.
- If the declared accessibility of Mis protected, let D be the union of the program text of T and the program text of any type derived from T. The accessibility domain of M is the intersection of the accessibility domain of T with D.
- If the declared accessibility of Mis internal, the accessibility domain of Mis the intersection of the accessibility domain of T with the program text of P.
- If the declared accessibility of Mis pri vate, the accessibility domain of Mis the program text of T.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

[Note: From these definitions, it follows that the accessibility domain of a nested member is always at least the program text of the type in which the member is declared. Furthermore, it follows that the accessibility domain of a member is never more inclusive than the accessibility domain of the type in which the member is declared. *end note*]

[Note: In intuitive terms, when a type or member M is accessed, the following steps are evaluated to ensure that the access is permitted:

- First, if Mis declared within a type (as opposed to a compilation unit or a namespace), a compile-time error occurs if that type is not accessible.
- Then, if Mis public, the access is permitted.
- Otherwise, if Mis protected internal, the access is permitted if it occurs within the program in which Mis declared, or if it occurs within a class derived from the class in which Mis declared and takes place through the derived class type (§10.5.3).
- Otherwise, if Mis protected, the access is permitted if it occurs within the class in which Mis declared, or if it occurs within a class derived from the class in which Mis declared and takes place through the derived class type (§10.5.3).
- Otherwise, if Mis internal, the access is permitted if it occurs within the program in which Mis declared.
- Otherwise, if Mis pri vate, the access is permitted if it occurs within the type in which Mis declared.
- Otherwise, the type or member is inaccessible, and a compile-time error occurs.

end note]

```
[Example: In the following code
```

```
public class A
   public static int X;
internal static int_Y;
   private static int Z;
internal class B
   public static int X;
internal static int Y;
   private static int Z;
    public class C
       public static int X;
internal static int_Y;
       private static int Z;
   }
    private class D
       public static int X;
       internal static int Y:
       private static int Z;
   }
}
```

the classes and members have the following accessibility domains:

- The accessibility domain of A and A. X is unlimited.
- The accessibility domain of A. Y, B, B. X, B. Y, B. C, B. C. X, and B. C. Y is the program text of the containing program.
- The accessibility domain of A. Z is the program text of A.

- The accessibility domain of B. Z and B. D is the program text of B, including the program text of B. C and B. D.
- The accessibility domain of B. C. Z is the program text of B. C.
- The accessibility domain of B. D. X and B. D. Y is the program text of B, including the program text of B. C and B. D.
- The accessibility domain of B. D. Z is the program text of B. D.

As the example illustrates, the accessibility domain of a member is never larger than that of a containing type. For example, even though all X members have public declared accessibility, all but A. X have accessibility domains that are constrained by a containing type. *end example*]

As described in §10.4, all members of a base class, except for instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors are inherited by derived types. This includes even private members of a base class. However, the accessibility domain of a private member includes only the program text of the type in which the member is declared. [*Example*: In the following code

the B class inherits the private member x from the A class. Because the member is private, it is only accessible within the *class-body* of A. Thus, the access to b. x succeeds in the A. F method, but fails in the B. F method. *end example*]

### 10.5.3 Protected access for instance members

When a **protected** instance member is accessed outside the program text of the class in which it is declared, and when a **protected internal** instance member is accessed outside the program text of the program in which it is declared, the access is required to take place *through* an instance of the derived class type in which the access occurs. Let **B** be a base class that declares a protected instance member **M**, and let **D** be a class that derives from **B**. Within the *class-body* of **D**, access to **M** can take one of the following forms:

- An unqualified type-name or primary-expression of the form M
- A primary-expression of the form E. M, provided the type of E is D or a class derived from D.
- A *primary-expression* of the form base. M

In addition to these forms of access, a derived class can access a protected instance constructor of a base class in a *constructor-initializer* (§17.10.1).

[Example: In the following code

within A, it is possible to access x through instances of both A and B, since in either case the access takes place *through* an instance of A or a class derived from A. However, within B, it is not possible to access x through an instance of A, since A does not derive from B. *end example*]

In the context of generics (§25.1.6), the rules for accessing protected and protected internal instance members are augmented by the following:

• Within a generic class G, access to an inherited protected instance member Musing a *primary-expression* of the form E. M is permitted if the type of E is a class type constructed from G or a class type derived from a class type constructed from G.

# 10.5.4 Accessibility constraints

Several constructs in the C# language require a type to be *at least as accessible as* a member or another type. A type T is said to be at least as accessible as a member or type Mif the accessibility domain of T is a superset of the accessibility domain of M In other words, T is at least as accessible as Mif T is accessible in all contexts in which Mis accessible.

The following accessibility constraints exist:

- The direct base class of a class type shall be at least as accessible as the class type itself.
- The explicit base interfaces of an interface type shall be at least as accessible as the interface type itself.
- The return type and parameter types of a delegate type shall be at least as accessible as the delegate type itself.
- The type of a constant shall be at least as accessible as the constant itself.
- The type of a field shall be at least as accessible as the field itself.
- The return type and parameter types of a method shall be at least as accessible as the method itself.
- The type of a property shall be at least as accessible as the property itself.
- The type of an event shall be at least as accessible as the event itself.
- The type and parameter types of an indexer shall be at least as accessible as the indexer itself.
- The return type and parameter types of an operator shall be at least as accessible as the operator itself.
- The parameter types of an instance constructor shall be at least as accessible as the instance constructor itself.

[Example: In the following code

```
class A {...}
public class B: A {...}
```

the B class results in a compile-time error because A is not at least as accessible as B. end example]

[Example: Likewise, in the following code

```
class A {...}
public class B
{
    A F() {...}
    internal A G() {...}
```

```
public A H() {...}
```

the H method in B results in a compile-time error because the return type A is not at least as accessible as the method. end example]

# 10.6 Signatures and overloading

Methods, instance constructors, indexers, and operators are characterized by their signatures:

- The signature of a method consists of the name of the method, the number of type parameters, and the type and kind (value, reference, or output) of each of its formal parameters, considered in the order left to right. The signature of a method specifically does not include the return type, parameter names, or type parameter names, nor does it include the params modifier that can be specified for the right-most parameter. When a parameter type includes a type parameter of the method, the ordinal position of the type parameter is used for type equivalence, not the name of the type parameter.
- The signature of an instance constructor consists of the type and kind (value, reference, or output) of each of its formal parameters, considered in the order left to right. The signature of an instance constructor specifically does not include the parameter names or the params modifier that can be specified for the right-most parameter.
- The signature of an indexer consists of the type of each of its formal parameters, considered in the order left to right. The signature of an indexer specifically does not include the element type or parameter names, nor does it include the params modifier that can be specified for the right-most parameter.
- The signature of an operator consists of the name of the operator and the type of each of its formal parameters, considered in the order left to right. The signature of an operator specifically does not include the result type or parameter names.

Signatures are the enabling mechanism for *overloading* of members in classes, structs, and interfaces:

- Overloading of methods permits a class, struct, or interface to declare multiple methods with the same name, provided their signatures are unique within that class, struct, or interface.
- Overloading of instance constructors permits a class or struct to declare multiple instance constructors, provided their signatures are unique within that class or struct.
- Overloading of indexers permits a class, struct, or interface to declare multiple indexers, provided their signatures are unique within that class, struct, or interface.
- Overloading of operators permits a class or struct to declare multiple operators with the same name, provided their signatures are unique within that class or struct.

Although out and ref parameter modifiers are considered part of a signature, members declared in a single type cannot differ in signature solely by ref and out. A compile-time error occurs if two members are declared in the same type with signatures that would be the same if all parameters in both methods with out modifiers were changed to ref modifiers. For other purposes of signature matching (e.g., hiding or overriding), ref and out are considered part of the signature and do not match each other. [Note: This restriction is to allow C# programs to be easily translated to run on the Common Language Infrastructure (CLI), which does not provide a way to define methods that differ solely in ref and out. end note]

[Example: The following example shows a set of overloaded method declarations along with their signatures.

```
void F(int x, int y);
                                            // F(int, int)
   int F(string s);
int F(int x);
                                            // F(string)
                                            // F(int)
                                                                   error
                                            // F(string[])
    void F(string[] a);
    void F(params string[] a);
                                            // F(string[])
                                                                   error
    void F < S > (S \ s);
                                            // F<`0>(`0)
    void F < T > (T t);
                                            // F<^0>(^0)
                                                                   error
   voi d F<S, T>(S s);
voi d F<T, S>(S s);
                                            // F<\^0,\^1>(\^0)
// F<\^0,\^1>(\^1)
                                                                   ok
}
```

Note that any ref and out parameter modifiers (§17.5.1) are part of a signature. Thus, F(int), F(ref int), and F(out int) are all unique signatures. However, F(ref int) and F(out int) cannot be declared within the same interface because their signatures differ solely by ref and out. Also, note that the return type and the params modifier are not part of a signature, so it is not possible to overload solely based on return type or on the inclusion or exclusion of the params modifier. As such, the declarations of the methods F(int) and F(params string[]) identified above, result in a compile-time error. end example

# 10.7 Scopes

The *scope* of a name is the region of program text within which it is possible to refer to the entity declared by the name without qualification of the name. Scopes can be *nested*, and an inner scope can redeclare the meaning of a name from an outer scope. [*Note*: This does not, however, remove the restriction imposed by §10.3 that within a nested block it is not possible to declare a local variable or local constant with the same name as a local variable or local constant in an enclosing block. *end note*] The name from the outer scope is then said to be *hidden* in the region of program text covered by the inner scope, and access to the outer name is only possible by qualifying the name.

- The scope of a namespace member declared by a *namespace-member-declaration* (§16.5) with no enclosing *namespace-declaration* is the entire program text.
- The scope of a namespace member declared by a *namespace-member-declaration* within a *namespace-declaration* whose fully qualified name is N, is the *namespace-body* of every *namespace-declaration* whose fully qualified name is N or starts with N, followed by a period.
- The scope of a name defined by an extern-alias-directive (§16.3) extends over the using-directives, global-attributes and namespace-member-declarations of the compilation-unit or namespace-body in which the extern-alias-directive occurs. An extern-alias-directive does not contribute any new members to the underlying declaration space. In other words, an extern-alias-directive is not transitive, but, rather, affects only the compilation-unit or namespace-body in which it occurs.
- The scope of a name defined or imported by a *using-directive* (§16.4) extends over the *global-attributes* and *namespace-member-declarations* of the *compilation-unit* or *namespace-body* in which the *using-directive* occurs. A *using-directive* can make zero or more namespace or type names available within a particular *compilation-unit* or *namespace-body*, but does not contribute any new members to the underlying declaration space. In other words, a *using-directive* is not transitive, but, rather, affects only the *compilation-unit* or *namespace-body* in which it occurs.
- The scope of a member declared by a *class-member-declaration* (§17.2) is the *class-body* in which the declaration occurs. In addition, the scope of a class member extends to the *class-body* of those derived classes that are included in the accessibility domain (§10.5.2) of the member.
- The scope of a member declared by a *struct-member-declaration* (§18.2) is the *struct-body* in which the declaration occurs.
- The scope of a member declared by an *enum-member-declaration* (§21.3) is the *enum-body* in which the declaration occurs.
- The scope of a parameter declared in a *method-declaration* (§17.5) is the *method-body* of that *method-declaration*.

- The scope of a parameter declared in an *indexer-declaration* (§17.8) is the *accessor-declarations* of that *indexer-declaration*.
- The scope of a parameter declared in an *operator-declaration* (§17.9) is the *block* of that *operator-declaration*.
- The scope of a parameter declared in a *constructor-declaration* (§17.10) is the *constructor-initializer* and *block* of that *constructor-declaration*.
- The scope of a label declared in a *labeled-statement* (§15.4) is the *block* in which the declaration occurs.
- The scope of a local variable declared in a *local-variable-declaration* (§15.5.1) is the *block* in which the declaration occurs.
- The scope of a local variable declared in a *switch-block* of a **switch** statement (§15.7.2) is the *switch-block*.
- The scope of a local variable declared in a *for-initializer* of a **for** statement (§15.8.3) is the *for-initializer*, the *for-condition*, the *for-iterator*, and the contained *statement* of the **for** statement.
- The scope of a local constant declared in a *local-constant-declaration* (§15.5.2) is the *block* in which the declaration occurs. It is a compile-time error to refer to a local constant in a textual position that precedes its *constant-declarator*.

Within the scope of a namespace, class, struct, or enumeration member it is possible to refer to the member in a textual position that precedes the declaration of the member. [*Example*:

```
class A
{
    void F() {
        i = 1;
    }
    int i = 0;
}
```

Here, it is valid for F to refer to i before it is declared. end example]

Within the scope of a local variable, it is a compile-time error to refer to the local variable in a textual position that precedes the *local-variable-declarator* of the local variable. [Example:

In the F method above, the first assignment to i specifically does not refer to the field declared in the outer scope. Rather, it refers to the local variable and it results in a compile-time error because it textually precedes the declaration of the variable. In the G method, the use of j in the initializer for the declaration of j is valid because the use does not precede the *local-variable-declarator*. In the H method, a subsequent *local-variable-declarator* correctly refers to a local variable declared in an earlier *local-variable-declarator* within the same *local-variable-declaration*. *end example*]

[Note: The scoping rules for local variables and local constants are designed to guarantee that the meaning of a name used in an expression context is always the same within a block. If the scope of a local variable were

to extend only from its declaration to the end of the block, then in the example above, the first assignment would assign to the instance variable and the second assignment would assign to the local variable. (In certain situations, but not in the example above, this could lead to a compile-time error if the statements of the block were later to be rearranged.)

The meaning of a name within a block can differ based on the context in which the name is used. In the example

the name A is used in an expression context to refer to the local variable A and in a type context to refer to the class A. *end note*]

# 10.7.1 Name hiding

The scope of an entity typically encompasses more program text than the declaration space of the entity. In particular, the scope of an entity can include declarations that introduce new declaration spaces containing entities of the same name. Such declarations cause the original entity to become *hidden*. Conversely, an entity is said to be *visible* when it is not hidden.

Name hiding occurs when scopes overlap through nesting and when scopes overlap through inheritance. The characteristics of the two types of hiding are described in the following subclauses.

Local variables, local constants, parameters, and method type parameters cannot hide other local variables, local constants, parameters, or method type parameters (§10.3).

### 10.7.1.1 Hiding through nesting

Name hiding through nesting can occur as a result of nesting namespaces or types within namespaces, as a result of nesting types within classes or structs, and as a result of parameter, local variable, and local constant declarations. [Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
   int i = 0;
   void F() {
      int i = 1;
   }
   void G() {
      i = 1;
   }
}
```

within the F method, the instance variable i is hidden by the local variable i, but within the G method, i still refers to the instance variable. *end example*]

When a name in an inner scope hides a name in an outer scope, it hides all overloaded occurrences of that name. [Example: In the following code

```
class Outer
{
   static void F(int i) {}
```

the call F(1) invokes the F declared in Inner because all outer occurrences of F are hidden by the inner declaration. For the same reason, the call F("Hello") results in a compile-time error. *end example*]

### 10.7.1.2 Hiding through inheritance

Name hiding through inheritance occurs when classes or structs redeclare names that were inherited from base classes. This type of name hiding takes one of the following forms:

- A constant, field, property, or event introduced in a class or struct hides all base class members with the same name and no type parameters.
- A type introduced in a class or struct hides all base class members with the same name and same number of type parameters.
- A method introduced in a class or struct hides all non-method base class members with the same name and either, the same number of type parameters or no type parameters, and all base class methods with the same signature.
- An indexer introduced in a class or struct hides all base class indexers with the same signature (parameter count and types).

Contrary to hiding a name from an outer scope, hiding an accessible name from an inherited scope causes a warning to be reported. [Example: In the following code

```
class Base
{
    public void F() {}
}
class Derived: Base
{
    public void F() {} // Warning, hiding an inherited name
}
```

the declaration of F in **Deri ved** causes a warning to be reported. Hiding an inherited name is specifically not an error, since that would preclude separate evolution of base classes. For example, the above situation might have come about because a later version of **Base** introduced an F method that wasn't present in an earlier version of the class. Had the above situation been an error, then *any* change made to a base class in a separately versioned class library could potentially cause derived classes to become invalid. *end example*]

The warning caused by hiding an inherited name can be eliminated through use of the **new** modifier: [*Example*:

```
class Base
{
    public void F() {}
}
class Derived: Base
{
    new public void F() {}
}
```

The new modifier indicates that the F in Deri ved is "new", and that it is indeed intended to hide the inherited member. *end example*]

A declaration of a new member hides an inherited member only within the scope of the new member. [*Example*:

```
class Base
{
    public static void F() {}
}
class Derived: Base
{
    new private static void F() {} // Hides Base.F in Derived only
}
class MoreDerived: Derived
{
    static void G() { F(); } // Invokes Base.F
}
```

In the example above, the declaration of F in Deri ved hides the F that was inherited from Base, but since the new F in Deri ved has private access, its scope does not extend to MoreDeri ved. Thus, the call F() in MoreDeri ved. G is valid and will invoke Base. F. end example

# 10.8 Namespace and type names

Several contexts in a C# program require a namespace-name or a type-name to be specified.

```
namespace-name:
    namespace-or-type-name

type-name:
    namespace-or-type-name

namespace-or-type-name:
    identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
    qualified-alias-member
    namespace-or-type-name . identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
```

A *namespace-name* is a *namespace-or-type-name* that refers to a namespace.

Following resolution as described below, the *namespace-or-type-name* of a *namespace-name* shall refer to a namespace, or otherwise a compile-time error occurs. Type arguments (§25.5.1) shall not be present in a *namespace-name* (only types can have type arguments).

A *type-name* is a *namespace-or-type-name* that refers to a type. Following resolution as described below, the *namespace-or-type-name* of a *type-name* shall refer to a type, or otherwise a compile-time error occurs.

The syntax and semantics of qualified-alias-member are defined in §16.7.

A namespace-or-type-name that is not a qualified-alias-member has one of four forms:

- I
- $I < A_1, ..., A_K >$
- N. I
- N.  $I < A_1, \ldots, A_K >$

where I is a single identifier, N is a namespace-or-type-name and <A<sub>1</sub>, ..., A<sub>K</sub>> is an optional type-argument-list. When no type-argument-list is specified, consider K to be zero.

The meaning of a *namespace-or-type-name* is determined as follows:

- If the namespace-or-type-name is a qualified-alias-member, the meaning is as specified in §16.7.
- Otherwise, if the *namespace-or-type-name* is of the form I or of the form  $I < A_1, ..., A_K > :$

- o If **K** is zero and the *namespace-or-type-name* appears within the body of a generic method declaration (§25.6) and if that declaration includes a type parameter (§25.1.1) with name **I**, then the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to that type parameter.
- Otherwise, if the *namespace-or-type-name* appears within the body of a type declaration, then for each instance type T (§25.1.2), starting with the instance type of that type declaration and continuing with the instance type of each enclosing class or struct declaration (if any):
  - If **K** is zero and the declaration of **T** includes a type parameter with name **I**, then the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to that type parameter.
  - Otherwise, if T contains a nested accessible type having name I and K type parameters, then the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to that type constructed with the given type arguments. If there is more than one such type, the type declared within the more derived type is selected. [*Note*: Non-type members (constants, fields, methods, properties, indexers, operators, instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors) and type members with a different number of type parameters are ignored when determining the meaning of the *namespace-or-type-name*. *end note*]
- Otherwise, for each namespace N, starting with the namespace in which the *namespace-or-type-name* occurs, continuing with each enclosing namespace (if any), and ending with the global namespace, the following steps are evaluated until an entity is located:
  - If K is zero and I is the name of a namespace in N, then:
    - o If the location where the *namespace-or-type-name* occurs is enclosed by a namespace declaration for N and the namespace declaration contains an *extern-alias-directive* or *using-alias-directive* that associates the name I with a namespace or type, then the *namespace-or-type-name* is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
    - Otherwise, the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to the namespace named I in N.
  - Otherwise, if N contains an accessible type having name I and K type parameters, then:
    - o If **K** is zero and the location where the *namespace-or-type-name* occurs is enclosed by a namespace declaration for N and the namespace declaration contains an *extern-alias-directive* or *using-alias-directive* that associates the name I with a namespace or type, then the *namespace-or-type-name* is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
    - Otherwise, the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to the type constructed with the given type arguments.
  - Otherwise, if the location where the *namespace-or-type-name* occurs is enclosed by a namespace declaration for N:
    - o If **K** is zero and the namespace declaration contains an *extern-alias-directive* or *using-alias-directive* that associates the name **I** with an imported namespace or type, then the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to that namespace or type.
    - Otherwise, if the namespaces imported by the *using-namespace-directives* of the namespace declaration contain exactly one type having name I and K type parameters, then the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to that type constructed with the given type arguments.
    - Otherwise, if the namespaces imported by the *using-namespace-directives* of the namespace declaration contain more than one type having name I and K type parameters, then the *namespace-or-type-name* is ambiguous and an error occurs.
- Otherwise, the *namespace-or-type-name* is undefined and a compile-time error occurs.
- Otherwise, the *namespace-or-type-name* is of the form N. I or of the form N. I <A<sub>1</sub>, ..., A<sub>K</sub>>. N is first resolved as a *namespace-or-type-name*. If the resolution of N is not successful, a compile-time error occurs. Otherwise, N. I or N. I <A<sub>1</sub>, ..., A<sub>K</sub>> is resolved as follows:

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

- o If **K** is zero and **N** refers to a namespace and **N** contains a nested namespace with name **I**, then the namespace-or-type-name refers to that nested namespace.
- Otherwise, if N refers to a namespace and N contains an accessible type having name I and K type parameters, then the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to that type constructed with the given type arguments.
- Otherwise, if N refers to a (possibly constructed) class or struct type and N contains a nested accessible type having name I and K type parameters, then the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to that type constructed with the given type arguments. If there is more than one such type, the type declared within the more derived type is selected.
- Otherwise, N. I is an invalid *namespace-or-type-name*, and a compile-time error occurs.

A namespace-or-type-name is permitted to reference a static class (§17.1.1.3) if

- The namespace-or-type-name is the T in a namespace-or-type-name of the form T. I, or
- The namespace-or-type-name is the T in a typeof-expression (§14.5.11) of the form typeof (T)

### 10.8.1 Unqualified name

Every namespace declaration and type declaration has an *unqualified name* determined as follows:

- For a namespace declaration, the unqualified name is the *qualified-identifier* specified in the declaration.
- For a type declaration with no *type-parameter-list*, the unqualified name is the *identifier* specified in the declaration.
- For a type declaration with **K** type parameters, the unqualified name is the *identifier* specified in the declaration, followed by the *generic-dimension-specifier* (§14.5.11).

### 10.8.2 Fully qualified names

Every namespace declaration and type declaration has a *fully qualified name*, which uniquely identifies the namespace or type amongst all others. The fully qualified name of a namespace or type declaration with unqualified name N is determined as follows:

- If the declaration is contained directly in a compilation unit and not nested in any other declaration, its fully qualified name is N.
- Otherwise, its fully qualified name is S. N, where S is the fully qualified name of the immediately enclosing namespace or type declaration.

In other words, the fully qualified name of a declaration is the complete hierarchical path of identifiers (and *generic-dimension-specifier* (§14.5.11)) that lead to the type or namespace, starting from the global namespace. The fully qualified name of a declaration shall uniquely identify the namespace, non-generic type or generic instance type (§25.1.2) associated with the declaration. It is a compile-time error for the same fully qualified name to refer to two distinct entities. In particular:

- It is an error for both a namespace declaration and a type declaration to have the same fully qualified name.
- It is an error for two different kinds of type declarations to have the same fully qualified name (for example, if both a struct and class declaration have the same fully qualified name).
- It is an error for a type declaration without the partial modifier to have the same fully qualified name as another type declaration (§17.1.4).

[Example: The example below shows several namespace and type declarations along with their associated fully qualified names.

class A {} // A

```
namespace X
                    // X
                    // X. B
  class B
     class C {}
                    // X. B. C
  }
  namespace Y
                    // X. Y
                    // X. Y. D
     class D {}
  }
}
                    // X. Y
namespace X. Y
  class E {}
                    // X. Y. E
  class G<T> {
                    // X. Y. G<>
     class H {}
                    // X. Y. G<>. H
  class G<S, T> {
     }
```

end example]

# 10.9 Automatic memory management

C# employs automatic memory management, which frees developers from manually allocating and freeing the memory occupied by objects. Automatic memory management policies are implemented by a garbage collector. The memory management life cycle of an object is as follows:

- 1. When the object is created, memory is allocated for it, the constructor is run, and the object is considered *live*.
- 2. If no part of the object can be accessed by any possible continuation of execution, other than the running of finalizers, the object is considered *no longer in use* and it becomes eligible for finalization. [*Note*: Implementations might choose to analyze code to determine which references to an object can be used in the future. For instance, if a local variable that is in scope is the only existing reference to an object, but that local variable is never referred to in any possible continuation of execution from the current execution point in the procedure, an implementation might (but is not required to) treat the object as no longer in use. *end note*]
- 3. Once the object is eligible for finalization, at some unspecified later time the finalizer (§17.12) (if any) for the object is run. Unless overridden by explicit calls, the finalizer for the object is run once only.
- 4. Once the finalizer for an object is run, if that object, or any part of it, cannot be accessed by any possible continuation of execution, including the running of finalizers, the object is considered *inaccessible* and the object becomes eligible for collection.
- 5. Finally, at some time after the object becomes eligible for collection, the garbage collector frees the memory associated with that object.

The garbage collector maintains information about object usage, and uses this information to make memory management decisions, such as where in memory to locate a newly created object, when to relocate an object, and when an object is no longer in use or inaccessible.

Like other languages that assume the existence of a garbage collector, C# is designed so that the garbage collector can implement a wide range of memory management policies. For instance, C# does not require that finalizers be run or that objects be collected as soon as they are eligible, or that finalizers be run in any particular order, or on any particular thread.

The behavior of the garbage collector can be controlled, to some degree, via static methods on the class System. GC.

[Example: Since the garbage collector is allowed wide latitude in deciding when to collect objects and run finalizers, a conforming implementation might produce output that differs from that shown by the following code. The program

```
using System;
class A
      Console. WriteLine("Finalize instance of A");
}
class B
   object Ref;
   public B(object o) {
      Ref = o;
   }
   \sim B() {
      Console. WriteLine("Finalize instance of B");
}
class Test
   static void Main() {
      B b = new B(new A());
      b = null;
      GC. Collect();
GC. WaitForPendingFinalizers();
   }
}
```

creates an instance of class A and an instance of class B. These objects become eligible for garbage collection when the variable b is assigned the value nul l, since after this time it is impossible for any user-written code to access them. The output could be either

```
Finalize instance of A
Finalize instance of B
or
Finalize instance of B
Finalize instance of A
```

because the language imposes no constraints on the order in which objects are garbage collected.

In subtle cases, the distinction between "eligible for finalization" and "eligible for collection" can be important. For example,

```
using System;
class A
{
    ~A() {
        Console.WriteLine("Finalize instance of A");
    }
    public void F() {
        Console.WriteLine("A.F");
        Test.RefA = this;
    }
}
class B
{
    public A Ref;
    ~B() {
        Console.WriteLine("Finalize instance of B");
        Ref.F();
    }
}
```

```
class Test
   public static A RefA:
   public static B RefB;
   static void Main() {
      RefB = new B();
      RefA = new A();
      RefB. Ref = RefA;
      RefB = null;
      RefA = null:
       // A and B now eligible for finalization
      GC. Collect();
      GC. WaitForPendingFinalizers();
      // B now eligible if (RefA != null)
         B now eligible for collection, but A is not
          Console. WriteLine("RefA is not null");
   }
}
```

In the above program, if the garbage collector chooses to run the finalizer of A before the finalizer of B, then the output of this program might be:

```
Finalize instance of A
Finalize instance of B
A. F
RefA is not null
```

Note that although the instance of A was not in use and A's finalizer was run, it is still possible for methods of A (in this case, F) to be called from another finalizer. Also, note that running of a finalizer might cause an object to become usable from the mainline program again. In this case, the running of B's finalizer caused an instance of A that was previously not in use, to become accessible from the live reference RefA. After the call to Wai tForPendi ngFi nal i zers, the instance of B is eligible for collection, but the instance of A is not, because of the reference RefA.

To avoid confusion and unexpected behavior, it is generally a good idea for finalizers to perform cleanup only on data stored in their object's own fields, and not to perform any actions on referenced objects or static fields. *end example*]

### 10.10 Execution order

Execution shall proceed such that the side effects of each executing thread are preserved at critical execution points. A *side effect* is defined as a read or write of a volatile field, a write to a non-volatile variable, a write to an external resource, and the throwing of an exception. The critical execution points at which the order of these side effects shall be preserved are references to volatile fields (§17.4.3), lock statements (§15.12), and thread creation and termination. An implementation is free to change the order of execution of a C# program, subject to the following constraints:

- Data dependence is preserved within a thread of execution. That is, the value of each variable is computed as if all statements in the thread were executed in original program order.
- Initialization ordering rules are preserved (§17.4.4, §17.4.5).
- The ordering of side effects is preserved with respect to volatile reads and writes (§17.4.3). Additionally, an implementation need not evaluate part of an expression if it can deduce that that expression's value is not used and that no needed side effects are produced (including any caused by calling a method or accessing a volatile field). When program execution is interrupted by an asynchronous event (such as an exception thrown by another thread), it is not guaranteed that the observable side effects are visible in the original program order.

# 11. Types

The types of the C# language are divided into three main categories: Value types, reference types, and type-parameter types.

```
type:
value-type
reference-type
type-parameter
```

Type parameters are part of generics, and are discussed in §25.1.1. A fourth category of types, pointers, is available only in unsafe code. This is discussed further in §27.2.

Value types differ from reference types in that variables of the value types directly contain their data, whereas variables of the reference types store *references* to their data, the latter being known as *objects*. With reference types, it is possible for two variables to reference the same object, and thus possible for operations on one variable to affect the object referenced by the other variable. With value types, the variables each have their own copy of the data, and it is not possible for operations on one to affect the other. [*Note*: When a variable is a ref or out parameter, it does not have its own storage but references the storage of another variable. In this case, the ref or out variable is effectively an alias for another variable and not a distinct variable. *end note*]

C#'s type system is unified such that a value of any type can be treated as an object. Every type in C# directly or indirectly derives from the object class type, and object is the ultimate base class of all types. Values of reference types are treated as objects simply by viewing the values as type object. Values of value types are treated as objects by performing boxing and unboxing operations (§11.3).

# 11.1 Value types

A value type is either a struct type or an enumeration type. C# provides a set of predefined struct types called the *simple types*. The simple types are identified through reserved words.

```
value-type:
    struct-type
    enum-type

struct-type:
    type-name
    simple-type
    nullable-type

simple-type:
    numeric-type
    bool

numeric-type:
    integral-type
    floating-point-type
    deci mal
```

# C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
integral-type:
   sbyte
    byte
    short
    ushort
    i nt
    ui nt
    long
    ul ong
    char
floating-point-type:
   float
    doubl e
enum-type:
    type-name
nullable-type:
    non-nullable-value-type?
non-nullable-value-type:
    enum-type
    type-name
    simple-type
```

All value types implicitly inherit from class obj ect. It is not possible for any type to derive from a value type, and value types are thus implicitly sealed (§17.1.1.2).

A variable of a value type always contains a value of that type. Unlike reference types, it is not possible for a value of a value type to be **null**, or to reference an object of a more derived type.

Assignment to a variable of a value type creates a *copy* of the value being assigned. This differs from assignment to a variable of a reference type, which copies the reference but not the object identified by the reference.

# 11.1.1 The System.ValueType type

All value types implicitly inherit from the class **System**. **ValueType**, which, in turn, inherits from class **object**.

Note that **System**. **ValueType** is not itself a *value-type*. Rather, it is a *class-type* from which all *value-types* are automatically derived.

#### 11.1.2 Default constructors

All value types implicitly declare a public parameterless instance constructor called the *default constructor*. The default constructor returns a zero-initialized instance known as the *default value* for the value type:

- For all *simple-types*, the default value is the value produced by a bit pattern of all zeros:
  - o For sbyte, byte, short, ushort, i nt, ui nt, l ong, and ul ong, the default value is 0.
  - o For char, the default value is ' $\times$ 0000'.
  - o For float, the default value is 0. 0f.
  - o For doubl e, the default value is 0. 0d.
  - o For deci mal, the default value is 0m.
  - o For bool, the default value is fal se.
- For an *enum-type* E, the default value is 0.

- For a *struct-type*, the default value is the value produced by setting all value type fields to their default value and all reference type fields to **null**.
- For a nullable type, the default value is one for which HasVal ue returns fal se.

Like any other instance constructor, the default constructor of a value type is invoked using the new operator. [*Note*: For efficiency reasons, this requirement is not intended to actually have the implementation generate a constructor call. For value types, the default value expression (§14.5.14) produces the same result as using the default constructor. *end note*] [*Example*: In the code below, variables i, j and k are all initialized to zero.

```
class A
{
    void F() {
        int i = 0;
        int j = new int();
        int k = default(int);
    }
}
```

end example]

Because every value type implicitly has a public parameterless instance constructor, it is not possible for a struct type to contain an explicit declaration of a parameterless constructor. A struct type is however permitted to declare parameterized instance constructors (§18.3.8).

### 11.1.3 Struct types

A struct type is a value type that can declare constants, fields, methods, properties, indexers, operators, instance constructors, static constructors, and nested types. Struct types are described in §18.

# 11.1.4 Simple types

C# provides a set of predefined struct types called the simple types. The simple types are identified through reserved words, but these reserved words are simply aliases for predefined struct types in the System namespace, as described in the table below.

Reserved word	Aliased type		
sbyte	System SByte		
byte	System Byte		
short	System Int16		
ushort	System. UI nt16		
i nt	System Int32		
ui nt	System. UI nt32		
long	System Int64		
ul ong	System. UI nt64		
char	System. Char		
float	System. Single		
doubl e	System. Double		
bool	System. Bool ean		
decimal	System. Decimal		

Because a simple type aliases a struct type, every simple type has members. [*Example*: i nt has the members declared in System. Int32 and the members inherited from System. Object, and the following statements are permitted:

*end example*] The simple types differ from other struct types in that they permit certain additional operations:

- Most simple types permit values to be created by writing *literals* (§9.4.4). [*Example*: 123 is a literal of type int and 'a' is a literal of type char. *end example*] C# makes no provision for literals of struct types in general.
- When the operands of an expression are all simple type constants, the compiler evaluates the expression at compile-time. Such an expression is known as a *constant-expression* (§14.16). Expressions involving operators defined by other struct types are not considered constant expressions.
- Through const declarations, it is possible to declare constants of the simple types (§17.3). It is not possible to have constants of other struct types, but a similar effect is provided by static readonly fields.
- Conversions involving simple types can participate in evaluation of conversion operators defined by other struct types, but a user-defined conversion operator can never participate in evaluation of another user-defined conversion operator (§13.4.2).

# 11.1.5 Integral types

C# supports nine integral types: sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, and char. The integral types have the following sizes and ranges of values:

- The sbyte type represents signed 8-bit integers with values from -128 to 127, inclusive.
- The byte type represents unsigned 8-bit integers with values from 0 to 255, inclusive.
- The short type represents signed 16-bit integers with values from –32768 to 32767, inclusive.
- The ushort type represents unsigned 16-bit integers with values from 0 to 65535, inclusive.
- The i nt type represents signed 32-bit integers with values from -2147483648 to 2147483647, inclusive.
- The ui nt type represents unsigned 32-bit integers with values from 0 to 4294967295, inclusive.
- The long type represents signed 64-bit integers with values from -9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807, inclusive.
- The **ul** ong type represents unsigned 64-bit integers with values from 0 to 18446744073709551615, inclusive.
- The char type represents unsigned 16-bit integers with values from 0 to 65535, inclusive. The set of possible values for the char type corresponds to the Unicode character set. [Note: Although char has the same representation as ushort, not all operations permitted on one type are permitted on the other. end note]

The integral-type unary and binary operators always operate with signed 32-bit precision, unsigned 32-bit precision, signed 64-bit precision, or unsigned 64-bit precision, as detailed in clause §14.

The char type is classified as an integral type, but it differs from the other integral types in two ways:

- There are no implicit conversions from other types to the char type. In particular, even though the sbyte, byte, and ushort types have ranges of values that are fully representable using the char type, implicit conversions from sbyte, byte, or ushort to char do not exist.
- Constants of the char type shall be written as *character-literals* or as *integer-literals* in combination with a cast to type char. [*Example*: (char) 10 is the same as '\x000A'. *end example*]

The checked and unchecked operators and statements are used to control overflow checking for integral-type arithmetic operations and conversions (§14.5.12). In a checked context, an overflow produces a compile-time error or causes a System. OverflowException to be thrown. In an unchecked context, overflows are ignored and any high-order bits that do not fit in the destination type are discarded.

# 11.1.6 Floating point types

C# supports two floating-point types: float and double. The float and double types are represented using the 32-bit single-precision and 64-bit double-precision IEC 60559 formats, which provide the following sets of values:

- Positive zero and negative zero. In most situations, positive zero and negative zero behave identically as the simple value zero, but certain operations distinguish between the two (§14.7.2).
- Positive infinity and negative infinity. Infinities are produced by such operations as dividing a non-zero number by zero. [*Example*: 1. 0 / 0. 0 yields positive infinity, and −1. 0 / 0. 0 yields negative infinity. end example]
- The *Not-a-Number* value, often abbreviated NaN. NaNs are produced by invalid floating-point operations, such as dividing zero by zero.
- The finite set of non-zero values of the form  $s \times m \times 2^e$ , where s is 1 or −1, and m and e are determined by the particular floating-point type: For float,  $0 < m < 2^{24}$  and  $-149 \le e \le 104$ , and for double,  $0 < m < 2^{53}$  and  $-1075 \le e \le 970$ . Denormalized floating-point numbers are considered valid non-zero values. C# neither requires nor forbids that a conforming implementation support denormalized floating-point numbers.

The float type can represent values ranging from approximately  $1.5 \times 10^{-45}$  to  $3.4 \times 10^{38}$  with a precision of 7 digits.

The **doubl** e type can represent values ranging from approximately  $5.0 \times 10^{-324}$  to  $1.7 \times 10^{308}$  with a precision of 15–16 digits.

The floating-point operators, including the assignment operators, never produce exceptions. Instead, in exceptional situations, floating-point operations produce zero, infinity, or NaN, as described below:

- The result of a floating-point operation is rounded to the nearest representable value in the destination format. This may cause a non-zero value to be rounded to zero.
- If the magnitude of the result of a floating-point operation is too large for the destination format, the result of the operation becomes positive infinity or negative infinity.
- If a floating-point operation is invalid, the result of the operation becomes NaN.
- If one or both operands of a floating-point operation is NaN, the result of the operation becomes NaN.

Floating-point operations can be performed with higher precision than the result type of the operation. [Example: Some hardware architectures support an "extended" or "long double" floating-point type with greater range and precision than the doubl e type, and implicitly perform all floating-point operations using this higher precision type. Only at excessive cost in performance can such hardware architectures be made to perform floating-point operations with *less* precision, and rather than require an implementation to forfeit both performance and precision, C# allows a higher precision type to be used for all floating-point operations. Other than delivering more precise results, this rarely has any measurable effects. However, in expressions of the form  $\mathbf{x} * \mathbf{y} / \mathbf{z}$ , where the multiplication produces a result that is outside the doubl e range, but the subsequent division brings the temporary result back into the doubl e range, the fact that the expression is evaluated in a higher range format can cause a finite result to be produced instead of an infinity. *end example*]

# 11.1.7 The decimal type

The deci mal type is a 128-bit data type suitable for financial and monetary calculations. The deci mal type can represent values including those in the range  $1 \times 10^{-28}$  through  $1 \times 10^{28}$  with at least 28 significant digits.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

The finite set of values of type  $\operatorname{deci} \operatorname{mal}$  are of the form  $(-1)^s \times c \times 10^{-e}$ , where the sign s is 0 or 1, the coefficient c is given by  $0 \le c < Cmax$ , and the scale e is such that  $Emin \le e \le Emax$ , where Cmax is at least  $1 \times 10^{28}$ ,  $Emin \le 0$ , and  $Emax \ge 28$ . The  $\operatorname{deci} \operatorname{mal}$  type does not necessarily support signed zeros, infinities, or NaN's.

A deci mal is represented as an integer scaled by a power of ten. For deci mal s with an absolute value less than 1. Om, the value is exact to at least the 28<sup>th</sup> decimal place. For deci mal s with an absolute value greater than or equal to 1.0m, the value is exact to at least 28 digits. Contrary to the float and double data types, decimal fractional numbers such as 0. 1 can be represented exactly in the deci mal representation. In the float and double representations, such numbers often have non-terminating binary expansions, making those representations more prone to round-off errors.

The result of an operation on values of type **deci mal** is that which would result from calculating an exact result (preserving scale, as defined for each operator) and then rounding to fit the representation. Results are rounded to the nearest representable value, and, when a result is equally close to two representable values, to the value that has an even number in the least significant digit position (this is known as "banker's rounding"). That is, results are exact to at least the 28<sup>th</sup> decimal place. Note that rounding may produce a zero value from a non-zero value.

If a decimal arithmetic operation produces a result whose magnitude is too large for the decimal format, a System. OverflowException is thrown.

The deci mal type has greater precision but may have a smaller range than the floating-point types. Thus, conversions from the floating-point types to deci mal might produce overflow exceptions, and conversions from deci mal to the floating-point types might cause loss of precision or overflow exceptions. For these reasons, no implicit conversions exist between the floating-point types and deci mal, and without explicit casts, a compile-time error occurs when floating-point and deci mal operands are directly mixed in the same expression.

# 11.1.8 The bool type

The bool type represents Boolean logical quantities. The possible values of type bool are true and fal se.

No standard conversions exist between **bool** and other types. In particular, the **bool** type is distinct and separate from the integral types, and a **bool** value cannot be used in place of an integral value, and vice versa.

[*Note*: In the C and C++ languages, a zero integral or floating-point value, or a null pointer can be converted to the Boolean value fal se, and a non-zero integral or floating-point value, or a non-null pointer can be converted to the Boolean value true. In C#, such conversions are accomplished by explicitly comparing an integral or floating-point value to zero, or by explicitly comparing an object reference to null. end note]

### 11.1.9 Enumeration types

An enumeration type is a distinct type with named constants. Every enumeration type has an underlying type, which shall be byte, sbyte, short, ushort, int, uint, long or ulong. Enumeration types are defined through enumeration declarations (§21.1). The direct base type of every enumeration type is the class System. Enum. The direct base class of System. Enum is System. Val ueType.

# 11.2 Reference types

A reference type is a class type, an interface type, an array type, or a delegate type.

```
reference-type:
class-type
interface-type
array-type
delegate-type
```

```
class-type:
    type-name
    obj ect
    string
interface-type:
    type-name
array-type:
   non-array-type rank-specifiers
non-array-type:
   value-type
    class-type
    interface-type
    delegate-type
    type-parameter
rank-specifiers:
    rank-specifier
    rank-specifiers rank-specifier
rank-specifier:
    [ dim-separators<sub>opt</sub> ]
dim-separators:
    dim-separators ,
delegate-type:
    type-name
```

A reference type value is a reference to an *instance* of the type, the latter known as an *object*. The special value nul 1 is compatible with all reference types and indicates the absence of an instance.

# 11.2.1 Class types

A class type defines a data structure that contains data members (constants and fields), function members (methods, properties, events, indexers, operators, instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors), and nested types. Class types support inheritance, a mechanism whereby derived classes can extend and specialize base classes. Instances of class types are created using *object-creation-expressions* (§14.5.10.1).

Class types are described in §17.

### 11.2.2 The object type

The object class type is the ultimate base class of all other types. Every type in C# directly or indirectly derives from the object class type.

The keyword object is simply an alias for the predefined class System. Object.

# 11.2.3 The string type

The string type is a sealed class type that inherits directly from object. Instances of the string class represent Unicode character strings.

Values of the stri ng type can be written as string literals (§9.4.4).

The keyword string is simply an alias for the predefined class System. String.

### 11.2.4 Interface types

An interface defines a contract. A class or struct that implements an interface shall adhere to its contract. An interface can inherit from multiple base interfaces, and a class or struct can implement multiple interfaces.

Interface types are described in §20.

# 11.2.5 Array types

An array is a data structure that contains zero or more variables which are accessed through computed indices. The variables contained in an array, also called the elements of the array, are all of the same type, and this type is called the element type of the array.

Array types are described in §19.

# 11.2.6 Delegate types

A delegate is a data structure that refers to one or more methods, and for instance methods, it also refers to their corresponding object instances.

[*Note*: The closest equivalent of a delegate in C or C++ is a function pointer, but whereas a function pointer can only reference static functions, a delegate can reference both static and instance methods. In the latter case, the delegate stores not only a reference to the method's entry point, but also a reference to the object instance on which to invoke the method. *end note*]

Delegate types are described in §22.

# 11.2.7 The null type

The null literal (§9.4.4.6) evaluates to the *null value*, which is used to denote a reference not pointing at any object or array, or the absence of a value. The *null type* has a single value, which is the null value. Hence an expression whose type is the null type can evaluate only to the null value. There is no way to explicitly write the null type and, therefore, no way to use it in a declared type.

Moreover, the null type can never be the type inferred for a type parameter (§25.6.4).

# 11.3 Boxing and unboxing

The concept of boxing and unboxing is central to C#'s type system. It provides a bridge between *value-types* and *reference-types* by permitting any value of a *value-type* to be converted to and from type obj ect. Boxing and unboxing enables a unified view of the type system wherein a value of any type can ultimately be treated as an object.

### 11.3.1 Boxing conversions

A boxing conversion permits any *non-nullable-value-type* to be implicitly converted to **obj** ect or System. ValueType or to any *interface-type* implemented by the *non-nullable-value-type*. Furthermore, there is an implicit boxing conversion from any enumeration type to System. Enum. Boxing a value of a *non-nullable-value-type* consists of allocating an object instance and copying the *value-type* value into that instance. A boxing conversion is also permitted on a *nullable-type*. A nullable type T? has boxing conversions to the same set of types as T. A boxing conversion from a nullable type T? is processed as follows:

- If the source value is null (HasVal ue property is false), the result is a null reference of the target type.
- Otherwise, the result is a reference to a boxed T produced by unwrapping and boxing the source value.

[Note: As a consequence of this, if v is a value of a nullable type and vb is the result of boxing v, then the four expressions vb==null, v==null, null==vb, and null==v produce the same result.

The actual process of boxing a value of a *value-type* is best explained by imagining the existence of a *boxing class* for that type. For example, for any *value-type* T, the boxing class behaves as if it were declared as follows:

```
sealed class T_Box
{
    T value;
```

```
public T_Box(T t) {
     value = t;
}
```

Boxing of a value v of type T now consists of executing the expression new  $T_Box(v)$ , and returning the resulting instance as a value of type object. Thus, the statements

```
int i = 123;
object box = i;

conceptually correspond to
   int i = 123;
   object box = new int_Box(i);
```

Boxing classes like **T\_Box** and **i nt\_Box** above don't actually exist and the dynamic type of a boxed value isn't actually a class type. Instead, a boxed value of type **T** has the dynamic type **T**, and a dynamic type check using the **i s** operator can simply reference type **T**. For example,

```
int i = 123;
object box = i;
if (box is int) {
   Console. Write("Box contains an int");
}
```

will output the string "Box contains an int" on the console.

A boxing conversion implies *making a copy* of the value being boxed. This is different from a conversion of a *reference-type* to type **obj ect**, in which the value continues to reference the same instance and simply is regarded as the less derived type **obj ect**. For example, given the declaration

```
struct Point
{
    public int x, y;
    public Point(int x, int y) {
        this. x = x;
        this. y = y;
    }
}
```

the following statements

```
Point p = new Point(10, 10);

object box = p;

p. x = 20;

Consol e. Write(((Point)box).x);
```

will output the value 10 on the console because the implicit boxing operation that occurs in the assignment of **p** to **box** causes the value of **p** to be copied. Had **Poi** nt been declared a **cl** ass instead, the value 20 would be output because **p** and box would reference the same instance. *end note*]

# 11.3.2 Unboxing conversions

An unboxing conversion permits an explicit conversion from object or System. ValueType to any *non-nullable-value-type* or from any *interface-type* to any *non-nullable-value-type* that implements the *interface-type*. Furthermore, there is an explicit unboxing conversion from System. Enum to any enumeration type. An unboxing operation consists of first checking that the object instance is a boxed value of the given *value-type*, and then copying the value out of the instance.

A nullable-type T? has unboxing conversions from the same set of types as T. An unboxing conversion permits an explicit conversion from **obj** ect or **System**. **Val ueType** to any *nullable-type* or from any *interface-type* to any *nullable-type* whose underlying type implements the *interface-type*. Furthermore, there is an explicit unboxing conversion from **System**. **Enum** to any *nullable-type* whose underlying type is an enumeration type. An unboxing conversion to a nullable-type T? is processed as follows:

• If the source is a null reference, the result is a null value of type T?.

- If the source is a reference to a boxed T, the result is a T? produced by unboxing and wrapping the source.
- Otherwise, a System. Inval i dCastExcepti on is thrown.

Referring to the imaginary boxing class described in the previous subclause, an unboxing conversion of an object **box** to a *value-type* T consists of executing the expression ((T\_Box) box). val ue. [Example: Thus, the statements

```
obj ect box = 123;
int i = (int)box;
conceptually correspond to
  obj ect box = new int_Box(123);
  int i = ((int_Box)box).value;
```

For an unboxing conversion to a given *value-type* to succeed at run-time, the value of the source operand shall be a reference to an object that was previously created by boxing a value of that *value-type*. If the source operand is **null** a **System**. **NullReferenceException** is thrown. If the source operand is a reference to an incompatible object, a **System**. I **nvalidCastException** is thrown.

# 11.4 Nullable types

end example]

A *nullable type* is a structure that combines a value of the underlying type together with a null indicator. More precisely, an instance of a nullable type has two public read-only properties: <code>HasVal ue</code>, of type bool, and <code>Val ue</code>, of the nullable type's underlying type. <code>HasVal ue</code> is true for a non-null instance and false for a null instance. When <code>HasVal ue</code> is true, the <code>Val ue</code> property returns the contained value. When <code>HasVal ue</code> is false, an attempt to access the <code>Val ue</code> property results in an exception. A nullable type is classified as a value type (§11.1).

```
nullable-type:
non-nullable-value-type?
```

The *non-nullable-value-type* specified before the ? modifier in a nullable type is called the *underlying type* of the nullable type. The underlying type of a nullable type shall be any non-nullable value type or any type parameter that is constrained (§25.7) to non-nullable value types (that is, any type parameter with a struct constraint). The underlying type of a nullable type shall not be a nullable type or a reference type. [Example: int?? and string? are invalid types. end example]

A nullable type can represent all values of its underlying type plus an additional null value.

T? and System. Nullable < T > denote the same type.

#### 11.4.1 Members

An instance of a nullable type T? has two public read-only properties:

- A HasVal ue property of type bool
- A Val ue property of type T

An instance for which **HasVal ue** is true is said to be non-null. A non-null instance contains a known value and **Val ue** returns that value.

An instance for which HasVal ue is false is said to be null. Attempting to read the Val ue of a null instance causes a System. I nval i d0perati onExcepti on to be thrown.

In addition to the default constructor, every nullable type T? has a public constructor that takes a single argument of type T. Given a value x of type T, a constructor invocation of the form

```
new T?(x)
```

creates a non-null instance of T? for which the Val ue property is x.

It is never necessary to explicitly invoke a nullable type's constructor, since equivalent functionality is provided as an implicit conversion from T to T?.

# 11.4.2 Implemented interfaces

A type of the form T?, which is an alias for System. Nullable<T>, implements no interfaces (§20). In particular, this means it does not implement any interface that the underlying type T does.

# 12. Variables

Variables represent storage locations. Every variable has a type that determines what values can be stored in the variable. C# is a type-safe language, and the C# compiler guarantees that values stored in variables are always of the appropriate type. The value of a variable can be changed through assignment or through use of the ++ and - - operators.

A variable shall be *definitely assigned* (§12.3) before its value can be obtained.

As described in the following subclauses, variables are either *initially assigned* or *initially unassigned*. An initially assigned variable has a well-defined initial value and is always considered definitely assigned. An initially unassigned variable has no initial value. For an initially unassigned variable to be considered definitely assigned at a certain location, an assignment to the variable shall occur in every possible execution path leading to that location.

# 12.1 Variable categories

C# defines seven categories of variables: static variables, instance variables, array elements, value parameters, reference parameters, output parameters, and local variables. The subclauses that follow describe each of these categories.

[Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
    public static int x;
    int y;

    void F(int[] v, int a, ref int b, out int c) {
        int i = 1;
        c = a + b++;
    }
}
```

 $\mathbf{x}$  is a static variable,  $\mathbf{y}$  is an instance variable,  $\mathbf{v}[\mathbf{0}]$  is an array element,  $\mathbf{a}$  is a value parameter,  $\mathbf{b}$  is a reference parameter,  $\mathbf{c}$  is an output parameter, and  $\mathbf{i}$  is a local variable. *end example*]

### 12.1.1 Static variables

A field declared with the static modifier is called a *static variable*. A static variable comes into existence before execution of the static constructor (§17.11) for its containing type, and ceases to exist when the associated application domain ceases to exist.

The initial value of a static variable is the default value (§12.2) of the variable's type.

For the purposes of definite assignment checking, a static variable is considered initially assigned.

#### 12.1.2 Instance variables

A field declared without the static modifier is called an *instance variable*.

#### 12.1.2.1 Instance variables in classes

An instance variable of a class comes into existence when a new instance of that class is created, and ceases to exist when there are no references to that instance and the instance's finalizer (if any) has executed.

The initial value of an instance variable of a class is the default value (§12.2) of the variable's type.

For the purpose of definite assignment checking, an instance variable is considered initially assigned.

#### 12.1.2.2 Instance variables in structs

An instance variable of a struct has exactly the same lifetime as the struct variable to which it belongs. In other words, when a variable of a struct type comes into existence or ceases to exist, so too do the instance variables of the struct.

The initial assignment state of an instance variable of a struct is the same as that of the containing struct variable. In other words, when a struct variable is considered initially assigned, so too are its instance variables, and when a struct variable is considered initially unassigned, its instance variables are likewise unassigned.

# 12.1.3 Array elements

The elements of an array come into existence when an array instance is created, and cease to exist when there are no references to that array instance.

The initial value of each of the elements of an array is the default value (§12.2) of the type of the array elements.

For the purpose of definite assignment checking, an array element is considered initially assigned.

### 12.1.4 Value parameters

A parameter declared without a ref or out modifier is a *value parameter*.

A value parameter comes into existence upon invocation of the function member (method, instance constructor, accessor, or operator) to which the parameter belongs, and is initialized with the value of the argument given in the invocation. A value parameter ceases to exist upon return of the function member (except when the value parameter is captured by an anonymous method (§14.5.15.3.1) or the function member body is an iterator block (§26)).

For the purpose of definite assignment checking, a value parameter is considered initially assigned.

#### 12.1.5 Reference parameters

A parameter declared with a ref modifier is a reference parameter.

A reference parameter does not create a new storage location. Instead, a reference parameter represents the same storage location as the variable given as the argument in the function member invocation. Thus, the value of a reference parameter is always the same as the underlying variable.

The following definite assignment rules apply to reference parameters. [*Note*: The rules for output parameters are different, and are described in §12.1.6. *end note*]

- A variable shall be definitely assigned (§12.3) before it can be passed as a reference parameter in a function member invocation.
- Within a function member, a reference parameter is considered initially assigned.

Within an instance method or instance accessor of a struct type, the this keyword behaves exactly as a reference parameter of the struct type (§14.5.7).

#### 12.1.6 Output parameters

A parameter declared with an out modifier is an *output parameter*.

An output parameter does not create a new storage location. Instead, an output parameter represents the same storage location as the variable given as the argument in the function member invocation. Thus, the value of an output parameter is always the same as the underlying variable.

The following definite assignment rules apply to output parameters. [*Note*: The rules for reference parameters are different, and are described in §12.1.5. *end note*]

- A variable need not be definitely assigned before it can be passed as an output parameter in a function member invocation.
- Following the normal completion of a function member invocation, each variable that was passed as an output parameter is considered assigned in that execution path.
- Within a function member, an output parameter is considered initially unassigned.
- Every output parameter of a function member shall be definitely assigned (§12.3) before the function member returns normally.

Within an instance constructor of a struct type, the this keyword behaves exactly as an output or reference parameter of the struct type, depending on whether the constructor declaration includes a constructor initializer (§14.5.7).

### 12.1.7 Local variables

A *local variable* is declared by a *local-variable-declaration*, *foreach-statement*, or *specific-catch-clause* of a *try-statement*. For a *foreach-statement*, the local variable is an iteration variable (§15.8.4). For a *specific-catch-clause*, the local variable is an exception variable (§15.10). A local variable declared by a *foreach-statement* or *specific-catch-clause* is considered initially assigned.

A local-variable-declaration can occur in a block, a for-statement, a switch-block, or a using-statement.

The lifetime of a local variable is the portion of program execution during which storage is guaranteed to be reserved for it. This lifetime extends from entry into the scope with which it is associated, at least until execution of that scope ends in some way. (Entering an enclosed *block*, calling a method, or yielding a value from an iterator block suspends, but does not end, execution of the current scope.) If the local variable is captured by an anonymous method, the lifetime of the variable is extended at least until all referencing delegates are eligible for garbage collection (§14.5.15.3.1). If the parent scope is entered recursively or iteratively, a new instance of the local variable is created each time, and its *local-variable-initializer*, if any, is evaluated each time. [*Note*: A local variable is instantiated each time its scope is entered. This behavior is visible to user code containing anonymous methods. *end note*]

A local variable introduced by a *local-variable-declaration* is not automatically initialized and thus has no default value. Such a local variable is considered initially unassigned. A *local-variable-declaration* can include a *local-variable-initializer*, in which case the variable is considered definitely assigned in its entire scope, except within the expression provided in the *local-variable-initializer*.

Within the scope of a local variable, it is a compile-time error to refer to that local variable in a textual position that precedes its *local-variable-declarator*.

[*Note*: The actual lifetime of a local variable is implementation-dependent. For example, a compiler might statically determine that a local variable in a block is only used for a small portion of that block. Using this analysis, the compiler could generate code that results in the variable's storage having a shorter lifetime than its containing block.

The storage referred to by a local reference variable is reclaimed independently of the lifetime of that local reference variable (§10.9). *end note*]

# 12.2 Default values

The following categories of variables are automatically initialized to their default values:

- Static variables
- Instance variables of class instances
- Array elements

The default value of a variable depends on the type of the variable and is determined as follows:

# C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

- For a variable of a *value-type*, the default value is the same as the value computed by the *value-type*'s default constructor (§11.1.2).
- For a variable of a reference-type, the default value is **null**.

[*Note*: Initialization to default values is typically done by having the memory manager or garbage collector initialize memory to all-bits-zero before it is allocated for use. For this reason, it is convenient to use all-bits-zero to represent the null reference. *end note*]

The default value of a nullable type is an instance for which the HasVal ue property is false. Referencing the Val ue property of a default value of a nullable type results in an exception of type System. Inval i d0perati onExcepti on. The default value is also known as the *null value* of the nullable type. An implicit conversion exists from the null 1 type (§11.2.7) to any nullable type, and this conversion produces the null value of the type.

# 12.3 Definite assignment

At a given location in the executable code of a function member, a variable is said to be *definitely assigned* if the compiler can prove, by a particular static flow analysis (§12.3.3), that the variable has been automatically initialized or has been the target of at least one assignment. [*Note*: Informally stated, the rules of definite assignment are:

- An initially assigned variable (§12.3.1) is always considered definitely assigned.
- An initially unassigned variable (§12.3.2) is considered definitely assigned at a given location if all possible execution paths leading to that location contain at least one of the following:
  - o A simple assignment (§14.14.1) in which the variable is the left operand.
  - o An invocation expression (§14.5.5) or object creation expression (§14.5.10.1) that passes the variable as an output parameter.
  - o For a local variable, a local variable declaration (§15.5) that includes a variable initializer.

The formal specification underlying the above informal rules is described in §12.3.1, §12.3.2, and §12.3.3. *end note*]

The definite assignment states of instance variables of a *struct-type* variable are tracked individually as well as collectively. In additional to the rules above, the following rules apply to *struct-type* variables and their instance variables:

- An instance variable is considered definitely assigned if its containing *struct-type* variable is considered definitely assigned.
- A *struct-type* variable is considered definitely assigned if each of its instance variables is considered definitely assigned.

Definite assignment is a requirement in the following contexts:

- A variable shall be definitely assigned at each location where its value is obtained. [*Note*: This ensures that undefined values never occur. *end note*] The occurrence of a variable in an expression is considered to obtain the value of the variable, except when
  - o the variable is the left operand of a simple assignment,
  - o the variable is passed as an output parameter, or
  - o the variable is a *struct-type* variable and occurs as the left operand of a member access.
- A variable shall be definitely assigned at each location where it is passed as a reference parameter. [*Note*: This ensures that the function member being invoked can consider the reference parameter initially assigned. *end note*]
- All output parameters of a function member shall be definitely assigned at each location where the function member returns (through a return statement or through execution reaching the end of the

function member body). [*Note*: This ensures that function members do not return undefined values in output parameters, thus enabling the compiler to consider a function member invocation that takes a variable as an output parameter equivalent to an assignment to the variable. *end note*]

• The this variable of a *struct-type* instance constructor shall be definitely assigned at each location where that instance constructor returns.

# 12.3.1 Initially assigned variables

The following categories of variables are classified as initially assigned:

- Static variables
- Instance variables of class instances
- Instance variables of initially assigned struct variables
- Array elements
- Value parameters
- Reference parameters
- Variables declared by a catch clause, a foreach statement, or a usi ng statement.

## 12.3.2 Initially unassigned variables

The following categories of variables are classified as initially unassigned:

- Instance variables of initially unassigned struct variables.
- Output parameters, including the this variable of struct instance constructors without a constructor initializer.
- Local variables, except those declared in a catch clause, a foreach statement, or a usi ng statement.

# 12.3.3 Precise rules for determining definite assignment

In order to determine that each used variable is definitely assigned, the compiler shall use a process that is equivalent to the one described in this subclause.

The compiler processes the body of each function member that has one or more initially unassigned variables. For each initially unassigned variable v, the compiler determines a *definite assignment state* for v at each of the following points in the function member:

- At the beginning of each statement
- At the end point (§15.1) of each statement
- On each arc which transfers control to another statement or to the end point of a statement
- At the beginning of each expression
- At the end of each expression

The definite assignment state of v can be either:

- Definitely assigned. This indicates that on all possible control flows to this point, *v* has been assigned a value.
- Not definitely assigned. For the state of a variable at the end of an expression of type **bool**, the state of a variable that isn't definitely assigned might (but doesn't necessarily) fall into one of the following substates:

- O Definitely assigned after true expression. This state indicates that *v* is definitely assigned if the Boolean expression evaluated as true, but is not necessarily assigned if the Boolean expression evaluated as false.
- O Definitely assigned after false expression. This state indicates that *v* is definitely assigned if the Boolean expression evaluated as false, but is not necessarily assigned if the Boolean expression evaluated as true.

The following rules govern how the state of a variable v is determined at each location.

# 12.3.3.1 General rules for statements

- v is not definitely assigned at the beginning of a function member body.
- *v* is definitely assigned at the beginning of any unreachable statement.
- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of any other statement is determined by checking the definite assignment state of v on all control flow transfers that target the beginning of that statement. If (and only if) v is definitely assigned on all such control flow transfers, then v is definitely assigned at the beginning of the statement. The set of possible control flow transfers is determined in the same way as for checking statement reachability (§15.1).
- The definite assignment state of v at the end point of a block, checked, unchecked, if, while, do, for, foreach, lock, using, or switch statement is determined by checking the definite assignment state of v on all control flow transfers that target the end point of that statement. If v is definitely assigned on all such control flow transfers, then v is definitely assigned at the end point of the statement. Otherwise, v is not definitely assigned at the end point of the statement. The set of possible control flow transfers is determined in the same way as for checking statement reachability (§15.1).

#### 12.3.3.2 Block statements, checked, and unchecked statements

The definite assignment state of v on the control transfer to the first statement of the statement list in the block (or to the end point of the block, if the statement list is empty) is the same as the definite assignment statement of v before the block, checked, or unchecked statement.

#### 12.3.3.3 Expression statements

For an expression statement *stmt* that consists of the expression *expr*:

- v has the same definite assignment state at the beginning of expr as at the beginning of stmt.
- If v if definitely assigned at the end of expr, it is definitely assigned at the end point of stmt; otherwise, it is not definitely assigned at the end point of stmt.

#### 12.3.3.4 Declaration statements

- If *stmt* is a declaration statement without initializers, then *v* has the same definite assignment state at the end point of *stmt* as at the beginning of *stmt*.
- If *stmt* is a declaration statement with initializers, then the definite assignment state for *v* is determined as if *stmt* were a statement list, with one assignment statement for each declaration with an initializer (in the order of declaration).

## 12.3.3.5 If statements

For an if statement *stmt* of the form:

if ( expr ) then-stmt else else-stmt

- v has the same definite assignment state at the beginning of expr as at the beginning of stmt.
- If *v* is definitely assigned at the end of *expr*, then it is definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to *then-stmt* and to either *else-stmt* or to the end-point of *stmt* if there is no else clause.

- If v has the state "definitely assigned after true expression" at the end of *expr*, then it is definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to *then-stmt*, and not definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to either *else-stmt* or to the end-point of *stmt* if there is no else clause.
- If *v* has the state "definitely assigned after false expression" at the end of *expr*, then it is definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to *else-stmt*, and not definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to *then-stmt*. It is definitely assigned at the end-point of *stmt* if and only if it is definitely assigned at the end-point of *then-stmt*.
- Otherwise, v is considered not definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to either the *then-stmt* or *else-stmt*, or to the end-point of *stmt* if there is no else clause.

#### 12.3.3.6 Switch statements

In a switch statement *stmt* with a controlling expression *expr*:

- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of expr is the same as the state of v at the beginning of stmt.
- The definite assignment state of *v* on the control flow transfer to a reachable switch block statement list is the same as the definite assignment state of *v* at the end of *expr*.

#### 12.3.3.7 While statements

For a while statement stmt of the form:

```
while ( expr ) while-body
```

- v has the same definite assignment state at the beginning of expr as at the beginning of stmt.
- If *v* is definitely assigned at the end of *expr*, then it is definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to *while-body* and to the end point of *stmt*.
- If v has the state "definitely assigned after true expression" at the end of expr, then it is definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to while-body, but not definitely assigned at the end-point of stmt.
- If *v* has the state "definitely assigned after false expression" at the end of *expr*, then it is definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to the end point of *stmt*, but not definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to *while-body*.

## 12.3.3.8 Do statements

For a **do** statement *stmt* of the form:

```
do do-body while ( expr ):
```

- *v* has the same definite assignment state on the control flow transfer from the beginning of *stmt* to *dobody* as at the beginning of *stmt*.
- v has the same definite assignment state at the beginning of expr as at the end point of do-body.
- If *v* is definitely assigned at the end of *expr*, then it is definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to the end point of *stmt*.
- If *v* has the state "definitely assigned after false expression" at the end of *expr*, then it is definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to the end point of *stmt*, but not definitely assigned on the control flow transfer to *do-body*.

# 12.3.3.9 For statements

Definite assignment checking for a for statement of the form:

```
for ( for-initializer ; for-condition ; for-iterator ) embedded-statement
```

is done as if the statement were written:

```
{
    for-initializer ;
    while (for-condition) {
        embedded-statement ;
LLoop:
        for-iterator ;
    }
}
```

with **continue** statements that target the **for** statement being translated to **goto** statements targeting the label **LLoop**. If the *for-condition* is omitted from the **for** statement, then evaluation of definite assignment proceeds as if *for-condition* were replaced with **true** in the above expansion.

## 12.3.3.10 Break, continue, and goto statements

The definite assignment state of v on the control flow transfer caused by a **break**, **continue**, or **goto** statement is the same as the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of the statement.

#### 12.3.3.11 Throw statements

For a statement stmt of the form

```
throw expr;
```

the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of expr is the same as the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of stmt.

#### 12.3.3.12 Return statements

For a statement stmt of the form

```
return expr;
```

- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of expr is the same as the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of stmt.
- If v is an output parameter, then it shall be definitely assigned either:
  - o after expr
  - o or at the end of the finally block of a try-finally or try-catch-finally that encloses the return statement.

For a statement *stmt* of the form:

```
return;
```

- If *v* is an output parameter, then it shall be definitely assigned either:
  - o before stmt
  - o or at the end of the finally block of a try-finally or try-catch-finally that encloses the return statement.

## 12.3.3.13 Try-catch statements

For a statement *stmt* of the form:

```
try try-block
catch ( ... ) catch-block-1
...
catch ( ... ) catch-block-n
```

• The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of try-block is the same as the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of stmt.

- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of catch-block-i (for any i) is the same as the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of stmt.
- The definite assignment state of *v* at the end-point of *stmt* is definitely assigned if (and only if) *v* is definitely assigned at the end-point of *try-block* and every *catch-block-i* (for every *i* from 1 to *n*).

## 12.3.3.14 Try-finally statements

For a try statement *stmt* of the form:

```
try try-block finally finally-block
```

- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of try-block is the same as the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of stmt.
- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of *finally-block* is the same as the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of *stmt*.
- The definite assignment state of v at the end-point of *stmt* is definitely assigned if (and only if) either:
  - o v is definitely assigned at the end-point of try-block
  - o v is definitely assigned at the end-point of finally-block

If a control flow transfer (such as a **goto** statement) is made that begins within try-block, and ends outside of try-block, then v is also considered definitely assigned on that control flow transfer if v is definitely assigned at the end-point of finally-block. (This is not an only if—if v is definitely assigned for another reason on this control flow transfer, then it is still considered definitely assigned.)

## 12.3.3.15 Try-catch-finally statements

Definite assignment analysis for a try-catch-finally statement of the form:

```
try try-block
catch ( ... ) catch-block-1
...
catch ( ... ) catch-block-n
finally finally-block
```

is done as if the statement were a try-finally statement enclosing a try-catch statement:

```
try {
    try try-block
    catch ( ... ) catch-block-1
    ...
    catch ( ... ) catch-block-n
}
finally finally-block
```

[Example: The following example demonstrates how the different blocks of a try statement (§15.10) affect definite assignment.

```
class A
{
    static void F() {
        int i, j;
        try {
            goto LABEL;
            // neither i nor j definitely assigned
            i = 1;
            // i definitely assigned
        }
}
```

```
catch {
    // neither i nor j definitely assigned
    i = 3;
    // i definitely assigned
}

finally {
    // neither i nor j definitely assigned
    j = 5;
    // j definitely assigned
}

// i and j definitely assigned
LABEL:;
// j definitely assigned
}
}
```

end example]

#### 12.3.3.16 Foreach statements

For a **foreach** statement *stmt* of the form:

```
foreach ( type identifier in expr ) embedded-statement
```

- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of expr is the same as the state of v at the beginning of stmt.
- The definite assignment state of *v* on the control flow transfer to *embedded-statement* or to the end point of *stmt* is the same as the state of *v* at the end of *expr*.

## 12.3.3.17 Using statements

For a **usi ng** statement *stmt* of the form:

```
using (resource-acquisition) embedded-statement
```

- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of resource-acquisition is the same as the state of v at the beginning of stmt.
- The definite assignment state of v on the control flow transfer to *embedded-statement* is the same as the state of v at the end of *resource-acquisition*.

## 12.3.3.18 Lock statements

For a lock statement *stmt* of the form:

```
lock ( expr ) embedded-statement
```

- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of expr is the same as the state of v at the beginning of stmt.
- The definite assignment state of v on the control flow transfer to *embedded-statement* is the same as the state of v at the end of *expr*.

#### 12.3.3.19 General rules for simple expressions

The following rule applies to these kinds of expressions: literals (§14.5.1), simple names (§14.5.2), member access expressions (§14.5.4), non-indexed base access expressions (§14.5.8), and typeof expressions (§14.5.11).

• The definite assignment state of v at the end of such an expression is the same as the definite assignment state of v at the beginning of the expression.

## 12.3.3.20 General rules for expressions with embedded expressions

The following rules apply to these kinds of expressions: parenthesized expressions (§14.5.3), element access expressions (§14.5.6), base access expressions with indexing (§14.5.8), increment and decrement expressions (§14.5.9, §14.6.5), cast expressions (§14.6.6), unary +, -, ~, \* expressions, binary +, -, \*, /, %, <<, >>, <, =, >, ==, !=, i s, as, &, |, ^ expressions (§14.7, §14.8, §14.9, §14.10), compound assignment expressions (§14.14.2), checked and unchecked expressions (§14.5.12), array and delegate creation expressions (§14.5.10).

Each of these expressions has one or more sub-expressions that are unconditionally evaluated in a fixed order. [*Example*: The binary % operator evaluates the left hand side of the operator, then the right hand side. An indexing operation evaluates the indexed expression, and then evaluates each of the index expressions, in order from left to right. *end example*] For an expression expr, which has sub-expressions expr<sub>1</sub>, expr<sub>2</sub>, ..., expr<sub>n</sub>, evaluated in that order:

- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of  $expr_1$  is the same as the definite assignment state at the beginning of expr.
- The definite assignment state of v at the beginning of  $expr_i$  (i greater than one) is the same as the definite assignment state at the end of  $expr_{i-1}$ .
- The definite assignment state of v at the end of expr is the same as the definite assignment state at the end of  $expr_n$ .

#### 12.3.3.21 Invocation expressions and object creation expressions

For an invocation expression expr of the form:

```
primary-expression ( arg_1, arg_2, ..., arg_n )
```

or an object creation expression *expr* of the form:

```
new type ( arg_1, arg_2, ..., arg_n )
```

- For an invocation expression, the definite assignment state of v before *primary-expression* is the same as the state of v before *expr*.
- For an invocation expression, the definite assignment state of v before  $arg_1$  is the same as the state of v after *primary-expression*.
- For an object creation expression, the definite assignment state of v before arg<sub>1</sub> is the same as the state of v before expr.
- For each argument  $arg_i$ , the definite assignment state of v after  $arg_i$  is determined by the normal expression rules, ignoring any ref or out modifiers.
- For each argument  $arg_i$  for any i greater than one, the definite assignment state of v before  $arg_i$  is the same as the state of v after  $arg_{i-1}$ .
- If the variable v is passed as an **out** argument (i.e., an argument of the form "**out** v") in any of the arguments, then the state of v after expr is definitely assigned. Otherwise, the state of v after expr is the same as the state of v after expr is the

# 12.3.3.22 Simple assignment expressions

For an expression *expr* of the form w = expr-rhs:

- The definite assignment state of v before w is the same as the definite assignment state of v before expr.
- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-rhs* is the same as the definite assignment state of *v* after *w*.

• If w is the same variable as v, then the definite assignment state of v after expr is definitely assigned. Otherwise, the definite assignment state of v after expr is the same as the definite assignment state of v after expr-rhs.

[Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
    static void F(int[] arr) {
        int x;
        arr[x = 1] = x;  // ok
    }
}
```

the variable x is considered definitely assigned after arr[x = 1] is evaluated as the left hand side of the second simple assignment. *end example*]

## 12.3.3.23 && expressions

For an expression *expr* of the form *expr-first* && *expr-second*:

- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-first* is the same as the definite assignment state of *v* before *expr*.
- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-second* is definitely assigned if the state of *v* after *expr-first* is either definitely assigned or "definitely assigned after true expression". Otherwise, it is not definitely assigned.
- The definite assignment state of *v* after *expr* is determined by:
  - o If the state of v after expr-first is definitely assigned, then the state of v after expr is definitely assigned.
  - Otherwise, if the state of *v* after *expr-second* is definitely assigned, and the state of *v* after *expr-first* is "definitely assigned after false expression", then the state of *v* after *expr* is definitely assigned.
  - Otherwise, if the state of *v* after *expr-second* is definitely assigned or "definitely assigned after true expression", then the state of *v* after *expr* is "definitely assigned after true expression".
  - Otherwise, if the state of *v* after *expr-first* is "definitely assigned after false expression", and the state of *v* after *expr-second* is "definitely assigned after false expression", then the state of *v* after *expr* is "definitely assigned after false expression".
  - Otherwise, the state of v after expr is not definitely assigned.

[Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
    static void F(int x, int y) {
        int i;
        if (x >= 0 && (i = y) >= 0) {
            // i definitely assigned
        }
        else {
            // i not definitely assigned
        }
        // i not definitely assigned
    }
}
```

the variable i is considered definitely assigned in one of the embedded statements of an i f statement but not in the other. In the i f statement in method F, the variable i is definitely assigned in the first embedded statement because execution of the expression (i = y) always precedes execution of this embedded statement. In contrast, the variable i is not definitely assigned in the second embedded statement, since x >= 0 might have tested false, resulting in the variable i 's being unassigned. end example]

## 12.3.3.24 || expressions

For an expression *expr* of the form *expr-first* | | *expr-second*:

- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-first* is the same as the definite assignment state of *v* before *expr*.
- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-second* is definitely assigned if the state of *v* after *expr-first* is either definitely assigned or "definitely assigned after false expression". Otherwise, it is not definitely assigned.
- The definite assignment statement of *v* after *expr* is determined by:
  - o If the state of v after expr-first is definitely assigned, then the state of v after expr is definitely assigned.
  - Otherwise, if the state of *v* after *expr-second* is definitely assigned, and the state of *v* after *expr-first* is "definitely assigned after true expression", then the state of *v* after *expr* is definitely assigned.
  - Otherwise, if the state of *v* after *expr-second* is definitely assigned or "definitely assigned after false expression", then the state of *v* after *expr* is "definitely assigned after false expression".
  - Otherwise, if the state of *v* after *expr-first* is "definitely assigned after true expression", and the state of *v* after *expr-second* is "definitely assigned after true expression", then the state of *v* after *expr* is "definitely assigned after true expression".
  - Otherwise, the state of *v* after *expr* is not definitely assigned.

[Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
    static void G(int x, int y) {
        int i;
        if (x >= 0 || (i = y) >= 0) {
            // i not definitely assigned
        }
        else {
            // i definitely assigned
        }
        // i not definitely assigned
    }
}
```

the variable i is considered definitely assigned in one of the embedded statements of an i f statement but not in the other. In the i f statement in method G, the variable i is definitely assigned in the second embedded statement because execution of the expression (i = y) always precedes execution of this embedded statement. In contrast, the variable i is not definitely assigned in the first embedded statement, since x >= 0 might have tested true, resulting in the variable i 's being unassigned. end example

## 12.3.3.25! expressions

For an expression *expr* of the form! *expr-operand*:

- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-operand* is the same as the definite assignment state of *v* before *expr*.
- The definite assignment state of *v* after *expr* is determined by:
  - o If the state of *v* after *expr-operand* is definitely assigned, then the state of *v* after *expr* is definitely assigned.
  - o If the state of v after expr-operand is not definitely assigned, then the state of v after expr is not definitely assigned.
  - o If the state of v after expr-operand is "definitely assigned after false expression", then the state of v after expr is "definitely assigned after true expression".

o If the state of *v* after *expr-operand* is "definitely assigned after true expression", then the state of *v* after *expr* is "definitely assigned after false expression".

## 12.3.3.26 ?: expressions

For an expression expr of the form expr-cond? expr-true: expr-false:

- The definite assignment state of v before expr-cond is the same as the state of v before expr.
- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-true* is definitely assigned if and only if the state of *v* after *expr-cond* is definitely assigned or "definitely assigned after true expression".
- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-false* is definitely assigned if and only if the state of *v* after *expr-cond* is definitely assigned or "definitely assigned after false expression".
- The definite assignment state of v after expr is determined by:
  - o If expr-cond is a constant expression (§14.16) with value true then the state of v after expr is the same as the state of v after expr-true.
  - Otherwise, if *expr-cond* is a constant expression (§14.16) with value fal se then the state of *v* after *expr* is the same as the state of *v* after *expr-false*.
  - Otherwise, if the state of v after expr-true is definitely assigned and the state of v after expr-false is definitely assigned, then the state of v after expr is definitely assigned.
  - Otherwise, the state of v after expr is not definitely assigned.

## 12.3.3.27 Anonymous method expressions

The definite assignment state of a parameter of an anonymous method (§14.5.15) is the same as for a parameter of a named method. That is, reference parameters and value parameters are initially definitely assigned and output parameters are initially unassigned. Furthermore, output parameters shall be definitely assigned before the anonymous method returns normally (§12.1.6).

The definite assignment state of an outer variable v on the control transfer to the *block* of an *anonymous-method-expression* is the same as the definite assignment state of v before the *anonymous-method-expression*. That is, definite assignment of outer variables is inherited from the context of the *anonymous-method-expression*. Within the *block* of an *anonymous-method-expression*, definite assignment evolves as in a normal block (§12.3.3).

The definite assignment state of a variable *v* after an *anonymous-method-expression* is the same as its definite assignment state before the *anonymous-method-expression*.

[Example: The example

```
delegate bool Filter(int i);
void F() {
   int max;

   // Error, max is not definitely assigned
   Filter f = delegate(int n) { return n < max; };
   max = 5;
   DoWork(f);
}</pre>
```

generates a compile-time error since **max** is not definitely assigned where the anonymous method is declared. *end example*] [*Example*: The example

```
delegate void D();
void F() {
   int n;
   D d = delegate { n = 1; };
   d();
```

```
// Error, n is not definitely assigned
Console.WriteLine(n);
}
```

also generates a compile-time error since the assignment to **n** in the anonymous method has no affect on the definite assignment state of **n** outside the anonymous method. *end example*]

#### 12.3.3.28 Yield statements

For a yi eld return statement *stmt* of the form:

```
yield return expr;
```

- A variable v has the same definite assignment state at the beginning of expr as at the beginning of stmt.
- If a variable v is definitely assigned at the end of *expr*, it is definitely assigned at the end point of *stmt*; otherwise, it is not definitely assigned at the end point of *stmt*.

## 12.3.3.29 ?? expressions

For an expression expr of the form

```
expr-first ?? expr-second
```

- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-first* is the same as the definite assignment state of *v* before *expr*.
- The definite assignment state of *v* before *expr-second* is the same as the definite assignment state after *expr-first*.
- The definite assignment state of v after expr is the same as the definite assignment state after expr-first.

#### 12.4 Variable references

A *variable-reference* is an *expression* that is classified as a variable. A *variable-reference* denotes a storage location that can be accessed both to fetch the current value and to store a new value.

```
variable-reference:
expression
```

[Note: In C and C++, a variable-reference is known as an lvalue. end note]

## 12.5 Atomicity of variable references

Reads and writes of the following data types shall be atomic: bool, char, byte, sbyte, short, ushort, uint, int, float, and reference types. In addition, reads and writes of enum types with an underlying type in the previous list shall also be atomic. Reads and writes of other types, including long, ulong, double, and decimal, as well as user-defined types, need not be atomic. Aside from the library functions designed for that purpose, there is no guarantee of atomic read-modify-write, such as in the case of increment or decrement.

# 13. Conversions

A *conversion* enables an expression of one type to be treated as another type. Conversions can be *implicit* or *explicit*, and this determines whether an explicit cast is required. [*Example*: For instance, the conversion from type i nt to type l ong is implicit, so expressions of type i nt can implicitly be treated as type l ong. The opposite conversion, from type l ong to type i nt, is explicit, so an explicit cast is required.

end example] Some conversions are defined by the language. Programs can also define their own conversions (§13.4).

## 13.1 Implicit conversions

The following conversions are classified as implicit conversions:

- Identity conversions
- Implicit numeric conversions
- Implicit enumeration conversions
- Implicit reference conversions
- Boxing conversions
- Implicit type parameter conversions
- Implicit constant expression conversions
- User-defined implicit conversions
- Implicit conversions from an anonymous method expression to a compatible delegate type
- Implicit conversion from a method group to a compatible delegate type
- Conversions from the nul 1 type (§11.2.7) to any nullable type
- Implicit nullable conversions
- Lifted user-defined implicit conversions

Implicit conversions can occur in a variety of situations, including function member invocations (§14.4.3), cast expressions (§14.6.6), and assignments (§14.14).

The pre-defined implicit conversions always succeed and never cause exceptions to be thrown. [*Note*: Properly designed user-defined implicit conversions should exhibit these characteristics as well. *end note*]

## 13.1.1 Identity conversion

An identity conversion converts from any type to the same type. This conversion exists only such that an entity that already has a required type can be said to be convertible to that type.

## 13.1.2 Implicit numeric conversions

The implicit numeric conversions are:

• From sbyte to short, int, long, float, double, or decimal.

- From byte to short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, float, double, or decimal.
- From short to int, long, float, double, or decimal.
- From ushort to int, uint, long, ulong, float, double, or decimal.
- From int to long, float, double, or decimal.
- From uint to long, ulong, float, double, or decimal.
- From long to float, double, or decimal.
- From ul ong to float, double, or decimal.
- From char to ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, float, double, or decimal.
- From float to double.

Conversions from int, uint, long or ulong to float and from long or ulong to double can cause a loss of precision, but will never cause a loss of magnitude. The other implicit numeric conversions never lose any information.

There are no implicit conversions to the char type, so values of the other integral types do not automatically convert to the char type.

# 13.1.3 Implicit enumeration conversions

An implicit enumeration conversion permits the *decimal-integer-literal* **0** to be converted to any *enum-type*.

# 13.1.4 Implicit reference conversions

The implicit reference conversions are:

- From any *reference-type* to **obj** ect.
- From any *class-type* S to any *class-type* T, provided S is derived from T.
- From any *class-type* S to any *interface-type* T, provided S implements T.
- From any *interface-type* S to any *interface-type* T, provided S is derived from T.
- From an *array-type* S with an element type  $S_E$  to an *array-type* T with an element type  $T_E$ , provided all of the following are true:
  - o S and T differ only in element type. In other words, S and T have the same number of dimensions.
  - o An implicit reference conversion exists from  $S_E$  to  $T_E$ .
- From a one-dimensional *array-type* S[] to System. Collections. Generic. IList<S> and base interfaces of this interface.
- From a one-dimensional *array-type* S[] to System. Collections. Generic. IList<T> and base interfaces of this interface, provided there is an implicit reference conversion from S to T.
- From any array-type to System. Array.
- From any *delegate-type* to System. Del egate.
- From any *array-type* to any interface implemented by System. Array.
- From any *delegate-type* to System. I Cl oneable.
- From the null type (§11.2.7) to any reference-type.

For a *type-parameter* T that is known to be a reference type (§25.7), the following implicit reference conversions exist:

- From T to its effective base class C, from T to any base class of C, and from T to any interface implemented by C.
- From T to an *interface-type* I in T's effective interface set and from T to any base interface of I.
- From T to a type parameter U provided that T depends on U (§25.7). [*Note*: Since T is known to be a reference type, within the scope of T, the run-time type of U will always be a reference type, even if U is not known to be a reference type at compile-time. *end note*]
- From the null type (§11.2.7) to T.

The implicit reference conversions are those conversions between *reference-types* that can be proven to always succeed, and therefore require no checks at run-time.

Reference conversions, implicit or explicit, never change the referential identity of the object being converted. [*Note*: In other words, while a reference conversion can change the type of the reference, it never changes the type or value of the object being referred to. *end note*]

# 13.1.5 Boxing conversions

A boxing conversion permits any *non-nullable-value-type* to be implicitly converted to the type object or System. ValueType or to any *interface-type* implemented by the *non-nullable-value-type*, and any enum type to be implicitly converted to System. Enum as well. Boxing a value of a *non-nullable-value-type* consists of allocating an object instance and copying the *value-type* value into that instance. An enum can be boxed to the type System. Enum, since that is the direct base class for all enums (§21.4). A struct or enum can be boxed to the type System. ValueType, since that is the direct base class for all structs (§18.3.2) and a base class for all enums.

A *nullable-type* has a boxing conversion to the same set of types to which the *nullable-type*'s underlying type has boxing conversions. A boxing conversion applied to a value of a *nullable-type* proceeds as follows:

- If the HasVal ue property of the nullable value evaluates to false, then the result of the boxing conversion is the null reference of the appropriate type.
- Otherwise, the result is obtained by boxing the result of evaluating the Value property on the nullable value.

For a *type-parameter* T that is *not* known to be a reference type (§25.7), the following conversions involving T are considered to be boxing conversions at compile-time. At run-time, if T is a value type, the conversion is executed as a boxing conversion. At run-time, if T is a reference type, the conversion is executed as an implicit reference conversion or identity conversion.

- From T to its effective base class C, from T to any base class of C, and from T to any interface implemented by C. [Note: C will be one of the types System. Object, System. ValueType, or System. Enum (otherwise T would be known to be a reference type and §13.1.4 would apply instead of this clause). end note]
- From T to an *interface-type* I in T's effective interface set and from T to any base interface of I.

Boxing conversions are described further in §11.3.1.

## 13.1.6 Implicit type parameter conversions

This clause details implicit conversions involving type parameters that are not classified as implicit reference conversions or implicit boxing conversions.

For a *type-parameter* T that is *not* known to be a reference type, there is an implicit conversion from T to a type parameter U provided T depends on U. At run-time, if T is a value type and U is a reference type, the conversion is executed as a boxing conversion. At run-time, if both T and U are value types, then T and U are necessarily the same type and no conversion is performed. At run-time, if T is a reference type, then U is necessarily also a reference type and the conversion is executed as an implicit reference conversion or identity conversion (§25.7).

## 13.1.7 Implicit constant expression conversions

An implicit constant expression conversion permits the following conversions:

- A constant-expression (§14.16) of type int can be converted to type sbyte, byte, short, ushort, uint, or ulong, provided the value of the constant-expression is within the range of the destination type.
- A *constant-expression* of type l ong can be converted to type ul ong, provided the value of the *constant-expression* is not negative.

# 13.1.8 User-defined implicit conversions

A user-defined implicit conversion consists of an optional standard implicit conversion, followed by execution of a user-defined implicit conversion operator, followed by another optional standard implicit conversion. The exact rules for evaluating user-defined conversions are described in §13.4.3.

# 13.2 Explicit conversions

The following conversions are classified as explicit conversions:

- All implicit conversions
- Explicit numeric conversions
- Explicit enumeration conversions
- Explicit reference conversions
- Explicit interface conversions
- Unboxing conversions
- Explicit type parameter conversions
- User-defined explicit conversions
- Explicit nullable conversions
- Lifted user-defined explicit conversions

Explicit conversions can occur in cast expressions (§14.6.6).

The set of explicit conversions includes all implicit conversions. [*Note*: This means that redundant cast expressions are allowed. *end note*]

The explicit conversions that are not implicit conversions are conversions that cannot be proven always to succeed, conversions that are known possibly to lose information, and conversions across domains of types sufficiently different to merit explicit notation.

## 13.2.1 Explicit numeric conversions

The explicit numeric conversions are the conversions from a *numeric-type* to another *numeric-type* for which an implicit numeric conversion (§13.1.2) does not already exist:

- From sbyte to byte, ushort, ui nt, ul ong, or char.
- From byte to sbyte or char.
- From short to sbyte, byte, ushort, ui nt, ul ong, or char.
- From ushort to sbyte, byte, short, or char.
- From int to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, uint, ulong, or char.
- From ui nt to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, i nt, or char.

- From I ong to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, ulong, or char.
- From ul ong to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, or char.
- From char to sbyte, byte, or short.
- From float to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, or decimal.
- From double to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, float, or decimal.
- From decimal to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, float, or double.

Because the explicit conversions include all implicit and explicit numeric conversions, it is always possible to convert from any *numeric-type* to any other *numeric-type* using a cast expression (§14.6.6).

The explicit numeric conversions possibly lose information or possibly cause exceptions to be thrown. An explicit numeric conversion is processed as follows:

- For a conversion from an integral type to another integral type, the processing depends on the overflow checking context (§14.5.12) in which the conversion takes place:
  - o In a checked context, the conversion succeeds if the value of the source operand is within the range of the destination type, but throws a System. OverflowException if the value of the source operand is outside the range of the destination type.
  - o In an unchecked context, the conversion always succeeds, and proceeds as follows.
    - If the source type is larger than the destination type, then the source value is truncated by discarding its "extra" most significant bits. The result is then treated as a value of the destination type.
    - If the source type is smaller than the destination type, then the source value is either sign-extended or zero-extended so that it is the same size as the destination type. Sign-extension is used if the source type is signed; zero-extension is used if the source type is unsigned. The result is then treated as a value of the destination type.
    - If the source type is the same size as the destination type, then the source value is treated as a value of the destination type
- For a conversion from deci mal to an integral type, the source value is rounded towards zero to the nearest integral value, and this integral value becomes the result of the conversion. If the resulting integral value is outside the range of the destination type, a System. OverflowException is thrown.
- For a conversion from float or double to an integral type, the processing depends on the overflow-checking context (§14.5.12) in which the conversion takes place:
  - o In a checked context, the conversion proceeds as follows:
    - The value is rounded towards zero to the nearest integral value. If this integral value is within the range of the destination type, then this value is the result of the conversion.
    - Otherwise, a **System. OverflowException** is thrown.
  - o In an unchecked context, the conversion always succeeds, and proceeds as follows.
    - The value is rounded towards zero to the nearest integral value. If this integral value is within the range of the destination type, then this value is the result of the conversion.
    - Otherwise, the result of the conversion is an unspecified value of the destination type.
- For a conversion from double to float, the double value is rounded to the nearest float value. This rounding may cause a non-zero value to be rounded to a zero value of the same sign. If the magnitude of the double value is too large to represent as a float, the result becomes positive infinity or negative infinity. If the double value is NaN, the result is also NaN.

- For a conversion from float or double to decimal, the source value is converted to decimal representation and rounded to the nearest number if required (§11.1.7). This rounding may cause a non-zero value to be rounded to zero. If the source value's magnitude is too large to represent as a decimal, or that value is a NaN or infinity, yet the decimal representation does not support NaNs or infinities, respectively, a System. OverflowException is thrown.
- For a conversion from deci mal to float or double, the deci mal value is rounded to the nearest double or float value. However, if the value being converted is not within the range of the destination type, a System. OverflowException is thrown.

## 13.2.2 Explicit enumeration conversions

The explicit enumeration conversions are:

- From sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, float, double, or decimal to any *enum-type*.
- From any *enum-type* to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, float, double, or decimal.
- From any enum-type to any other enum-type.

An explicit enumeration conversion between two types is processed by treating any participating *enum-type* as the underlying type of that *enum-type*, and then performing an implicit or explicit numeric conversion between the resulting types. [*Example*: Given an *enum-type* E with and underlying type of int, a conversion from E to byte is processed as an explicit numeric conversion (§13.2.1) from int to byte, and a conversion from byte to E is processed as an implicit numeric conversion (§13.1.2) from byte to int. *end example*]

## 13.2.3 Explicit reference conversions

The explicit reference conversions are:

- From **obj** ect to any *reference-type*.
- From any *class-type* S to any *class-type* T, provided S is a base class of T.
- From any *class-type* S to any *interface-type* T, provided S is not sealed and provided S does not implement T.
- From any *interface-type* S to any *class-type* T, provided T is not sealed or provided T implements S.
- From any *interface-type* S to any *interface-type* T, provided S is not derived from T.
- From an array-type S with an element type  $S_E$  to an array-type T with an element type  $T_E$ , provided all of the following are true:
  - o S and T differ only in element type. (In other words, S and T have the same number of dimensions.)
  - o An explicit reference conversion exists from  $S_E$  to  $T_E$ .
- From System. Array and the interfaces it implements, to any *array-type*.
- From System. Del egate and the interfaces it implements, to any *delegate-type*.
- From a one-dimensional *array-type* S[] to System. Collections. Generic. IList<T> and its base interfaces, provided there is an explicit reference conversion from S to T.
- From System. Collections. Generic. IList<T> and its base interfaces to a one-dimensional array-type S[], provided there is an implicit or explicit reference conversion from S[] to System. Collections. Generic. IList<T>. This is precisely when either S and T are the same type or there is an implicit or explicit reference conversion from S to T.

For a *type-parameter* T that is known to be a reference type (§25.7), the following explicit reference conversions exist:

- From the effective base class C of T to T and from any base class of C to T.
- From any *interface-type* to T.
- From T to any interface-type I provided there isn't already an implicit reference conversion from T to I.
- From a *type-parameter* U to T provided that T depends on U (§25.7). [*Note*: Since T is known to be a reference type, within the scope of T, the run-time type of U will always be a reference type, even if U is not known to be a reference type at compile-time. *end note*]

The explicit reference conversions are those conversions between *reference-types* that require run-time checks to ensure they are correct.

For an explicit reference conversion to succeed at run-time, the value of the source operand shall be null, or the runtime type of the object referenced by the source operand shall be a type that can be converted to the destination type by an implicit reference conversion (§13.1.4). If an explicit reference conversion fails, a System. InvalidCastException is thrown.

Reference conversions, implicit or explicit, never change the referential identity of the object being converted. [*Note*: In other words, while a reference conversion can change the type of the reference, it never changes the type or value of the object being referred to. *end note*]

# 13.2.4 Unboxing conversions

An unboxing conversion permits an explicit conversion from type object or System. ValueType to any non-nullable-value-type, or from any interface-type to any non-nullable-value-type that implements the interface-type, and from the type System. Enum to any enumeration type. An unboxing operation consists of first checking that the object instance is a boxed value of the given value-type or enumeration type, and then copying the value out of the instance. An enum can be unboxed from the type System. Enum, since that is the direct base class for all enum types (§21.4). A struct or enum can be unboxed from the type System. ValueType, since that is the direct base class for all structs (§18.3.2) and a base class for all enums.

An unboxing conversion permits an explicit conversion from **obj** ect or **System**. **Val ueType** to any *nullable-type* or from any *interface-type* to any *nullable-type* whose underlying type implements the *interface-type* and from **System**. **Enum** to any *nullable-type* whose underlying type is an enumeration type. An unboxing conversion from an expression e of type T to a nullable type V? proceeds as follows:

- If e is nul 1 the result is the null value of type V?.
- Otherwise, the result is equivalent to an unboxing from e to V, followed by a wrapping (§13.7) from V to V?.

For a *type-parameter* T that is *not* known to be a reference type (§25.7), the following conversions involving T are considered to be unboxing conversions at compile-time. At run-time, if T is a value type, the conversion is executed as an unboxing conversion. At run-time, if T is a reference type, the conversion is executed as an explicit reference conversion or identity conversion.

- From the effective base class C of T to T and from any base class of C to T. [*Note*: C will be one of the types System. Obj ect, System. Val ueType, or System. Enum (otherwise T would be known to be a reference type and §13.2.3 would apply instead of this clause). *end note*]
- From any *interface-type* to T.

Unboxing conversions are described further in §11.3.2.

#### 13.2.5 Explicit type parameter conversions

This clause details explicit conversions involving type parameters that are not classified as explicit reference conversions or explicit unboxing conversions.

For a *type-parameter* T that is *not* known to be a reference type (§25.7), the following explicit conversions exist:

- From T to any *interface-type* I provided there is not already an implicit conversion from T to I. This conversion consists of an implicit boxing conversion (§13.1.5) from T to obj ect followed by an explicit reference conversion from obj ect to I. At run-time, if T is a value type, the conversion is executed as a boxing conversion followed by an explicit reference conversion. At run-time, if T is a reference type, the conversion is executed as an explicit reference conversion.
- From a type parameter U to T provided that T depends on U (§25.7). At run-time, if T is a value type and U is a reference type, the conversion is executed as an unboxing conversion. At run-time, if both T and U are value types, then T and U are necessarily the same type and no conversion is performed. At run-time, if T is a reference type, then U is necessarily also a reference type and the conversion is executed as an explicit reference conversion or identity conversion.

# 13.2.6 User-defined explicit conversions

A user-defined explicit conversion consists of an optional standard explicit conversion, followed by execution of a user-defined implicit or explicit conversion operator, followed by another optional standard explicit conversion. The exact rules for evaluating user-defined conversions are described in §13.4.4.

#### 13.3 Standard conversions

The standard conversions are those pre-defined conversions that can occur as part of a user-defined conversion.

# 13.3.1 Standard implicit conversions

The following implicit conversions are classified as standard implicit conversions:

- Identity conversions (§13.1.1)
- Implicit numeric conversions (§13.1.2)
- Implicit reference conversions (§13.1.4)
- Boxing conversions (§13.1.5)
- Implicit type parameter conversions (§13.1.6)
- Implicit constant expression conversions (§13.1.7)
- Implicit nullable conversions (§13.7.2)

The standard implicit conversions specifically exclude user-defined implicit conversions.

## 13.3.2 Standard explicit conversions

The standard explicit conversions are all standard implicit conversions plus the subset of the explicit conversions for which an opposite standard implicit conversion exists. [Note: In other words, if a standard implicit conversion exists from a type A to a type B, then a standard explicit conversion exists from type A to type B and from type B to type A. end note]

#### 13.4 User-defined conversions

C# allows the pre-defined implicit and explicit conversions to be augmented by *user-defined conversions*. User-defined conversions are introduced by declaring conversion operators (§17.9.3) in class and struct types.

#### 13.4.1 Permitted user-defined conversions

C# permits only certain user-defined conversions to be declared. In particular, it is not possible to redefine an already existing implicit or explicit conversion.

The restrictions that apply to user-defined conversions are specified in §17.9.3.

#### 13.4.2 Evaluation of user-defined conversions

A user-defined conversion converts a value from its type, called the *source type*, to another type, called the *target type*. Evaluation of a user-defined conversion centers on finding the *most specific* user-defined conversion operator for the particular source and target types. This determination is broken into several steps:

- Finding the set of classes and structs from which user-defined conversion operators will be considered. This set consists of the source type and its base classes and the target type and its base classes (with the implicit assumptions that only classes and structs can declare user-defined operators, and that non-class types have no base classes). Trailing? modifiers, if any, are removed from the source and target types before determining the set of types from which user-defined conversion operators will be considered. For example, when converting from a type S? to a type T?, the set of types from which user-defined conversion operators will be considered consists of S and T.
- From that set of types, determining which user-defined conversion operators are applicable. For a conversion operator to be applicable, it shall be possible to perform a standard conversion (§13.3) from the source type to the operand type of the operator, and it shall be possible to perform a standard conversion from the result type of the operator to the target type. When the source and target types are both nullable, the set of applicable conversion operators includes not just user-defined conversion operators but also lifted conversion operators (§13.7.3). If the set of applicable user-defined conversion operators is empty then there is no user-defined conversion from the source type to the target type.
- From the set of applicable user-defined operators, determining which operator is unambiguously the most specific. In general terms, the most specific operator is the operator whose operand type is "closest" to the source type and whose result type is "closest" to the target type. The exact rules for establishing the most specific user-defined conversion operator are defined in the following subclauses.

For the purposes of overload resolution, a user-defined conversion from the source type to the target type exists if and only if the set of applicable user-defined conversion operators is non-empty. If the set of applicable operators is non-empty but does not contain a unique most specific operator, the user-defined conversion is deemed to exist even though application of the conversion will always produce a compile-time error.

Once a most specific user-defined conversion operator has been identified, the actual execution of the user-defined conversion involves up to three steps:

- First, if required, performing a standard conversion from the source type to the operand type of the user-defined conversion operator.
- Next, invoking the user-defined conversion operator to perform the conversion.
- Finally, if required, performing a standard conversion from the result type of the user-defined conversion operator to the target type.

Evaluation of a user-defined conversion never involves more than one user-defined conversion operator. In other words, a conversion from type S to type T will never first execute a user-defined conversion from S to X and then execute a user-defined conversion from X to T.

Exact definitions of evaluation of user-defined implicit or explicit conversions are given in the following subclauses. The definitions make use of the following terms:

- If a standard implicit conversion (§13.3.1) exists from a type A to a type B, and if neither A nor B are *interface-types*, then A is said to be *encompassed by B*, and B is said to *encompass A*.
- The *most encompassing type* in a set of types is the one type that encompasses all other types in the set. If no single type encompasses all other types, then the set has no most encompassing type. In more intuitive terms, the most encompassing type is the "largest" type in the set—the one type to which each of the other types can be implicitly converted.

• The *most encompassed type* in a set of types is the one type that is encompassed by all other types in the set. If no single type is encompassed by all other types, then the set has no most encompassed type. In more intuitive terms, the most encompassed type is the "smallest" type in the set—the one type that can be implicitly converted to each of the other types.

## 13.4.3 User-defined implicit conversions

A user-defined implicit conversion from type S to type T is processed as follows:

- Determine the types S0 and T0 that result from removing the trailing? modifiers, if any, from S and T.
- Find the set of types, **D**, from which user-defined conversion operators will be considered. This set consists of **SO** (if **SO** is a class or struct), the base classes of **SO** (if **SO** is a class), the effective base class of **SO** and its base classes (if **SO** is a type parameter), and **TO** (if **TO** is a class or struct).
- Find the set of applicable conversion operators, U. This set consists of the user-defined and, if S and T are both nullable, lifted implicit conversion operators (§13.7.3) declared by the classes or structs in D that convert from a type encompassing S to a type encompassed by T. If U is empty, there is no conversion, and a compile-time error occurs.
- Find the most specific source type, SX, of the operators in U:
  - o If any of the operators in U convert from S, then SX is S.
  - Otherwise, SX is the most encompassed type in the combined set of source types of the operators in U. If exactly one most encompassed type cannot be found, then the conversion is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
- Find the most specific target type, TX, of the operators in U:
  - o If any of the operators in U convert to T, then TX is T.
  - Otherwise, TX is the most encompassing type in the combined set of target types of the operators in U. If exactly one most encompassing type cannot be found, then the conversion is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
- Find the most specific conversion operator:
  - o If U contains exactly one user-defined conversion operator that converts from SX to TX, then this is the most specific conversion operator.
  - Otherwise, if U contains exactly one lifted conversion operator that converts from SX to TX, then this is the most specific conversion operator.
  - Otherwise, the conversion is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
- Finally, apply the conversion:
  - o If S is not SX, then a standard implicit conversion from S to SX is performed.
  - The most specific conversion operator is invoked to convert from SX to TX.
  - o If TX is not T, then a standard implicit conversion from TX to T is performed.

#### 13.4.4 User-defined explicit conversions

A user-defined explicit conversion from type S to type T is processed as follows:

- Determine the types S0 and T0 that result from removing the trailing? modifiers, if any, from S and T.
- Find the set of types, **D**, from which user-defined conversion operators will be considered. This set consists of **SO** (if **SO** is a class or struct), the base classes of **SO** (if **SO** is a class), the effective base class of **SO** and its base classes (if **SO** is a type parameter), **TO** (if **TO** is a class or struct), the base classes of **TO** (if **TO** is a class), and the effective base class of **TO** and its base classes (if **TO** is a type parameter).

- Find the set of applicable conversion operators, U. This set consists of the user-defined and, if S and T are both nullable, lifted implicit or explicit conversion operators (§13.7.3) declared by the classes or structs in D that convert from a type encompassing or encompassed by S to a type encompassing or encompassed by T. If U is empty, there is no conversion, and a compile-time error occurs.
- Find the most specific source type, SX, of the operators in U:
  - o If any of the operators in U convert from S, then SX is S.
  - Otherwise, if any of the operators in U convert from types that encompass S, then SX is the most encompassed type in the combined set of source types of those operators. If exactly one most encompassed type cannot be found, then the conversion is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
  - Otherwise, SX is the most encompassing type in the combined set of source types of the operators in U. If exactly one most encompassing type cannot be found, then the conversion is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
- Find the most specific target type, TX, of the operators in U:
  - o If any of the operators in U convert to T, then TX is T.
  - Otherwise, if any of the operators in U convert to types that are encompassed by T, then TX is the most encompassing type in the combined set of target types of those operators. If exactly one most encompassing type cannot be found, then the conversion is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
  - Otherwise, TX is the most encompassed type in the combined set of target types of the operators in U. If exactly one most encompassed type cannot be found, then the conversion is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
- Find the most specific conversion operator:
  - o If U contains exactly one user-defined conversion operator that converts from SX to TX, then this is the most specific conversion operator.
  - Otherwise, if U contains exactly one lifted conversion operator that converts from SX to TX, then this is the most specific conversion operator.
  - Otherwise, the conversion is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
- Finally, apply the conversion:
  - o If S is not SX, then a standard explicit conversion from S to SX is performed.
  - o The most specific conversion operator is invoked to convert from SX to TX.
  - o If TX is not T, then a standard explicit conversion from TX to T is performed.

## 13.5 Anonymous method conversions

An implicit conversion (§13.1) exists from an *anonymous-method-expression* (§14.5.15) to any *compatible* delegate type. If **D** is a delegate type, and **A** is an *anonymous-method-expression*, then **D** is compatible with **A** if and only if the following two conditions are met.

- First, the parameter types of **D** shall be compatible with **A**:
  - o If A does not contain an *anonymous-method-signature*, then D can have zero or more parameters of any type, as long as no parameter of D has the out parameter modifier.
  - o If A has an *anonymous-method-signature*, then **D** shall have the same number of parameters and each parameter of A shall be compatible with the corresponding parameter of D. A parameter of A is considered compatible with a parameter of D if they are both of the same type and the presence or absence of the ref or out modifier on the parameter of A matches the corresponding parameter of D. Whether the final parameter of D is a *parameter-array* is not considered when determining the

compatibility of A and D. A parameter which has the *parameter-array* modifier is compatible with a parameter without the *parameter-array* modifier if they are both of the same type.

- Second, the return type of **D** shall be compatible with **A**. For these rules, **A** is not considered to contain the *block* of any other anonymous methods:
  - o If **D** is declared with a **voi d** return type, then any **return** statement contained in **A** shall not specify an expression.
  - o If **D** is declared with a return type of **R**, then any **return** statement contained in **A** shall specify an expression which is implicitly convertible (§13.1) to **R**. Furthermore, the end-point of the *block* of **A** shall not be reachable. [*Note*: The *block* of an *anonymous-method-expression* is always considered reachable, even if it is contained in a statement that is unreachable. See §15.1. *end note*]

Besides the implicit conversions to compatible delegate types, no other conversions exist from an *anonymous-method-expression*, not even to the type **obj ect**.

[Example: The following examples illustrate these rules:

```
delegate void D(int x);
D d1 = delegate \{ \};
                                                    // 0k
D d1 = delegate { };
D d2 = delegate() { };
D d3 = delegate(long x) { };
D d4 = delegate(int x) { };
D d5 = delegate(int x) { return; };
D d6 = delegate(int x) { return x; };
                                                        Error, signature mismatch
                                                        Error, signature mismatch
                                                    // 0k
                                                    // 0k
                                                    // Error, return type mismatch
delegate void E(out int x);
// Error, E has an out parameter
delegate int P(params int[] a);
  p1 = delegate {
                                                    // Error, end of block reachable
                                                    // Error, return type mismatch
P p2 = delegate { return; };
P p3 = delegate { return 1; };
P p4 = delegate { return "Hello"; };
  p2 = del egate
                                                    // Error, return type mismatch
  p5 = delegate(int[] a) {
return a[0];
                                                     // 0k
P p6 = delegate(params int[] a) {
                                                    // Error, params modifier
    return a[0];
  p7 = delegate(int[] a) {
  if (a.Length > 0) return a[0];
  return "Hello";
                                                    // Error, return type mismatch
delegate object Q(params int[] a);
Q q1 = delegate(int[] a) {
   if (a.Length > 0) return a[0];
   return "Hello";
                                                    // 0k
}:
```

end example]

A *delegate-creation-expression* (§14.5.10.3) can be used as an alternate syntax for converting an anonymous method to a delegate type.

# 13.6 Method group conversions

Similar to the implicit anonymous method conversions described in §13.5, an implicit conversion exists from a method group (§14.1) to a compatible delegate type. If **D** is a delegate type, and **E** is an expression that is classified as a method group, then **D** is compatible with **E** if and only if **E** contains at least one method

that is applicable in its normal form (§14.4.2.1) to any argument list (§14.4.1) having types and modifiers matching the parameter types and modifiers of **D**.

The compile-time application of the conversion from E to D is the same as the compile-time processing of the delegate creation expression new D(E) (§14.5.10.3). Note that the existence of an implicit conversion from E to D just indicates that the set of applicable methods is not empty, but does not guarantee that the compile-time application of the conversion will succeed without error.

[Example: In the following code

```
using System;
using System. Windows. Forms;

class AlertDialog
{
    Label message = new Label();
    Button okButton = new Button();
    Button cancelButton = new Button();

    public AlertDialog() {
        okButton. Click += new EventHandler(OkClick);
        cancelButton. Click += new EventHandler(CancelClick);
        ...
    }

    void OkClick(object sender, EventArgs e) {
        ...
    }

    void CancelClick(object sender, EventArgs e) {
        ...
    }
}
```

the constructor creates two delegate instances using the new operator. Implicit method group conversions permit this to be shortened to

```
public AlertDialog() {
   okButton.Click += 0kClick;
   cancelButton.Click += CancelClick;
   ...
}
```

end example]

As with all other implicit and explicit conversions, the cast operator can be used to explicitly perform a particular conversion. [Example: Thus, the example

```
object obj = new EventHandler(myDialog.0kClick);
```

could instead be written

```
object obj = (EventHandler) myDi al og. 0kCl i ck;
```

end example]

Although method groups and anonymous method expressions can influence overload resolution, they do not participate in type inferencing (§25.6.4).

# 13.7 Conversions involving nullable types

The following terms are used in the subsequent sections:

- The term *wrapping* denotes the process of packaging a value, of type T, in an instance of type T?. A value x of type T is wrapped to type T? by evaluating the expression new T?(x).
- The term *unwrapping* denotes the process of obtaining the value, of type T, contained in an instance of type T?. A value x of type T? is unwrapped to type T by evaluating the expression x. Value.

  Attempting to unwrap a null instance causes a System. I nval i dOperationException to be thrown.

## 13.7.1 Null type conversions

An implicit conversion exists from the nul 1 type (§11.2.7) to any nullable type. This conversion produces the null value (§12.2) of the given nullable type.

#### 13.7.2 Nullable conversions

*Nullable conversions* permit predefined conversions that operate on non-nullable value types to also be used with nullable forms of those types. For each of the predefined implicit or explicit conversions that convert from a non-nullable value type S to a non-nullable value type T (§13.1.1, §13.1.2, §13.1.3, §13.1.7, §13.2.1, and §13.2.2), the following nullable conversions exist:

- An implicit or explicit conversion from S? to T?.
- An implicit or explicit conversion from S to T?.
- An explicit conversion from S? to T.

A nullable conversion is itself classified as an implicit or explicit conversion.

Certain nullable conversions are classified as standard conversions and can occur as part of a user-defined conversion. Specifically, all implicit nullable conversions are classified as standard implicit conversions (§13.1.1), and those explicit nullable conversions that satisfy the requirements of §13.3.2 are classified as standard explicit conversions.

Evaluation of a nullable conversion based on an underlying conversion from S to T proceeds as follows:

- If the nullable conversion is from S? to T?:
  - o If the source value is null (HasVal ue property is false), the result is the null value of type T?.
  - Otherwise, the conversion is evaluated as an unwrapping from S? to S, followed by the underlying conversion from S to T, followed by a wrapping from T to T?.
- If the nullable conversion is from S to T?, the conversion is evaluated as the underlying conversion from S to T followed by a wrapping from T to T?.
- If the nullable conversion is from S? to T, the conversion is evaluated as an unwrapping from S? to S followed by the underlying conversion from S to T.

#### 13.7.3 Lifted conversions

Given a user-defined conversion operator that converts from a non-nullable value type S to a non-nullable value type T, a *lifted conversion operator* exists that converts from S? to T?. This lifted conversion operator performs an unwrapping from S? to S followed by the user-defined conversion from S to T followed by a wrapping from T to T?, except that a null valued S? converts directly to a null valued T?.

A lifted conversion operator has the same implicit or explicit classification as its underlying user-defined conversion operator.

# 14. Expressions

An expression is a sequence of operators and operands. This clause defines the syntax, order of evaluation of operands and operators, and meaning of expressions.

# 14.1 Expression classifications

An expression is classified as one of the following:

- A value. Every value has an associated type.
- A variable. Every variable has an associated type, namely the declared type of the variable.
- A namespace. An expression with this classification can only appear as the left-hand side of a *member-access* (§14.5.4). In any other context, an expression classified as a namespace causes a compile-time error.
- A type. An expression with this classification can only appear as the left-hand side of a *member-access* (§14.5.4). In any other context, an expression classified as a type causes a compile-time error.
- A method group, which is a set of overloaded methods resulting from a member lookup (§14.3). A method group can have an associated instance expression. When an instance method is invoked, the result of evaluating the instance expression becomes the instance represented by this (§14.5.7). A method group can be used in an *invocation-expression* (§14.5.5), used in a *delegate-creation-expression* (§14.5.10.3), or implicitly converted to a compatible delegate type. In any other context, an expression classified as a method group causes a compile-time error.
- An anonymous method. An expression with this classification can be used in a *delegate-creation-expression* (§14.5.10.3) or implicitly converted to a compatible delegate type. In any other context, an expression classified as an anonymous method causes a compile-time error.
- A property access. Every property access has an associated type, namely the type of the property. Furthermore, a property access can have an associated instance expression. When an accessor (the get or set block) of an instance property access is invoked, the result of evaluating the instance expression becomes the instance represented by this (§14.5.7).
- An event access. Every event access has an associated type, namely the type of the event. Furthermore, an event access can have an associated instance expression. An event access can appear as the left-hand operand of the += and -= operators (§14.14.3). In any other context, an expression classified as an event access causes a compile-time error.
- An indexer access. Every indexer access has an associated type, namely the element type of the indexer. Furthermore, an indexer access has an associated instance expression and an associated argument list. When an accessor (the get or set block) of an indexer access is invoked, the result of evaluating the instance expression becomes the instance represented by this (§14.5.7), and the result of evaluating the argument list becomes the parameter list of the invocation.
- Nothing. This occurs when the expression is an invocation of a method with a return type of **voi d**. An expression classified as nothing is only valid in the context of a *statement-expression* (§15.6).

The final result of an expression is never a namespace, type, method group, anonymous method, or event access. Rather, as noted above, these categories of expressions are intermediate constructs that are only permitted in certain contexts.

A property access or indexer access is always reclassified as a value by performing an invocation of the *get-accessor* or the *set-accessor*. The particular accessor is determined by the context of the property or indexer

access: If the access is the target of an assignment, the *set-accessor* is invoked to assign a new value (§14.14.1). Otherwise, the *get-accessor* is invoked to obtain the current value (§14.1.1).

# 14.1.1 Values of expressions

Most of the constructs that involve an expression ultimately require the expression to denote a *value*. In such cases, if the actual expression denotes a namespace, a type, or nothing, a compile-time error occurs. However, if the expression denotes a property access, an indexer access, or a variable, the value of the property, indexer, or variable is implicitly substituted:

- The value of a variable is simply the value currently stored in the storage location identified by the variable. A variable shall be considered definitely assigned (§12.3) before its value can be obtained, or otherwise a compile-time error occurs.
- The value of a property access expression is obtained by invoking the *get-accessor* of the property. If the property has no *get-accessor*, a compile-time error occurs. Otherwise, a function member invocation (§14.4.3) is performed, and the result of the invocation becomes the value of the property access expression.
- The value of an indexer access expression is obtained by invoking the *get-accessor* of the indexer. If the indexer has no *get-accessor*, a compile-time error occurs. Otherwise, a function member invocation (§14.4.3) is performed with the argument list associated with the indexer access expression, and the result of the invocation becomes the value of the indexer access expression.

# 14.2 Operators

Expressions are constructed from *operands* and *operators*. The operators of an expression indicate which operations to apply to the operands. [*Example*: Examples of operators include +, -, \*, /, and new. Examples of operands include literals, fields, local variables, and expressions. *end example*]

There are three kinds of operators:

- Unary operators. The unary operators take one operand and use either prefix notation (such as -x) or postfix notation (such as x++).
- Binary operators. The binary operators take two operands and all use infix notation (such as x + y).
- Ternary operator. Only one ternary operator, ?: , exists; it takes three operands and uses infix notation (c ? x : y).

The order of evaluation of operators in an expression is determined by the *precedence* and *associativity* of the operators (§14.2.1).

The order in which operands in an expression are evaluated, is left to right. [Example: In F(i) + G(i++) \* H(i), method F(i) is called using the old value of i, then method F(i) is called with the old value of F(i), and, finally, method F(i) is called with the new value of F(i). This is separate from and unrelated to operator precedence. end example

Certain operators can be *overloaded*. Operator overloading (§14.2.2) permits user-defined operator implementations to be specified for operations where one or both of the operands are of a user-defined class or struct type.

#### 14.2.1 Operator precedence and associativity

When an expression contains multiple operators, the *precedence* of the operators controls the order in which the individual operators are evaluated. [*Note*: For example, the expression  $\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} * \mathbf{z}$  is evaluated as  $\mathbf{x} + (\mathbf{y} * \mathbf{z})$  because the \* operator has higher precedence than the binary + operator. *end note*] The precedence of an operator is established by the definition of its associated grammar production. [*Note*: For example, an *additive-expression* consists of a sequence of *multiplicative-expressions* separated by + or - operators, thus giving the + and - operators lower precedence than the \*, /, and % operators. *end note*]

[Note: The following table summarizes the operators in order of precedence from highest to lowest:

Subclause	Category	Operators
14.5	Primary	x. y f(x) a[x] x++ x new
		typeof checked unchecked
14.6	Unary	$+ - ! \sim ++xx (T) x$
14.7	Multiplicative	* / %
14.7	Additive	+ -
14.8	Shift	<< >>
14.9	Relational and type-testing	< > <= >= is as
14.9	Equality	== !=
14.10	Logical AND	&
14.10	Logical XOR	^
14.10	Logical OR	
14.11	Conditional AND	&&
14.11	Conditional OR	11
14.12	Null Coalescing	??
14.13	Conditional	?:
14.14	Assignment	= *= /= %= += -= <<= >>= &= ^=  =

#### end note]

When an operand occurs between two operators with the same precedence, the *associativity* of the operators controls the order in which the operations are performed:

- Except for the assignment operators and the null coalescing operator, all binary operators are *left-associative*, meaning that operations are performed from left to right. [*Example*: x + y + z is evaluated as (x + y) + z. *end example*]
- The assignment operators, null coalescing operator and the conditional operator (?:) are *right-associative*, meaning that operations are performed from right to left. [Example: x = y = z is evaluated as x = (y = z). end example]

Precedence and associativity can be controlled using parentheses. [Example:  $\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} * \mathbf{z}$  first multiplies  $\mathbf{y}$  by  $\mathbf{z}$  and then adds the result to  $\mathbf{x}$ , but  $(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}) * \mathbf{z}$  first adds  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  and then multiplies the result by  $\mathbf{z}$ . end example]

# 14.2.2 Operator overloading

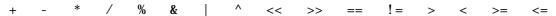
All unary and binary operators have predefined implementations that are automatically available in any expression. In addition to the predefined implementations, user-defined implementations can be introduced by including **operator** declarations (§17.9) in classes and structs. User-defined operator implementations always take precedence over predefined operator implementations: Only when no applicable user-defined operators implementations exist are the predefined operator implementations considered, as described in §14.2.3 and §14.2.4.

The *overloadable unary operators* are:

+ - ! ~ ++ -- true false

[*Note*: Although true and fal se are not used explicitly in expressions (and therefore are not included in the precedence table in §14.2.1), they are considered operators because they are invoked in several expression contexts: Boolean expressions (§14.17) and expressions involving the conditional operator (§14.13) and conditional logical operators (§14.11). *end note*]

The *overloadable binary operators* are:



Only the operators listed above can be overloaded. In particular, it is not possible to overload member access, method invocation, or the =, &&, | |, ??, ?:, checked, unchecked, new, typeof, as, and is operators.

When a binary operator is overloaded, the corresponding assignment operator, if any, is also implicitly overloaded. [*Example*: An overload of operator \* is also an overload of operator \*=. This is described further in §14.14. *end example*] The assignment operator itself (=) cannot be overloaded. An assignment always performs a simple bit-wise copy of a value into a variable.

Cast operations, such as (T) x, are overloaded by providing user-defined conversion operators (§13.4).

Element access, such as a[x], is not considered an overloadable operator. Instead, user-defined indexing is supported through indexers (§17.8).

In expressions, operators are referenced using operator notation, and in declarations, operators are referenced using functional notation. The following table shows the relationship between operator and functional notations for unary and binary operators. In the first entry, *op* denotes any overloadable unary prefix operator. In the second entry, *op* denotes the unary postfix ++ and -- operators. In the third entry, *op* denotes any overloadable binary operator. [*Note*: For an example of overloading the ++ and -- operators see §17.9.1. *end note*]

Operator notation	Functional notation
op x	operator op(x)
<b>x</b> op	operator op(x)
x op y	operator op(x, y)

User-defined operator declarations always require at least one of the parameters to be of the class or struct type that contains the operator declaration. [*Note*: Thus, it is not possible for a user-defined operator to have the same signature as a predefined operator. *end note*]

User-defined operator declarations cannot modify the syntax, precedence, or associativity of an operator. [*Example*: The / operator is always a binary operator, always has the precedence level specified in §14.2.1, and is always left-associative. *end example*]

[*Note*: While it is possible for a user-defined operator to perform any computation it pleases, implementations that produce results other than those that are intuitively expected are strongly discouraged. For example, an implementation of **operator** == should compare the two operands for equality and return an appropriate **bool** result. *end note*]

The descriptions of individual operators in §14.5 through §14.14 specify the predefined implementations of the operators and any additional rules that apply to each operator. The descriptions make use of the terms *unary operator overload resolution*, *binary operator overload resolution*, *numeric promotion*, and *lifted operators* definitions of which are found in the following subclauses.

# 14.2.3 Unary operator overload resolution

An operation of the form  $op \mathbf{x}$  or  $\mathbf{x} op$ , where op is an overloadable unary operator, and  $\mathbf{x}$  is an expression of type  $\mathbf{X}$ , is processed as follows:

- The set of candidate user-defined operators provided by X for the operation operator op(x) is determined using the rules of §14.2.5.
- If the set of candidate user-defined operators is not empty, then this becomes the set of candidate operators for the operation. Otherwise, the predefined unary operator op implementations become the set of candidate operators for the operation. If type X is not an enum type, then any predefined unary operator with a parameter type that is an enum type is removed from consideration. The predefined implementations of a given operator are specified in the description of the operator (§14.5 and §14.5.14).
- The overload resolution rules of §14.4.2 are applied to the set of candidate operators to select the best operator with respect to the argument list (x), and this operator becomes the result of the overload resolution process. If overload resolution fails to select a single best operator, a compile-time error occurs.

# 14.2.4 Binary operator overload resolution

An operation of the form  $\mathbf{x}$  op  $\mathbf{y}$ , where op is an overloadable binary operator,  $\mathbf{x}$  is an expression of type  $\mathbf{X}$ , and  $\mathbf{y}$  is an expression of type  $\mathbf{Y}$ , is processed as follows:

- The set of candidate user-defined operators provided by X and Y for the operation operator op(x, y) is determined. The set consists of the union of the candidate operators provided by X and the candidate operators provided by Y, each determined using the rules of §14.2.5. If X and Y are the same type, or if X and Y are derived from a common base type, then shared candidate operators only occur in the combined set once.
- If the set of candidate user-defined operators is not empty, then this becomes the set of candidate operators for the operation. Otherwise, the predefined binary operator op implementations become the set of candidate operators for the operation. If neither X nor Y is an enum type, then any predefined binary operator with a parameter type that is an enum type is removed from consideration. Similarly, if neither X nor Y is a delegate type, then any predefined binary operator with a parameter type that is a delegate type is removed from consideration. The predefined implementations of a given operator are specified in the description of the operator (§14.7 through §14.14).
- The overload resolution rules of §14.4.2 are applied to the set of candidate operators to select the best operator with respect to the argument list (x, y), and this operator becomes the result of the overload resolution process. If overload resolution fails to select a single best operator, a compile-time error occurs.

#### 14.2.5 Candidate user-defined operators

Given a type T and an operation operator op(A), where op is an overloadable operator and A is an argument list, the set of candidate user-defined operators provided by T for operator op(A) is determined as follows:

- Determine the type T0 that results from removing the trailing? modifiers, if any, from T.
- For all operator *op* declarations in **TO**, if at least one operator is applicable (§14.4.2.1) with respect to the argument list **A**, then the set of candidate operators consists of all applicable operator *op* declarations in **TO**. The lifted forms of the operators (§14.2.7) declared in **TO** are considered to also be declared by **TO**.
- Otherwise, if T0 is obj ect, the set of candidate operators is empty.
- Otherwise, the set of candidate operators provided by **T0** is the set of candidate operators provided by the direct base class of **T0**, or the effective base class of **T0** if **T0** is a type parameter.

#### 14.2.6 Numeric promotions

This subclause is informative.

Numeric promotion consists of automatically performing certain implicit conversions of the operands of the predefined unary and binary numeric operators. Numeric promotion is not a distinct mechanism, but rather an effect of applying overload resolution to the predefined operators. Numeric promotion specifically does not affect evaluation of user-defined operators, although user-defined operators can be implemented to exhibit similar effects.

As an example of numeric promotion, consider the predefined implementations of the binary \* operator:

```
int operator *(int x, int y);
uint operator *(uint x, uint y);
long operator *(long x, long y);
ulong operator *(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator *(long x, ulong y);
void operator *(ulong x, long y);
float operator *(float x, float y);
double operator *(double x, double y);
decimal operator *(decimal x, decimal y);
```

When overload resolution rules (§14.4.2) are applied to this set of operators, the effect is to select the first of the operators for which implicit conversions exist from the operand types. [Example: For the operation **b** \* **s**, where **b** is a **byte** and **s** is a **short**, overload resolution selects **operator** \*(**int**, **int**) as the best operator. Thus, the effect is that **b** and **s** are converted to **int**, and the type of the result is **int**. Likewise, for the operation **i** \* **d**, where **i** is an **int** and **d** is a **double**, overload resolution selects **operator** \*(**double**, **double**) as the best operator. end example]

#### End of informative text.

# 14.2.6.1 Unary numeric promotions

#### This subclause is informative.

Unary numeric promotion occurs for the operands of the predefined +, -, and ~ unary operators. Unary numeric promotion simply consists of converting operands of type sbyte, byte, short, ushort, or char to type i nt. Additionally, for the unary - operator, unary numeric promotion converts operands of type ui nt to type l ong.

## End of informative text.

# 14.2.6.2 Binary numeric promotions

## This subclause is informative.

- If either operand is of type deci mal, the other operand is converted to type deci mal, or a compile-time error occurs if the other operand is of type float or double.
- Otherwise, if either operand is of type doubl e, the other operand is converted to type doubl e.
- Otherwise, if either operand is of type float, the other operand is converted to type float.
- Otherwise, if either operand is of type ul ong, the other operand is converted to type ul ong, or a compile-time error occurs if the other operand is of type sbyte, short, int, or long.
- Otherwise, if either operand is of type l ong, the other operand is converted to type l ong.
- Otherwise, if either operand is of type ui nt and the other operand is of type sbyte, short, or i nt, both operands are converted to type l ong.
- Otherwise, if either operand is of type ui nt, the other operand is converted to type ui nt.
- Otherwise, both operands are converted to type i nt.

[Note: The first rule disallows any operations that mix the deci mal type with the doubl e and float types. The rule follows from the fact that there are no implicit conversions between the deci mal type and the doubl e and float types. end note]

[*Note*: Also note that it is not possible for an operand to be of type ul ong when the other operand is of a signed integral type. The reason is that no integral type exists that can represent the full range of ul ong as well as the signed integral types. *end note*]

In both of the above cases, a cast expression can be used to explicitly convert one operand to a type that is compatible with the other operand.

[Example: In the following code

```
\begin{array}{lll} deci\, mal & AddPercent(deci\, mal \ x, \ doubl\, e \ percent) \ \{ \\ & return \ x \ ^* \ (1.\, 0 \ + \ percent \ / \ 100.\, 0) \, ; \\ \} \end{array}
```

a compile-time error occurs because a deci mal cannot be multiplied by a double. The error is resolved by explicitly converting the second operand to deci mal, as follows:

```
\begin{array}{lll} deci\, mal & AddPercent(deci\, mal \, \, x, \, \, doubl\, e \, \, percent) \, \, \{ \\ & return \, \, x \, \, * \, \, (deci\, mal) \, (1.\, 0 \, + \, percent \, \, / \, \, 100.\, 0) \, ; \\ \} \end{array}
```

end example]

End of informative text.

## 14.2.7 Lifted operators

**Lifted operators** permit predefined and user-defined operators that operate on non-nullable value types to also be used with nullable forms of those types. Lifted operators are constructed from predefined and user-defined operators that meet certain requirements, as described in the following:

• For the unary operators

```
+ ++ - -- ! ~
```

a lifted form of an operator exists if the operand and result types are both non-nullable value types. The lifted form is constructed by adding a single? modifier to the operand and result types. The lifted operator produces a null value if the operand is null. Otherwise, the lifted operator unwraps the operand, applies the underlying operator, and wraps the result.

• For the binary operators

```
+ - * / % & | ^ << >>
```

a lifted form of an operator exists if the operand and result types are all non-nullable value types. The lifted form is constructed by adding a single? modifier to each operand and result type. The lifted operator produces a null value if one or both operands are null (an exception being the & and | operators of the bool? type, as described in §14.10.4). Otherwise, the lifted operator unwraps the operands, applies the underlying operator, and wraps the result.

• For the equality operators

```
== !=
```

a lifted form of an operator exists if the operand types are both non-nullable value types and if the result type is **bool**. The lifted form is constructed by adding a single? modifier to each operand type. The lifted operator considers two null values equal, and a null value unequal to any non-null value. If both operands are non-null, the lifted operator unwraps the operands and applies the underlying operator to produce the **bool** result.

• For the relational operators

```
< > <= >=
```

a lifted form of an operator exists if the operand types are both non-nullable value types and if the result type is **bool**. The lifted form is constructed by adding a single? modifier to each operand type. The lifted operator produces the value **fal se** if one or both operands are null. Otherwise, the lifted operator unwraps the operands and applies the underlying operator to produce the **bool** result.

The lifted forms of the predefined operators are themselves considered predefined operators.

# 14.3 Member lookup

A member lookup is the process whereby the meaning of a name in the context of a type is determined. A member lookup can occur as part of evaluating a *simple-name* (§14.5.2) or a *member-access* (§14.5.4) in an expression.

Member lookup considers not only the name of a member but also the number of type parameters the member has and whether the member is accessible. For the purposes of member lookup, generic methods and nested generic types have the number of type parameters indicated in their respective declarations and all other members have zero type parameters.

A member lookup of a name N with K type parameters in a type T is processed as follows:

- First, a set of accessible members named N is determined:
  - o If T is a type parameter, then the set is the union of the sets of accessible members named N in each of the types specified as a primary constraint or secondary constraint (§25.7) for T, along with the set of accessible members named N in object.
  - Otherwise, the set consists of all accessible (§10.5) members named N in T, including inherited members and the accessible members named N in object. If T is a constructed type, the set of members is obtained by substituting type arguments as described in §25.5.4. Members that include an override modifier are excluded from the set.
- Next, if the set of accessible members is empty, the member lookup does not produce a match and no further steps are taken.
- Next, if **K** is zero, remove all nested types whose declaration included type parameters. If **K** is not zero, remove all members with a different number of type parameters. Note that when **K** is zero, we do not remove all methods having type parameters, since the type inference process (§25.6.4) might be able to infer the type arguments.
- Next, members that are hidden by other members are removed from the set. Members that are removed during this step may still cause other members to be removed. For every member S. Min the set, where S is the type in which the member Mis declared, the following rules are applied:
  - o If M is a constant, field, property, event, enumeration member, or type declaration then all members declared in a base type of S are removed from the set.
  - o If M is a method, then all non-method members declared in a base type of S are removed from the set.
- Next, interface members that are hidden by class members are removed from the set. This step only has an effect if T is a type parameter and T has both an effective base class other than object and a non-empty effective interface set (§25.7). For every member S. Min the set, where S is the type in which the member M is declared, the following rules are applied if S is a class declaration other than object:
  - o If M is a constant, field, property, event, enumeration member, or type declaration, then all members declared in an interface declaration are removed from the set.
  - o If M is a method, then all non-method members declared in an interface declaration are removed from the set.
- Finally, having removed hidden members, the result of the lookup is determined:

- o If the set consists of a single member that is not a method, then this member is the result of the lookup.
- Otherwise, if the set contains only methods, then this group of methods is the result of the lookup.
- Otherwise, the lookup is ambiguous, and a compile-time error occurs.

For member lookups in types other than type parameters and interfaces, and member lookups in interfaces that are strictly single-inheritance (each interface in the inheritance chain has exactly zero or one direct base interface), the effect of the lookup rules is simply that derived members hide base members with the same name. Such single-inheritance lookups are never ambiguous. The ambiguities that can possibly arise from member lookups in multiple-inheritance interfaces are described in §20.2.5.

## 14.3.1 Base types

For purposes of member lookup, a type T is considered to have the following base types:

- If T is object, then T has no base type.
- If T is an *enum-type*, the base types of T are the class types System. Enum, System. ValueType, and object.
- If T is a *struct-type*, the base types of T are the class types System. ValueType and object.
- If T is a *class-type*, the base types of T are the base classes of T, including the class type obj ect.
- If T is an *interface-type*, the base types of T are the base interfaces of T and the class type obj ect.
- If T is an *array-type*, the base types of T are the class types System. Array and object.
- If T is a *delegate-type*, the base types of T are the class types System. Del egate and object.
- If T is a *nullable-type*, the base types of T are the class types System. Val ueType and object.

#### 14.4 Function members

Function members are members that contain executable statements. Function members are always members of types and cannot be members of namespaces. C# defines the following categories of function members:

- Methods
- Properties
- Events
- Indexers
- User-defined operators
- Instance constructors
- Static constructors
- Finalizers

Except for static constructors and finalizers (which cannot be invoked explicitly), the statements contained in function members are executed through function member invocations. The actual syntax for writing a function member invocation depends on the particular function member category.

The argument list (§14.4.1) of a function member invocation provides actual values or variable references for the parameters of the function member.

Invocations of methods, indexers, operators, and instance constructors employ overload resolution to determine which of a candidate set of function members to invoke. This process is described in §14.4.2.

Once a particular function member has been identified at compile-time, possibly through overload resolution, the actual run-time process of invoking the function member is described in §14.4.3.

[Note: The following table summarizes the processing that takes place in constructs involving the six categories of function members that can be explicitly invoked. In the table, e, x, y, and val ue indicate expressions classified as variables or values, T indicates an expression classified as a type, F is the simple name of a method, and P is the simple name of a property.

Construct	Example	Description
Method invocation	F(x, y)	Overload resolution is applied to select the best method F in the containing class or struct. The method is invoked with the argument list $(x, y)$ . If the method is not static, the instance expression is this.
	T. F(x, y)	Overload resolution is applied to select the best method F in the class or struct T. A compile-time error occurs if the method is not static. The method is invoked with the argument list (x, y).
	e. F(x, y)	Overload resolution is applied to select the best method $F$ in the class, struct, or interface given by the type of $e$ . A compile-time error occurs if the method is $static$ . The method is invoked with the instance expression $e$ and the argument list $(x, y)$ .
Property access	P	The get accessor of the property P in the containing class or struct is invoked. A compile-time error occurs if P is write-only. If P is not static, the instance expression is this.
	P = val ue	The set accessor of the property P in the containing class or struct is invoked with the argument list (val ue). A compile-time error occurs if P is read-only. If P is not static, the instance expression is this.
	T. P	The get accessor of the property P in the class or struct T is invoked. A compile-time error occurs if P is not static or if P is write-only.
	T. P = val ue	The set accessor of the property P in the class or struct T is invoked with the argument list (val ue). A compile-time error occurs if P is not static or if P is read-only.
	e. P	The get accessor of the property P in the class, struct, or interface given by the type of e is invoked with the instance expression e. A compile-time error occurs if P is static or if P is write-only.
	e. P = val ue	The set accessor of the property P in the class, struct, or interface given by the type of e is invoked with the instance expression e and the argument list (val ue). A compile-time error occurs if P is static or if P is read-only.
Event access	E += value	The add accessor of the event E in the containing class or struct is invoked. If E is not stati c, the instance expression is this.
	E -= val ue	The remove accessor of the event E in the containing class or struct is invoked. If E is not static, the instance expression is this.
	T. E += value	The add accessor of the event E in the class or struct T is invoked. A compile-time error occurs if E is not stati c.
	T. E -= val ue	The remove accessor of the event E in the class or struct T is invoked. A compile-time error occurs if E is not static.

Construct	Example	Description	
	e. E += val ue	The add accessor of the event E in the class, struct, or interface given by the type of e is invoked with the instance expression e. A compile-time error occurs if E is static.	
	e. E - = val ue	The remove accessor of the event E in the class, struct, or interface given by the type of e is invoked with the instance expression e. A compile-time error occurs if E is static.	
Indexer access	e[x, y]	Overload resolution is applied to select the best indexer in the class, struct, or interface given by the type of e. The get accessor of the indexer is invoked with the instance expression e and the argument list $(x, y)$ . A compile-time error occurs if the indexer is write-only.	
	e[x, y] = val ue	Overload resolution is applied to select the best indexer in the class, struct, or interface given by the type of e. The set accessor of the indexer is invoked with the instance expression e and the argument list (x, y, val ue). A compile-time error occurs if the indexer is read-only.	
Operator invocation	- x	Overload resolution is applied to select the best unary operator in the class or struct given by the type of <b>x</b> . The selected operator is invoked with the argument list ( <b>x</b> ).	
	x + y	Overload resolution is applied to select the best binary operator in the classes or structs given by the types of $x$ and $y$ . The selected operator is invoked with the argument list $(x, y)$ .	
Instance constructor invocation	new T(x, y)	Overload resolution is applied to select the best instance constructor in the class or struct T. The instance constructor is invoked with the argument list (x, y).	

end note]

## 14.4.1 Argument lists

Every function member invocation includes an argument list, which provides actual values or variable references for the parameters of the function member. The syntax for specifying the argument list of a function member invocation depends on the function member category:

- For instance constructors, methods, and delegates, the arguments are specified as an *argument-list*, as described below.
- For properties, the argument list is empty when invoking the get accessor, and consists of the expression specified as the right operand of the assignment operator when invoking the set accessor.
- For events, the argument list consists of the expression specified as the right operand of the += or -= operator.
- For indexers, the argument list consists of the expressions specified between the square brackets in the indexer access. When invoking the set accessor, the argument list additionally includes the expression specified as the right operand of the assignment operator. [Note: The additional argument is not used for overload resolution, just during invocation of the set accessor. end note]
- For user-defined operators, the argument list consists of the single operand of the unary operator or the two operands of the binary operator.

The arguments of properties (§17.6), events (§17.7), and user-defined operators (§17.9) are always passed as value parameters (§17.5.1.1). The arguments of indexers (§17.8) are always passed as value parameters

(§17.5.1.1) or parameter arrays (§17.5.1.4). Reference and output parameters are not supported for these categories of function members.

The arguments of an instance constructor, method, or delegate invocation are specified as an argument-list:

```
argument-list:
    argument
    argument-list , argument
argument:
    expression
    ref variable-reference
    out variable-reference
```

An *argument-list* consists of one or more *arguments*, separated by commas. Each argument can take one of the following forms:

- An *expression*, indicating that the argument is passed as a value parameter (§17.5.1.1).
- The keyword ref followed by a *variable-reference* (§12.3.3.29), indicating that the argument is passed as a reference parameter (§17.5.1.2). A variable shall be definitely assigned (§12.3) before it can be passed as a reference parameter.
- The keyword out followed by a *variable-reference* (§12.3.3.29), indicating that the argument is passed as an output parameter (§17.5.1.3). A variable is considered definitely assigned (§12.3) following a function member invocation in which the variable is passed as an output parameter.

Passing a volatile field (§17.4.3) as a reference parameter or output parameter causes a warning, since the field may not be treated as volatile by the invoked method.

During the run-time processing of a function member invocation (§14.4.3), the expressions or variable references of an argument list are evaluated in order, from left to right, as follows:

- For a value parameter, the argument expression is evaluated and an implicit conversion (§13.1) to the corresponding parameter type is performed. The resulting value becomes the initial value of the value parameter in the function member invocation.
- For a reference or output parameter, the variable reference is evaluated and the resulting storage location becomes the storage location represented by the parameter in the function member invocation. If the variable reference given as a reference or output parameter is an array element of a *reference-type*, a run-time check is performed to ensure that the element type of the array is identical to the type of the parameter. If this check fails, a System. ArrayTypeMi smatchException is thrown.

Methods, indexers, and instance constructors can declare their right-most parameter to be a parameter array (§17.5.1.4). Such function members are invoked either in their normal form or in their expanded form depending on which is applicable (§14.4.2.1):

- When a function member with a parameter array is invoked in its normal form, the argument given for the parameter array shall be a single expression of a type that is implicitly convertible (§13.1) to the parameter array type. In this case, the parameter array acts precisely like a value parameter.
- When a function member with a parameter array is invoked in its expanded form, the invocation shall specify zero or more arguments for the parameter array, where each argument is an expression of a type that is implicitly convertible (§13.1) to the element type of the parameter array. In this case, the invocation creates an instance of the parameter array type with a length corresponding to the number of arguments, initializes the elements of the array instance with the given argument values, and uses the newly created array instance as the actual argument.

The expressions of an argument list are always evaluated in the order they are written. [Example: Thus, the example

```
class Test
{
    static void F(int x, int y, int z) {
        System.Console.WriteLine("x = {0}, y = {1}, z = {2}", x, y, z);
    }
    static void Main() {
        int i = 0;
        F(i++, i++, i++);
    }
}
```

produces the output

$$x = 0, y = 1, z = 2$$

end example]

The array covariance rules (§19.5) permit a value of an array type A[] to be a reference to an instance of an array type B[], provided an implicit reference conversion exists from B to A. Because of these rules, when an array element of a *reference-type* is passed as a reference or output parameter, a run-time check is required to ensure that the actual element type of the array is *identical* to that of the parameter. [*Example*: In the following code

the second invocation of F causes a System. ArrayTypeMi smatchExcepti on to be thrown because the actual element type of b is string and not object. *end example*]

When a function member with a parameter array is invoked in its expanded form, the invocation is processed exactly as if an array creation expression with an array initializer (§14.5.10.2) was inserted around the expanded parameters. [*Example*: Given the declaration

```
void F(int x, int y, params object[] args);
```

the following invocations of the expanded form of the method

```
F(10,\ 20);\\ F(10,\ 20,\ 30,\ 40);\\ F(10,\ 20,\ 1,\ "hello",\ 3.0);\\ correspond exactly to\\ F(10,\ 20,\ new\ object[]\ \{\});\\ F(10,\ 20,\ new\ object[]\ \{30,\ 40\});\\ F(10,\ 20,\ new\ object[]\ \{1,\ "hello",\ 3.0\});\\ F(10,\ 20,\ new\ object[]\ \{1,\ "hello",\ 3.0\});
```

In particular, note that an empty array is created when there are zero arguments given for the parameter array. *end example*]

### 14.4.2 Overload resolution

Overload resolution is a compile-time mechanism for selecting the best function member to invoke given an argument list and a set of candidate function members. Overload resolution selects the function member to invoke in the following distinct contexts within C#:

- Invocation of a method named in an *invocation-expression* (§14.5.5).
- Invocation of an instance constructor named in an *object-creation-expression* (§14.5.10.1).

- Invocation of an indexer accessor through an *element-access* (§14.5.6).
- Invocation of a predefined or user-defined operator referenced in an expression (§14.2.3 and §14.2.4).

Each of these contexts defines the set of candidate function members and the list of arguments in its own unique way. However, once the candidate function members and the argument list have been identified, the selection of the best function member is the same in all cases:

- First, the set of candidate function members is reduced to those function members that are applicable with respect to the given argument list (§14.4.2.1). If this reduced set is empty, a compile-time error occurs.
- Then, given the set of applicable candidate function members, the best function member in that set is located. If the set contains only one function member, then that function member is the best function member. Otherwise, the best function member is the one function member that is better than all other function members with respect to the given argument list, provided that each function member is compared to all other function members using the rules in §14.4.2.2. If there is not exactly one function member that is better than all other function members, then the function member invocation is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.

The following subclauses define the exact meanings of the terms *applicable function member* and *better function member*.

## 14.4.2.1 Applicable function member

A function member is said to be an *applicable function member* with respect to an argument list A when all of the following are true:

- The number of arguments in A is identical to the number of parameters in the function member declaration.
- For each argument in A, the parameter passing mode of the argument (i.e., value, ref, or out) is identical to the parameter passing mode of the corresponding parameter, and
  - o for a value parameter or a parameter array, an implicit conversion (§13.1) exists from the type of the argument to the type of the corresponding parameter, or
  - for a ref or out parameter, the type of the argument is identical to the type of the corresponding parameter. [*Note*: After all, a ref or out parameter is an alias for the argument passed. *end note*]

For a function member that includes a parameter array, if the function member is applicable by the above rules, it is said to be applicable in its *normal form*. If a function member that includes a parameter array is not applicable in its normal form, the function member might instead be applicable in its *expanded form*:

- The expanded form is constructed by replacing the parameter array in the function member declaration with zero or more value parameters of the element type of the parameter array such that the number of arguments in the argument list A matches the total number of parameters. If A has fewer arguments than the number of fixed parameters in the function member declaration, the expanded form of the function member cannot be constructed and is thus not applicable.
- Otherwise, the expanded form is applicable if for each argument in A the parameter passing mode of the argument is identical to the parameter passing mode of the corresponding parameter, and
  - o for a fixed value parameter or a value parameter created by the expansion, an implicit conversion (§13.1) exists from the type of the argument to the type of the corresponding parameter, or
  - o for a ref or out parameter, the type of the argument is identical to the type of the corresponding parameter.

#### 14.4.2.2 Better function member

Given an argument list A with a sequence of argument types  $\{A_1, A_2, ..., A_N\}$  and two applicable function members  $M_P$  and  $M_Q$  with parameter types  $\{P_1, P_2, ..., P_N\}$  and  $\{Q_1, Q_2, ..., Q_N, M_P\}$ , after expansion and type argument substitution, is defined to be a *better function member* than  $M_Q$  if

- for each argument, the implicit conversion from  $A_X$  to  $P_X$  is not worse than the implicit conversion from  $A_X$  to  $Q_X$ , and
- for at least one argument, the conversion from  $A_X$  to  $P_X$  is better than the conversion from  $A_X$  to  $Q_X$ .

When performing this evaluation, if  $M_P$  or  $M_Q$  is applicable only in its expanded form, then  $P_X$  or  $Q_X$  refers to a parameter in the expanded form of the parameter list.

In case the expanded parameter types  $\{P_1, P_2, ..., P_N\}$  and  $\{Q_1, Q_2, ..., Q_N\}$ , are identical, the following tiebreaking rules are applied to determine the better function member by comparing the given uninstantiated and unexpanded parameter types  $\{R_1, R_2, ..., R_K\}$  and  $\{S_1, S_2, ..., S_L\}$  of the function members  $M_P$  and  $M_Q$  respectively. In this case, the better function member is determined by the following rules:

- If one of M<sub>2</sub> and M<sub>3</sub> is non-generic, but the other is generic, then the non-generic is better.
- Otherwise, if one of M<sub>P</sub> and M<sub>Q</sub> is applicable in its non-expanded form (or has no params array) and the other is applicable only in its expanded form (and has a params array), then the non-expanded method is better.
- Otherwise, if the numbers of parameters K in M<sub>P</sub> and L in M<sub>Q</sub> are different, then the method with more parameters is better. Note that this can only occur if both methods have params arrays and are only applicable in their expanded forms.
- Otherwise, the number of parameters K in  $M_P$  and L in  $M_Q$  are the same, and if one method has *more* specific parameter types, then that method is better. The given parameter types  $\{R_1, R_2, ..., R_K\}$  are defined to be more specific than the given parameter types  $\{S_1, S_2, ..., S_L\}$  if each given parameter  $R_X$  is not less specific than  $S_X$ , and at least one given parameter,  $R_X$  is more specific than  $S_X$ . A type parameter is less specific than a non-type parameter. Recursively, a constructed type is more specific than another constructed type (with the same number of type arguments) if at least one type argument is more specific and no type argument is less specific than the corresponding type argument in the other. An array type is more specific than another array type (with the same number of dimensions) if the element type of the first is more specific than the element type of the second.
- Otherwise, if one member is a lifted operator and the other member is an unlifted operator, then the unlifted operator is better.
- Otherwise, neither method is better.

#### 14.4.2.3 Better conversion

Given an implicit conversion  $C_1$  that converts from a type S to a type  $T_1$ , and an implicit conversion  $C_2$  that converts from a type S to a type  $T_2$ , the *better conversion* of the two conversions is determined as follows:

- If  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are the same type, neither conversion is better.
- If S is  $T_1$ ,  $C_1$  is the better conversion.
- If S is  $T_2$ ,  $C_2$  is the better conversion.
- If an implicit conversion from T<sub>1</sub> to T<sub>2</sub> exists, and no implicit conversion from T<sub>2</sub> to T<sub>1</sub> exists, C<sub>1</sub> is the better conversion.
- If an implicit conversion from  $T_2$  to  $T_1$  exists, and no implicit conversion from  $T_1$  to  $T_2$  exists,  $C_2$  is the better conversion.
- If  $T_1$  is sbyte and  $T_2$  is byte, ushort, ui nt, or ul ong,  $C_1$  is the better conversion.
- If  $T_2$  is sbyte and  $T_1$  is byte, ushort, ui nt, or ul ong,  $C_2$  is the better conversion.

- If  $T_1$  is short and  $T_2$  is ushort, ui nt, or ul ong,  $C_1$  is the better conversion.
- If  $T_2$  is short and  $T_1$  is ushort, uint, or ulong,  $C_2$  is the better conversion.
- If  $T_1$  is i nt and  $T_2$  is ui nt, or ul ong,  $C_1$  is the better conversion.
- If  $T_2$  is int and  $T_1$  is uint, or ulong,  $C_2$  is the better conversion.
- If  $T_1$  is l ong and  $T_2$  is ul ong,  $C_1$  is the better conversion.
- If  $T_2$  is 1 ong and  $T_1$  is ul ong,  $C_2$  is the better conversion.
- Otherwise, neither conversion is better.

If an implicit conversion  $C_1$  is defined by these rules to be a better conversion than an implicit conversion  $C_2$ , then it is also the case that  $C_2$  is a *worse conversion* than  $C_1$ .

### 14.4.3 Function member invocation

This subclause describes the process that takes place at run-time to invoke a particular function member. It is assumed that a compile-time process has already determined the particular member to invoke, possibly by applying overload resolution to a set of candidate function members.

For purposes of describing the invocation process, function members are divided into two categories:

- Static function members. These are static methods, static property accessors, and user-defined operators. Static function members are always non-virtual.
- Instance function members. These are instance methods, instance constructors, instance property accessors, and indexer accessors. Instance function members are either non-virtual or virtual, and are always invoked on a particular instance. The instance is computed by an instance expression, and it becomes accessible within the function member as this (§14.5.7). For an instance constructor, the instance expression is taken to be the newly allocated object.

The run-time processing of a function member invocation consists of the following steps, where Mis the function member and, if Mis an instance member, E is the instance expression:

- If M is a static function member:
  - o The argument list is evaluated as described in §14.4.1.
  - o Mis invoked.
- If M is an instance function member declared in a *value-type*:
  - o E is evaluated. If this evaluation causes an exception, then no further steps are executed. For an instance constructor, this evaluation consists of allocating the storage (typically from an execution stack) for the new object. In this case E is classified as a variable.
  - o If E is not classified as a variable, then a temporary local variable of E's type is created and the value of E is assigned to that variable. E is then reclassified as a reference to that temporary local variable. The temporary variable is accessible as this within M, but not in any other way. Thus, only when E is a true variable is it possible for the caller to observe the changes that M makes to this.
  - o The argument list is evaluated as described in §14.4.1.
  - o Mis invoked. The variable referenced by E becomes the variable referenced by this.
- If Mis an instance function member declared in a reference-type:
  - E is evaluated. If this evaluation causes an exception, then no further steps are executed. For an instance constructor, this evaluation consists of allocating (typically from a garbage-collected heap) the storage for the new object.
  - o The argument list is evaluated as described in §14.4.1.

- o The value of E is checked to be valid: if the type of E is a *reference-type*, and the value of E is **null**, a **System**. **NullReferenceException** is thrown and no further steps are executed.
- o The function member implementation to invoke is determined:
  - If the compile-time type of E is an interface, the function member to invoke is the implementation of M provided by the run-time type of the instance referenced by E. This function member is determined by applying the interface mapping rules (§20.4.2).
  - Otherwise, if M is a virtual function member, the function member to invoke is the implementation of M provided by the run-time type of the instance referenced by E. This function member is determined by applying the rules for determining the most derived implementation (§17.5.3) of M with respect to the run-time type of the instance referenced by E.
  - Otherwise, Mis a non-virtual function member, and the function member to invoke is Mitself.
- o The function member implementation determined in the step above is invoked. If the type of E is a *value-type*, then the variable referenced by E becomes the variable referenced by thi s; otherwise, the type of E is a *reference-type* and the object referenced by E becomes the object referenced by thi s.

[Note: If the type of E is a value-type, no boxing occurs even if M is an instance member function declared in a reference-type. end note]

## 14.4.3.1 Invocations on boxed instances

A function member implemented in a *value-type* can be invoked through a boxed instance of that *value-type* in the following situations:

- When the function member is an **overri de** of a method inherited from type **obj** ect and is invoked through an instance expression of type **obj** ect.
- When the function member is an implementation of an interface function member and is invoked through an instance expression of an *interface-type*.
- When the function member is invoked through a delegate.

In these situations, the boxed instance is considered to contain a variable of the *value-type*, and this variable becomes the variable referenced by this within the function member invocation. [*Note*: In particular, this means that when a function member is invoked on a boxed instance, it is possible for the function member to modify the value contained in the boxed instance. *end note*]

## 14.5 Primary expressions

Primary expressions include the simplest forms of expressions.

primary-expression: array-creation-expression primary-no-array-creation-expression

```
primary-no-array-creation-expression:
   literal
   simple-name
   parenthesized-expression
   member-access
   invocation-expression
   element-access
   this-access
   base-access
   post-increment-expression
   post-decrement-expression
   object-creation-expression
   delegate-creation-expression
   typeof-expression
   checked-expression
   unchecked-expression
   default-value-expression
   anonymous-method-expression
```

Primary expressions are divided between *array-creation-expressions* and *primary-no-array-creation-expressions*. Treating *array-creation-expression* in this way, rather than listing it along with the other simple expression forms, enables the grammar to disallow potentially confusing code such as

```
object o = new int[3][1];
```

which would otherwise be interpreted as

```
object o = (new int[3])[1];
```

A *primary-expression* is permitted to reference a static class (§17.1.1.3) if the *primary-expression* is the E in a *member-access* (§14.5.4) of the form E. I.

## 14.5.1 Literals

A primary-expression that consists of a literal (§9.4.4) is classified as a value.

literal::

boolean-literal integer-literal real-literal character-literal string-literal null-literal

### 14.5.2 Simple names

A *simple-name* consists of an identifier, optionally followed by a type argument list:

```
simple-name:
identifier type-argument-list<sub>out</sub>
```

A simple-name is either of the form I or of the form  $I < A_1, ..., A_K >$ , where I is a single identifier and  $< A_1, ..., A_K >$  is an optional type-argument-list. When no type-argument-list is specified, consider K to be zero. The simple-name is evaluated and classified as follows:

- If K is zero and the *simple-name* appears within a *block* and if the *block*'s (or an enclosing *block*'s) local variable declaration space (§10.3) contains a local variable, parameter or constant with name I, then the *simple-name* refers to that local variable, parameter or constant and is classified as a variable or value.
- If **K** is zero and the *simple-name* appears within the body of a generic method declaration and if that declaration includes a type parameter with name **I**, then the *simple-name* refers to that type parameter.

- Otherwise, for each instance type T (§25.1.2), starting with the instance type of the immediately enclosing type declaration and continuing with the instance type of each enclosing class or struct declaration (if any):
  - o If **K** is zero and the declaration of **T** includes a type parameter with name **I**, then the *simple-name* refers to that type parameter.
  - Otherwise, if a member lookup (§14.3) of I in T with K type arguments produces a match:
    - If T is the instance type of the immediately enclosing class or struct type and the lookup identifies one or more methods, the result is a method group with an associated instance expression of **thi s**. If a type argument list was specified, it is used in calling a generic method (§25.6.3).
    - Otherwise, if T is the instance type of the immediately enclosing class or struct type, if the lookup identifies an instance member, and if the reference occurs within the *block* of an instance constructor, an instance method, or an instance accessor, the result is the same as a member access (§14.5.4) of the form this. I. This can only happen when K is zero.
    - Otherwise, the result is the same as a member access ( $\S14.5.4$ ) of the form T. I or T. I < A<sub>1</sub>, ..., A<sub>K</sub>>. In this case, it is a compile-time error for the *simple-name* to refer to an instance member.
- Otherwise, for each namespace N, starting with the namespace in which the *simple-name* occurs, continuing with each enclosing namespace (if any), and ending with the global namespace, the following steps are evaluated until an entity is located:
  - o If K is zero and I is the name of a namespace in N, then:
    - If the location where the *simple-name* occurs is enclosed by a namespace declaration for N and the namespace declaration contains an *extern-alias-directive* or *using-alias-directive* that associates the name I with a namespace or type, then the *simple-name* is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
    - Otherwise, the *simple-name* refers to the namespace named I in N.
  - Otherwise, if N contains an accessible type having name I and K type parameters, then:
    - If **K** is zero and the location where the *simple-name* occurs is enclosed by a namespace declaration for **N** and the namespace declaration contains an *extern-alias-directive* or *using-alias-directive* that associates the name **I** with a namespace or type, then the *simple-name* is ambiguous and a compile-time error occurs.
    - Otherwise, the *namespace-or-type-name* refers to the type constructed with the given type arguments.
  - Otherwise, if the location where the *simple-name* occurs is enclosed by a namespace declaration for N:
    - If **K** is zero and the namespace declaration contains an *extern-alias-directive* or *using-alias-directive* that associates the name I with an imported namespace or type, then the *simple-name* refers to that namespace or type.
    - Otherwise, if the namespaces imported by the *using-namespace-directives* of the namespace declaration contain exactly one type having name I and K type parameters, then the *simple-name* refers to that type constructed with the given type arguments.
    - Otherwise, if the namespaces imported by the *using-namespace-directives* of the namespace declaration contain more than one type having name I and K type parameters, then the *simple-name* is ambiguous and an error occurs.

[Note: This entire step is exactly parallel to the corresponding step in the processing of a namespace-or-type-name (§10.8). end note]

• Otherwise, the *simple-name* is undefined and a compile-time error occurs.

## 14.5.2.1 Invariant meaning in blocks

For each occurrence of a given identifier as a *simple-name* in an expression or declarator, every other occurrence of the same identifier as a *simple-name* in an expression or declarator within the immediately enclosing *block* (§15.2) or *switch-block* (§15.7.2) shall refer to the same entity. [*Note*: This rule ensures that the meaning of a name is always the same within a block. *end note*]

[Example: The example

```
class Test
{
   double x;
   void F(bool b) {
        x = 1.0;
        if (b) {
            int x = 1;
        }
   }
}
```

results in a compile-time error because **x** refers to different entities within the outer block (the extent of which includes the nested block in the **i f** statement). In contrast, the example

```
class Test
{
    double x;
    void F(bool b) {
        if (b) {
            x = 1.0;
        }
        else {
            int x = 1;
        }
}
```

is permitted because the name x is never used in the outer block. *end example*]

[*Note*: The rule of invariant meaning applies only to simple names. It is perfectly valid for the same identifier to have one meaning as a simple name and another meaning as right operand of a member access (§14.5.4). *end note*] [*Example*:

```
struct Point
{
   int x, y;
   public Point(int x, int y) {
      this. x = x;
      this. y = y;
   }
}
```

The example above illustrates a common pattern of using the names of fields as parameter names in an instance constructor. In the example, the simple names x and y refer to the parameters, but that does not prevent the member access expressions thi s. x and thi s. y from accessing the fields. end example]

## 14.5.3 Parenthesized expressions

A parenthesized-expression consists of an expression enclosed in parentheses.

```
parenthesized-expression: ( expression )
```

A *parenthesized-expression* is evaluated by evaluating the *expression* within the parentheses. If the *expression* within the parentheses denotes a namespace or type, a compile-time error occurs. Otherwise, the result of the *parenthesized-expression* is the result of the evaluation of the contained *expression*.

### 14.5.4 Member access

A member-access consists of a primary-expression, a predefined-type, or a qualified-alias-member, followed by a "." token, followed by an identifier, optionally followed by a type-argument-list.

```
member-access:
    primary-expression .
                             identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
    predefined-type . identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
    qualified-alias-member . identifier type-argument-list<sub>ont</sub>
predefined-type: one of
    bool
                byte
                             char
                                          deci mal
                                                      doubl e
                                                                   float
                                                                               i nt
                                                                                            long
    obj ect
                sbyte
                             short
                                          string
                                                      ui nt
                                                                   ul ong
                                                                               ushort
```

qualified-alias-member is defined in §16.7.

A member-access is either of the form E. I or of the form E.  $I < A_1, ..., A_K >$ , where E is a primary-expression, predefined-type or qualified-alias-member, I is a single identifier and  $< A_1, ..., A_K >$  is an optional type-argument-list. When no type-argument-list is specified, consider K to be zero. The member-access is evaluated and classified as follows:

- If K is zero and E is a namespace and E contains a nested namespace with name I, then the result is that namespace.
- Otherwise, if E is a namespace and E contains an accessible type having name I and K type parameters, then the result is that type constructed with the given type arguments.
- If E is a classified as a type, if E is not a type parameter, and if a member lookup (§14.3) of I in E with K type parameters produces a match, then E. I is evaluated and classified as follows: [Note: When the result of such a member lookup is a method group and K is zero, the method group can contain methods having type parameters. This allows such methods to be considered for type argument inferencing. end note]
  - o If I identifies a type, then the result is that type constructed with the given type and any inferred arguments.
  - o If I identifies one or more methods, then the result is a method group with no associated instance expression.
  - o If I identifies a static property, then the result is a property access with no associated instance expression.
  - o If I identifies a static field:
    - If the field is **readonl** y and the reference occurs outside the static constructor of the class or struct in which the field is declared, then the result is a value, namely the value of the static field I in E.
    - Otherwise, the result is a variable, namely the static field I in E.
  - o If I identifies a static event:
    - If the reference occurs within the class or struct in which the event is declared, and the event was declared without *event-accessor-declarations* (§17.7), then E. I is processed exactly as if I were a static field.
    - Otherwise, the result is an event access with no associated instance expression.
  - o If I identifies a constant, then the result is a value, namely the value of that constant.

- o If I identifies an enumeration member, then the result is a value, namely the value of that enumeration member.
- Otherwise, E. I is an invalid member reference, and a compile-time error occurs.
- If E is a property access, indexer access, variable, or value, the type of which is T, and a member lookup (§14.3) of I in T with K type arguments produces a match, then E. I is evaluated and classified as follows:
  - o First, if E is a property or indexer access, then the value of the property or indexer access is obtained (§14.1.1) and E is reclassified as a value.
  - o If I identifies one or more methods, then the result is a method group with an associated instance expression of E. If a type argument list was specified, the method group consists only of generic methods having K type parameters and the type argument list is implicitly applied to each method in the method group (§25.6.3). If no type argument list was specified, the method group may contain both generic and non-generic methods.
  - o If I identifies an instance property, then the result is a property access with an associated instance expression of E.
  - o If T is a *class-type* and I identifies an instance field of that *class-type*:
    - If the value of E is null, then a System. NullReferenceException is thrown.
    - Otherwise, if the field is readonly and the reference occurs outside an instance constructor of the class in which the field is declared, then the result is a value, namely the value of the field I in the object referenced by E.
    - Otherwise, the result is a variable, namely the field I in the object referenced by E.
  - o If T is a *struct-type* and I identifies an instance field of that *struct-type*:
    - If E is a value, or if the field is **readonl** y and the reference occurs outside an instance constructor of the struct in which the field is declared, then the result is a value, namely the value of the field I in the struct instance given by E.
    - Otherwise, the result is a variable, namely the field I in the struct instance given by E.
  - o If I identifies an instance event:
    - If the reference occurs within the class or struct in which the event is declared, and the event was declared without *event-accessor-declarations* (§17.7), then E. I is processed exactly as if I was an instance field.
    - Otherwise, the result is an event access with an associated instance expression of E.
- Otherwise, E. I is an invalid member reference, and a compile-time error occurs.

## 14.5.4.1 Identical simple names and type names

In a member access of the form E. I, if E is a single identifier, and if the meaning of E as a *simple-name* (§14.5.2) is a constant, field, property, local variable, or parameter with the same type as the meaning of E as a *type-name* (§10.8), then both possible meanings of E are permitted. The two possible meanings of E. I are never ambiguous, since I shall necessarily be a member of the type E in both cases. In other words, the rule simply permits access to the static members and nested types of E where a compile-time error would otherwise have occurred. [*Example*:

```
struct Color
{
   public static readonly Color White = new Color(...);
   public static readonly Color Black = new Color(...);
   public Color Complement() {...}
}
```

Within the A class, those occurrences of the Col or identifier that reference the Col or type are underlined, and those that reference the Col or field are not underlined. *end example*]

## 14.5.5 Invocation expressions

An *invocation-expression* is used to invoke a method.

```
invocation-expression:
    primary-expression ( argument-list<sub>opt</sub> )
```

The *primary-expression* of an *invocation-expression* shall be a method group or a value of a *delegate-type*. If the *primary-expression* is a method group, the *invocation-expression* is a method invocation (§14.5.5.1). If the *primary-expression* is a value of a *delegate-type*, the *invocation-expression* is a delegate invocation (§14.5.5.2). If the *primary-expression* is neither a method group nor a value of a *delegate-type*, a compile-time error occurs.

The optional *argument-list* (§14.4.1) provides values or variable references for the parameters of the method.

The result of evaluating an *invocation-expression* is classified as follows:

- If the *invocation-expression* invokes a method or delegate that returns **voi** d, the result is nothing. An expression that is classified as nothing cannot be an operand of any operator, and is permitted only in the context of a *statement-expression* (§15.6).
- Otherwise, the result is a value of the type returned by the method or delegate.

### 14.5.5.1 Method invocations

For a method invocation, the *primary-expression* of the *invocation-expression* shall be a method group. The method group identifies the one method to invoke or the set of overloaded methods from which to choose a specific method to invoke. In the latter case, determination of the specific method to invoke is based on the context provided by the types of the arguments in the *argument-list*.

The compile-time processing of a method invocation of the form M(A), where M is a method group (possibly including a *type-argument-list*), and A is an optional *argument-list*, consists of the following steps:

- The set of candidate methods for the method invocation is constructed. For each method F associated with the method group M:
  - o If F is non-generic, F is a candidate when:
    - Mhas no type argument list, and
    - F is applicable with respect to A (§14.4.2.1).
  - o If F is generic and Mhas no type argument list, F is a candidate when:
    - Type inference (§25.6.4) succeeds, inferring a list of type arguments for the call, and
    - Once the inferred type arguments are substituted for the corresponding method type parameters, all constructed types in the parameter list of F satisfy their constraints (§25.7.1), and the parameter list of F is applicable with respect to A (§14.4.2.1), and

- o If F is generic and Mincludes a type argument list, F is a candidate when:
  - F has the same number of method type parameters as were supplied in the type argument list, and
  - Once the type arguments are substituted for the corresponding method type parameters, all constructed types in the parameter list of F satisfy their constraints (§25.7.1), and the parameter list of F is applicable with respect to A (§14.4.2.1).
- The set of candidate methods is reduced to contain only methods from the most derived types: For each method C. F in the set, where C is the type in which the method F is declared, all methods declared in a base type of C are removed from the set. Furthermore, if C is a class type other than object, all methods declared in an interface type are removed from the set. [Note: This latter rule only has affect when the method group was the result of a member lookup on a type parameter having an effective base class other than object and a non-empty effective interface set (§25.7). end note]
- If the resulting set of candidate methods is empty, then no applicable methods exist, and a compile-time error occurs.
- The best method of the set of candidate methods is identified using the overload resolution rules of §14.4.2. If a single best method cannot be identified, the method invocation is ambiguous, and a compile-time error occurs. When performing overload resolution, the parameters of a generic method are considered after substituting the type arguments (supplied or inferred) for the corresponding method type parameters.
- Final validation of the chosen best method is performed:
  - O The method is validated in the context of the method group: If the best method is a static method, the method group shall have resulted from a *simple-name* or a *member-access* through a type. If the best method is an instance method, the method group shall have resulted from a *simple-name*, a *member-access* through a variable or value, or a *base-access*. If neither of these requirements is true, a compile-time error occurs.
  - o If the best method is a generic method, the type arguments (supplied or inferred) are checked against the constraints (§25.7.1) declared on the generic method. If any type argument does not satisfy the corresponding constraint(s) on the type parameter, a compile-time error occurs.

Once a method has been selected and validated at compile-time by the above steps, the actual run-time invocation is processed according to the rules of function member invocation described in §14.4.3.

[*Note*: The intuitive effect of the resolution rules described above is as follows: To locate the particular method invoked by a method invocation, start with the type indicated by the method invocation and proceed up the inheritance chain until at least one applicable, accessible, non-override method declaration is found. Then perform overload resolution on the set of applicable, accessible, non-override methods declared in that type and invoke the method thus selected. *end note*]

# 14.5.5.2 Delegate invocations

For a delegate invocation, the *primary-expression* of the *invocation-expression* shall be a value of a *delegate-type*. Furthermore, considering the *delegate-type* to be a function member with the same parameter list as the *delegate-type*, the *delegate-type* shall be applicable (§14.4.2.1) with respect to the *argument-list* of the *invocation-expression*.

The run-time processing of a delegate invocation of the form D(A), where D is a *primary-expression* of a *delegate-type* and A is an optional *argument-list*, consists of the following steps:

- D is evaluated. If this evaluation causes an exception, no further steps are executed.
- The argument list A is evaluated. If this evaluation causes an exception, no further steps are executed.
- The value of D is checked to be valid. If the value of D is null, a System. NullReferenceException is thrown and no further steps are executed.

• Otherwise, **D** is a reference to a delegate instance. A function member invocation (§14.4.3) is performed on each callable entity referenced by the delegate. If invocation of a callable entity causes an exception, the remaining callable entities are not invoked. Otherwise, the return result of the invocation is the result returned from the last callable entity.

### 14.5.6 Element access

An *element-access* consists of a *primary-no-array-creation-expression*, followed by a "[" token, followed by an *expression-list*, followed by a "]" token. The *expression-list* consists of one or more *expressions*, separated by commas.

```
element-access:
    primary-no-array-creation-expression [ expression-list ]

expression-list:
    expression
    expression-list , expression
```

If the *primary-no-array-creation-expression* of an *element-access* is a value of an *array-type*, the *element-access* is an array access (§14.5.6.1). Otherwise, the *primary-no-array-creation-expression* shall be a variable or value of a class, struct, or interface type that has one or more indexer members, in which case the *element-access* is an indexer access (§14.5.6.2).

## 14.5.6.1 Array access

For an array access, the *primary-no-array-creation-expression* of the *element-access* shall be a value of an *array-type*. The number of expressions in the *expression-list* shall be the same as the rank of the *array-type*, and each expression shall be of type int, uint, long, ulong, or of a type that can be implicitly converted to one or more of these types.

The result of evaluating an array access is a variable of the element type of the array, namely the array element selected by the value(s) of the expression(s) in the *expression-list*.

The run-time processing of an array access of the form P[A], where P is a *primary-no-array-creation-expression* of an *array-type* and A is an *expression-list*, consists of the following steps:

- P is evaluated. If this evaluation causes an exception, no further steps are executed.
- The index expressions of the *expression-list* are evaluated in order, from left to right. Following evaluation of each index expression, an implicit conversion (§13.1) to one of the following types is performed: int, uint, long, ulong. The first type in this list for which an implicit conversion exists is chosen. For instance, if the index expression is of type short then an implicit conversion to int is performed, since implicit conversions from short to int and from short to long are possible. If evaluation of an index expression or the subsequent implicit conversion causes an exception, then no further index expressions are evaluated and no further steps are executed.
- The value of P is checked to be valid. If the value of P is nul 1, a System. Nul 1 ReferenceException is thrown and no further steps are executed.
- The value of each expression in the *expression-list* is checked against the actual bounds of each dimension of the array instance referenced by P. If one or more values are out of range, a **System. I ndexOutOfRangeExcepti on** is thrown and no further steps are executed.
- The location of the array element given by the index expression(s) is computed, and this location becomes the result of the array access.

### 14.5.6.2 Indexer access

For an indexer access, the *primary-no-array-creation-expression* of the *element-access* shall be a variable or value of a class, struct, or interface type, and this type shall implement one or more indexers that are applicable with respect to the *expression-list* of the *element-access*.

The compile-time processing of an indexer access of the form P[A], where P is a *primary-no-array-creation-expression* of a class, struct, or interface type T, and A is an *expression-list*, consists of the following steps:

- The set of indexers provided by T is constructed. The set consists of all indexers declared in T or a base type of T that are not override declarations and are accessible in the current context (§10.5).
- The set is reduced to those indexers that are applicable and not hidden by other indexers. The following rules are applied to each indexer S. I in the set, where S is the type in which the indexer I is declared:
  - o If I is not applicable with respect to A (§14.4.2.1), then I is removed from the set.
  - o If I is applicable with respect to A (§14.4.2.1), then all indexers declared in a base type of S are removed from the set.
- If the resulting set of candidate indexers is empty, then no applicable indexers exist, and a compile-time error occurs.
- The best indexer of the set of candidate indexers is identified using the overload resolution rules of §14.4.2. If a single best indexer cannot be identified, the indexer access is ambiguous, and a compile-time error occurs.
- The index expressions of the *expression-list* are evaluated in order, from left to right. The result of processing the indexer access is an expression classified as an indexer access. The indexer access expression references the indexer determined in the step above, and has an associated instance expression of **P** and an associated argument list of **A**.

Depending on the context in which it is used, an indexer access causes invocation of either the *get-accessor* or the *set-accessor* of the indexer. If the indexer access is the target of an assignment, the *set-accessor* is invoked to assign a new value (§14.14.1). In all other cases, the *get-accessor* is invoked to obtain the current value (§14.1.1).

### 14.5.7 This access

A this-access consists of the reserved word this.

this-access:

thi s

A *this-access* is permitted only in the *block* of an instance constructor, an instance method, or an instance accessor. It has one of the following meanings:

- When this is used in a *primary-expression* within an instance constructor of a class, it is classified as a value. The type of the value is the class within which the usage occurs, and the value is a reference to the object being constructed.
- When this is used in a *primary-expression* within an instance method or instance accessor of a class, it is classified as a value. The type of the value is the class within which the usage occurs, and the value is a reference to the object for which the method or accessor was invoked.
- When this is used in a *primary-expression* within an instance constructor of a struct, it is classified as a variable. The type of the variable is the struct within which the usage occurs, and the variable represents the struct being constructed. The this variable of an instance constructor of a struct behaves exactly the same as:
  - o an out parameter of the struct type if the constructor declaration has no constructor initializer. In particular, this means that the variable shall be definitely assigned in every execution path of the instance constructor.
  - o a ref parameter of the struct type if the constructor declaration has a constructor initializer. In particular, this means that the variable is considered initially assigned.

• When **this** is used in a *primary-expression* within an instance method or instance accessor of a struct, it is classified as a variable. The type of the variable is the struct within which the usage occurs, and the variable represents the struct for which the method or accessor was invoked. The **this** variable of an instance method of a struct behaves exactly the same as a **ref** parameter of the struct type.

Use of **thi s** in a *primary-expression* in a context other than the ones listed above is a compile-time error. In particular, it is not possible to refer to **thi s** in a static method, a static property accessor, or in a *variable-initializer* of a field declaration.

#### 14.5.8 Base access

A *base-access* consists of the reserved word **base** followed by either a ". " token and an identifier and optional *type-argument-list* or an *expression-list* enclosed in square brackets:

```
base access:

base identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
base [ expression-list ]
```

A *base-access* is used to access base class members that are hidden by similarly named members in the current class or struct. A *base-access* is permitted only in the *block* of an instance constructor, an instance method, or an instance accessor. When **base**. I occurs in a class or struct, I shall denote a member of the base class of that class or struct. Likewise, when **base**[E] occurs in a class, an applicable indexer shall exist in the base class.

At compile-time, *base-access* expressions of the form base. I and base[E] are evaluated exactly as if they were written ((B) this). I and ((B) this) [E], where B is the base class of the class or struct in which the construct occurs. Thus, base. I and base[E] correspond to this. I and this[E], except this is viewed as an instance of the base class.

When a *base-access* references a virtual function member (a method, event, property, or indexer), the determination of which function member to invoke at run-time (§14.4.3) is changed. The function member that is invoked is determined by finding the most derived implementation (§17.5.3) of the function member with respect to **B** (instead of with respect to the run-time type of **this**, as would be usual in a non-base access). Thus, within an **override** of a **virtual** function member, a *base-access* can be used to invoke the inherited implementation of the function member. If the function member referenced by a *base-access* is abstract, a compile-time error occurs.

## 14.5.9 Postfix increment and decrement operators

```
post-increment-expression:
primary-expression ++
post-decrement-expression:
primary-expression --
```

The operand of a postfix increment or decrement operation shall be an expression classified as a variable, a property access, or an indexer access. The result of the operation is a value of the same type as the operand.

If the operand of a postfix increment or decrement operation is a property or indexer access, the property or indexer shall have both a get and a set accessor. If this is not the case, a compile-time error occurs.

Unary operator overload resolution (§14.2.3) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. Predefined ++ and -- operators exist for the following operand types: sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, float, double, decimal, and any enum type. The result type of each of these predefined operators is the same as the operand type. The predefined ++ operators return the value produced by adding 1 to the operand, and the predefined -- operators return the value produced by subtracting 1 from the operand. In a checked context, if the result of this addition or subtraction is outside the range of the result type and the result type is an integral type or enum type, a System. OverflowException is thrown.

There shall be an implicit conversion from the return type of the selected unary operator to the type of the *primary-expression*, otherwise a compile-time error occurs.

The run-time processing of a postfix increment or decrement operation of the form x++ or x-- consists of the following steps:

- If x is classified as a variable:
  - o x is evaluated to produce the variable.
  - o The value of x is saved.
  - $\circ$  The saved value of **x** is converted to the operand type of the selected operator and the operator is invoked with this value as its argument.
  - o The value returned by the operator is converted to the type of  $\mathbf{x}$  and stored in the location given by the evaluation of  $\mathbf{x}$ .
  - o The saved value of x becomes the result of the operation.
- If x is classified as a property or indexer access:
  - O The instance expression (if x is not static) and the argument list (if x is an indexer access) associated with x are evaluated, and the results are used in the subsequent get and set accessor invocations.
  - $\circ$  The get accessor of x is invoked and the returned value is saved.
  - The saved value of x is converted to the operand type of the selected operator and the operator is invoked with this value as its argument.
  - o The value returned by the operator is converted to the type of x and the set accessor of x is invoked with this value as its value argument.
  - $\circ$  The saved value of **x** becomes the result of the operation.

The ++ and -- operators also support prefix notation (§14.6.5). The result of  $\mathbf{x}$ ++ or  $\mathbf{x}$ -- is the value of  $\mathbf{x}$  before the operation, whereas the result of ++ $\mathbf{x}$  or --  $\mathbf{x}$  is the value of  $\mathbf{x}$  after the operation. In either case,  $\mathbf{x}$  itself has the same value after the operation.

An operator ++ or operator -- implementation can be invoked using either postfix or prefix notation. It is not possible to have separate operator implementations for the two notations.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined postfix increment and decrement operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.5.10 The new operator

The new operator is used to create new instances of types.

There are three forms of new expressions:

- Object creation expressions are used to create new instances of class types and value types.
- Array creation expressions are used to create new instances of array types.
- Delegate creation expressions are used to create new instances of delegate types.

The new operator implies creation of an instance of a type, but does not necessarily imply dynamic allocation of memory. In particular, instances of value types require no additional memory beyond the variables in which they reside, and no dynamic allocations occur when new is used to create instances of value types.

## 14.5.10.1 Object creation expressions

An *object-creation-expression* is used to create a new instance of a *class-type* or a *value-type*.

```
object-creation-expression:

new type ( argument-list<sub>opt</sub> )
```

The *type* of an *object-creation-expression* shall be a *class-type*, a *value-type*, or a *type-parameter* having the *constructor-constraint* or the value type constraint (§25.7). The *type* cannot be an **abstract** *class-type*.

The optional *argument-list* (§14.4.1) is permitted only if the *type* is a *class-type* or a *struct-type*, and not a *type-parameter*.

The compile-time processing of an *object-creation-expression* of the form new T(A), where T is a *class-type*, a *value-type*, or a *type-parameter*, and A is an optional *argument-list*, consists of the following steps:

- If T is a *value-type* and A is not present:
  - o The *object-creation-expression* is a default constructor invocation. The result of the *object-creation-expression* is a value of type T, namely the default value for T as defined in §11.1.2.
- Otherwise, if T is a *class-type* or a *struct-type*:
  - o If T is an abstract *class-type*, a compile-time error occurs.
  - o The instance constructor to invoke is determined using the overload resolution rules of §14.4.2. The set of candidate instance constructors consists of all accessible instance constructors declared in T. If the set of candidate instance constructors is empty, or if a single best instance constructor cannot be identified, a compile-time error occurs.
  - o The result of the *object-creation-expression* is a value of type T, namely the value produced by invoking the instance constructor determined in the step above.
- Otherwise, if T is a *type-parameter*:
  - o If A is present, a compile-time error occurs.
  - Otherwise, if T has the *constructor-constraint* or the value type constraint, the result of the object-creation-expression is a value of type T.
  - Otherwise, the *object-creation-expression* is invalid, and a compile-time error occurs.
- Otherwise, the *object-creation-expression* is invalid, and a compile-time error occurs.

The run-time processing of an *object-creation-expression* of the form **new T(A)**, where T is *class-type*, a *struct-type*, or a *type-parameter*, and A is an optional *argument-list*, consists of the following steps:

- If T is a *class-type*:
  - o A new instance of class T is allocated. If there is not enough memory available to allocate the new instance, a **System. OutOfMemoryException** is thrown and no further steps are executed.
  - o All fields of the new instance are initialized to their default values (§12.2).
  - O The instance constructor is invoked according to the rules of function member invocation (§14.4.3). A reference to the newly allocated instance is automatically passed to the instance constructor and the instance can be accessed from within that constructor as this.
- If T is a struct-type:
  - O An instance of type T is created by allocating a temporary local variable. Since an instance constructor of a *struct-type* is required to definitely assign a value to each field of the instance being created, no initialization of the temporary variable is necessary.
  - o The instance constructor is invoked according to the rules of function member invocation (§14.4.3). A reference to the newly allocated instance is automatically passed to the instance constructor and the instance can be accessed from within that constructor as this.
- If T is a type-parameter:
  - o If T evaluates at run-time to a value type, the result is the default value of this type (§11.1.2). This is always the case if T has the value type constraint.

- Otherwise, T shall evaluate at run-time to a non-abstract class type having a public constructor taking no parameters. The result is a new instance of this class type:
  - A new instance of the class is allocated. If there is not enough memory available to allocate the new instance, a System. OutOfMemoryExcepti on is thrown and no further steps are executed.
  - All fields of the new instance are initialized to their default values (§12.2).
  - The instance constructor is invoked according to the rules of function member invocation (§14.4.3). A reference to the newly allocated instance is automatically passed to the instance constructor and the instance can be accessed from within that constructor as this.

[*Note*: The run-time type need not be accessible to the code containing the *object-creation-expression*. Nevertheless, the run-time environment shall support invoking the constructor. *end note*]

## 14.5.10.2 Array creation expressions

An array-creation-expression is used to create a new instance of an array-type.

```
array-creation-expression:

new non-array-type [ expression-list ] rank-specifiers<sub>opt</sub> array-initializer<sub>opt</sub>

new array-type array-initializer
```

An array creation expression of the first form allocates an array instance of the type that results from deleting each of the individual expressions from the expression list. [Example: The array creation expression new int[10, 20] produces an array instance of type int[,], and the array creation expression new int[10][,] produces an array of type int[][,]. end example] Each expression in the expression list shall be of type int, uint, long, or ulong, or of a type that can be implicitly converted to one or more of these types. The value of each expression determines the length of the corresponding dimension in the newly allocated array instance. Since the length of an array dimension shall be nonnegative, it is a compile-time error to have a constant expression with a negative value, in the expression list.

Except in an unsafe context (§27.1), the layout of arrays is unspecified.

If an array creation expression of the first form includes an array initializer, each expression in the expression list shall be a constant expression (§14.16) and the rank and dimension lengths specified by the expression list shall match those of the array initializer.

In an array creation expression of the second form, the rank of the specified array type shall match that of the array initializer. The individual dimension lengths are inferred from the number of elements in each of the corresponding nesting levels of the array initializer. Thus, the expression

```
new int[,] \{\{0, 1\}, \{2, 3\}, \{4, 5\}\}
```

exactly corresponds to

```
new int [3, 2] {{0, 1}, {2, 3}, {4, 5}}
```

Array initializers are described further in §19.7.

The result of evaluating an array creation expression is classified as a value, namely a reference to the newly allocated array instance. The run-time processing of an array creation expression consists of the following steps:

- The dimension length expressions of the *expression-list* are evaluated in order, from left to right. Following evaluation of each expression, an implicit conversion (§13.1) to one of the following types is performed: int, uint, long, ulong. The first type in this list for which an implicit conversion exists is chosen. If evaluation of an expression or the subsequent implicit conversion causes an exception, then no further expressions are evaluated and no further steps are executed.
- The computed values for the dimension lengths are validated, as follows: If one or more of the values are less than zero, a **System**. **OverflowException** is thrown and no further steps are executed.

- An array instance with the given dimension lengths is allocated. If there is not enough memory available to allocate the new instance, a **System. OutOfMemoryExcepti on** is thrown and no further steps are executed.
- All elements of the new array instance are initialized to their default values (§12.2).
- If the array creation expression contains an array initializer, then each expression in the array initializer is evaluated and assigned to its corresponding array element. The evaluations and assignments are performed in the order the expressions are written in the array initializer—in other words, elements are initialized in increasing index order, with the rightmost dimension increasing first. If evaluation of a given expression or the subsequent assignment to the corresponding array element causes an exception, then no further elements are initialized (and the remaining elements will thus have their default values).

An array creation expression permits instantiation of an array with elements of an array type, but the elements of such an array shall be manually initialized. [Example: The statement

```
int[][] a = new int[100][];
```

creates a single-dimensional array with 100 elements of type i nt[]. The initial value of each element is null. It is not possible for the same array creation expression to also instantiate the sub-arrays (without an array initializer), and the statement

```
int[][] a = new int[100][5]; // Error
```

results in a compile-time error. Instantiation of the sub-arrays can instead be performed manually or using an array initializer, as in

```
\label{eq:continuity} \begin{array}{lll} & \text{int[][] a = new int[100][];} \\ & \text{for (int i = 0; i < 100; i++) a[i] = new int[5];} \\ & \text{int[][] b = new int[3][] } & \text{new int[1], new int[2], new int[3] }; \\ \end{array}
```

end example]

[*Note*: When an array of arrays has a "rectangular" shape, that is when the sub-arrays are all of the same length, it is more efficient to use a multi-dimensional array. In the example above, instantiation of the array of arrays creates 101 objects—one outer array and 100 sub-arrays. In contrast,

```
int[,] = new int[100, 5];
```

creates only a single object, a two-dimensional array, and accomplishes the allocation in a single statement. *end note*]

## 14.5.10.3 Delegate creation expressions

A *delegate-creation-expression* is used to create a new instance of a *delegate-type*.

```
delegate-creation-expression:
new delegate-type ( expression )
```

The argument of a delegate creation expression shall be a method group (§14.1), an *anonymous-method-expression* (§14.5.15), or a value of a *delegate-type*. If the argument is a method group, it identifies the method, type arguments (for a generic method) and, for an instance method, the object for which to create a delegate. If the argument is a value of a *delegate-type*, it identifies a delegate instance of which to create a copy.

If the *expression* is an *anonymous-method-expression* (§14.5.15), then the anonymous method is converted to the given delegate type using the implicit conversion rules defined in §13.5. [*Example*: If **D** is a delegate type, then the expression

```
new D(delegate { Console. WriteLine("hello"); })
is equivalent to the expression
     (D) delegate { Console. WriteLine("hello"); }
end example]
```

The compile-time processing of a *delegate-creation-expression* of the form new D(E), where D is a *delegate-type* and E is an *expression*, consists of the following steps:

- If E is a method group:
  - o A single method is selected corresponding to a method invocation (§14.5.5.1) of the form E(A), with the following modifications:
    - The parameter types and modifiers (ref or out) of D are used as the argument types and modifiers of the argument list A.
    - The candidate methods considered are only those methods that are applicable in their normal form (§14.4.2.1), not those applicable only in their expanded form.
    - If the algorithm of §14.5.5.1 produces an error, then a compile-time error occurs. Otherwise the algorithm produces a single best method **M** together with its type arguments (if the method is generic), having the same number of parameters as **D**.
  - o If the selected M is not consistent (§22.1) with the delegate type **D**, a compiler-time error occurs.
  - o If the method M is an instance method, the instance expression associated with E determines the target object of the delegate.
  - o The result is a value of type **D**, namely a newly created delegate that refers to the method **M** and target object.
- Otherwise, if E is a value of a *delegate-type*:
  - o If **D** and **E** have different numbers of parameters, a compile-time error occurs.
  - o If there is not an identity conversion or implicit reference conversion from the return type of E to the return type of D, a compile-time error occurs.
  - o If for some parameter of **D** there is not an identity conversion or implicit reference conversion from the parameter type to the corresponding parameter type of **E**, a compile-time error occurs.
  - o If any parameter of **D** or **E** has a parameter modifier (ref or out), then the other corresponding parameter must have the same modifier and the same type.
  - o The result is a value of type **D**, namely a newly created delegate that refers to the same invocation list as **E**.
- Otherwise, the delegate creation expression is invalid, and a compile-time error occurs.

The run-time processing of a *delegate-creation-expression* of the form **new D(E)**, where **D** is a *delegate-type* and E is an *expression*, consists of the following steps:

- If E is a method group:
  - Of the method selected at compile-time is a static method, the target object of the delegate is **null**. Otherwise, the selected method is an instance method, and the target object of the delegate is determined from the instance expression associated with E:
    - The instance expression is evaluated. If this evaluation causes an exception, no further steps are executed.
    - If the instance expression is of a *reference-type*, the value computed by the instance expression becomes the target object. If the target object is **null**, a **System**. **NullReferenceException** is thrown and no further steps are executed.
    - If the instance expression is of a *value-type*, a boxing operation (§11.3.1) is performed to convert the value to an object, and this object becomes the target object.
  - O A new instance of the delegate type **D** is allocated. If there is not enough memory available to allocate the new instance, a **System**. **OutOfMemoryException** is thrown and no further steps are executed.

- o The new delegate instance is initialized with a reference to the method that was determined at compile-time and a reference to the target object computed above.
- If E is a value of a *delegate-type*:
  - o E is evaluated. If this evaluation causes an exception, no further steps are executed.
  - o If the value of E is null, a System. NullReferenceException is thrown and no further steps are executed.
  - O A new instance of the delegate type **D** is allocated. If there is not enough memory available to allocate the new instance, a **System**. **OutOfMemoryExcepti** on is thrown and no further steps are executed.
  - o The new delegate instance is initialized with references to the same invocation list as the delegate instance given by E.

The method and object to which a delegate refers are determined when the delegate is instantiated and then remain constant for the entire lifetime of the delegate. In other words, it is not possible to change the target method or object of a delegate once it has been created. [*Note*: Remember, when two delegates are combined or one is removed from another, a new delegate results; no existing delegate has its content changed. *end note*]

It is not possible to create a delegate that refers to a property, indexer, user-defined operator, instance constructor, finalizer, or static constructor.

[Example: As described above, when a delegate is created from a method group, the formal parameter list and return type of the delegate determine which of the overloaded methods to select. In the example

```
delegate double DoubleFunc(double x);
class A
{
    DoubleFunc f = new DoubleFunc(Square);
    static float Square(float x) {
        return x * x;
    }
    static double Square(double x) {
        return x * x;
    }
}
```

the A. f field is initialized with a delegate that refers to the second **Square** method because overload resolution with an argument list consisting of a lone **doubl** e value would choose that method. Had the second **Square** method not been present, a compile-time error would have occurred.

The definition of a method being consistent with a delegate type (§22.1) permits covariance in the return type and contra-variance in the parameter types. That is, the method return type may be more specific than the delegate return type and the method parameter types may be less specific than the delegate parameter types. In the example

```
delegate object StrToObj(string s);
class A
{
    StrToObj f = new StrToObj(ObjToStr);
    static string ObjToStr(object x) {
        return x. ToString();
    }
}
```

the method **0bj ToStr** is used to create a delegate of type **StrTo0bj**. The method is consistent with the delegate type since there is an implicit reference conversion from the parameter type of the delegate to the parameter type of the method and an implicit reference conversion from the return type of the method to the return type of the delegate.

Here's another variance-related example:

## 14.5.11 The typeof operator

The typeof operator is used to obtain the System. Type object for a type.

The first form of *typeof-expression* consists of a **typeof** keyword followed by a parenthesized *type*. The result of an expression of this form is the **System**. **Type** object for the indicated type. There is only one **System**. **Type** object for any given type. [*Note*: This means that for type T, typeof (T) == typeof (T) is always true. *end note*]

The second form of *typeof-expression* consists of a **typeof** keyword followed by a parenthesized *unbound-type-name*. [Note: An *unbound-type-name* is very similar to a *type-name* (§10.8) except that an *unbound-type-name* contains *generic-dimension-specifiers* where a *type-name* contains *type-argument-lists*. *end note*] When the operand of a *typeof-expression* is a sequence of tokens that satisfies the grammars of both *unbound-type-name* and *type-name*, namely when it contains neither a *generic-dimension-specifier* nor a *type-argument-list*, the sequence of tokens is considered to be a *type-name*. The meaning of an *unbound-type-name* is determined as follows:

• Convert the sequence of tokens to a *type-name* by replacing each *generic-dimension-specifier* with a *type-argument-list* having the same number of commas and the keyword **obj** ect as each *type-argument*.

- Evaluate the resulting *type-name*, while ignoring all type parameter constraints.
- The *unbound-type-name* resolves to the *unbound generic type* associated with the resulting constructed type (§25.5).

The result of the *typeof-expression* is the **System**. Type object for the resulting unbound generic type.

The third form of *typeof-expression* consists of a **typeof** keyword followed by a parenthesized **voi** d keyword. The result of an expression of this form is the **System**. Type object that represents the absence of a type. The type object returned by **typeof(void)** is distinct from the type object returned for any type. [Note: This special type object is useful in class libraries that allow reflection onto methods in the language, where those methods wish to have a way to represent the return type of any method, including void methods, with an instance of **System**. Type. end note]

```
[Example: The example
       using System;
       class Test
           static void Main() {
               Type[] t = \{
                   typeof(int),
                   typeof (System. Int32),
                   typeof(string)
                   typeof(double[]),
                   typeof (voi d)
                                          };
               for (int i = 0; i < t. Length; i++) {
  Consol e. WriteLine(t[i]. Full Name);</pre>
           }
       }
produces the following output:
       System Int32
       System. Int32
       System. String
       System. Double[]
       System. Voi d
```

Note that int and System. Int 32 are the same type. end example]

The typeof operator can be used on a *type-parameter* (§25.1.1). The result is the System. Type object for the run-time type that was bound to the type-parameter. The typeof operator can also be used on a constructed type (§25.5) or an unbound generic type. The System. Type object for an unbound generic type is not the same as the System. Type object of the instance type. The instance type is always a closed constructed type at run-time so its System. Type object depends on the runtime type arguments in use, while the unbound generic type has no type arguments. [Example:

```
class X<T>
{
    public static void PrintTypes() {
        Console. WriteLine(typeof(T). FullName);
        Console. WriteLine(typeof(X<T>). FullName);
        Console. WriteLine(typeof(X<X<T>>). FullName);
        Console. WriteLine(typeof(X<>). FullName);
    }
}
class M
{
    static void Main() {
        X<int>. PrintTypes();
        X<string>. PrintTypes();
    }
}
```

The above program might print:

```
System.Int32
X`1[[System.Int32, mscorlib, Version=2.0.3600.0, Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=b77a5c561934e089]]
X`1[[X`1[[System.Int32, mscorlib, Version=2.0.3600.0, Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=b77a5c561934e089]], CSharpEcmaExample,
Version=1.0.1717.35787, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null]]
X`1
System.String
X`1[[System.String, mscorlib, Version=2.0.3600.0, Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=b77a5c561934e089]]
X`1[[X`1[[System.String, mscorlib, Version=2.0.3600.0, Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=b77a5c561934e089]], CSharpEcmaExample,
Version=1.0.1717.35787, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null]]
```

Note that the result of typeof (X <>) does not depend on the type argument but the result of typeof (X < T >) does depend on the type argument. *end example*]

# 14.5.12 The size of operator

The size of operator returns the number of 8-bit bytes occupied by a variable of a given type. The type specified as an operand to size of shall be an unmanaged-type (§27.2).

```
sizeof-expression:
sizeof (unmanaged-type)
```

For certain predefined types the si zeof operator yields a constant int value as shown in the table below:

Expression	Result
sizeof(sbyte)	1
sizeof(byte)	1
sizeof(short)	2
sizeof(ushort)	2
sizeof(int)	4
sizeof(uint)	4
sizeof(long)	8
sizeof(ulong)	8
si zeof (char)	2
sizeof(float)	4
si zeof (doubl e)	8
sizeof(bool)	1
sizeof(decimal)	16

For all other operand types, the si zeof operator is specified in §27.5.8.

## 14.5.13 The checked and unchecked operators

The checked and unchecked operators are used to control the *overflow-checking context* for integral-type arithmetic operations and conversions.

```
checked-expression:
    checked ( expression )
```

```
unchecked-expression:
unchecked ( expression )
```

The checked operator evaluates the contained expression in a checked context, and the unchecked operator evaluates the contained expression in an unchecked context. A *checked-expression* or *unchecked-expression* corresponds exactly to a *parenthesized-expression* (§14.5.3), except that the contained expression is evaluated in the given overflow checking context.

The overflow checking context can also be controlled through the checked and unchecked statements (§15.11).

The following operations are affected by the overflow checking context established by the checked and unchecked operators and statements:

- The predefined ++ and -- unary operators (§14.5.9 and §14.6.5), when the operand type is an integral or enum type.
- The predefined unary operator (§14.6.2), when the operand type is an integral type.
- The predefined +, -, \*, and / binary operators (§14.7), when the operand types are integral or enum types.
- Explicit numeric conversions (§13.2.1) from one integral or enum type to another integral or enum type, or from float or double to an integral or enum type.

When one of the above operations produces a result that is too large to represent in the destination type, the context in which the operation is performed controls the resulting behavior:

- In a checked context, if the operation is a constant expression (§14.16), a compile-time error occurs. Otherwise, when the operation is performed at run-time, a System. OverflowException is thrown.
- In an unchecked context, the result is truncated by discarding any high-order bits that do not fit in the destination type.

For non-constant expressions (§14.16) that are not enclosed by any checked or unchecked operators or statements, the default overflow checking context is unchecked, unless external factors (such as compiler switches and execution environment configuration) call for checked evaluation.

For constant expressions (§14.16), the default overflow checking context is always **checked**. Unless a constant expression is explicitly placed in an **unchecked** context, overflows that occur during the compile-time evaluation of the expression always cause compile-time errors.

[*Note*: Developers might benefit if they exercise their code using checked mode (as well as unchecked mode). It also seems reasonable that, unless otherwise requested, the default overflow checking context is set to checked when debugging is enabled. *end note*]

[Example: In the following code

no compile-time errors are reported since neither of the expressions can be evaluated at compile-time. At run-time, the F method throws a **System**. **OverflowException**, and the **G** method returns –727379968 (the lower 32 bits of the out-of-range result). The behavior of the **H** method depends on the default overflow-checking context for the compilation, but it is either the same as **F** or the same as **G**. *end example*]

[Example: In the following code

the overflows that occur when evaluating the constant expressions in F and H cause compile-time errors to be reported because the expressions are evaluated in a checked context. An overflow also occurs when evaluating the constant expression in G, but since the evaluation takes place in an unchecked context, the overflow is not reported. *end example*]

The **checked** and **unchecked** operators only affect the overflow checking context for those operations that are textually contained within the "(" and ")" tokens. The operators have no effect on function members that are invoked as a result of evaluating the contained expression. [*Example*: In the following code

```
class Test
{
    static int Multiply(int x, int y) {
        return x * y;
    }
    static int F() {
        return checked(Multiply(1000000, 1000000));
    }
}
```

the use of checked in F does not affect the evaluation of x \* y in Mul tiply, so x \* y is evaluated in the default overflow checking context. end example

The **unchecked** operator is convenient when writing constants of the signed integral types in hexadecimal notation. [*Example*:

```
class Test
{
    public const int AllBits = unchecked((int)0xFFFFFFFF);
    public const int HighBit = unchecked((int)0x80000000);
}
```

Both of the hexadecimal constants above are of type ui nt. Because the constants are outside the i nt range, without the unchecked operator, the casts to i nt would produce compile-time errors. *end example*]

[Note: The checked and unchecked operators and statements allow programmers to control certain aspects of some numeric calculations. However, the behavior of some numeric operators depends on their operands' data types. For example, multiplying two decimals always results in an exception on overflow even within an explicitly unchecked construct. Similarly, multiplying two floats never results in an exception on overflow even within an explicitly checked construct. In addition, other operators are never affected by the mode of checking, whether default or explicit. As a service to programmers, it is recommended that the compiler issue a warning when there is an arithmetic expression within an explicitly

checked or unchecked context (by operator or statement) that cannot possibly be affected by the specified mode of checking. Since such a warning is not required, the compiler has flexibility in determining the circumstances that merit the issuance of such warnings. *end note*]

## 14.5.14 Default value expression

A default value expression is used to obtain the default value (§12.2) of a type. Typically a default value expression is used for type parameters (§25.1.1), since it might not be known if the type parameter is a value type or a reference type. (No conversion exists from the nul 1 type (§11.2.7) to a type parameter unless the type parameter is known to be a reference type (§25.7).)

```
default-value-expression:
default ( type )
```

If the *type* in a *default-value-expression* evaluates at run-time to a reference type, the result is **nul** 1 converted to that type. If the *type* in a *default-value-expression* evaluates at run-time to a value type, the result is the *value-type*'s default value (§11.1.2).

## 14.5.15 Anonymous methods

An *anonymous-method-expression* defines an *anonymous method* and evaluates to a value referencing the method:

```
anonymous-method-expression:
    del egate anonymous-method-signature<sub>opt</sub> block

anonymous-method-signature:
    ( anonymous-method-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub> )

anonymous-method-parameter
    anonymous-method-parameter
    anonymous-method-parameter-list , anonymous-method-parameter

anonymous-method-parameter:
    parameter-modifier<sub>opt</sub> type identifier
```

The type of an *anonymous-method-expression* is a delegate type, which is inferred from the context of that expression. (The inference rules are described in §13.5.)

An *anonymous-method-expression* can be used in a *delegate-creation-expression* (§14.5.10.3). All other valid uses of an *anonymous-method-expression* depend on the implicit conversions defined in §13.5.

An *anonymous-method-expression* defines a new declaration space for parameters, locals and constants and a new declaration space for labels (§10.3).

### 14.5.15.1 Anonymous method signatures

The optional *anonymous-method-signature* defines the names and types of the formal parameters for the anonymous method. The scope of the parameters of the anonymous method is the *block*. It is a compile-time error for the name of a parameter of the anonymous method to match the name of a local variable, local constant or parameter whose scope includes the *anonymous-method-expression*.

If an *anonymous-method-expression* has an *anonymous-method-signature*, then the set of compatible delegate types is restricted to those that have the same parameter types and modifiers, in the same order (§13.5). In contrast to method groups, contra-variance of anonymous method parameter types is not supported (§14.5.10.3). If an *anonymous-method-expression* doesn't have an *anonymous-method-signature*, then the set of compatible delegate types is restricted to those that have no **out** parameters.

Note that an *anonymous-method-signature* cannot include attributes or a *parameter-array*. Nevertheless, an *anonymous-method-signature* may be compatible with a delegate type whose *formal-parameter-list* contains a *parameter-array*.

### 14.5.15.2 Anonymous method blocks

The block of an anonymous-method-expression is subject to the following rules:

- If the anonymous method includes a signature, the parameters specified in the signature are available in the *block*. If the anonymous method has no signature, it can be converted to a delegate type having parameters (§13.5), but the parameters cannot be accessed in the *block*.
- Except for ref or out parameters specified in the signature (if any) of the nearest enclosing anonymous method, it is a compile-time error for the *block* to access a ref or out parameter.
- When the type of thi s is a struct type, it is a compile-time error for the *block* to access thi s. This is true whether the access is explicit (as in thi s. x) or implicit (as in x, where x is an instance member of the struct). This rule simply prohibits such access and does not affect whether member lookup results in a member of the struct.
- The *block* has access to the outer variables (§14.5.15.3) of the anonymous method. Access of an outer variable will reference the instance of the variable that is active at the time the *anonymous-method-expression* is evaluated (§14.5.15.4).
- It is a compile-time error for the *block* to contain a **goto** statement, **break** statement, or **continue** statement whose target is outside the *block* or within the *block* of a contained anonymous method.
- A return statement in the *block* returns control from an invocation of the nearest enclosing anonymous method, not from the enclosing function member. An expression specified in a return statement shall be compatible with the delegate type to which the nearest enclosing *anonymous-method-expression* is converted (§14.5.15.4).

It is explicitly unspecified whether there is any way to execute the *block* of an anonymous method other than through evaluation and invocation of the *anonymous-method-expression*. In particular, a compiler might choose to implement an anonymous method by synthesizing one or more named methods or types. The names of any such synthesized elements shall be in the space reserved for implementations (that is, the names shall contain two consecutive underscore characters).

### 14.5.15.3 Outer variables

Any local variable, value parameter, or parameter array whose scope includes an *anonymous-method-expression* is called an *outer variable* of that *anonymous-method-expression*. In an instance function member of a class, the this value is considered a value parameter and is an outer variable of any *anonymous-method-expression* contained within that function member.

## 14.5.15.3.1 Captured outer variables

When an outer variable is referenced by an anonymous method, the outer variable is said to have been *captured* by the anonymous method. Ordinarily, the lifetime of a local variable is limited to execution of the block or statement with which it is associated (§12.1.7). However, the lifetime of a captured outer variable is extended at least until the delegate referring to the anonymous method becomes eligible for garbage collection.

[Example: In the following code

```
using System;
delegate int D();
class Test
{
    static D F() {
        int x = 0;
        D result = delegate { return ++x; };
        return result;
    }
```

```
static void Main() {
    D d = F();
    Console. WriteLine(d());
    Console. WriteLine(d());
    Console. WriteLine(d());
}
```

the local variable  $\mathbf{x}$  is captured by the anonymous method, and the lifetime of  $\mathbf{x}$  is extended at least until the delegate returned from  $\mathbf{F}$  becomes eligible for garbage collection. Since each invocation of the anonymous method operates on the same instance of  $\mathbf{x}$ , the output of the example is:

1 2 3

end example]

### 14.5.15.3.2 Instantiation of local variables

A local variable is considered to be *instantiated* when execution enters the scope of the variable. [*Example*: When the following method is invoked, the local variable  $\mathbf{x}$  is instantiated and initialized three times—once each iteration of the loop.

However, moving the declaration of x outside the loop results in a single instantiation of x:

```
static void F() {
   int x;
   for (int i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
      x = i * 2 + 1;
      ...
   }
}</pre>
```

end example]

Ordinarily, there is no way to observe exactly how often a local variable is instantiated—because the lifetimes of the instantiations are disjoint, it is possible for each instantiation to simply use the same storage location. However, when an anonymous method captures a local variable, the effects of instantiation become apparent. [Example: The example

```
using System;
delegate void D();
class Test
{
    static D[] F() {
        D[] result = new D[3];
        for (int i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
            int x = i * 2 + 1;
            result[i] = delegate { Console. WriteLine(x); };
        }
        return result;
    }
    static void Main() {
        foreach (D d in F()) d();
    }
}</pre>
```

produces the output:

1 3 5

However, when the declaration of x is moved outside the loop:

```
static D[] F() {
    D[] result = new D[3];
    int x;
    for (int i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
        x = i * 2 + 1;
        result[i] = delegate { Console. WriteLine(x); };
    }
    return result;
}</pre>
```

the output is:

5 5 5

Note that the three delegates created in the version of F directly above will be equal according to the equality operator (§14.9.8). Furthermore, note that the compiler is permitted (but not required) to optimize the three instantiations into a single delegate instance (§14.5.15.4). *end example*]

It is possible for anonymous method delegates to share some captured variables yet have separate instances of others. [Example: If F is changed to

```
static D[] F() {
    D[] result = new D[3];
    int x = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
        int y = 0;
        result[i] = delegate { Console. WriteLine("{0} {1}", ++x, ++y); };
    }
    return result;
}</pre>
```

the three delegates capture the same instance of x but separate instances of y, and the output is:

end example]

Separate anonymous methods can capture the same instance of an outer variable. [Example: In the following code:

```
using System;
delegate void Setter(int value);
delegate int Getter();
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        int x = 0;
        Setter s = delegate(int value) { x = value; };
        Getter g = delegate { return x; };
        s(5);
        Consol e. WriteLine(g());
        s(10);
        Consol e. WriteLine(g());
}
```

the two anonymous methods capture the same instance of the local variable x, and they can thus "communicate" through that variable. The output of the example is:

5 10

*end example*]

## 14.5.15.4 Anonymous method evaluation

The run-time evaluation of an *anonymous-method-expression* produces a delegate instance which references the anonymous method and the (possibly empty) set of captured outer variables that are active at the time of the evaluation. When a delegate resulting from an *anonymous-method-expression* is invoked, the body of the anonymous method is executed. The code in the body is executed using the set of captured outer variables referenced by the delegate.

The invocation list of a delegate produced from an *anonymous-method-expression* contains a single entry. The exact target object and target method of the delegate are unspecified. In particular, it is unspecified whether the target object of the delegate is **null**, the **this** value of the enclosing function member, or some other object.

Evaluation of semantically identical *anonymous-method-expressions* with the same (possibly empty) set of captured outer variable instances is permitted (but not required) to return the same delegate instance. The term "semantically identical" is used here to mean that execution of the anonymous methods will produce, in all cases, the same effects given the same arguments. [*Example*: This rule permits code such as the following to be optimized.

```
delegate double Function(double x);
class Test
{
    static double[] Apply(double[] vector, Function func) {
        double[] result = new double[vector. Length];
        for (int i = 0; i < vector. Length; i++) {
            result[i] = func(vector[i]);
        }
        return result;
    }
    static void F(double[] vx, double[] vy) {
        double[] rx = Apply(vx, delegate(double x) {
            return Math. Sin(x);
        });
        double[] ry = Apply(vy, delegate(double y) {
            return Math. Sin(y);
        });
        ...
    }
}</pre>
```

Since the two anonymous method delegates have the same (empty) set of captured outer variables, and since the anonymous methods are semantically identical, the compiler is permitted to have the delegates refer to the same target method. Indeed, the compiler is permitted to return the very same delegate instance from both anonymous method expressions.

end example]

# 14.5.15.5 Implementation example

[*Note*: This subclause describes a possible implementation of anonymous methods in terms of standard C# constructs. The implementation described here is by no means a mandated implementation, nor is it the only one possible.

The remainder of this subclause gives several examples of code that contains anonymous methods with different characteristics. For each example, a corresponding translation to code that uses only standard C# constructs is provided. In the examples, the identifier **D** is assumed to represent the following delegate type:

```
public delegate void D();
```

The simplest form of an anonymous method is one that captures no outer variables:

```
class Test
{
    static void F() {
        D d = delegate { Console. WriteLine("test"); };
    }
}
```

This can be translated to a delegate instantiation that references a compiler-generated static method in which the code of the anonymous method is placed:

```
class Test
{
    static void F() {
        D d = new D(_Method1);
    }
    static void __Method1() {
        Console. WriteLine("test");
    }
}
```

In the following example, the anonymous method references instance members of this:

```
class Test
{
    int x;
    void F() {
        D d = delegate { Console. WriteLine(x); };
    }
}
```

This can be translated to a compiler-generated instance method containing the code of the anonymous method:

```
class Test
{
    int x;
    void F() {
        D d = new D(__Method1);
    }
    void __Method1() {
        Console. WriteLine(x);
    }
}
```

In this example, the anonymous method captures a local variable:

```
class Test
{
    void F() {
        int y = 123;
        D d = delegate { Console. WriteLine(y); };
}
```

The lifetime of the local variable shall now be extended to at least the lifetime of the anonymous method delegate. This can be achieved by "lifting" the local variable into a field of a compiler-generated class. Instantiation of the local variable (§14.5.15.3.2) then corresponds to creating an instance of the compiler-generated class, and accessing the local variable corresponds to accessing a field in the instance of the compiler-generated class. Furthermore, the anonymous method becomes an instance method of the compiler-generated class:

Finally, the following anonymous method captures this as well as two local variables with different lifetimes:

```
class Test
{
   int x;
   void F() {
      int y = 123;
      for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) {
        int z = i * 2;
        D d = delegate { Console. WriteLine(x + y + z); };
   }
}</pre>
```

Here, a compiler-generated class is created for each statement block in which locals are captured such that the locals in the different blocks can have independent lifetimes. An instance of \_\_Local s2, the compiler-generated class for the inner statement block, contains the local variable z and a field that references an instance of \_\_Local s1. An instance of \_\_Local s1, the compiler-generated class for the outer statement block, contains the local variable y and a field that references thi s of the enclosing function member. With these data structures it is possible to reach all captured outer variables through an instance of \_\_Local s2, and the code of the anonymous method can thus be implemented as an instance method of that class.

```
class Test
{
    void F() {
        __Locals1 __locals1 = new __Locals1();
        __locals1. __this = this;
        __locals1. y = 123;
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) {
            __Locals2 __locals2 = new __Locals2();
            __locals2. __locals1 = __locals1;
            __locals2. z = i * 2;
            D d = new D(__locals2. __Method1);
        }
    }
    class __Locals1
    {
        public Test __this;
        public int y;
    }
    class __Locals2
    {
        public __Locals1 __locals1;
        public int z;
    }
}</pre>
```

# 14.6 Unary expressions

```
unary-expression:
    primary-expression
    + unary-expression
    - unary-expression
    ! unary-expression
    ~ unary-expression
    pre-increment-expression
    pre-decrement-expression
    cast-expression
```

## 14.6.1 Unary plus operator

For an operation of the form  $+\mathbf{x}$ , unary operator overload resolution (§14.2.3) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operand is converted to the parameter type of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator. The predefined unary plus operators are:

```
int operator +(int x);
uint operator +(uint x);
long operator +(long x);
ulong operator +(ulong x);
float operator +(float x);
double operator +(double x);
decimal operator +(decimal x);
```

For each of these operators, the result is simply the value of the operand.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined unary plus operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.6.2 Unary minus operator

For an operation of the form  $-\mathbf{x}$ , unary operator overload resolution (§14.2.3) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operand is converted to the parameter type of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator. The predefined negation operators are:

• Integer negation:

```
int operator -(int x);
long operator -(long x);
```

The result is computed by subtracting  $\mathbf{x}$  from zero. In a **checked** context, if the value of  $\mathbf{x}$  is the smallest  $\mathbf{i}$  nt or  $\mathbf{l}$  ong ( $-2^{31}$  or  $-2^{63}$ , respectively), a **System**. **OverflowException** is thrown. In an **unchecked** context, if the value of  $\mathbf{x}$  is the smallest  $\mathbf{i}$  nt or  $\mathbf{l}$  ong, the result is that same value and the overflow is not reported.

If the operand of the negation operator is of type uint, it is converted to type long, and the type of the result is long. An exception is the rule that permits the int value -2147483648 ( $-2^{31}$ ) to be written as a decimal integer literal ( $\S9.4.4.2$ ).

• Negation of **ul ong** is an error:

```
void operator -(ulong x);
```

Selection of this operator by unary operator overload resolution (§14.2.3) always results in a compile-time error. Consequently, if the operand of the negation operator is of type **ul ong**, a compile-time error

occurs. An exception is the rule that permits the l ong value -9223372036854775808 ( $-2^{63}$ ) to be written as a decimal integer literal ( $\S 9.4.4.2$ ).

• Floating-point negation:

```
float operator -(float x);
double operator -(double x);
```

The result is the value of x with its sign inverted. If x is NaN, the result is also NaN.

• Decimal negation:

```
decimal operator - (decimal x);
```

The result is computed by subtracting x from zero.

Decimal negation is equivalent to using the unary minus operator of type System. Decimal.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined unary minus operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.6.3 Logical negation operator

For an operation of the form  $! \mathbf{x}$ , unary operator overload resolution (§14.2.3) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operand is converted to the parameter type of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator. Only one predefined logical negation operator exists:

```
bool operator !(bool x);
```

This operator computes the logical negation of the operand: If the operand is true, the result is false. If the operand is false, the result is true.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined logical negation operator defined above are also predefined.

# 14.6.4 Bitwise complement operator

For an operation of the form  $\sim x$ , unary operator overload resolution (§14.2.3) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operand is converted to the parameter type of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator. The predefined bitwise complement operators are:

```
int operator ~(int x);
uint operator ~(uint x);
long operator ~(long x);
ulong operator ~(ulong x);
```

For each of these operators, the result of the operation is the bitwise complement of x.

Every enumeration type E implicitly provides the following bitwise complement operator:

```
E operator \sim (E x);
```

The result of evaluating  $\sim x$ , where x is an expression of an enumeration type E with an underlying type U, is exactly the same as evaluating unchecked((E)( $\sim$ (U)x)). This operator is only considered by unary operator overload resolution when the operand type is the enum type E ( $\S$ 14.2.3).

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined bitwise complement operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.6.5 Prefix increment and decrement operators

```
pre-increment-expression:
++ unary-expression
pre-decrement-expression:
-- unary-expression
```

The operand of a prefix increment or decrement operation shall be an expression classified as a variable, a property access, or an indexer access. The result of the operation is a value of the same type as the operand.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

If the operand of a prefix increment or decrement operation is a property or indexer access, the property or indexer shall have both a get and a set accessor. If this is not the case, a compile-time error occurs.

Unary operator overload resolution (§14.2.3) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. Predefined ++ and -- operators exist for the following operand types: sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, float, double, decimal, and any enum type. The result type of each of these predefined operators is the same as the operand type. The predefined ++ operators return the value produced by adding 1 to the operand, and the predefined -- operators return the value produced by subtracting 1 from the operand. In a checked context, if the result of this addition or subtraction is outside the range of the result type and the result type is an integral type or enum type, a System. OverflowException is thrown.

There shall be an implicit conversion from the return type of the selected unary operator to the type of the *primary-expression*, otherwise a compile-time error occurs.

The run-time processing of a prefix increment or decrement operation of the form ++x or -x consists of the following steps:

- If x is classified as a variable:
  - o x is evaluated to produce the variable.
  - The value of x is converted to the operand type of the selected operator and the operator is invoked with this value as its argument.
  - $\circ$  The value returned by the operator is converted to the type of  $\mathbf{x}$ . The resulting value is stored in the location given by the evaluation of  $\mathbf{x}$  and becomes the result of the operation.
- If x is classified as a property or indexer access:
  - O The instance expression (if x is not static) and the argument list (if x is an indexer access) associated with x are evaluated, and the results are used in the subsequent get and set accessor invocations.
  - o The get accessor of x is invoked.
  - o The value returned by the get accessor is converted to the operand type of the selected operator and operator is invoked with this value as its argument.
  - The value returned by the operator is converted to the type of x. The set accessor of x is invoked with this value as its value argument. This value also becomes the result of the operation.

The ++ and -- operators also support postfix notation (§14.5.9). The result of  $\mathbf{x}$ ++ or  $\mathbf{x}$ -- is the value of  $\mathbf{x}$  before the operation, whereas the result of ++ $\mathbf{x}$  or -- $\mathbf{x}$  is the value of  $\mathbf{x}$  after the operation. In either case,  $\mathbf{x}$  itself has the same value after the operation.

An operator ++ or operator -- implementation can be invoked using either postfix or prefix notation. It is not possible to have separate operator implementations for the two notations.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined prefix increment and decrement operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.6.6 Cast expressions

A cast-expression is used to convert explicitly an expression to a given type.

A *cast-expression* of the form (T) E, where T is a *type* and E is a *unary-expression*, performs an explicit conversion (§13.2) of the value of E to type T. If no explicit conversion exists from the type of E to T, a compile-time error occurs. Otherwise, the result is the value produced by the explicit conversion. The result is always classified as a value, even if E denotes a variable.

The grammar for a *cast-expression* leads to certain syntactic ambiguities. [*Example*: The expression  $(\mathbf{x})$  –y could either be interpreted as a *cast-expression* (a cast of –y to type  $\mathbf{x}$ ) or as an *additive-expression* combined with a *parenthesized-expression* (which computes the value  $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}$ ). *end example*]

To resolve *cast-expression* ambiguities, the following rule exists: A sequence of one or more *tokens* (§9.4) enclosed in parentheses is considered the start of a *cast-expression* only if at least one of the following are true:

- The sequence of tokens is correct grammar for a *type*, but not for an *expression*.
- The sequence of tokens is correct grammar for a *type*, and the token immediately following the closing parentheses is the token "~", the token "!", the token "(", an *identifier* (§9.4.1), a *literal* (§9.4.4), or any *keyword* (§9.4.3) except as and is.

The term "correct grammar" above means only that the sequence of tokens shall conform to the particular grammatical production. It specifically does not consider the actual meaning of any constituent identifiers. [*Example*: If **x** and **y** are identifiers, then **x**. **y** is correct grammar for a type, even if **x**. **y** doesn't actually denote a type. *end example*]

[Note: From the disambiguation rule, it follows that, if x and y are identifiers, (x) y, (x) (y), and (x) (-y) are *cast-expressions*, but (x) - y is not, even if x identifies a type. However, if x is a keyword that identifies a predefined type (such as int), then all four forms are *cast-expressions* (because such a keyword could not possibly be an expression by itself). end note

# 14.7 Arithmetic operators

The \*, /, %, +, and - operators are called the arithmetic operators.

```
multiplicative-expression:
    unary-expression
    multiplicative-expression * unary-expression
    multiplicative-expression / unary-expression
    multiplicative-expression % unary-expression

additive-expression:
    multiplicative-expression
    additive-expression + multiplicative-expression
    additive-expression - multiplicative-expression
```

#### 14.7.1 Multiplication operator

For an operation of the form  $\mathbf{x}^*$  y, binary operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operands are converted to the parameter types of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator.

The predefined multiplication operators are listed below. The operators all compute the product of x and y.

• Integer multiplication:

```
int operator *(int x, int y);
uint operator *(uint x, uint y);
long operator *(long x, long y);
ulong operator *(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator *(long x, ulong y);
void operator *(ulong x, long y);
```

The operators with **voi d** return type always produce a compile-time error. Consequently, it is an error for one operand to be of type **l** ong and the other to be of type **ul** ong.

In a checked context, if the product is outside the range of the result type, a System. OverflowException is thrown. In an unchecked context, overflows are not reported and any significant high-order bits outside the range of the result type are discarded.

• Floating-point multiplication:

```
float operator *(float x, float y);
double operator *(double x, double y);
```

The product is computed according to the rules of IEC 60559 arithmetic. The following table lists the results of all possible combinations of nonzero finite values, zeros, infinities, and NaN's. In the table,  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  are positive finite values.  $\mathbf{z}$  is the result of  $\mathbf{x}$  \*  $\mathbf{y}$ , rounded to the nearest representable value. If the magnitude of the result is too large for the destination type,  $\mathbf{z}$  is infinity. Because of rounding,  $\mathbf{z}$  may be zero even though neither  $\mathbf{x}$  nor  $\mathbf{y}$  is zero.

	+y	-y	+0	-0	+∞	-∞	NaN
+X	+Z	-z	+0	-0	+∞	-∞	NaN
-x	-z	+Z	-0	+0	-∞	+∞	NaN
+0	+0	-0	+0	-0	NaN	NaN	NaN
-0	-0	+0	-0	+0	NaN	NaN	NaN
+∞	+∞	-∞	NaN	NaN	+∞	-∞	NaN
-∞	-∞	+∞	NaN	NaN	-∞	+∞	NaN
NaN							

## • Decimal multiplication:

```
decimal operator *(decimal x, decimal y);
```

If the magnitude of the resulting value is too large to represent in the **deci mal** format, a **System. OverflowException** is thrown. Because of rounding, the result may be zero even though neither operand is zero. The scale of the result, before any rounding, is the sum of the scales of the two operands.

Decimal multiplication is equivalent to using the multiplication operator of type System. Decimal.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined multiplication operators defined above are also predefined.

#### 14.7.2 Division operator

For an operation of the form  $\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{y}$ , binary operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operands are converted to the parameter types of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator.

The predefined division operators are listed below. The operators all compute the quotient of x and y.

# • Integer division:

```
int operator /(int x, int y);
uint operator /(uint x, uint y);
long operator /(long x, long y);
ulong operator /(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator /(long x, ulong y);
void operator /(ulong x, long y);
```

The operators with **voi d** return type always produce a compile-time error. Consequently, it is an error for one operand to be of type **l ong** and the other to be of type **ul ong**.

If the value of the right operand is zero, a System. DivideByZeroException is thrown.

The division rounds the result towards zero, and the absolute value of the result is the largest possible integer that is less than the absolute value of the quotient of the two operands. The result is zero or positive when the two operands have the same sign and zero or negative when the two operands have opposite signs.

If the left operand is the smallest **i** nt or **l** ong value  $(-2^{31} \text{ or } -2^{63}, \text{ respectively})$  and the right operand is -1, an overflow occurs. In a checked context, this causes a **System**. Ari thmeti cExcepti on (or a subclass thereof) to be thrown. In an unchecked context, it is implementation-defined as to whether a

**System. Ari thmeti cExcepti on** (or a subclass thereof) is thrown or the overflow goes unreported with the resulting value being that of the left operand.

## • Floating-point division:

```
float operator /(float x, float y);
double operator /(double x, double y);
```

The quotient is computed according to the rules of IEC 60559 arithmetic. The following table lists the results of all possible combinations of nonzero finite values, zeros, infinities, and NaN's. In the table,  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  are positive finite values.  $\mathbf{z}$  is the result of  $\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{y}$ , rounded to the nearest representable value. If the magnitude of the result is too large for the destination type,  $\mathbf{z}$  is infinity. Because of rounding,  $\mathbf{z}$  may still be zero even though  $\mathbf{x}$  is not zero and  $\mathbf{y}$  is not infinite.

	+y	-y	+0	-0	+∞	-∞	NaN
+ <b>X</b>	+Z	-z	+∞	-∞	+0	-0	NaN
-x	-z	+ <b>Z</b>	-∞	+∞	-0	+0	NaN
+0	+0	-0	NaN	NaN	+0	-0	NaN
-0	-0	+0	NaN	NaN	-0	+0	NaN
+∞	+∞	-∞	+∞	-∞	NaN	NaN	NaN
-∞	-∞	+∞	-∞	+∞	NaN	NaN	NaN
NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN

#### • Decimal division:

```
decimal operator / (decimal x, decimal y);
```

If the value of the right operand is zero, a System. Di vi deByZeroExcepti on is thrown. If the magnitude of the resulting value is too large to represent in the deci mal format, a System. OverflowExcepti on is thrown. Because of rounding, the result may be zero even though the first operand is not zero. The scale of the result, before any rounding, is the closest scale to the preferred scale which will preserve a result equal to the exact result. The preferred scale is the scale of x less the scale of y.

Decimal division is equivalent to using the division operator of type System. Decimal.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined division operators defined above are also predefined.

#### 14.7.3 Remainder operator

For an operation of the form x % y, binary operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operands are converted to the parameter types of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator.

The predefined remainder operators are listed below. The operators all compute the remainder of the division between x and y.

## • Integer remainder:

```
int operator %(int x, int y);
uint operator %(uint x, uint y);
long operator %(long x, long y);
ulong operator %(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator %(long x, ulong y);
void operator %(ulong x, long y);
```

The operators with **voi d** return type always produce a compile-time error. Consequently, it is an error for one operand to be of type **l ong** and the other to be of type **ul ong**.

```
The result of x \% y is the value produced by x - (x / y) * y. If y is zero, a System. Di vi deByZeroExcepti on is thrown.
```

If the left operand is the smallest **i** nt or **l** ong value  $(-2^{31} \text{ or } -2^{63}, \text{ respectively})$  and the right operand is -1, it is implementation-defined as to whether a **System**. Ari thmeti cExcepti on (or a subclass thereof) is thrown. A conforming implementation shall not throw an exception for x % y in any case where  $x \ne y$  does not throw an exception.

## • Floating-point remainder:

```
float operator %(float x, float y);
double operator %(double x, double y);
```

The following table lists the results of all possible combinations of nonzero finite values, zeros, infinities, and NaN's. In the table, x and y are positive finite values. z is the result of x % y and is computed as x - n \* y, rounded to the nearest representable value, where n is the largest integer that is less than or equal to x / y. This method of computing the remainder is analogous to that used for integer operands, but differs from the IEC 60559 definition (in which n is the integer closest to x / y).

	+y	-y	+0	-0	+∞	-∞	NaN
+ <b>X</b>	+Z	+Z	NaN	NaN	+ <b>X</b>	+ <b>X</b>	NaN
-x	-z	-z	NaN	NaN	-x	-x	NaN
+0	+0	+0	NaN	NaN	+0	+0	NaN
-0	-0	-0	NaN	NaN	-0	-0	NaN
+∞	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN
-∞	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN
NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN

#### Decimal remainder:

```
decimal operator %(decimal x, decimal y);
```

If the value of the right operand is zero, a System. Di vi deByZeroExcepti on is thrown. It is implementation-defined when a System. Ari thmeti cExcepti on (or a subclass thereof) is thrown. A conforming implementation shall not throw an exception for  $\mathbf{x}$  %  $\mathbf{y}$  in any case where  $\mathbf{x}$  /  $\mathbf{y}$  does not throw an exception. The scale of the result, before any rounding, is the larger of the scales of the two operands, and the sign of the result, if non-zero, is the same as that of  $\mathbf{x}$ .

Decimal remainder is equivalent to using the remainder operator of type System. Decimal.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined remainder operators defined above are also predefined.

#### 14.7.4 Addition operator

For an operation of the form x + y, binary operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operands are converted to the parameter types of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator.

The predefined addition operators are listed below. For numeric and enumeration types, the predefined addition operators compute the sum of the two operands. When one or both operands are of type string, the predefined addition operators concatenate the string representation of the operands.

#### • Integer addition:

```
int operator +(int x, int y);

uint operator +(uint x, uint y);

long operator +(long x, long y);

ulong operator +(ulong x, ulong y);

void operator +(long x, ulong y);

void operator +(ulong x, long y);
```

The operators with **voi d** return type always produce a compile-time error. Consequently, it is an error for one operand to be of type **l ong** and the other to be of type **ul ong**.

In a checked context, if the sum is outside the range of the result type, a System. OverflowException is thrown. In an unchecked context, overflows are not reported and any significant high-order bits outside the range of the result type are discarded.

• Floating-point addition:

```
float operator +(float x, float y);
double operator +(double x, double y);
```

The sum is computed according to the rules of IEC 60559 arithmetic. The following table lists the results of all possible combinations of nonzero finite values, zeros, infinities, and NaN's. In the table, x and y are nonzero finite values, and z is the result of x + y, rounded to the nearest representable value. If x and y have the same magnitude but opposite signs, z is positive zero. If the magnitude of x + y is too large to represent in the destination type, z is an infinity with the same sign as x + y.

	y	+0	-0	+∞	-∞	NaN
X	Z	X	X	+∞	-∞	NaN
+0	y	+0	+0	+∞	-∞	NaN
-0	y	+0	-0	+∞	-∞	NaN
+∞	+∞	+∞	+∞	+∞	NaN	NaN
-∞	-∞	-∞	-∞	NaN	-∞	NaN
NaN						

#### Decimal addition:

```
decimal operator +(decimal x, decimal y);
```

If the magnitude of the resulting value is too large to represent in the decimal format, a System. OverflowException is thrown. The scale of the result, before any rounding, is the larger of the scales of the two operands.

Decimal addition is equivalent to using the addition operator of type System. Decimal.

• Enumeration addition. Every enumeration type implicitly provides the following predefined operators, where E is the enum type, and U is the underlying type of E:

```
E operator +(E x, U y);
E operator +(U x, E y);
```

The operators are evaluated exactly as (E) ((U) x + (U) y). These operators are only considered by overload resolution (§14.2.4) when one of the actual operands is of type E.

• String concatenation:

```
string operator +(string x, string y);
string operator +(string x, object y);
string operator +(object x, string y);
```

The binary + operator performs string concatenation when one or both operands are of type string. If an operand of string concatenation is null, an empty string is substituted. Otherwise, any non-string operand is converted to its string representation by invoking the virtual ToString method inherited from type object. If ToString returns null, an empty string is substituted. [Example:

using System;

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        string s = null;
        Console. WriteLine("s = >" + s + "<"); // displays s = ><
        int i = 1;
        Console. WriteLine("i = " + i); // displays i = 1
        float f = 1.2300E+15F;
        Console. WriteLine("f = " + f); // displays f = 1.23E+15
        decimal d = 2.900m;
        Console. WriteLine("d = " + d); // displays d = 2.900
    }
}</pre>
```

end example]

The result of the string concatenation operator is a string that consists of the characters of the left operand followed by the characters of the right operand. The string concatenation operator never returns a null value. A System. OutOfMemoryException can be thrown if there is not enough memory available to allocate the resulting string.

• Delegate combination. Every delegate type implicitly provides the following predefined operator, where **D** is the delegate type:

```
D operator +(D x, D y);
```

The binary + operator performs delegate combination when both operands are convertible to some delegate type **D**. (If the operands have different delegate types, overload resolution finds no applicable operator and a compile-time error occurs.) This operator is only considered by overload resolution (§14.2.4) when one of the actual operands is of type **D**. If the first operand is **nul 1**, the result of the operation is the value of the second operand (even if that is also **nul 1**). Otherwise, if the second operand is **nul 1**, then the result of the operation is the value of the first operand. Otherwise, the result of the operation is a new delegate instance whose invocation list consists of the elements in the invocation list of the first operand, followed by the elements in the invocation list of the second operand. That is, the invocation list of the resulting delegate is the concatenation of the invocation lists of the two operands. [*Note*: For examples of delegate combination, see §14.7.5 and §22.3. Since **System**. **Del egate** is not a delegate type, **operator** + is not defined for it. *end note*]

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined addition operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.7.5 Subtraction operator

For an operation of the form x - y, binary operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operands are converted to the parameter types of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator.

The predefined subtraction operators are listed below. The operators all subtract y from x.

• Integer subtraction:

```
int operator -(int x, int y);
uint operator -(uint x, uint y);
long operator -(long x, long y);
ulong operator -(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator -(long x, ulong y);
void operator -(ulong x, long y);
```

The operators with **voi d** return type always produce a compile-time error. Consequently, it is an error for one operand to be of type **l ong** and the other to be of type **ul ong**.

In a checked context, if the difference is outside the range of the result type, a **System. OverflowException** is thrown. In an **unchecked** context, overflows are not reported and any significant high-order bits outside the range of the result type are discarded.

• Floating-point subtraction:

The difference is computed according to the rules of IEC 60559 arithmetic. The following table lists the results of all possible combinations of nonzero finite values, zeros, infinities, and NaNs. In the table,  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  are nonzero finite values, and  $\mathbf{z}$  is the result of  $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}$ , rounded to the nearest representable value. If  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  are equal,  $\mathbf{z}$  is positive zero. If the magnitude of  $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}$  is too large to represent in the destination type,  $\mathbf{z}$  is an infinity with the same sign as  $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}$ .

	y	+0	-0	+∞	-∞	NaN
х	+Z	+ <b>X</b>	+ <b>X</b>	-∞	+∞	NaN
+0	-y	+0	+0	-∞	+∞	NaN
-0	-y	-0	+0	-∞	+∞	NaN
+∞	+∞	+∞	+∞	NaN	+∞	NaN
-∞	-∞	-∞	-∞	-∞	NaN	NaN
NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN	NaN

• Decimal subtraction:

If the magnitude of the resulting value is too large to represent in the deci mal format, a System. OverflowException is thrown. The scale of the result, before any rounding, is the larger of the scales of the two operands.

Decimal subtraction is equivalent to using the subtraction operator of type System. Decimal.

• Enumeration subtraction. Every enumeration type implicitly provides the following predefined operator, where E is the enum type, and U is the underlying type of E:

U operator 
$$-(E x, E y)$$
;

This operator is evaluated exactly as (U)((U)x - (U)y). In other words, the operator computes the difference between the ordinal values of x and y, and the type of the result is the underlying type of the enumeration.

E operator 
$$-(E x, U y)$$
;

This operator is evaluated exactly as (E) ((U) x - y). In other words, the operator subtracts a value from the underlying type of the enumeration, yielding a value of the enumeration.

These operators are only considered by overload resolution (§14.2.4) when one of the actual operands is of type E.

• Delegate removal. Every delegate type implicitly provides the following predefined operator, where **D** is the delegate type:

$$D$$
 operator  $-(D x, D y)$ ;

The binary - operator performs delegate removal when both operands are convertible to some delegate type **D**. (If the operands have different delegate types, overload resolution finds no applicable operator and a compile-time error occurs.) This operator is only considered by overload resolution (§14.2.4) when one of the actual operands is of type **D**. If the first operand is **nul 1**, the result of the operation is **nul 1**. Otherwise, if the second operand is **nul 1**, then the result of the operation is the value of the first operand. Otherwise, both operands represent invocation lists (§22.1) having one or more entries, and the result is a new invocation list consisting of the first operand's list with the second operand's entries removed from it, provided the second operand's list is a proper contiguous sublist of the first's. (For determining sublist equality, corresponding entries are compared as for the delegate equality operator (§14.9.8).) Otherwise, the result is the value of the left operand. Neither of the operands' lists is changed in the process. If the second operand's list matches multiple sublists of contiguous entries in the first

operand's list, the right-most matching sublist of contiguous entries is removed. If removal results in an empty list, the result is nul 1. [Example:

```
using System;
delegate void D(int x);
class Test
   public static void M1(int i) { /* ... */ } public static void M2(int i) { /* ... */ }
class Demo
   static void Main() {
      D cd1 = new D(Test. M1);
D cd2 = new D(Test. M2);
       D cd3 = cd1 + cd2 + cd2 + cd1;
                                             // M1 + M2 + M2 + M1
       cd3 -= cd1:
                                             // => M1 + M2 + M2
       cd3 = cd1 + cd2 + cd2 + cd1;
                                             // M1 + M2 + M2 + M1
       cd3 -= cd1 + cd2;
                                             // => M2 + M1
       cd3 = cd1 + cd2 + cd2 + cd1;
                                             // M1 + M2 + M2 + M1
       cd3 -= cd2 + cd2;
                                             // => M1 + M1
                                             // M1 + M2 + M2 + M1
       cd3 = cd1 + cd2 + cd2 + cd1;
       cd3 -= cd2 + cd1;
                                             // => M1 + M2
                                             // M1 + M2 + M2 + M1
       cd3 = cd1 + cd2 + cd2 + cd1;
       cd3 -= cd1 + cd1;
                                             // => M1 + M2 + M2 + M1
}
```

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined subtraction operators defined above are also predefined.

# 14.8 Shift operators

end example]

The << and >> operators are used to perform bit shifting operations.

```
shift-expression:
   additive-expression
   shift-expression << additive-expression
   shift-expression right-shift additive-expression
```

For an operation of the form  $\mathbf{x} << \mathbf{count}$  or  $\mathbf{x} >> \mathbf{count}$ , binary operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operands are converted to the parameter types of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator.

When declaring an overloaded shift operator, the type of the first operand shall always be the class or struct containing the operator declaration, and the type of the second operand shall always be int.

The predefined shift operators are listed below.

• Shift left:

```
int operator <<(int x, int count);
uint operator <<(uint x, int count);
long operator <<(long x, int count);
ulong operator <<(ulong x, int count);</pre>
```

The << operator shifts x left by a number of bits computed as described below.

The high-order bits outside the range of the result type of  $\mathbf{x}$  are discarded, the remaining bits are shifted left, and the low-order empty bit positions are set to zero.

• Shift right:

```
int operator >>(int x, int count);
uint operator >>(uint x, int count);
long operator >>(long x, int count);
ulong operator >>(ulong x, int count);
```

The >> operator shifts x right by a number of bits computed as described below.

When x is of type i nt or l ong, the low-order bits of x are discarded, the remaining bits are shifted right, and the high-order empty bit positions are set to zero if x is non-negative and set to one if x is negative.

When x is of type ui nt or ul ong, the low-order bits of x are discarded, the remaining bits are shifted right, and the high-order empty bit positions are set to zero.

For the predefined operators, the number of bits to shift is computed as follows:

- When the type of x is int or uint, the shift count is given by the low-order five bits of count. In other words, the shift count is computed from count & 0x1F.
- When the type of x is 1 ong or ul ong, the shift count is given by the low-order six bits of count. In other words, the shift count is computed from count & 0x3F.

If the resulting shift count is zero, the shift operators simply return the value of x.

Shift operations never cause overflows and produce the same results in checked and unchecked contexts.

When the left operand of the >> operator is of a signed integral type, the operator performs an *arithmetic* shift right wherein the value of the most significant bit (the sign bit) of the operand is propagated to the high-order empty bit positions. When the left operand of the >> operator is of an unsigned integral type, the operator performs a *logical* shift right wherein high-order empty bit positions are always set to zero. To perform the opposite operation of that inferred from the operand type, explicit casts can be used. [*Example*: If  $\mathbf{x}$  is a variable of type  $\mathbf{i}$  nt, the operation unchecked(( $\mathbf{i}$  nt)(( $\mathbf{ui}$  nt)  $\mathbf{x}$  >>  $\mathbf{y}$ )) performs a logical shift right of  $\mathbf{x}$ . *end example*]

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined shift operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.9 Relational and type-testing operators

The ==, !=, <, >=, i = s and as operators are called the relational and type-testing operators.

```
relational-expression:
    shift-expression
    relational-expression < shift-expression
    relational-expression > shift-expression
    relational-expression <= shift-expression
    relational-expression >= shift-expression
    relational-expression is type
    relational-expression as type

equality-expression:
    relational-expression
    equality-expression == relational-expression
    equality-expression != relational-expression
```

The is operator is described in §14.9.10 and the as operator is described in §14.9.11.

The ==, !=, <, >, <= and >= operators are *comparison operators*. For an operation of the form  $\mathbf{x}$  op  $\mathbf{y}$ , where op is a comparison operator, overload resolution (§14.2.4) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operands are converted to the parameter types of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator. If both operands of an *equality-expression* have the null type (§11.2.7) (and hence the null value as well), then overload resolution is not performed and the expression evaluates to a constant value of true or false according to whether the operator is == or !=.

The predefined comparison operators are described in the following subclauses. All predefined comparison operators return a result of type **bool**, as described in the following table.

Operation	Result
x == y	true if x is equal to y, fal se otherwise
x != y	true if x is not equal to y, fal se otherwise
x < y	true if x is less than y, fal se otherwise
x > y	true if x is greater than y, fal se otherwise
x <= y	true if x is less than or equal to y, fal se otherwise
x >= y	true if x is greater than or equal to y, fal se otherwise

## 14.9.1 Integer comparison operators

The predefined integer comparison operators are:

```
bool operator ==(int x, int y);
bool operator ==(uint x, uint y);
bool operator ==(long x, long y);
bool operator ==(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator ==(long x, ulong y);
void operator ==(ulong x, long y);
bool operator !=(int x, int y);
bool operator !=(uint x, uint y);
bool operator !=(long x, long y);
bool operator !=(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator !=(long x, ulong y);
void operator !=(ulong x, long y);
bool operator <(int x, int y);</pre>
bool operator <(uint x, uint y);</pre>
bool operator <(long x, long y);</pre>
bool operator <(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator <(long x, ulong y);
void operator >(ulong x, ulong y);
bool operator >(int x, int y);
bool operator >(uint x, uint y);
bool operator >(long x, long y);
bool operator >(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator >(long x, ulong y);
void operator >(ulong x, long y);
bool operator <=(int x, int y);</pre>
bool operator <=(uint x, uint y);
bool operator <=(long x, long y);
bool operator <=(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator <=(long x, ulong y);
void operator <=(ulong x, long y);</pre>
bool operator >=(int x, int y);
bool operator >=(uint x, uint y);
bool operator >=(long x, long y);
bool operator >=(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator >=(long x, ulong y);
void operator >=(ulong x, long y);
```

Each of these operators compares the numeric values of the two integer operands and returns a **bool** value that indicates whether the particular relation is **true** or **false**. The operators with **void** return type always produce a compile-time error. Consequently, it is an error for one operand to be of type **long** and the other to be of type **ulong**.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined integer comparison operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.9.2 Floating-point comparison operators

The predefined floating-point comparison operators are:

```
bool operator ==(float x, float y);
bool operator ==(double x, double y);
bool operator !=(float x, float y);
bool operator !=(double x, double y);
bool operator <(float x, float y);
bool operator <(double x, double y);
bool operator >(float x, float y);
bool operator >(float x, float y);
bool operator >(double x, double y);
bool operator <=(float x, float y);
bool operator <=(float x, float y);
bool operator >=(float x, float y);
bool operator >=(float x, float y);
bool operator >=(float x, float y);
```

The operators compare the operands according to the rules of the IEC 60559 standard:

If either operand is NaN, the result is fal se for all operators except !=, for which the result is true. For any two operands, x != y always produces the same result as ! (x == y). However, when one or both operands are NaN, the <, >, <=, and >= operators do *not* produce the same results as the logical negation of the opposite operator. [Example: If either of x and y is NaN, then x < y is fal se, but ! (x >= y) is true. end example]

• When neither operand is NaN, the operators compare the values of the two floating-point operands with respect to the ordering

```
-\infty < -max < ... < -min < -0.0 == +0.0 < +min < ... < +max < +\infty
```

where **mi n** and **max** are the smallest and largest positive finite values that can be represented in the given floating-point format. Notable effects of this ordering are:

- o Negative and positive zeros are considered equal.
- o A negative infinity is considered less than all other values, but equal to another negative infinity.
- O A positive infinity is considered greater than all other values, but equal to another positive infinity.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined floating-point comparison operators defined above are also predefined.

#### 14.9.3 Decimal comparison operators

The predefined decimal comparison operators are:

```
bool operator ==(decimal x, decimal y);
bool operator !=(decimal x, decimal y);
bool operator <(decimal x, decimal y);
bool operator >(decimal x, decimal y);
bool operator <=(decimal x, decimal y);
bool operator >=(decimal x, decimal y);
```

Each of these operators compares the numeric values of the two decimal operands and returns a **bool** value that indicates whether the particular relation is **true** or **false**. Each decimal comparison is equivalent to using the corresponding relational or equality operator of type **System**. **Decimal**.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined decimal comparison operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.9.4 Boolean equality operators

The predefined Boolean equality operators are:

```
bool operator ==(bool x, bool y);
bool operator !=(bool x, bool y);
```

The result of == is true if both x and y are true or if both x and y are fal se. Otherwise, the result is fal se.

The result of ! =is false if both x and y are true or if both x and y are false. Otherwise, the result is true. When the operands are of type bool, the ! =operator produces the same result as the  $^$  operator.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined Boolean equality operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.9.5 Enumeration comparison operators

Every enumeration type implicitly provides the following predefined comparison operators:

```
bool operator ==(E x, E y);
bool operator !=(E x, E y);
bool operator <(E x, E y);
bool operator >(E x, E y);
bool operator <=(E x, E y);
bool operator >=(E x, E y);
```

The result of evaluating x op y, where x and y are expressions of an enumeration type E with an underlying type U, and op is one of the comparison operators, is exactly the same as evaluating ((U)x) op ((U)y). In other words, the enumeration type comparison operators simply compare the underlying integral values of the two operands. These operators are only considered by overload resolution (§14.2.4) when one of the actual operands is of type E.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined enumeration comparison operators defined above are also predefined.

#### 14.9.6 Reference type equality operators

Every class type C implicitly provides the following predefined reference type equality operators:

```
bool operator ==(C x, C y);
bool operator !=(C x, C y);
```

unless predefined equality operators otherwise exists for C (for example, when C is string or System. Delegate).

The operators return the result of comparing the two references for equality or non-equality.

There are special rules for determining when a reference type equality operator is applicable. For an equality-expression with operands of type A and B, define  $A_0$  as follows:

- If A is a type parameter known to be a reference type ( $\S25.7$ ), let  $A_0$  be the effective base class of A.
- Otherwise, if A is an interface type, a delegate type, an array type, a class type, or the nul 1 type (§11.2.7), let A<sub>0</sub> be the same as A.
- Otherwise, no reference type equality operator is applicable.

Now define  $A_1$  as follows:

- If  $A_0$  is an interface type, a delegate type, System. Del egate, or string, let  $A_1$  be object.
- Otherwise, if  $A_0$  is an array type, let  $A_1$  be System. Array.
- Otherwise,  $A_0$  is the nul 1 type or a class type and let  $A_1$  be the same as  $A_0$ .

Define  $B_0$  and  $B_1$  in the same manner. Now determine if any reference type equality operators are applicable as follows:

- If both of the types A and B are the null type, then overload resolution is not performed and the result is a constant true or false, as specified in §14.9.
- Otherwise, if A is the null type, then the reference type equality operator for B<sub>1</sub> is applicable. If B is a type parameter and at runtime the type parameter is a non-nullable value type, the result of the operation is false. If B is a type parameter and at runtime the type parameter is a nullable type or reference type, the result is as if the operand of type B is boxed and then compared to null.
- Otherwise, if B is the null type, then the reference type equality operator for A<sub>1</sub> is applicable. If A is a type parameter and at runtime the type parameter is a non-nullable value type, the result of the operation is false. If A is a type parameter and at runtime the type parameter is a nullable type or reference type, the result is as if the operand of type A is boxed and then compared to null.
- Otherwise, if either A or B is a type parameter that is not known to be a reference type (§25.7), then no reference type equality operator is applicable.
- Otherwise, if there is no identity or reference conversion (implicit or explicit) from  $A_0$  to  $B_0$  or no identity or reference conversion (implicit or explicit) from  $B_0$  to  $A_0$ , then no reference type equality operator is applicable.
- Otherwise, if there is an identity or implicit reference conversion from  $A_1$  to  $B_1$ , then the reference type equality operator for  $B_1$  is applicable.
- Otherwise, if there is an implicit reference conversion from  $B_1$  to  $A_1$ , then the reference type equality operator for  $A_1$  is applicable.
- Otherwise, no reference type equality operator is applicable.

[Note: Notable implications of these rules are:

- The predefined reference type equality operators cannot be used to compare two references that are known to be different at compile-time. [Example: If the compile-time types of the operands are two class types A and B, and if neither A nor B derives from the other, then it would be impossible for the two operands to reference the same object and no reference type equality operator is applicable. Similarly, if A is a sealed class and B is an interface that A does not implement, then no reference type equality operator is applicable. end example]
- The predefined reference type equality operators do not permit value type operands to be compared.
- The predefined reference type equality operators never cause boxing operations to occur for their operands. It would be meaningless to perform such boxing operations, since references to the newly allocated boxed instances would necessarily differ from all other references.

end note]

When the operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) rules would pick an equality operator other than a reference type equality operator, selection of a reference type equality operator can be forced by explicitly casting one or both operands to type **obj** ect. [Example: The example

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        string s = "Test";
        string t = string.Copy(s);
        Console.WriteLine(s == t);
        Console.WriteLine((object)s == t);
        Console.WriteLine(s == (object)t);
        Console.WriteLine((object)s == (object)t);
    }
}
```

produces the output

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

True Fal se Fal se Fal se

The s and t variables refer to two distinct stri ng instances containing the same characters. The first comparison outputs True because the predefined string equality operator (§14.9.7) is selected when both operands are of type stri ng. The remaining comparisons all output Fal se because a predefined reference type equality operator is selected when one or both of the operands are of type object.

Note that the above technique is not meaningful for value types. The example

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        int i = 123;
        int j = 123;
        System. Console. WriteLine((object)i == (object)j);
    }
}
```

outputs Fal se because the casts create references to two separate instances of boxed int values. end example]

## 14.9.7 String equality operators

The predefined string equality operators are:

```
bool operator ==(string x, string y);
bool operator !=(string x, string y);
```

Two stri ng values are considered equal when one of the following is true:

- Both values are null.
- Both values are non-null references to string instances that have identical lengths and identical characters in each character position.

The string equality operators compare string values rather than string references. When two separate string instances contain the exact same sequence of characters, the values of the strings are equal, but the references are different. [*Note*: As described in §14.9.6, the reference type equality operators can be used to compare string references instead of string values. *end note*]

#### 14.9.8 Delegate equality operators

Every delegate type implicitly provides the following predefined comparison operators, where **D** is the delegate type:

```
bool operator ==(D x, D y);
bool operator !=(D x, D y);
```

These operators are only considered by overload resolution (§14.2.4) when one of the actual operands is of type **D**.

The following predefined operators are available for comparing delegates when the delegate type is not known at compile time:

```
bool operator ==(System Delegate x, System Delegate y);
bool operator !=(System Delegate x, System Delegate y);
```

These latter operators are not considered applicable if the types of the operands are distinct delegate types. [*Example*:

```
delegate void D();
delegate void E();
static bool Compare1(D d, E e) {
   return d == e; // Error
}
```

```
static bool Compare2(System Delegate d, E e) { return d == e; // 0k }
```

The comparison in Compare 1 produces an error since the types of the operands are distinct delegate types. In this case, none of the delegate equality operators or reference equality operators is applicable since a non-null instance of **D** could never be equal to an instance of **E**. *end example*]

Two delegate instances are considered equal as follows:

- If either of the delegate instances is nul 1, they are equal if and only if both are nul 1.
- If the delegate instances have different runtime types, they are not equal.
- If both of the delegate instances have an invocation list (§22.1), those instances are equal if and only if their invocation lists are the same length, and each entry in one's invocation list is equal (as defined below) to the corresponding entry, in order, in the other's invocation list.

The following rules govern the equality of invocation list entries:

- If two invocation list entries both refer to the same static method then the entries are equal.
- If two invocation list entries both refer to the same non-static method on the same target object (as defined by the reference equality operators) then the entries are equal.
- Invocation list entries produced from evaluation of semantically identical *anonymous-method-expressions* with the same (possibly empty) set of captured outer variable instances are permitted (but not required) to be equal.
- Invocation list entries produced from evaluation of semantically different *anonymous-method-expressions* or having different sets of captured outer variable instances are never equal.
- An invocation list entry produced from evaluation of an *anonymous-method-expression* is never equal to an invocation list entry produced from a *delegate-creation-expression* on a method group.

#### 14.9.9 Equality operators and null

The == and != operators permit one operand to be a value of a nullable type and the other to have the null type (§11.2.7), even if no predefined or user-defined operator (in unlifted or lifted form) exists for the operation.

For an operation of one of the forms

```
x == null null == x x != null null != x
```

where x is an expression of a nullable type, if operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) fails to find an applicable operator, the result is instead computed from the HasVal ue property of x. Specifically, the first two forms are translated into !x. HasVal ue, and last two forms are translated into x. HasVal ue.

#### **14.9.10** is operator

The is operator is used to dynamically check if the run-time type of an object is compatible with a given type. The result of the operation e is T, where e is an expression and T is a type, is a Boolean value indicating whether e can successfully be converted to type T by a reference conversion, a boxing conversion, an unboxing conversion, a wrapping conversion, or an unwrapping conversion. The operation is evaluated as follows:

- If the compile-time type of e is the same as T, or if an implicit reference conversion (§13.1.4), boxing conversion (§13.1.5), or wrapping conversion (§13.7) exists from the compile-time type of e to T:
  - o If e is of a reference type, the result of the operation is equivalent to evaluating e != null.
  - o If e is of a nullable type, the result of the operation is equivalent to evaluating e != null.
  - o If e is of a value type, the result of the operation is true.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

- Otherwise, if an unwrapping conversion (§13.7) exists from the compile-time type of e to T, the result of the operation is equivalent to evaluating e != null.
- Otherwise, if an explicit reference conversion (§13.2.3) or unboxing conversion (§13.2.4) exists from the compile-time type of e to T, a dynamic type check is performed:
  - o If the value of e is null, the result is false.
  - Otherwise, if T is a nullable type, if the runtime type of e is the underlying type of T, the result is true.
  - Otherwise, let **R** be the run-time type of the instance referenced by **e**. If **R** and **T** are the same type, if **R** is a reference type and an implicit reference conversion from **R** to **T** exists, or if **R** is a value type and **T** is an interface type that is implemented by **R**, the result is true.
  - o Otherwise, the result is fal se.
- Otherwise, if the compile-time type of e or T is an open type (§25.5.2), a dynamic type check is performed.
- Otherwise, no reference, boxing, wrapping, or unwrapping conversion of e to type T is possible, and the result of the operation is fal se.

The is operator only considers reference conversions, boxing conversions, and unboxing conversions. Other conversions, such as user defined conversions, are not considered by the is operator.

# 14.9.11 as operator

The as operator is used to explicitly convert a value to a given reference type or nullable type. When converting to a reference type, the as operator uses a reference conversion or a boxing conversion. When converting to a nullable type, the as operator uses a wrapping conversion, an unboxing conversion, or a null type conversion (§13.7.1). Unlike a cast expression (§14.6.6), the as operator never throws an exception. Instead, if the indicated conversion is not possible, the resulting value is null.

In an operation of the form e as T, e shall be an expression and T shall be a reference type, a type parameter that is known to be a reference type (§25.7), or a nullable type. The type of the result is T, and the result is always classified as a value. The operation is evaluated as follows:

- If the compile-time type of e is the same as T, the result is simply the value of e.
- Otherwise, if an implicit reference conversion (§13.1.4), boxing conversion (§13.1.5), wrapping conversion (§13.7), or null type conversion (§13.7.1) exists from the compile-time type of e to T, this conversion is performed and becomes the result of the operation.
- Otherwise, if an explicit reference conversion (§13.2.3) or unboxing conversion (§13.2.4) exists from the compile-time type of e to T, a dynamic type check is performed:
  - o If the value of e is nul 1, the result is the value nul 1 with the compile-time type T.
  - Otherwise, if T is a nullable type, let R be the run-time type of the instance referenced by e. If R is the underlying type of T, then the result is equivalent to unboxing the value given by e to the type T.
  - Otherwise, let **R** be the run-time type of the instance referenced by **e**. If **R** and **T** are the same type, if **R** is a reference type and an implicit reference conversion from **R** to **T** exists, or if **R** is a value type and **T** is an interface type that is implemented by **R**, the result is the reference given by **e** with the compile-time type **T**.
  - Otherwise, the result is the value nul 1 with the compile-time type T.
- Otherwise, if the compile-time type of e or T is an open type (§25.5.2), a dynamic type check is performed.
- Otherwise, the indicated conversion is never possible, and a compile-time error occurs.

The as operator only performs reference conversions, boxing conversions, unboxing conversions, and unwrapping conversions. Other conversions, such as user defined conversions, are not possible with the as operator and should instead be performed using cast expressions.

The as operator can be used with a type parameter T (§25.1.1) as the right-hand side only if T is known to be a reference type (§25.7). This restriction is required because the value nul 1 might be returned as a result of the operator. [*Example*:

end example]

[*Note*: When constraints are factored in, there are situations where the compiler can conclude that the operation e as T will never succeed, for example, when e is a struct or sealed class that doesn't implement a particular interface, and T is constrained to require that interface. However, a complete specification of those situations is complicated, and the rules given above seem to be the best compromise. *end note*]

# 14.10 Logical operators

The &, ^, and | operators are called the logical operators.

```
and-expression:
    equality-expression
    and-expression & equality-expression

exclusive-or-expression:
    and-expression
    exclusive-or-expression ^ and-expression

inclusive-or-expression:
    exclusive-or-expression
    inclusive-or-expression | exclusive-or-expression
```

For an operation of the form  $\mathbf{x}$  op  $\mathbf{y}$ , where op is one of the logical operators, overload resolution (§14.2.4) is applied to select a specific operator implementation. The operands are converted to the parameter types of the selected operator, and the type of the result is the return type of the operator.

The predefined logical operators are described in the following subclauses.

#### 14.10.1 Integer logical operators

The predefined integer logical operators are:

```
int operator &(int x, int y);
uint operator &(uint x, uint y);
long operator &(long x, long y);
ulong operator &(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator &(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator &(ulong x, long y);
int operator |(int x, int y);
uint operator |(uint x, uint y);
long operator |(long x, long y);
ulong operator |(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator |(long x, ulong y);
void operator |(ulong x, long y);
```

## C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
int operator ^(int x, int y);
uint operator ^(uint x, uint y);
long operator ^(long x, long y);
ulong operator ^(ulong x, ulong y);
void operator ^(long x, ulong y);
void operator ^(ulong x, long y);
```

The & operator computes the bitwise logical AND of the two operands, the | operator computes the bitwise logical OR of the two operands, and the ^ operator computes the bitwise logical exclusive OR of the two operands. No overflows are possible from these operations. The operators with voi d return type always produce a compile-time error. Consequently, it is an error for one operand to be of type l ong and the other to be of type ul ong.

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined integer logical operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.10.2 Enumeration logical operators

Every enumeration type E implicitly provides the following predefined logical operators:

```
E operator &(E x, E y);
E operator |(E x, E y);
E operator ^(E x, E y);
```

The result of evaluating  $\mathbf{x}$  op  $\mathbf{y}$ , where  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  are expressions of an enumeration type  $\mathbf{E}$  with an underlying type  $\mathbf{U}$ , and op is one of the logical operators, is exactly the same as evaluating  $(\mathbf{E})((\mathbf{U})\mathbf{x})$  op  $(\mathbf{U})\mathbf{y}$ . In other words, the enumeration type logical operators simply perform the logical operation on the underlying type of the two operands. These operators are only considered by overload resolution (§14.2.4) when one of the actual operands is of type  $\mathbf{E}$ .

Lifted (§14.2.7) forms of the unlifted predefined enumeration logical operators defined above are also predefined.

## 14.10.3 Boolean logical operators

The predefined Boolean logical operators are:

```
bool operator &(bool x, bool y);
bool operator |(bool x, bool y);
bool operator ^(bool x, bool y);
```

The result of x & y is true if both x and y are true. Otherwise, the result is false.

The result of x | y is true if either x or y is true. Otherwise, the result is fal se.

The result of  $x ^ y$  is true if x is true and y is false, or x is false and y is true. Otherwise, the result is false. When the operands are of type bool, the  $^ o$  operator computes the same result as the ! = o operator.

# 14.10.4 The bool? logical operators

The nullable Boolean type **bool**? can represent three values, **true**, **fal se**, and **null**, and is conceptually similar to the three-valued type used for Boolean expressions in SQL. To ensure that the results produced by the & and | operators for **bool**? operands are consistent with SQL's three-valued logic, the following predefined operators are provided:

```
bool? operator &(bool? x, bool? y);
bool? operator |(bool? x, bool? y);
```

The following table lists the results produced by these operators for all combinations of the values true, fal se, and null:

x	у	x & y	x   y
true	true	true	true
true	fal se	false	true
true	nul l	nul l	true
false	true	false	true
false	fal se	false	fal se
false	nul l	false	nul l
nul l	true	nul l	true
nul l	fal se	false	nul l
nul l	nul l	nul l	nul l

# 14.11 Conditional logical operators

The && and | | operators are called the conditional logical operators. They are also called the "short-circuiting" logical operators.

```
conditional-and-expression:
    inclusive-or-expression
    conditional-and-expression:
    conditional-or-expression:
    conditional-and-expression
    conditional-or-expression | | conditional-and-expression
```

The && and | | operators are conditional versions of the & and | operators:

- The operation x && y corresponds to the operation x & y, except that y is evaluated only if x is true.
- The operation  $x \mid | y$  corresponds to the operation  $x \mid y$ , except that y is evaluated only if x is false.

An operation of the form x & y or  $x \mid | y$  is processed by applying overload resolution (§14.2.4) as if the operation was written x & y or  $x \mid y$ . Then,

- If overload resolution fails to find a single best operator, or if overload resolution selects one of the predefined integer logical operators, a compile-time error occurs.
- Otherwise, if the selected operator is one of the predefined Boolean logical operators (§14.10.2), the operation is processed as described in §14.11.1.
- Otherwise, the selected operator is a user-defined operator, and the operation is processed as described in §14.11.2.

It is not possible to directly overload the conditional logical operators. However, because the conditional logical operators are evaluated in terms of the regular logical operators, overloads of the regular logical operators are, with certain restrictions, also considered overloads of the conditional logical operators. This is described further in §14.11.2.

#### 14.11.1 Boolean conditional logical operators

When overload resolution ( $\S14.2.4$ ) for x & y or  $x \mid y$  selects the predefined Boolean & or  $\mid$  operator, then x & y or  $x \mid \mid y$  is processed as follows:

• The operation x && y is evaluated as (bool) x ? (bool) y : false. In other words, x is first evaluated and converted to type bool. Then, if x is true, y is evaluated and converted to type bool, and this becomes the result of the operation. Otherwise, the result of the operation is false.

• The operation  $x \mid | y$  is evaluated as (bool)x? true: (bool)y. In other words, x is first evaluated and converted to type bool. Then, if x is true, the result of the operation is true. Otherwise, y is evaluated and converted to type bool, and this becomes the result of the operation.

# 14.11.2 User-defined conditional logical operators

When overload resolution ( $\S14.2.4$ ) for x & y or  $x \mid y$  selects a user defined & or  $\mid$  operator, then processing x & y or  $x \mid \mid y$  requires that both of the following shall be true, where T is the type in which the selected operator is declared:

- The return type and the type of each parameter of the selected operator shall be T. In other words, the operator shall compute the logical AND or the logical OR of two operands of type T, and shall return a result of type T.
- T shall contain declarations of operator true and operator false.

A compile-time error occurs if either of these requirements is not satisfied. Otherwise, the && or | | operation is evaluated by combining the user-defined operator true or operator false with the selected user-defined operator:

- The operation x && y is evaluated as T. fal se((T)x)? (T)x: T. &((T)x, y), where T. fal se((T)x) is an invocation of the operator fal se declared in T, and T. &((T)x, y) is an invocation of the selected operator &. In addition, the value (T)x shall only be evaluated once. In other words, x is first evaluated and converted to type T and operator fal se is invoked on the result to determine if x is definitely false. Then, if x is definitely false, the result of the operation is the value previously computed for x converted to type T. Otherwise, y is evaluated, and the selected operator & is invoked on the value previously computed for x converted to type T and the value computed for y to produce the result of the operation.
- The operation  $x \mid | y$  is evaluated as T. true((T)x)?  $(T)x : T \mid ((T)x, y)$ , where T. true((T)x) is an invocation of the operator true declared in T, and  $T \mid ((T)x, y)$  is an invocation of the selected operator  $| \cdot |$ . In addition, the value (T)x shall only be evaluated once. In other words, x is first evaluated and converted to type T and operator true is invoked on the result to determine if x is definitely true. Then, if x is definitely true, the result of the operation is the value previously computed for x converted to type T. Otherwise, y is evaluated, and the selected operator | t is invoked on the value previously computed for x converted to type T and the value computed for y to produce the result of the operation.

In either of these operations, the expression given by x is only evaluated once, and the expression given by y is either not evaluated or evaluated exactly once.

# 14.12 The null coalescing operator

The ?? operator is called the null coalescing operator.

```
null-coalescing-expression:
    conditional-or-expression
    conditional-or-expression ?? null-coalescing-expression
```

A null coalescing expression of the form a ?? b requires a to be of a nullable type or reference type. If a is non-null, the result of a ?? b is a; otherwise, the result is b. The operation evaluates b only if a is null.

The null coalescing operator is right-associative, meaning that operations are grouped from right to left. [Example: An expression of the form a ?? b ?? c is evaluated as a ?? (b ?? c). In general terms, an expression of the form E1 ?? E2 ?? ... ?? EN returns the first of the operands that is non-null, or null if all operands are null. end example]

The type of the expression a ?? b depends on which implicit conversions are available between the types of the operands. In order of preference, the type of a ?? b is AO, A, or B, where A is the type of a, B is the type of b, and AO is the type that results from removing the trailing ? modifier, if any, from A. Specifically, a ?? b is processed as follows:

- If A is not a nullable type or a reference type, a compile-time error occurs.
- If A is a nullable type and an implicit conversion exists from b to A0, the result type is A0. At run-time, a is first evaluated. If a is not null, a is unwrapped to type A0, and this becomes the result. Otherwise, b is evaluated and converted to type A0, and this becomes the result.
- Otherwise, if an implicit conversion exists from b to A, the result type is A. At run-time, a is first evaluated. If a is not null, a becomes the result. Otherwise, b is evaluated and converted to type A, and this becomes the result.
- Otherwise, if an implicit conversion exists from A0 to B, the result type is B. At run-time, a is first evaluated. If a is not null, a is unwrapped to type A0 (unless A and A0 are the same type) and converted to type B, and this becomes the result. Otherwise, b is evaluated and becomes the result.

Otherwise, a and b are incompatible, and a compile-time error occurs.

# 14.13 Conditional operator

The ?: operator is called the conditional operator. It is at times also called the ternary operator.

```
conditional-expression:
null-coalescing-expression ? expression : expression
```

A conditional expression of the form  $\mathbf{b}$  ?  $\mathbf{x}$  :  $\mathbf{y}$  first evaluates the condition  $\mathbf{b}$ . Then, if  $\mathbf{b}$  is  $\mathbf{true}$ ,  $\mathbf{x}$  is evaluated and becomes the result of the operation. Otherwise,  $\mathbf{y}$  is evaluated and becomes the result of the operation. A conditional expression never evaluates both  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$ .

The conditional operator is right-associative, meaning that operations are grouped from right to left. [Example: An expression of the form a?b:c?d:e is evaluated as a?b:(c?d:e). end example]

The first operand of the ?: operator shall be an expression of a type that can be implicitly converted to bool, or an expression of a type that implements operator true. If neither of these requirements is satisfied, a compile-time error occurs.

The second and third operands of the ?: operator control the type of the conditional expression. Let X and Y be the types of the second and third operands. Then,

- If X and Y are the same type, then this is the type of the conditional expression.
- Otherwise, if an implicit conversion (§13.1) exists from X to Y, but not from Y to X, then Y is the type of the conditional expression.
- Otherwise, if an implicit conversion (§13.1) exists from Y to X, but not from X to Y, then X is the type of the conditional expression.
- Otherwise, no expression type can be determined, and a compile-time error occurs.

The run-time processing of a conditional expression of the form  $\mathbf{b}$  ?  $\mathbf{x}$  :  $\mathbf{y}$  consists of the following steps:

- First, **b** is evaluated, and the **bool** value of **b** is determined:
  - o If an implicit conversion from the type of **b** to **bool** exists, then this implicit conversion is performed to produce a **bool** value.
  - Otherwise, the operator true defined by the type of b is invoked to produce a bool value.
- If the **bool** value produced by the step above is **true**, then **x** is evaluated and converted to the type of the conditional expression, and this becomes the result of the conditional expression.
- Otherwise, y is evaluated and converted to the type of the conditional expression, and this becomes the result of the conditional expression.

# 14.14 Assignment operators

The assignment operators assign a new value to a variable, a property, event, or an indexer element.

```
assignment:
unary-expression assignment-operator expression

assignment-operator: one of
= += -= *= /= %= &= |= ^= <<= right-shift-assignment
```

The left operand of an assignment shall be an expression classified as a variable, a property access, an indexer access, or an event access.

The = operator is called the *simple assignment operator*. It assigns the value of the right operand to the variable, property, or indexer element given by the left operand. The left operand of the simple assignment operator shall not be an event access (except as described in §17.7.1). The simple assignment operator is described in §14.14.1.

The operators formed by prefixing an = character with a binary operator are called the *compound* assignment operators. These operators perform the indicated operation on the two operands, and then assign the resulting value to the variable, property, or indexer element given by the left operand. The compound assignment operators are described in §14.14.2.

The += and -= operators with an event access expression as the left operand are called the *event* assignment operators. No other assignment operator is valid with an event access as the left operand. The event assignment operators are described in §14.13.3.

The assignment operators are right-associative, meaning that operations are grouped from right to left. [Example: An expression of the form a = b = c is evaluated as a = (b = c). end example]

# 14.14.1 Simple assignment

The = operator is called the simple assignment operator. In a simple assignment, the right operand shall be an expression of a type that is implicitly convertible to the type of the left operand. The operation assigns the value of the right operand to the variable, property, or indexer element given by the left operand.

The result of a simple assignment expression is the value assigned to the left operand. The result has the same type as the left operand, and is always classified as a value.

If the left operand is a property or indexer access, the property or indexer shall have a set accessor. If this is not the case, a compile-time error occurs.

The run-time processing of a simple assignment of the form x = y consists of the following steps:

- If x is classified as a variable:
  - o x is evaluated to produce the variable.
  - o y is evaluated and, if required, converted to the type of x through an implicit conversion (§13.1).
  - o If the variable given by **x** is an array element of a *reference-type*, a run-time check is performed to ensure that the value computed for **y** is compatible with the array instance of which **x** is an element. The check succeeds if **y** is **null**, or if an implicit reference conversion (§13.1.4) exists from the runtime type of the instance referenced by **y** to the actual element type of the array instance containing **x**. Otherwise, a **System**. **ArrayTypeMi smatchExcepti on** is thrown.
  - The value resulting from the evaluation and conversion of y is stored into the location given by the evaluation of x.
- If x is classified as a property or indexer access:
  - o The instance expression (if x is not static) and the argument list (if x is an indexer access) associated with x are evaluated, and the results are used in the subsequent set accessor invocation.
  - o y is evaluated and, if required, converted to the type of x through an implicit conversion (§13.1).

o The set accessor of x is invoked with the value computed for y as its val ue argument.

[Note: The array covariance rules (§19.5) permit a value of an array type A[] to be a reference to an instance of an array type B[], provided an implicit reference conversion exists from B to A. Because of these rules, assignment to an array element of a *reference-type* requires a run-time check to ensure that the value being assigned is compatible with the array instance. In the example

the last assignment causes a **System**. **ArrayTypeMi smatchExcepti on** to be thrown because an instance of **ArrayLi st** cannot be stored in an element of a **string**[]. *end note*]

When a property or indexer declared in a *struct-type* is the target of an assignment, the instance expression associated with the property or indexer access shall be classified as a variable. If the instance expression is classified as a value, a compile-time error occurs. [*Note*: Because of §14.5.4, the same rule also applies to fields. *end note*]

[Example: Given the declarations:

```
struct Point
           int x, y;
           public Point(int x, int y) {
               this. x = x;
               this. y = y;
           public int X {
               get { return x; }
set { x = value; }
           public int Y {
               get { return y; }
set { y = value; }
        struct Rectangle
           Point a, b;
           public Rectangle(Point a, Point b) {
               this. a = a;
               this. b = b;
           public Point A {
               get { return a; }
set { a = value; }
           public Point B {
               get { return b; }
set { b = value; }
        }
in the example
       Point p = new Point();
p. X = 100;
        \hat{p}. Y = \hat{100};
        Rectangle r = new Rectangle();
        r. A = new Point(10, 10);
        r. B = p;
```

the assignments to p. X, p. Y, r. A, and r. B are permitted because p and r are variables. However, in the example

```
Rectangle r = new Rectangle();
r. A. X = 10;
r. A. Y = 10;
r. B. X = 100;
r. B. Y = 100;
```

the assignments are all invalid, since r. A and r. B are not variables. end example]

# 14.14.2 Compound assignment

An operation of the form  $\mathbf{x}$   $op = \mathbf{y}$  is processed by applying binary operator overload resolution (§14.2.4) as if the operation was written  $\mathbf{x}$  op  $\mathbf{y}$ . Then,

- If the return type of the selected operator is implicitly convertible to the type of x, the operation is evaluated as x = x op y, except that x is evaluated only once.
- Otherwise, if the selected operator is a predefined operator, if the return type of the selected operator is explicitly convertible to the type of  $\mathbf{x}$ , and if  $\mathbf{y}$  is implicitly convertible to the type of  $\mathbf{x}$  or the operator is a shift operator, then the operation is evaluated as  $\mathbf{x} = (T)(\mathbf{x} \ op \ \mathbf{y})$ , where T is the type of  $\mathbf{x}$ , except that  $\mathbf{x}$  is evaluated only once.
- Otherwise, the compound assignment is invalid, and a compile-time error occurs.

The term "evaluated only once" means that in the evaluation of x op y, the results of any constituent expressions of x are temporarily saved and then reused when performing the assignment to x. [Example: In the assignment A() [B()] += C(), where A is a method returning i nt [], and B and C are methods returning i nt, the methods are invoked only once, in the order A, B, C. end example]

When the left operand of a compound assignment is a property access or indexer access, the property or indexer shall have both a get accessor and a set accessor. If this is not the case, a compile-time error occurs.

The second rule above permits  $\mathbf{x}$   $op = \mathbf{y}$  to be evaluated as  $\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{T}) (\mathbf{x} op \mathbf{y})$  in certain contexts. The rule exists such that the predefined operators can be used as compound operators when the left operand is of type **sbyte**, **short**, **ushort**, or **char**. Even when both arguments are of one of those types, the predefined operators produce a result of type  $\mathbf{i}$   $\mathbf{n}$ t, as described in §14.2.6.2. Thus, without a cast it would not be possible to assign the result to the left operand.

The intuitive effect of the rule for predefined operators is simply that  $\mathbf{x}$   $op = \mathbf{y}$  is permitted if both of  $\mathbf{x}$  op  $\mathbf{y}$  and  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}$  are permitted. [Example: In the following code

the intuitive reason for each error is that a corresponding simple assignment would also have been an error. *end example*]

[Note: Compound assignment operations support lifted operators. Since a compound assignment  $\mathbf{x}$   $op = \mathbf{y}$  is evaluated as either  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$  op  $\mathbf{y}$  or  $\mathbf{x} = (T)$  ( $\mathbf{x}$  op  $\mathbf{y}$ ), the rules of evaluation implicitly cover lifted operators. end note]

## 14.14.3 Event assignment

If the left operand of a += or -= operator is an event, the expression is classified as an event access, and is evaluated as follows:

- The instance expression, if any, of the event access is evaluated.
- The right operand of the += or -= operator is evaluated, and, if required, converted to the type of the left operand through an implicit conversion (§13.1).
- An event accessor of the event is invoked, with argument list consisting of the value computed in the previous step. If the operator was +=, the add accessor is invoked; if the operator was -=, the remove accessor is invoked.

An event assignment expression does not yield a value. Thus, an event assignment expression is valid only in the context of a *statement-expression* (§15.6).

# 14.15 Expression

An expression is either a conditional-expression or an assignment.

```
expression:
conditional-expression
assignment
```

# 14.16 Constant expressions

A constant expression is an expression that shall be fully evaluated at compile-time. Where an expression is required to be constant this is indicated in the grammar by using *constant-expression*.

```
constant-expression: expression
```

The type of a constant expression can be one of the following: sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, float, double, decimal, bool, string, any enumeration type, or the null type (§11.2.7). The following constructs are permitted in constant expressions:

- Literals (including the nul l literal)
- References to const members of class and struct types.
- References to members of enumeration types.
- Parenthesized sub-expressions, which are themselves constant expressions.
- Cast expressions, provided the target type is one of the types listed above.
- The predefined checked and unchecked, +, -, !, and ~ unary operators.
- The predefined +, -, \*, /, %, <<, >>, &,  $|, ^{,} \&\&, ||, ==, !=, <, >, <=,$ and >= binary operators, provided each operand is of a type listed above.
- The ?: conditional operator.
- si zeof expressions, provided the unmanaged-type is one of the types specified in §14.5.12.
- default value expressions, provided the type is one of the types listed above, or the type is a reference type or a type parameter that is known to be a reference type (§25.7).

The following conversions are permitted in constant expressions:

- Identity conversions
- Numeric conversions
- Enumeration conversions

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

- Constant expression conversions
- Implicit and explicit reference conversions, provided the source of the conversions is a constant expression that evaluates to the null value.

[*Note*: Other conversions including boxing, unboxing, and implicit reference conversions of non-null values are not permitted in constant expressions. *end note*]

[Example: In the following code

the initialization of i val is an error because a boxing conversion is required. The initialization of str is an error because an implicit reference conversion from a non-null value is required. *end example*]

Whenever an *expression* is of one of the types listed above and contains only the constructs listed above, it is a constant expression and shall be evaluated at compile-time. This is true even if the expression is a sub-expression of a larger expression that contains non-constant constructs.

The compile-time evaluation of constant expressions uses the same rules as run-time evaluation of non-constant expressions, except that where run-time evaluation would have thrown an exception, compile-time evaluation causes a compile-time error to occur.

Unless a constant expression is explicitly placed in an unchecked context, overflows that occur in integral-type arithmetic operations and conversions during the compile-time evaluation of the expression always cause compile-time errors (§14.5.12).

Constant expressions are required in the contexts listed below and this is indicated in the grammar by using *constant-expression*. In these contexts, a compile-time error occurs if an expression cannot be fully evaluated at compile-time.

- Constant declarations (§17.3)
- Enumeration member declarations (§21.3)
- case labels of a switch statement (§15.7.2).
- goto case statements (§15.9.3)
- Dimension lengths in an array creation expression (§14.5.10.2) that includes an initializer.
- Attributes (§24)

An implicit constant expression conversion (§13.1.7) permits a constant expression of type int to be converted to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, uint, or ulong, provided the value of the constant expression is within the range of the destination type.

## 14.17 Boolean expressions

A boolean-expression is an expression that yields a result of type bool.

```
boolean-expression: expression
```

The controlling conditional expression of an *if-statement* (§15.7.1), *while-statement* (§15.8.1), *do-statement* (§15.8.2), or *for-statement* (§15.8.3) is a *boolean-expression*. The controlling conditional expression of the ?: operator (§14.13) follows the same rules as a *boolean-expression*, but for reasons of operator precedence is classified as a *null-coalescing-expression*.

A *boolean-expression* is required to be of a type that can be implicitly converted to **bool** or of a type that implements **operator true**. [*Note*: As required by §17.9.1, any type that implements **operator true** 

shall also implement operator false. end note] If neither requirement is satisfied, a compile-time error occurs.

When a Boolean expression is of a type that cannot be implicitly converted to **bool** but does implement **operator true**, then following evaluation of the expression, the **operator true** implementation provided by that type is invoked to produce a **bool** value.

# 15. Statements

C# provides a variety of statements. [*Note*: Most of these statements will be familiar to developers who have programmed in C and C++. *end note*]

```
statement:
   labeled-statement
   declaration-statement
   embedded-statement
embedded-statement:
   block
   empty-statement
   expression-statement
   selection-statement
   iteration-statement
   jump-statement
   try-statement
   checked-statement
   unchecked-statement
   lock-statement
   using-statement
   yield-statement
```

The *embedded-statement* non-terminal is used for statements that appear within other statements. The use of *embedded-statement* rather than *statement* excludes the use of declaration statements and labeled statements in these contexts. [Example: The code

```
void F(bool b) {
   if (b)
   int i = 44;
}
```

results in a compile-time error because an **i f** statement requires an *embedded-statement* rather than a *statement* for its if branch. If this code were permitted, then the variable **i** would be declared, but it could never be used. (Note, however, that by placing **i** 's declaration in a block, the example is valid.) *end example*]

## 15.1 End points and reachability

Every statement has an *end point*. In intuitive terms, the end point of a statement is the location that immediately follows the statement. The execution rules for composite statements (statements that contain embedded statements) specify the action that is taken when control reaches the end point of an embedded statement. [*Example*: When control reaches the end point of a statement in a block, control is transferred to the next statement in the block. *end example*]

If a statement can possibly be reached by execution, the statement is said to be *reachable*. Conversely, if there is no possibility that a statement will be executed, the statement is said to be *unreachable*.

[Example: In the following code

```
void F() {
   Consol e. WriteLine("reachable");
   goto Label;
   Consol e. WriteLine("unreachable");
   Label:
   Consol e. WriteLine("reachable");
}
```

the second invocation of **Consol** e. **WriteLine** is unreachable because there is no possibility that the statement will be executed. *end example*]

A warning is reported if the compiler determines that a statement is unreachable. It is specifically not an error for a statement to be unreachable.

[*Note*: To determine whether a particular statement or end point is reachable, the compiler performs flow analysis according to the reachability rules defined for each statement. The flow analysis takes into account the values of constant expressions (§14.16) that control the behavior of statements, but the possible values of non-constant expressions are not considered. In other words, for purposes of control flow analysis, a non-constant expression of a given type is considered to have any possible value of that type.

In the example

```
void F() {
   const int i = 1;
   if (i == 2) Console. WriteLine("unreachable");
}
```

the Boolean expression of the **i f** statement is a constant expression because both operands of the == operator are constants. As the constant expression is evaluated at compile-time, producing the value **fal se**, the **Consol e**. **Wri teLi ne** invocation is considered unreachable. However, if **i** is changed to be a local variable

```
void F() {
   int i = 1;
   if (i == 2) Console. WriteLine("reachable");
}
```

the **Consol** e. **WriteLine** invocation is considered reachable, even though, in reality, it will never be executed. *end note*]

The *block* of a function member is always considered reachable. The *block* of an *anonymous-method-expression* is always considered reachable. By successively evaluating the reachability rules of each statement in a block, the reachability of any given statement can be determined.

[Example: In the following code

```
void F(int x) {
   Console. WriteLine("start");
   if (x < 0) Console. WriteLine("negative");
}</pre>
```

the reachability of the second Consol e. WriteLine is determined as follows:

- The first Consol e. WriteLine expression statement is reachable because the block of the F method is reachable (§15.2).
- The end point of the first Consol e. WriteLi ne expression statement is reachable because that statement is reachable (§15.6 and §15.2).
- The if statement is reachable because the end point of the first Consol e. WriteLine expression statement is reachable (§15.6 and §15.2).
- The second Consol e. WriteLine expression statement is reachable because the Boolean expression of the if statement does not have the constant value false.

end example]

There are two situations in which it is a compile-time error for the end point of a statement to be reachable:

- Because the switch statement does not permit a switch section to "fall through" to the next switch section, it is a compile-time error for the end point of the statement list of a switch section to be reachable. If this error occurs, it is typically an indication that a break statement is missing.
- It is a compile-time error for the end point of the block of a function member that computes a value to be reachable. If this error occurs, it typically is an indication that a return statement is missing.

## 15.2 Blocks

A block permits multiple statements to be written in contexts where a single statement is allowed.

```
block: { statement-list<sub>opt</sub> }
```

A *block* consists of an optional *statement-list* (§15.2.1), enclosed in braces. If the statement list is omitted, the block is said to be empty.

A block can contain declaration statements (§15.5). The scope of a local variable or constant declared in a block is the block.

Within a block, the meaning of a name used in an expression or declarator context shall always be the same (§14.5.2.1).

A block is executed as follows:

- If the block is empty, control is transferred to the end point of the block.
- If the block is not empty, control is transferred to the statement list. When and if control reaches the end point of the statement list, control is transferred to the end point of the block.

The statement list of a block is reachable if the block itself is reachable.

The end point of a block is reachable if the block is empty or if the end point of the statement list is reachable.

#### 15.2.1 Statement lists

A *statement list* consists of one or more statements written in sequence. Statement lists occur in *blocks* (§15.2) and in *switch-blocks* (§15.7.2).

```
statement-list:
statement
statement-list statement
```

A statement list is executed by transferring control to the first statement. When and if control reaches the end point of a statement, control is transferred to the next statement. When and if control reaches the end point of the last statement, control is transferred to the end point of the statement list.

A statement in a statement list is reachable if at least one of the following is true:

- The statement is the first statement and the statement list itself is reachable.
- The end point of the preceding statement is reachable.
- The statement is a labeled statement and the label is referenced by a reachable goto statement.

The end point of a statement list is reachable if the end point of the last statement in the list is reachable.

# 15.3 The empty statement

An empty-statement does nothing.

```
empty-statement:
```

An empty statement is used when there are no operations to perform in a context where a statement is required.

Execution of an empty statement simply transfers control to the end point of the statement. Thus, the end point of an empty statement is reachable if the empty statement is reachable.

[Example: An empty statement can be used when writing a while statement with a null body:

```
bool ProcessMessage() {...}
void ProcessMessages() {
   while (ProcessMessage())
   ;
}
```

Also, an empty statement can be used to declare a label just before the closing "}" of a block:

```
void F() {
     ...
     if (done) goto exit;
     ...
     exit: ;
}
```

end example]

## 15.4 Labeled statements

A *labeled-statement* permits a statement to be prefixed by a label. Labeled statements are permitted in blocks, but are not permitted as embedded statements.

```
labeled-statement:
identifier : statement
```

A labeled statement declares a label with the name given by the *identifier*. The scope of a label is the whole block in which the label is declared, including any nested blocks. It is a compile-time error for two labels with the same name to have overlapping scopes.

A label can be referenced from **goto** statements (§15.9.3) within the scope of the label. [*Note*: This means that **goto** statements can transfer control within blocks and out of blocks, but never into blocks. *end note*]

Labels have their own declaration space and do not interfere with other identifiers. [Example: The example

```
int F(int x) {
   if (x >= 0) goto x;
   x = -x;
   x: return x;
}
```

is valid and uses the name **x** as both a parameter and a label. *end example*]

Execution of a labeled statement corresponds exactly to execution of the statement following the label.

In addition to the reachability provided by normal flow of control, a labeled statement is reachable if the label is referenced by a reachable goto statement, unless the goto statement is inside a try that includes a finally block whose end point is unreachable, and the labeled statement is outside the try.

## 15.5 Declaration statements

A *declaration-statement* declares a local variable or constant. Declaration statements are permitted in blocks, but are not permitted as embedded statements.

```
declaration-statement:
    local-variable-declaration;
    local-constant-declaration;
```

#### 15.5.1 Local variable declarations

A local-variable-declaration declares one or more local variables.

```
local-variable-declaration:
    type local-variable-declarators

local-variable-declarator:
    local-variable-declarator
    local-variable-declarators , local-variable-declarator

local-variable-declarator:
    identifier
    identifier = local-variable-initializer

local-variable-initializer:
    expression
    array-initializer
```

The *type* of a *local-variable-declaration* specifies the type of the variables introduced by the declaration. The type is followed by a list of *local-variable-declarators*, each of which introduces a new variable. A *local-variable-declarator* consists of an *identifier* that names the variable, optionally followed by an "=" token and a *local-variable-initializer* that gives the initial value of the variable.

The value of a local variable is obtained in an expression using a *simple-name* (§14.5.2), and the value of a local variable is modified using an *assignment* (§14.14). A local variable shall be definitely assigned (§12.3) at each location where its value is obtained.

The scope of a local variable declared in a *local-variable-declaration* is the block in which the declaration occurs. It is an error to refer to a local variable in a textual position that precedes the *local-variable-declarator* of the local variable. Within the scope of a local variable, it is a compile-time error to declare another local variable or constant with the same name.

A local variable declaration that declares multiple variables is equivalent to multiple declarations of single variables with the same type. Furthermore, a variable initializer in a local variable declaration corresponds exactly to an assignment statement that is inserted immediately after the declaration.

```
[Example: The example
```

end example]

```
void F() {
    int x = 1, y, z = x * 2;
}

corresponds exactly to

void F() {
    int x; x = 1;
    int y;
    int z; z = x * 2;
}
```

# 15.5.2 Local constant declarations

A local-constant-declaration declares one or more local constants.

```
local-constant-declaration:
    const type constant-declarators

constant-declarators:
    constant-declarator
    constant-declarator , constant-declarator

constant-declarator:
    identifier = constant-expression
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

The *type* of a *local-constant-declaration* specifies the type of the constants introduced by the declaration. The type is followed by a list of *constant-declarators*, each of which introduces a new constant. A *constant-declarator* consists of an *identifier* that names the constant, followed by an "=" token, followed by a *constant-expression* (§14.16) that gives the value of the constant.

The *type* and *constant-expression* of a local constant declaration shall follow the same rules as those of a constant member declaration (§17.3).

The value of a local constant is obtained in an expression using a *simple-name* (§14.5.2).

The scope of a local constant is the block in which the declaration occurs. It is an error to refer to a local constant in a textual position that precedes its *constant-declarator*. Within the scope of a local constant, it is a compile-time error to declare another local variable or constant with the same name.

A local constant declaration that declares multiple constants is equivalent to multiple declarations of single constants with the same type.

# 15.6 Expression statements

An *expression-statement* evaluates a given expression. The value computed by the expression, if any, is discarded.

```
expression-statement:
    statement-expression;

statement-expression:
    invocation-expression
    object-creation-expression
    assignment
    post-increment-expression
    pre-increment-expression
    pre-decrement-expression
```

Not all expressions are permitted as statements. [Note: In particular, expressions such as x + y and x == 1, that merely compute a value (which will be discarded), are not permitted as statements. end note]

Execution of an expression statement evaluates the contained expression and then transfers control to the end point of the expression statement. The end point of an *expression-statement* is reachable if that *expression-statement* is reachable.

#### 15.7 Selection statements

Selection statements select one of a number of possible statements for execution based on the value of some expression.

```
selection-statement:
if-statement
switch-statement
```

#### 15.7.1 The if statement

The if statement selects a statement for execution based on the value of a Boolean expression.

```
if-statement:
    i f ( boolean-expression ) embedded-statement
    i f ( boolean-expression ) embedded-statement el se embedded-statement
```

An el se part is associated with the lexically nearest preceding i f that is allowed by the syntax. [Example: Thus, an i f statement of the form

```
if (x) if (y) F(); else G();
```

is equivalent to

```
if (x) {
    if (y) {
        F();
    }
    else {
        G();
    }
}
```

end example]

An if statement is executed as follows:

- The *boolean-expression* (§14.17) is evaluated.
- If the Boolean expression yields true, control is transferred to the first embedded statement. When and if control reaches the end point of that statement, control is transferred to the end point of the if statement.
- If the Boolean expression yields fal se and if an el se part is present, control is transferred to the second embedded statement. When and if control reaches the end point of that statement, control is transferred to the end point of the if statement.
- If the Boolean expression yields fal se and if an el se part is not present, control is transferred to the end point of the if statement.

The first embedded statement of an **i f** statement is reachable if the **i f** statement is reachable and the Boolean expression does not have the constant value **fal se**.

The second embedded statement of an if statement, if present, is reachable if the if statement is reachable and the Boolean expression does not have the constant value true.

The end point of an if statement is reachable if the end point of at least one of its embedded statements is reachable. In addition, the end point of an if statement with no else part is reachable if the if statement is reachable and the Boolean expression does not have the constant value true.

### 15.7.2 The switch statement

The switch statement selects for execution a statement list having an associated switch label that corresponds to the value of the switch expression.

```
switch-statement:
switch (expression) switch-block

switch-block:
{ switch-sectionsopt }

switch-sections:
switch-section switch-section

switch-section:
switch-labels statement-list

switch-labels:
switch-label
switch-label:
case constant-expression:
default:
```

A *switch-statement* consists of the keyword **switch**, followed by a parenthesized expression (called the switch expression), followed by a *switch-block*. The *switch-block* consists of zero or more *switch-sections*,

enclosed in braces. Each *switch-section* consists of one or more *switch-labels* followed by a *statement-list* (§15.2.1).

The *governing type* of a switch statement is established by the switch expression. If the type of the switch expression is sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, string, or an *enum-type*, then that is the governing type of the switch statement. Otherwise, exactly one user-defined implicit conversion operator (§13.4) shall exist from the type of the switch expression or a base type of this type to one of the following possible governing types: sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, string. If no such implicit conversion operator exists, or if more than one such implicit conversion operator exists, a compile-time error occurs.

The constant expression of each case label shall denote a value of a type that is implicitly convertible (§13.1) to the governing type of the switch statement. A compile-time error occurs if two or more case labels in the same switch statement specify the same constant value.

There can be at most one **default** label in a switch statement.

A switch statement is executed as follows:

- The switch expression is evaluated and converted to the governing type.
- If one of the constants specified in a case label in the same switch statement is equal to the value of the switch expression, control is transferred to the statement list following the matched case label.
- If none of the constants specified in case labels in the same switch statement is equal to the value of the switch expression, and if a default label is present, control is transferred to the statement list following the default label.
- If none of the constants specified in case labels in the same switch statement is equal to the value of the switch expression, and if no default label is present, control is transferred to the end point of the switch statement.

If the end point of the statement list of a switch section is reachable, a compile-time error occurs. This is known as the "no fall through" rule. [*Example*: The example

```
switch (i) {
  case 0:
        CaseZero();
        break;
  case 1:
        CaseOne();
        break;
  default:
        CaseOthers();
        break;
}
```

is valid because no switch section has a reachable end point. Unlike C and C++, execution of a switch section is not permitted to "fall through" to the next switch section, and the example

```
switch (i) {
  case 0:
        CaseZero();
  case 1:
        CaseZero0r0ne();
  default:
        CaseAny();
}
```

results in a compile-time error. When execution of a switch section is to be followed by execution of another switch section, an explicit goto case or goto default statement shall be used:

```
switch (i) {
      case 0:
          CaseZero();
          goto case 1;
      case 1:
          CaseZeroOrOne();
          goto default;
      default:
          CaseAny();
          break;
end example]
Multiple labels are permitted in a switch-section. [Example: The example
      switch (i) {
      case 0:
          CaseZero():
          break;
      case 1:
          CaseOne();
          break:
      case 2:
      default:
          CaseTwo();
          break;
      }
```

is valid. The example does not violate the "no fall through" rule because the labels case 2: and default: are part of the same *switch-section*. *end example*]

[*Note*: The "no fall through" rule prevents a common class of bugs that occur in C and C++ when **break** statements are accidentally omitted. In addition, because of this rule, the switch sections of a **switch** statement can be arbitrarily rearranged without affecting the behavior of the statement. For example, the sections of the **switch** statement above can be reversed without affecting the behavior of the statement:

```
switch (i) {
  default:
        CaseAny();
        break;
  case 1:
        CaseZeroOrOne();
        goto default;
  case 0:
        CaseZero();
        goto case 1;
  }
end note]
```

[Note: The statement list of a switch section typically ends in a break, goto case, or goto defaul t statement, but any construct that renders the end point of the statement list unreachable is permitted. For example, a while statement controlled by the Boolean expression true is known to never reach its end point. Likewise, a throw or return statement always transfers control elsewhere and never reaches its end point. Thus, the following example is valid:

```
switch (i) {
  case 0:
     while (true) F();
  case 1:
     throw new ArgumentException();
  case 2:
     return;
  }
end note]
```

[Example: The governing type of a switch statement can be the type string. For example:

```
void DoCommand(string command) {
   switch (command.ToLower()) {
   case "run":
        DoRun();
        break;
   case "save":
        DoSave();
        break;
   case "quit":
        DoQuit();
        break;
   default:
        InvalidCommand(command);
        break;
}
```

end example]

[*Note*: Like the string equality operators (§14.9.7), the **switch** statement is case sensitive and will execute a given switch section only if the switch expression string exactly matches a **case** label constant. *end note*]

When the governing type of a switch statement is string, the value null is permitted as a case label constant.

The *statement-lists* of a *switch-block* can contain declaration statements (§15.5). The scope of a local variable or constant declared in a switch block is the switch block.

Within a switch block, the meaning of a name used in an expression context shall always be the same (§14.5.2.1).

The statement list of a given switch section is reachable if the switch statement is reachable and at least one of the following is true:

- The switch expression is a non-constant value.
- The switch expression is a constant value that matches a case label in the switch section.
- The switch expression is a constant value that doesn't match any case label, and the switch section contains the default label.
- A switch label of the switch section is referenced by a reachable goto case or goto default statement.

The end point of a switch statement is reachable if at least one of the following is true:

- The switch statement contains a reachable break statement that exits the switch statement.
- The switch statement is reachable, the switch expression is a non-constant value, and no default label is present.
- The switch statement is reachable, the switch expression is a constant value that doesn't match any case label, and no default label is present.

#### 15.8 Iteration statements

Iteration statements repeatedly execute an embedded statement.

```
iteration-statement:
while-statement
do-statement
for-statement
foreach-statement
```

## 15.8.1 The while statement

The while statement conditionally executes an embedded statement zero or more times.

```
while-statement:
while ( boolean-expression ) embedded-statement
```

A while statement is executed as follows:

- The boolean-expression (§14.17) is evaluated.
- If the Boolean expression yields true, control is transferred to the embedded statement. When and if control reaches the end point of the embedded statement (possibly from execution of a continue statement), control is transferred to the beginning of the while estatement.
- If the Boolean expression yields fal se, control is transferred to the end point of the while statement.

Within the embedded statement of a while statement, a break statement (§15.9.1) can be used to transfer control to the end point of the while statement (thus ending iteration of the embedded statement), and a continue statement (§15.9.2) can be used to transfer control to the end point of the embedded statement (thus performing another iteration of the while statement).

The embedded statement of a while statement is reachable if the while statement is reachable and the Boolean expression does not have the constant value false.

The end point of a while statement is reachable if at least one of the following is true:

- The while statement contains a reachable break statement that exits the while statement.
- The while statement is reachable and the Boolean expression does not have the constant value true.

#### 15.8.2 The do statement

The do statement conditionally executes an embedded statement one or more times.

```
do-statement:
do embedded-statement while ( boolean-expression ) ;
```

A do statement is executed as follows:

- Control is transferred to the embedded statement.
- When and if control reaches the end point of the embedded statement (possibly from execution of a continue statement), the *boolean-expression* (§14.17) is evaluated. If the Boolean expression yields true, control is transferred to the beginning of the do statement. Otherwise, control is transferred to the end point of the do statement.

Within the embedded statement of a **do** statement, a **break** statement (§15.9.1) can be used to transfer control to the end point of the **do** statement (thus ending iteration of the embedded statement), and a **continue** statement (§15.9.2) can be used to transfer control to the end point of the embedded statement (thus performing another iteration of the **do** statement).

The embedded statement of a do statement is reachable if the do statement is reachable.

The end point of a **do** statement is reachable if at least one of the following is true:

- The do statement contains a reachable break statement that exits the do statement.
- The end point of the embedded statement is reachable and the Boolean expression does not have the constant value true.

#### 15.8.3 The for statement

The for statement evaluates a sequence of initialization expressions and then, while a condition is true, repeatedly executes an embedded statement and evaluates a sequence of iteration expressions.

```
for-statement:

for (for-initializer_{opt}; for-condition_{opt}; for-iterator_{opt}) embedded-statement
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
for-initializer:
    local-variable-declaration
    statement-expression-list

for-condition:
    boolean-expression

for-iterator:
    statement-expression-list

statement-expression-list:
    statement-expression
    statement-expression
```

The *for-initializer*, if present, consists of either a *local-variable-declaration* (§15.5.1) or a list of *statement-expressions* (§15.6) separated by commas. The scope of a local variable declared by a *for-initializer* starts at the *local-variable-declarator* for the variable and extends to the end of the embedded statement. The scope includes the *for-condition* and the *for-iterator*.

The for-condition, if present, shall be a boolean-expression (§14.17).

The for-iterator, if present, consists of a list of statement-expressions (§15.6) separated by commas.

A for statement is executed as follows:

- If a *for-initializer* is present, the variable initializers or statement expressions are executed in the order they are written. This step is only performed once.
- If a *for-condition* is present, it is evaluated.
- If the *for-condition* is not present or if the evaluation yields true, control is transferred to the embedded statement. When and if control reaches the end point of the embedded statement (possibly from execution of a continue statement), the expressions of the *for-iterator*, if any, are evaluated in sequence, and then another iteration is performed, starting with evaluation of the *for-condition* in the step above.
- If the *for-condition* is present and the evaluation yields **fal se**, control is transferred to the end point of the **for** statement.

Within the embedded statement of a **for** statement, a **break** statement (§15.9.1) can be used to transfer control to the end point of the **for** statement (thus ending iteration of the embedded statement), and a **continue** statement (§15.9.2) can be used to transfer control to the end point of the embedded statement (thus executing another iteration of the **for** statement).

The embedded statement of a for statement is reachable if one of the following is true:

- The for statement is reachable and no *for-condition* is present.
- The for statement is reachable and a *for-condition* is present and does not have the constant value fal se.

The end point of a for statement is reachable if at least one of the following is true:

- The for statement contains a reachable break statement that exits the for statement.
- The for statement is reachable and a *for-condition* is present and does not have the constant value true.

#### 15.8.4 The foreach statement

The foreach statement enumerates the elements of a collection, executing an embedded statement for each element of the collection.

```
foreach-statement:

foreach (type identifier in expression) embedded-statement
```

The *type* and *identifier* of a **foreach** statement declare the *iteration variable* of the statement. The iteration variable corresponds to a read-only local variable with a scope that extends over the embedded statement. During execution of a **foreach** statement, the iteration variable represents the collection element for which an iteration is currently being performed. A compile-time error occurs if the embedded statement attempts to modify the iteration variable (via assignment or the ++ and -- operators) or pass the iteration variable as a **ref** or **out** parameter.

The compile-time processing of a foreach statement first determines the *collection type*, *enumerator type* and *element type* of the expression. This determination proceeds as follows:

- If the type X of *expression* is an array type then there is an implicit reference conversion from X to the System. Collections. I Enumerable interface (since System. Array implements this interface). The *collection type* is the System. Collections. I Enumerable interface, the *enumerator type* is the System. Collections. I Enumerator interface and the *element type* is the element type of the array type X.
- Otherwise, determine whether the type **X** has an appropriate **GetEnumerator** method:
  - Perform member lookup on the type X with identifier GetEnumerator and no type arguments. If the member lookup does not produce a match, or it produces an ambiguity, or produces a match that is not a method group, check for an enumerable interface as described below. It is recommended that a warning be issued if member lookup produces anything except a method group or no match.
  - O Perform overload resolution using the resulting method group and an empty argument list. If overload resolution results in no applicable methods, results in an ambiguity, or results in a single best method but that method is either static or not public, check for an enumerable interface as described below. It is recommended that a warning be issued if overload resolution produces anything except an unambiguous public instance method or no applicable methods.
  - o If the return type E of the GetEnumerator method is not a class, struct or interface type, an error is produced and no further steps are taken.
  - o Member lookup is performed on E with the identifier Current and no type arguments. If the member lookup produces no match, the result is an error, or the result is anything except a public instance property that permits reading, an error is produced and no further steps are taken.
  - o Member lookup is performed on E with the identifier MoveNext and no type arguments. If the member lookup produces no match, the result is an error, or the result is anything except a method group, an error is produced and no further steps are taken.
  - Overload resolution is performed on the method group with an empty argument list. If overload
    resolution results in no applicable methods, results in an ambiguity, or results in a single best
    method but that method is either static or not public, or its return type is not bool, an error is
    produced and no further steps are taken.
  - The *collection type* is **X**, the *enumerator type* is **E**, and the *element type* is the type of the Current property.
- Otherwise, check for an enumerable interface:
  - If there is exactly one type T such that there is an implicit conversion from X to the interface System. Collections. Generic. I Enumerable <T>, then the collection type is this interface, the enumerator type is the interface System. Collections. Generic. I Enumerator <T>, and the element type is T.
  - Otherwise, if there is more than one such type T, then an error is produced and no further steps are taken
  - Otherwise, if there is an implicit conversion from X to the System. Collections. I Enumerable interface, then the *collection type* is this interface, the *enumerator type* is the interface System. Collections. I Enumerator, and the *element type* is object.

Otherwise, an error is produced and no further steps are taken.

The above steps, if successful, unambiguously produce a collection type C, enumerator type E and element type T. A foreach statement of the form

```
foreach (V v in x) embedded-statement
```

is then expanded to:

```
{
    E e = ((C)(x)).GetEnumerator();
    try {
        V v;
        while (e. MoveNext()) {
            v = (V)(T)e.Current;
            embedded-statement
        }
    }
    finally {
        ... // Dispose e
    }
}
```

The variable  ${\bf e}$  is not visible to or accessible to the expression  ${\bf x}$  or the embedded statement or any other source code of the program. The variable  ${\bf v}$  is read-only in the embedded statement. If there is not an explicit conversion (§13.2) from T (the element type) to V (the *type* in the foreach statement), an error is produced and no further steps are taken. [Note: If  ${\bf x}$  has the value null, a System. NullReferenceException is thrown at run-time. end note]

The body of the finally block is constructed according to the following steps:

• If there is an implicit conversion from E to the System. I Di sposable interface, then the finally clause is expanded to the semantic equivalent of:

```
finally {
    ((System.IDi sposable)e).Di spose();
}
```

except that if e is a value type, or a type parameter instantiated to a value type, then the cast of e to System. I Di sposabl e shall not cause boxing to occur.

• Otherwise, if E is a sealed type, the finally clause is expanded to an empty block:

```
finally {
```

• Otherwise, the finally clause is expanded to:

```
finally {
    System IDisposable d = e as System IDisposable;
    if (d != null) d.Dispose();
}
```

The local d is not visible to or accessible to any user code. In particular, it does not conflict with any other variable whose scope includes the finally block.

The order in which foreach traverses the elements of an array, is as follows: For single-dimensional arrays elements are traversed in increasing index order, starting with index 0 and ending with index Length-1. For multi-dimensional arrays, elements are traversed such that the indices of the rightmost dimension are increased first, then the next left dimension, and so on to the left.

[Example: The following example prints out each value in a two-dimensional array, in element order:

```
using System;
```

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        int[,] values = {
            {1, 2, 3, 4},
            {5, 6, 7, 8}
        };

        foreach (int elementValue in values)
            Console. Write("{0} ", elementValue);
        Console. WriteLine();
    }
}
The output produced is as follows:
    1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

end example]
```

## 15.9 Jump statements

Jump statements unconditionally transfer control.

```
jump-statement:
break-statement
continue-statement
goto-statement
return-statement
throw-statement
```

The location to which a jump statement transfers control is called the *target* of the jump statement.

When a jump statement occurs within a block, and the target of that jump statement is outside that block, the jump statement is said to *exit* the block. While a jump statement can transfer control out of a block, it can never transfer control into a block.

Execution of jump statements is complicated by the presence of intervening try statements. In the absence of such try statements, a jump statement unconditionally transfers control from the jump statement to its target. In the presence of such intervening try statements, execution is more complex. If the jump statement exits one or more try blocks with associated finally blocks, control is initially transferred to the finally block of the innermost try statement. When and if control reaches the end point of a finally block, control is transferred to the finally block of the next enclosing try statement. This process is repeated until the finally blocks of all intervening try statements have been executed.

[Example: In the following code using System;

the finally blocks associated with two try statements are executed before control is transferred to the target of the jump statement.

The output produced is as follows:

```
Before break
Innermost finally block
Outermost finally block
After break
```

*end example*]

#### 15.9.1 The break statement

The break statement exits the nearest enclosing switch, while, do, for, or foreach statement.

```
break-statement:
    break ;
```

The target of a break statement is the end point of the nearest enclosing switch, while, do, for, or foreach statement. If a break statement is not enclosed by a switch, while, do, for, or foreach statement, a compile-time error occurs.

When multiple switch, while, do, for, or foreach statements are nested within each other, a break statement applies only to the innermost statement. To transfer control across multiple nesting levels, a goto statement (§15.9.3) shall be used.

A break statement cannot exit a finally block (§15.10). When a break statement occurs within a finally block, the target of the break statement shall be within the same finally block; otherwise a compile-time error occurs.

A break statement is executed as follows:

- If the break statement exits one or more try blocks with associated finally blocks, control is initially transferred to the finally block of the innermost try statement. When and if control reaches the end point of a finally block, control is transferred to the finally block of the next enclosing try statement. This process is repeated until the finally blocks of all intervening try statements have been executed.
- Control is transferred to the target of the **break** statement.

Because a **break** statement unconditionally transfers control elsewhere, the end point of a **break** statement is never reachable.

#### 15.9.2 The continue statement

The continue statement starts a new iteration of the nearest enclosing while, do, for, or foreach statement.

```
continue-statement:
    continue ;
```

The target of a continue statement is the end point of the embedded statement of the nearest enclosing while, do, for, or foreach statement. If a continue statement is not enclosed by a while, do, for, or foreach statement, a compile-time error occurs.

When multiple while, do, for, or foreach statements are nested within each other, a continue statement applies only to the innermost statement. To transfer control across multiple nesting levels, a goto statement (§15.9.3) shall be used.

A continue statement cannot exit a finally block (§15.10). When a continue statement occurs within a finally block, the target of the continue statement shall be within the same finally block; otherwise a compile-time error occurs.

A continue statement is executed as follows:

- If the continue statement exits one or more try blocks with associated finally blocks, control is initially transferred to the finally block of the innermost try statement. When and if control reaches the end point of a finally block, control is transferred to the finally block of the next enclosing try statement. This process is repeated until the finally blocks of all intervening try statements have been executed.
- Control is transferred to the target of the **continue** statement.

Because a **conti nue** statement unconditionally transfers control elsewhere, the end point of a **conti nue** statement is never reachable.

### 15.9.3 The goto statement

The goto statement transfers control to a statement that is marked by a label.

```
goto-statement:
  goto identifier ;
  goto case constant-expression ;
  goto default ;
```

The target of a **goto** *identifier* statement is the labeled statement with the given label. If a label with the given name does not exist in the current function member, or if the **goto** statement is not within the scope of the label, a compile-time error occurs. [*Note*: This rule permits the use of a **goto** statement to transfer control *out of* a nested scope, but not *into* a nested scope. In the example

a goto statement is used to transfer control out of a nested scope. end note]

The target of a goto case statement is the statement list in the immediately enclosing switch statement (§15.7.2) which contains a case label with the given constant value. If the goto case statement is not enclosed by a switch statement, if the *constant-expression* is not implicitly convertible (§13.1) to the governing type of the nearest enclosing switch statement, or if the nearest enclosing switch statement does not contain a case label with the given constant value, a compile-time error occurs.

The target of a goto default statement is the statement list in the immediately enclosing switch statement (§15.7.2), which contains a default label. If the goto default statement is not enclosed by a switch statement, or if the nearest enclosing switch statement does not contain a default label, a compile-time error occurs.

A goto statement cannot exit a finally block (§15.10). When a goto statement occurs within a finally block, the target of the goto statement shall be within the same finally block, or otherwise a compile-time error occurs.

A goto statement is executed as follows:

- If the goto statement exits one or more try blocks with associated finally blocks, control is initially transferred to the finally block of the innermost try statement. When and if control reaches the end point of a finally block, control is transferred to the finally block of the next enclosing try statement. This process is repeated until the finally blocks of all intervening try statements have been executed.
- Control is transferred to the target of the **goto** statement.

Because a goto statement unconditionally transfers control elsewhere, the end point of a goto statement is never reachable.

## 15.9.4 The return statement

The return statement returns control to the caller of the function member in which the return statement appears.

```
return-statement:
return expression<sub>opt</sub>;
```

A return statement with no expression can be used only in a function member that does not compute a value; that is, a method with the return type voi d, the set accessor of a property or indexer, the add and remove accessors of an event, an instance constructor, static constructor, or a finalizer.

A return statement with an expression can only be used in a function member that computes a value, that is, a method with a non-void return type, the get accessor of a property or indexer, or a user-defined operator. An implicit conversion (§13.1) shall exist from the type of the expression to the return type of the containing function member.

It is a compile-time error for a return statement to appear in a finally block (§15.10).

A return statement is executed as follows:

• If the return statement specifies an expression, the expression is evaluated and the resulting value is converted to the return type of the containing function member by an implicit conversion. The result of the conversion becomes the value returned to the caller.

- If the return statement is enclosed by one or more try blocks with associated finally blocks, control is initially transferred to the finally block of the innermost try statement. When and if control reaches the end point of a finally block, control is transferred to the finally block of the next enclosing try statement. This process is repeated until the finally blocks of all enclosing try statements have been executed.
- Control is returned to the caller of the containing function member.

Because a return statement unconditionally transfers control elsewhere, the end point of a return statement is never reachable.

#### 15.9.5 The throw statement

The throw statement throws an exception.

```
throw-statement:
throw expression<sub>opt</sub>;
```

A throw statement with an expression throws the value produced by evaluating the expression. The expression shall denote a value of the class type System. Exception or of a class type that derives from System. Exception. If evaluation of the expression produces null, a System. NullReferenceException is thrown instead.

The throw statement can be used with an expression whose type is given by a type parameter (§25.1.1) only if that type parameter has **System**. **Excepti on** (or a subclass thereof) as its effective base class (§25.7).

A throw statement with no expression can be used only in a catch block, in which case, that statement rethrows the exception that is currently being handled by that catch block.

Because a throw statement unconditionally transfers control elsewhere, the end point of a throw statement is never reachable.

When an exception is thrown, control is transferred to the first catch clause in an enclosing try statement that can handle the exception. The process that takes place from the point of the exception being thrown to the point of transferring control to a suitable exception handler is known as *exception propagation*. Propagation of an exception consists of repeatedly evaluating the following steps until a catch clause that matches the exception is found. In this description, the *throw point* is initially the location at which the exception is thrown.

- In the current function member, each try statement that encloses the throw point is examined. For each statement S, starting with the innermost try statement and ending with the outermost try statement, the following steps are evaluated:
  - o If the try block of S encloses the throw point and if S has one or more catch clauses, the catch clauses are examined in order of appearance to locate a suitable handler for the exception. The first catch clause that specifies the exception type or a base type of the exception type is considered a match. A general catch (§15.10) clause is considered a match for any exception type. If a matching catch clause is located, the exception propagation is completed by transferring control to the block of that catch clause.
  - Otherwise, if the try block or a catch block of S encloses the throw point and if S has a fi nally block, control is transferred to the finally block. If the finally block throws another exception, processing of the current exception is terminated. Otherwise, when control reaches the end point of the finally block, processing of the current exception is continued.
- If an exception handler was not located in the current function member invocation, the function member invocation is terminated. The steps above are then repeated for the caller of the function member with a throw point corresponding to the statement from which the function member was invoked.
- If the exception processing terminates all function member invocations in the current thread, indicating that the thread has no handler for the exception, then the thread is itself terminated. The impact of such termination is implementation-defined.

## 15.10 The try statement

The try statement provides a mechanism for catching exceptions that occur during execution of a block. Furthermore, the try statement provides the ability to specify a block of code that is always executed when control leaves the try statement.

```
try block catch-clauses
try block catch-clauses
try block catch-clauses
catch-clauses:
specific-catch-clauses
specific-catch-clauses
specific-catch-clauses:
specific-catch-clause
specific-catch-clause
specific-catch-clause
specific-catch-clause
specific-catch-clause
specific-catch-clause:
catch ( class-type identifier<sub>opt</sub> ) block
general-catch-clause:
catch block
finally-clause:
finally block
```

There are three possible forms of try statements:

- A try block followed by one or more catch blocks.
- A try block followed by a finally block.
- A try block followed by one or more catch blocks followed by a finally block.

When a catch clause specifies a *class-type*, the type shall be **System**. Exception or a type that derives from **System**. Exception.

When a catch clause specifies both a *class-type* and an *identifier*, an *exception variable* of the given name and type is declared. The exception variable corresponds to a local variable with a scope that extends over the catch block. During execution of the catch block, the exception variable represents the exception currently being handled. For purposes of definite assignment checking, the exception variable is considered definitely assigned in its entire scope.

Unless a catch clause includes an exception variable name, it is impossible to access the exception object in the catch block.

The type named in a catch clause can be a type parameter only if that type parameter (§25.1.1) has **System. Exception** (or a subclass thereof) as its effective base class (§25.7).

A catch clause that specifies neither an exception type nor an exception variable name is called a general catch clause. A try statement can only have one general catch clause, and, if one is present, it shall be the last catch clause.

[Note: Some environments, especially those supporting multiple languages, might support exceptions that are not representable as an object derived from System. Exception, although such an exception could never be generated by C# code. In such an environment, a general catch clause might be used to catch such an exception. Thus, a general catch clause is semantically different from one that specifies the type System. Exception, in that the former might also catch exceptions from other languages. end note]

In order to locate a handler for an exception, catch clauses are examined in lexical order. A compile-time error occurs if a catch clause specifies a type that is the same as, or is derived from, a type that was specified in an earlier catch clause for the same try. [Note: Without this restriction, it would be possible to write unreachable catch clauses. end note]

Within a catch block, a throw statement (§15.9.5) with no expression can be used to re-throw the exception that was caught by the catch block. Assignments to an exception variable do not alter the exception that is re-thrown.

[Example: In the following code

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void F() {
        try {
            G();
      }
      catch (Exception e) {
            Consol e. WriteLine("Exception in F: " + e. Message);
            e = new Exception("F");
            throw;
            // re-throw
      }
}
static void G() {
      throw new Exception("G");
}
static void Main() {
      try {
            F();
      }
      catch (Exception e) {
            Consol e. WriteLine("Exception in Main: " + e. Message);
      }
}
```

the method F catches an exception, writes some diagnostic information to the console, alters the exception variable, and re-throws the exception. The exception that is re-thrown is the original exception, so the output produced is:

```
Exception in F: G
Exception in Main: G
```

If the first catch block had thrown e instead of rethrowing the current exception, the output produced would be as follows:

```
Exception in F: G
Exception in Main: F
```

end example]

It is a compile-time error for a **break**, **continue**, or **goto** statement to transfer control out of a **finally** block. When a **break**, **continue**, or **goto** statement occurs in a **finally** block, the target of the statement shall be within the same **finally** block, or otherwise a compile-time error occurs.

It is a compile-time error for a return statement to occur in a finally block.

A try statement is executed as follows:

- Control is transferred to the try block.
- When and if control reaches the end point of the try block:
  - o If the try statement has a finally block, the finally block is executed.
  - o Control is transferred to the end point of the try statement.
- If an exception is propagated to the try statement during execution of the try block:
  - o The catch clauses, if any, are examined in order of appearance to locate a suitable handler for the exception. The first catch clause that specifies the exception type or a base type of the exception

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

type is considered a match. A general catch clause is considered a match for any exception type. If a matching catch clause is located:

- If the matching catch clause declares an exception variable, the exception object is assigned to the exception variable.
- Control is transferred to the matching catch block.
- When and if control reaches the end point of the catch block:
  - o If the try statement has a finally block, the finally block is executed.
  - o Control is transferred to the end point of the try statement.
- If an exception is propagated to the try statement during execution of the catch block:
  - o If the try statement has a finally block, the finally block is executed.
  - o The exception is propagated to the next enclosing try statement.
- o If the try statement has no catch clauses or if no catch clause matches the exception:
  - If the try statement has a finally block, the finally block is executed.
  - The exception is propagated to the next enclosing try statement.

The statements of a finally block are always executed when control leaves a try statement. This is true whether the control transfer occurs as a result of normal execution, as a result of executing a break, continue, goto, or return statement, or as a result of propagating an exception out of the try statement.

If an exception is thrown during execution of a finally block, the exception is propagated to the next enclosing try statement. If another exception was in the process of being propagated, that exception is lost. The process of propagating an exception is discussed further in the description of the throw statement (§15.9.5).

The try block of a try statement is reachable if the try statement is reachable.

A catch block of a try statement is reachable if the try statement is reachable.

The finally block of a try statement is reachable if the try statement is reachable.

The end point of a try statement is reachable if both of the following are true:

- The end point of the try block is reachable or the end point of at least one catch block is reachable.
- If a finally block is present, the end point of the finally block is reachable.

#### 15.11 The checked and unchecked statements

The checked and unchecked statements are used to control the *overflow-checking context* for integral-type arithmetic operations and conversions.

The checked statement causes all expressions in the *block* to be evaluated in a checked context, and the unchecked statement causes all expressions in the *block* to be evaluated in an unchecked context.

The checked and unchecked statements are precisely equivalent to the checked and unchecked operators (§14.5.12), except that they operate on blocks instead of expressions.

#### 15.12 The lock statement

The lock statement obtains the mutual-exclusion lock for a given object, executes a statement, and then releases the lock.

```
lock-statement:
lock (expression) embedded-statement
```

The compile time type of the expression of a lock statement shall be a *reference-type* or a type parameter (§25.1.1) known to be a reference type. It is a compile-time error for the compile time type of the expression to denote a *value-type*.

```
A lock statement of the form
      lock (x) ...
is precisely equivalent to:
      object obj = x;
      System. Threading. Monitor. Enter(obj):
      finally {
          System. Threading. Monitor. Exit(obj);
[Example:
      class Cache
          public void Add(object x) {
             lock (key) {
          public void Remove(object x) {
             lock (key) {
          }
          pri vate readonly object key = new object();
      }
```

## 15.13 The using statement

end example]

The usi ng statement obtains one or more resources, executes a statement, and then disposes of the resource.

```
using-statement:
    usi ng ( resource-acquisition ) embedded-statement
resource-acquisition:
    local-variable-declaration
    expression
```

A **resource** is a class or struct that implements the **System**. **IDi sposabl** e interface. The **System**. **IDi sposabl** e interface includes a single parameterless method named **Di spose**. Code that is using a resource can call **Di spose** to indicate that the resource is no longer needed. If **Di spose** is not called, then automatic disposal eventually occurs as a consequence of garbage collection (assuming the finalizer of the resource type calls **Di spose** or otherwise performs the equivalent actions).

Local variables declared in a *resource-acquisition* are read-only, and shall include an initializer. A compile-time error occurs if the embedded statement attempts to modify these local variables (via assignment or the ++ and - - operators) or pass them as ref or out parameters.

## C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

A usi ng statement is translated into three parts: acquisition, usage, and disposal. Usage of the resource is implicitly enclosed in a try statement that includes a finally clause. This finally clause disposes of the resource. If a null resource is acquired, then no call to Di spose is made, and no exception is thrown.

A usi ng statement of the form

```
using (expression) embedded-statement
```

is equivalent to a using statement of the form:

```
using (ResourceType resource = expression) embedded-statement
```

where **ResourceType** is the type of the *expression* and the **resource** variable is not visible to or accessible from any source code of the program.

A usi ng statement of the form

```
using (ResourceType resource = expression) embedded-statement
corresponds to the expansion:
    {
        ResourceType resource = expression;
        try {
            embedded-statement
        }
        finally {
            ... // Dispose of resource
        }
}
```

The resource variable is read-only in the embedded statement.

The precise form of the finally block is determined as follows:

- If there is not an implicit conversion from ResourceType to the System. I Di sposable interface, then a compile-time error is produced.
- Otherwise, if **ResourceType** is a non-nullable value type or a type parameter with the value type constraint (§25.7), the finally clause is expanded to the semantic equivalent of:

```
finally {
     ((System.IDi sposable) resource). Di spose();
}
```

except that casting resource to System. I Di sposabl e shall not cause boxing to occur.

• Otherwise, the finally clause is expanded to:

```
finally {
   if (resource != null) ((System IDi sposable) resource). Di spose();
}
```

When a *resource-acquisition* takes the form of a *local-variable-declaration*, it is possible to acquire multiple resources of a given type. A **usi ng** statement of the form

```
using (ResourceType r1 = e1, r2 = e2, ..., rN = eN) statement
```

is precisely equivalent to a sequence of nested usi ng statements:

```
using (ResourceType r1 = e1)
using (ResourceType r2 = e2)
...
using (ResourceType rN = eN)
statement
```

[Example: The example below creates a file named log. txt and writes two lines of text to the file. The example then opens that same file for reading and copies the contained lines of text to the console.

```
using System;
using System. IO;
```

Since the TextWri ter and TextReader classes implement the I Di sposable interface, the example can use using statements to ensure that the underlying file is properly closed following the write or read operations. *end example*]

## 15.14 The yield statement

The yi el d statement is used in an iterator block (§26.1) to yield a value to the enumerator object or to signal the end of the iteration.

```
yield-statement:
   yield return expression ;
   yield break ;
```

To ensure compatibility with existing programs, yi eld is not a keyword; yi eld has special meaning only when it is used immediately before a return or break keyword. In other contexts, yi eld can be used as an identifier.

The are several restrictions on where a yi el d statement can appear, as described in the following.

- It is a compile-time error for a yi el d statement (of either form) to appear outside a *method-body*, *operator-body*, or *accessor-body*.
- It is a compile-time error for a yi el d statement (of either form) to appear inside an anonymous method.
- It is a compile-time error for a yi eld statement (of either form) to appear in the finally clause of a try statement.
- It is a compile-time error for a yi eld return statement to appear anywhere in a try statement that contains *catch-clauses*.

[Example: The following example shows some valid and invalid uses of yi el d statements.

del egate I Enumerabl e < i nt > D();

```
try {
      yield return 3:
                            // Error, yield return in try...catch
      yield break;
   catch {
      yield return 4:
                            // Error, yield return in try...catch
      yield break;
                            // 0k
   D d = delegate {
      yield return 5;
                            // Error, yield in an anonymous method
   };
}
int MyMethod() {
   yield return 1;
                            // Error, wrong return type for an iterator
```

end example]

An implicit conversion (§13.1) shall exist from the type of the expression in the yi eld return statement to the yield type (§26.1.3) of the iterator block.

A yi el d return statement is executed as follows:

- The expression given in the statement is evaluated, implicitly converted to the yield type, and assigned to the Current property of the enumerator object.
- Execution of the iterator block is suspended. If the yi eld return statement is within one or more try blocks, the associated finally blocks are *not* executed at this time.
- The MoveNext method of the enumerator object returns true to its caller, indicating that the enumerator object successfully advanced to the next item.

The next call to the enumerator object's MoveNext method resumes execution of the iterator block from where it was last suspended, namely at the end point of the yi eld return statement that caused the suspension.

A yi el d break statement is executed as follows:

- If the yi eld break statement is enclosed by one or more try blocks with associated finally blocks, control is initially transferred to the finally block of the innermost try statement. When and if control reaches the end point of a finally block, control is transferred to the finally block of the next enclosing try statement. This process is repeated until the finally blocks of all enclosing try statements have been executed.
- Control is returned to the caller of the iterator block. This is either the MoveNext method or Di spose method of the enumerator object.

Because a yi el d break statement unconditionally transfers control elsewhere, the end point of a yi el d break statement is never reachable.

# 16. Namespaces

C# programs are organized using namespaces. Namespaces are used both as an "internal" organization system for a program, and as an "external" organization system—a way of presenting program elements that are exposed to other programs.

Using directives (§16.3) are provided to facilitate the use of namespaces.

## 16.1 Compilation units

A *compilation-unit* defines the overall structure of a source file. A compilation unit consists of zero or more *extern-alias-directives* followed by zero or more *using-directives* followed by zero or more *global-attributes* followed by zero or more *namespace-member-declarations*.

```
compilation-unit: extern-alias-directives_{opt} using-directives_{opt} global-attributes_{opt} namespace-member-declarations_{opt}
```

A C# program consists of one or more compilation units, each contained in a separate source file. When a C# program is compiled, all of the compilation units are processed together. Thus, compilation units can depend on each other, possibly in a circular fashion.

The extern-alias-directives of a compilation unit affect the using-directives, global-attributes and namespace-member-declarations of that compilation unit, but have no effect on other compilation units.

The *using-directives* of a compilation unit affect the *global-attributes* and *namespace-member-declarations* of that compilation unit, but have no effect on other compilation units.

The *global-attributes* (§24) of a compilation unit permit the specification of attributes for the target assembly. Assemblies act as physical containers for types.

The *namespace-member-declarations* of each compilation unit of a program contribute members to a single declaration space called the global namespace. [*Example*:

```
File A. cs:
class A {}
File B. cs:
class B {}
```

The two compilation units contribute to the single global namespace, in this case declaring two classes with the fully qualified names A and B. Because the two compilation units contribute to the same declaration space, it would have been an error if each contained a declaration of a member with the same name. *end example*]

## 16.2 Namespace declarations

A *namespace-declaration* consists of the keyword **namespace**, followed by a namespace name and body, optionally followed by a semicolon.

```
namespace-declaration:
    namespace qualified-identifier namespace-body; opt
qualified-identifier:
    identifier
    qualified-identifier . identifier
```

```
namespace-body: { extern-alias-directives_{opt} using-directives_{opt} namespace-member-declarations_{opt} }
```

A namespace-declaration can occur as a top-level declaration in a compilation-unit or as a member declaration within another namespace-declaration. When a namespace-declaration occurs as a top-level declaration in a compilation-unit, the namespace becomes a member of the global namespace. When a namespace-declaration occurs within another namespace-declaration, the inner namespace becomes a member of the outer namespace. In either case, the name of a namespace shall be unique within the containing namespace.

Namespaces are implicitly **public** and the declaration of a namespace cannot include any access modifiers.

Within a *namespace-body*, the optional *using-directives* import the names of other namespaces and types, allowing them to be referenced directly instead of through qualified names. The optional *namespace-member-declarations* contribute members to the declaration space of the namespace. All *extern-alias-directives* shall appear before any *using-directives* and all *extern-alias-directives* and *using-directives* shall appear before any member declarations.

The *qualified-identifier* of a *namespace-declaration* can be a single identifier or a sequence of identifiers separated by "." tokens. The latter form permits a program to define a nested namespace without lexically nesting several namespace declarations. [*Example*:

```
namespace N1. N2
{
    class A {}
    class B {}
}
is semantically equivalent to
    namespace N1
{
        namespace N2
        {
        class A {}
        class B {}
    }
}
```

end example]

Namespaces are open-ended, and two namespace declarations with the same fully qualified name (§10.8.2) contribute to the same declaration space (§10.3). [Example: In the following code

```
namespace N1. N2
{
    class A {}
}
namespace N1. N2
{
    class B {}
}
```

the two namespace declarations above contribute to the same declaration space, in this case declaring two classes with the fully qualified names N1. N2. A and N1. N2. B. Because the two declarations contribute to the same declaration space, it would have been an error if each contained a declaration of a member with the same name. *end example*]

Fully qualified names beginning with System. are reserved for use by the Standard Library (§Annex D).

#### 16.3 Extern alias directives

An *extern-alias-directive* introduces an identifier that serves as an alias for an externally defined namespace. The specification of the aliased namespace is external to the source code of the program.

```
extern-alias-directives:
    extern-alias-directive
    extern-alias-directives extern-alias-directive:
    extern alias identifier;
```

The scope of an *extern-alias-directive* extends over the *using-directives*, *global-attributes* and *namespace-member-declarations* of its immediately containing *compilation-unit* or *namespace-body*. An *extern-alias-directive* contributes its name to the *alias declaration space* of the containing compilation unit or namespace body (§10.3) and not to the declaration space of the containing namespace.

Within a compilation unit or namespace body that contains an *extern-alias-directive*, the identifier introduced by the *extern-alias-directive* can be used to reference the aliased namespace. It is a compile-time error for the *identifier* to be the word gl obal.

Within C# source code, a type is declared a member of a single namespace. However, a namespace hierarchy referenced by an extern alias may contain types that are also members of other namespaces. For example, if A and B are extern aliases, the names A: : X, B: : C. Y and gl obal: : D. Z may, depending on the external specification supported by the particular compiler, all refer to the same type.

The alias introduced by an *extern-alias-directive* is very similar to the alias introduced by a *using-alias-directive*. See §16.4.1 for more detailed discussion of *extern-alias-directives* and *using-alias-directives*.

Like get and set in property accessors, al i as is not a keyword (§9.4.3). The word al i as only has special meaning when it immediately follows the extern keyword in an *extern-alias-directive*. [Example: In fact an extern alias could use the identifier al i as as its name:

```
extern alias alias;
```

end example]

## 16.4 Using directives

*Using directives* facilitate the use of namespaces and types defined in other namespaces. *using-directives* impact the name resolution process of *namespace-or-type-names* (§10.8) and *simple-names* (§14.5.2), but unlike declarations, *using-directives* do not contribute new members to the underlying declaration spaces of the compilation units or namespaces within which they are used.

```
using-directives:
    using-directive
    using-directives using-directive
using-directive:
    using-alias-directive
using-namespace-directive
```

A using-alias-directive (§16.4.1) introduces an alias for a namespace or type.

A using-namespace-directive (§16.4.2) imports the type members of a namespace.

The scope of a *using-directive* extends over the *namespace-member-declarations* of its immediately containing compilation unit or namespace body. The scope of a *using-directive* specifically does not include its peer *using-directives*. Thus, peer *using-directives* do not affect each other, and the order in which they are written is insignificant. In contrast, the scope of an *extern-alias-directive* includes the *using-directives* defined in the same compilation unit or namespace body.

#### 16.4.1 Using alias directives

A *using-alias-directive* introduces an identifier that serves as an alias for a namespace or type within the immediately enclosing compilation unit or namespace body.

```
using-alias-directive:
    usi ng identifier = namespace-or-type-name ;
```

Within global attributes and member declarations in a compilation unit or namespace body that contains a *using-alias-directive*, the identifier introduced by the *using-alias-directive* can be used to reference the given namespace or type. [*Example*:

```
namespace N1. N2
{
    class A {}
}
namespace N3
{
    using A = N1. N2. A;
    class B: A {}
}
```

Above, within member declarations in the N3 namespace, A is an alias for N1. N2. A, and thus class N3. B derives from class N1. N2. A. The same effect can be obtained by creating an alias R for N1. N2 and then referencing R. A:

```
namespace N3
{
    using R = N1.N2;
    class B: R.A {}
}
```

end example]

Within using directives, global attributes and member declarations in a compilation unit or namespace body that contains an *extern-alias-directive*, the identifier introduced by the *extern-alias-directive* can be used to reference the associated namespace. [*Example*: For example:

```
namespace N1
{
    extern alias N2;
    class B: N2::A {}
}
```

Above, within member declarations in the N1 namespace, N2 is an alias for some namespace whose definition is external to the source code of the program. Class N1. B derives from class N2. A. The same effect can be obtained by creating an alias A for N2. A and then referencing A:

```
namespace N1
{
    extern alias N2;
    using A = N2::A;
    class B: A {}
}
```

end example]

An *extern-alias-directive* or *using-alias-directive* makes an alias available within a particular compilation unit or namespace body, but it does not contribute any new members to the underlying declaration space. In other words, an alias directive is not transitive, but, rather, affects only the compilation unit or namespace body in which it occurs. [*Example*: In the following code

```
namespace N3
{
    extern alias R1;
    using R2 = N1.N2;
}
```

the scopes of the alias directives that introduce R1 and R2 only extend to member declarations in the namespace body in which they are contained, so R1 and R2 are unknown in the second namespace declaration. However, placing the alias directives in the containing compilation unit causes the alias to become available within both namespace declarations:

```
extern alias R1;
using R2 = N1.N2;
namespace N3
{
   class B: R1::A, R2.I {}
}
namespace N3
{
   class C: R1::A, R2.I {}
}
```

end example]

Each extern-alias-directive or using-alias-directive in a compilation-unit or namespace-body contributes a name to the alias declaration space (§10.3) of the immediately enclosing compilation-unit or namespace-body. The identifier of the alias directive shall be unique within the corresponding alias declaration space. The alias identifier need not be unique within the global declaration space or the declaration space of the corresponding namespace. [Example:

```
extern alias A;
extern alias B;
using A = N1.N2;  // Error: alias A already exists
class B {}  // Ok
```

The using alias named A causes an error since there is already an alias named A in the same compilation unit. The class named B does not conflict with the extern alias named B since these names are added to distinct declaration spaces. The former is added to the global declaration space and the latter is added to the alias declaration space for this compilation unit.

When an alias name matches the name of a member of a namespace, usage of either must be appropriately qualified:

```
namespace N1. N2
{
    class B {}
}

namespace N3
{
    class A {}
    class B : A {}
}

namespace N3
{
    using A = N1. N2;
    using B = N1. N2. B;

    class W : B {}
    class X : A. B {}
    class Y : A : B {}
    class X : A. B {}
```

In the second namespace body for N3, unqualified use of B results in an error, since N3 contains a member named B and the namespace body that also declares an alias with name B; likewise for A. The class N3. B can be referenced as N3. B or gl obal:: N3. B. The alias A can be used in a *qualified-alias-member* (§16.7), such

as A: : B. The alias B is essentially useless. It cannot be used in a *qualified-alias-member* since only namespace aliases can be used in a *qualified-alias-member* and B aliases a type. *end example*]

Just like regular members, names introduced by alias directives are hidden by similarly named members in nested scopes. [Example: In the following code

```
using R = N1.N2;
namespace N3
{
   class R {}
   class B: R.A {}
   // Error, R has no member A
}
```

the reference to R. A in the declaration of B causes a compile-time error because R refers to N3. R, not N1. N2. end example]

The order in which extern-alias-directives are written has no significance. Likewise, the order in which using-alias-directives are written has no significance, but all using-alias-directives must come after all extern-alias-directives in the same compilation unit or namespace body. Resolution of the namespace-or-type-name referenced by a using-alias-directive is not affected by the using-alias-directive itself or by other using-directives in the immediately containing compilation unit or namespace body, but may be affected by extern-alias-directives in the immediately containing compilation unit or namespace body. In other words, the namespace-or-type-name of a using-alias-directive is resolved as if the immediately containing compilation unit or namespace body had no using-directives but has the correct set of extern-alias-directives. [Example: In the following code

the last *using-alias-directive* results in a compile-time error because it is not affected by the previous *using-alias-directive*. The first *using-alias-directive* does not result in an error since the scope of the extern alias E includes the *using-alias-directive*. *end example*]

A *using-alias-directive* can create an alias for any namespace or type, including the namespace within which it appears and any namespace or type nested within that namespace.

Accessing a namespace or type through an alias yields exactly the same result as accessing that namespace or type through its declared name. [Example: Given

the names N1. N2. A, R1. N2. A, and R2. A are equivalent and all refer to the class whose fully qualified name is N1. N2. A. end example

Although each part of a partial type (§17.1.4) is declared within the same namespace, the parts are typically written within different namespace declarations. Thus, different extern al i as directives and usi ng directives can be present for each part. When interpreting simple names (§14.5.2) within one part, only the extern al i as directives and usi ng directives of the namespace bodies and compilation unit enclosing that part are considered. This may result in the same identifier having different meanings in different parts. [Example:

## 16.4.2 Using namespace directives

A *using-namespace-directive* imports the types contained in a namespace into the immediately enclosing compilation unit or namespace body, enabling the identifier of each type to be used without qualification.

```
using-namespace-directive:
using namespace-name;
```

Within member declarations in a compilation unit or namespace body that contains a *using-namespace-directive*, the types contained in the given namespace can be referenced directly. [*Example*:

```
namespace N1. N2
{
    class A {}
}
namespace N3
{
    using N1. N2;
    class B: A {}
}
```

Above, within member declarations in the N3 namespace, the type members of N1. N2 are directly available, and thus class N3. B derives from class N1. N2. A. end example]

A using-namespace-directive imports the types contained in the given namespace, but specifically does not import nested namespaces. [Example: In the following code

```
namespace N1. N2
{
    class A {}
}
namespace N3
{
    using N1;
```

```
class B: N2.A \{\} // Error, N2 unknown \}
```

the *using-namespace-directive* imports the types contained in N1, but not the namespaces nested in N1. Thus, the reference to N2. A in the declaration of B results in a compile-time error because no members named N2 are in scope. *end example*]

Unlike a *using-alias-directive*, a *using-namespace-directive* can import types whose identifiers are already defined within the enclosing compilation unit or namespace body. In effect, names imported by a *using-namespace-directive* are hidden by similarly named members in the enclosing compilation unit or namespace body. [*Example*:

```
namespace N1. N2
{
    class A {}
    class B {}
}
namespace N3
{
    using N1. N2;
    class A {}
}
```

Here, within member declarations in the N3 namespace, A refers to N3. A rather than N1. N2. A. end example]

When more than one namespace imported by *using-namespace-directives* in the same compilation unit or namespace body contain types by the same name, references to that name are considered ambiguous. [*Example*: In the following code

```
namespace N1
{
    class A {}
}
namespace N2
{
    class A {}
}
namespace N3
{
    using N1;
    using N2;
    class B: A {}
} // Error, A is ambiguous
}
```

both N1 and N2 contain a member A, and because N3 imports both, referencing A in N3 is a compile-time error. In this situation, the conflict can be resolved through qualification of references to A, or by introducing a *using-alias-directive* that picks a particular A. For example:

```
namespace N3
{
    using N1;
    using N2;
    using A = N1. A;
    class B: A {}
}
// A means N1. A
```

*end example*]

Like a *using-alias-directive*, a *using-namespace-directive* does not contribute any new members to the underlying declaration space of the namespace, but, rather, affects only the compilation unit or namespace body in which it appears.

The *namespace-name* referenced by a *using-namespace-directive* is resolved in the same way as the *namespace-or-type-name* referenced by a *using-alias-directive*. Thus, *using-namespace-directives* in the same compilation unit or namespace body do not affect each other and can be written in any order.

## 16.5 Namespace members

A namespace-member-declaration is either a namespace-declaration (§16.2) or a type-declaration (§16.6).

```
namespace-member-declarations:
    namespace-member-declaration
    namespace-member-declarations namespace-member-declaration
namespace-member-declaration:
    namespace-declaration
    type-declaration
```

A compilation unit or a namespace body can contain *namespace-member-declarations*, and such declarations contribute new members to the underlying declaration space of the containing compilation unit or namespace body.

## 16.6 Type declarations

A type-declaration is a class-declaration (§17.1), a struct-declaration (§18.1), an interface-declaration (§20.1), an enum-declaration (§21.1), or a delegate-declaration (§22.1).

```
type-declaration:
    class-declaration
    struct-declaration
    interface-declaration
    enum-declaration
    delegate-declaration
```

A *type-declaration* can occur as a top-level declaration in a compilation unit or as a member declaration within a namespace, class, or struct.

When a type declaration for a type T occurs as a top-level declaration in a compilation unit, the fully qualified name (§10.8.2) of the type declaration is the same as the unqualified name of the declaration (§10.8.1). When a type declaration for a type T occurs within a namespace, class, or struct, the fully qualified name (§10.8.2) of the type declaration is S. N, where S is the fully qualified name of the containing namespace or type declaration, and N is the unqualified name of the declaration (§10.8.1).

A type declared within a class or struct is called a nested type (§17.2.6).

The permitted access modifiers and the default access for a type declaration depend on the context in which the declaration takes place (§10.5.1):

- Types declared in compilation units or namespace declarations can have **public** or **internal** access. The default is **internal** access.
- Types declared in classes can have **public**, **protectedinternal**, **protected**, **internal**, or **private** access. The default is **private** access.
- Types declared in structs can have **public**, **internal**, or **private** access. The default is **private** access.

#### 16.7 Qualified alias member

A *qualified-alias-member* provides explicit access to the global namespace and to extern or using aliases that are potentially hidden by other entities.

```
qualified-alias-member:
identifier: identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
```

## C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

A qualified-alias-member can be used as a namespace-or-type-name (§10.8) or as the left operand in a member-access (§14.5.4).

A *qualified-alias-member* consists of two identifiers, referred to as the left-hand and right-hand identifiers, seperated by the : : token and optionally followed by a *type-argument-list*. When the left-hand identifier is **gl obal** then the global namespace is searched for the right-hand identifier. For any other left-hand identifier, that identifier is looked up as an extern or using alias (§16.3 and §16.4.1). A compile-time error occurs if there is no such alias or the alias references a type. If the alias references a namespace then that namespace is searched for the right-hand identifier.

A qualified-alias-member has one of two forms:

- A:  $B < G_1$ , ...,  $G_N >$ , where A and B represent identifiers, and  $< G_1$ , ...,  $G_N >$  is a type argument list. (N is always at least one.)
- A: B, where A and B represent identifiers. (In this case, N is considered to be zero.)

Using this notation, the meaning of a *qualified-alias-member* is determined as follows:

- If A is the identifier global, then the global namespace is searched for B:
  - o If the global namespace contains a namespace named B and N is zero, then the *qualified-alias-member* refers to that namespace.
  - Otherwise, if the global namespace contains a non-generic type named B and N is zero, then the *qualified-alias-member* refers to that type.
  - Otherwise, if the global namespace contains a type named **B** that has **N** type parameters, then the *qualified-alias-member* refers to that type constructed with the given type arguments.
  - Otherwise, the *qualified-alias-member* is undefined and a compile-time error occurs.
- Otherwise, starting with the namespace declaration (§16.2) immediately containing the *qualified-alias-member* (if any), continuing with each enclosing namespace declaration (if any), and ending with the compilation unit containing the *qualified-alias-member*, the following steps are evaluated until an entity is located:
  - o If the namespace declaration or compilation unit contains a *using-alias-directive* that associates A with a type, then the *qualified-alias-member* is undefined and a compile-time error occurs.
  - Otherwise, if the namespace declaration or compilation unit contains an *extern-alias-directive* or *using-alias-directive* that associates A with a namespace, then:
    - If the namespace associated with A contains a namespace named B and N is zero, then the *qualified-alias-member* refers to that namespace.
    - Otherwise, if the namespace associated with A contains a non-generic type named B and N is zero, then the *qualified-alias-member* refers to that type.
    - Otherwise, if the namespace associated with A contains a type named B that has N type parameters, then the *qualified-alias-member* refers to that type constructed with the given type arguments.
    - Otherwise, the *qualified-alias-member* is undefined and a compile-time error occurs.
- Otherwise, the *qualified-alias-member* is undefined and a compile-time error occurs.

[Example: In the code:

```
using S = System Net.Sockets;
class A {
   public static int x;
}
```

```
class C {
   public void F(int A, object S) {
      // Use global:: A. x instead of A. x
      global:: A. x += A;

      // Use S:: Socket instead of S. Socket
      S:: Socket s = S as S:: Socket;
   }
}
```

the class A is referenced with global:: A and the type System. Net. Sockets. Socket is referenced with S:: Socket. Using A. x and S. Socket instead would have caused compile-time errors because A and S would have resolved to the parameters. end example]

[Note: The identifier gl obal has special meaning only when used as the left-hand identifier of a qualified-alias-name. It is not a keyword and it is not itself an alias. In the code:

```
class A { }
class C {
    global.A x; // Error: global is not defined
    global::A y; // Valid: References A in the global namespace
}
```

using global. A causes a compile-time error since there is no entity named global in scope. If some entity named global were in scope, then global in global. A would have resolved to that entity.

Using global as the left-hand identifier of a *qualified-alias-member* always causes a lookup in the global namespace, even if there is a using alias named global. [Example: In the code:

```
using global = MyGlobalTypes;
class A { }
class C {
    global.A x; // Valid: References MyGlobalTypes.A
    global::A y; // Valid: References A in the global namespace }
```

global. A resolves to MyGlobal Types. A and global: : A resolves to class A in the global namespace. end note

## 17. Classes

A class is a data structure that can contain data members (constants and fields), function members (methods, properties, events, indexers, operators, instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors), and nested types. Class types support inheritance, a mechanism whereby a *derived class* can extend and specialize a *base class*.

## 17.1 Class declarations

A class-declaration is a type-declaration (§16.6) that declares a new class.

```
class-declaration: attributes<sub>opt</sub> class-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> partial<sub>opt</sub> class identifier type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub> class-base<sub>opt</sub> type-parameter-constraints-clauses<sub>opt</sub> class-body; _{opt}
```

A *class-declaration* consists of an optional set of *attributes* (§24), followed by an optional set of *class-modifiers* (§17.1.1), followed by an optional partial modifier (§17.1.4), followed by the keyword class and an *identifier* that names the class, followed by an optional *type-parameter-list* (§25.1.1), followed by an optional *class-base* specification (§17.1.1.3), followed by an optional *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* (§25.7), followed by a *class-body* (§17.1.3), optionally followed by a semicolon.

A class declaration shall not supply a *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* unless it also supplies a *type-parameter-list*.

A class declaration that supplies a *type-parameter-list* is a generic class declaration (§25.1).

### 17.1.1 Class modifiers

A class-declaration can optionally include a sequence of class modifiers:

```
class-modifiers:
    class-modifier
    class-modifiers class-modifier

class-modifier:
    new
    public
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
    abstract
    seal ed
    static
```

It is a compile-time error for the same modifier to appear multiple times in a class declaration.

The new modifier is permitted on nested classes. It specifies that the class hides an inherited member by the same name, as described in §17.2.2. It is a compile-time error for the new modifier to appear on a class declaration that is not a nested class declaration.

The **public**, **protected**, **internal**, and **private** modifiers control the accessibility of the class. Depending on the context in which the class declaration occurs, some of these modifiers might not be permitted (§10.5.1).

When a partial type declaration (§17.1.4) includes an accessibility specification (via the **public**, **protected**, **internal**, and **private** modifiers), that specification shall agree with all other parts that

include an accessibility specification. If no part of a partial type includes an accessibility specification, the type is given the appropriate default accessibility (§10.5.1).

The abstract, seal ed, and static modifiers are discussed in the following subclauses.

#### 17.1.1.1 Abstract classes

The abstract modifier is used to indicate that a class is incomplete and that it is intended to be used only as a base class. An *abstract class* differs from a *non-abstract class* in the following ways:

- An abstract class cannot be instantiated directly, and it is a compile-time error to use the **new** operator on an abstract class. While it is possible to have variables and values whose compile-time types are abstract, such variables and values will necessarily either be **nul 1** or contain references to instances of non-abstract classes derived from the abstract types.
- An abstract class is permitted (but not required) to contain abstract members.
- An abstract class cannot be sealed.

When a non-abstract class is derived from an abstract class, the non-abstract class shall include actual implementations of all inherited abstract members, thereby overriding those abstract members. [Example: In the following code

```
abstract class A
{
    public abstract void F();
}
abstract class B: A
{
    public void G() {}
}
class C: B
{
    public override void F() {
        // actual implementation of F
    }
}
```

the abstract class A introduces an abstract method F. Class B introduces an additional method G, but since it doesn't provide an implementation of F, B shall also be declared abstract. Class C overrides F and provides an actual implementation. Since there are no abstract members in C, C is permitted (but not required) to be non-abstract. *end example*]

If one or more parts of a partial type declaration (§17.1.4) of a class include the abstract modifier, the class is abstract. Otherwise, the class is non-abstract.

## 17.1.1.2 Sealed classes

The seal ed modifier is used to prevent derivation from a class. A compile-time error occurs if a sealed class is specified as the base class of another class.

A sealed class cannot also be an abstract class.

[*Note*: The seal ed modifier is primarily used to prevent unintended derivation, but it also enables certain run-time optimizations. In particular, because a sealed class is known never to have any derived classes, it is possible to transform virtual function member invocations on sealed class instances into non-virtual invocations. *end note*]

If one or more parts of a partial type declaration (§17.1.4) of a class include the **seal ed** modifier, the class is sealed. Otherwise, the class is unsealed.

#### 17.1.1.3 Static classes

When a class declaration includes a static modifier, the class being declared is said to be a static class.

A static class declaration is subject to the following restrictions:

- A static class shall not include a **seal ed** or **abstract** modifier. (However, since a static class cannot be instantiated or derived from, it behaves as if it were both sealed and abstract.)
- A static class shall not include a *class-base* specification (§17.1.2) and cannot explicitly specify a base class or a list of implemented interfaces. A static class implicitly inherits from type **obj ect**.
- A static class shall not contain any operators.
- A static class shall not have members with protected or protected internal declared accessibility.
- A static class shall only contain static members (§17.2.5). [*Note*: constants and nested types are classified as static members. *end note*]

[Example:

```
using System.Diagnostics;
public static class Precondition
{
   public sealed class Exception: System.ApplicationException
   {
      public Exception(string message) : base(message) {}
   }
   [Conditional("CHECK_PRECONDITIONS")]
   public static void Required(bool condition, string description) {
      if (!condition) {
        throw new Exception(description);
      }
   }
}
```

end example]

A static class has no instance constructors. It is not possible to declare an instance constructor in a static class, and no default instance constructor (§17.10.4) is provided for a static class.

The members of a static class are not implicitly made static; except for constants and nested types, member declarations that are intended to be static shall explicitly include a static modifier. When a class is nested within a static outer class, the nested class is not a static class unless it explicitly includes a static modifier.

A namespace-or-type-name (§10.8) is permitted to reference a static class if

- The namespace-or-type-name is the T in a namespace-or-type-name of the form T. I, or
- The namespace-or-type-name is the T in a typeof-expression (§14.5.11) of the form typeof (T).

A primary-expression (§14.5) is permitted to reference a static class if

• The primary-expression is the E in a member-access (§14.5.4) of the form E. I.

In any other context, it is a compile-time error to reference a static class. [*Note*: For example, it is an error for a static class to be used as a base class, a constituent type (§17.2.4) of a member, a generic type argument, or a type parameter constraint. Likewise, a static class cannot be used in an array type, a pointer type, a new expression, a cast expression, an is expression, an as expression, a si zeof expression, or a default value expression. *end note*]

If one or more parts of a partial type declaration (§17.1.4) of a class include the **static** modifier, the class is static. Otherwise, the class is not static.

## 17.1.2 Class base specification

A class declaration can include a *class-base* specification, which defines the direct base class of the class and the interfaces (§20) implemented by the class.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
class-base:
: class-type
: interface-type-list
: class-type , interface-type-list
interface-type-list:
interface-type
interface-type-list , interface-type
```

#### 17.1.2.1 Base classes

When a *class-type* is included in the *class-base*, it specifies the direct base class of the class being declared. If a non-partial class declaration has no *class-base*, or if the *class-base* lists only interface types, the direct base class is **obj** ect. When a partial class declaration includes a base class specification, that base class specification shall reference the same type as all other parts of that partial type that include a base class specification. If no part of a partial class includes a base class specification, the base class is **obj** ect. A class inherits members from its direct base class, as described in §17.2.1.

[Example: In the following code

```
class A {}
class B: A {}
```

class A is said to be the direct base class of B, and B is said to be derived from A. Since A does not explicitly specify a direct base class, its direct base class is implicitly object. *end example*]

The base class specified in a class declaration can be a constructed class type (§25.5). A base class cannot be a type parameter on its own, though it can involve the type parameters that are in scope. [Example:

```
class Extend<V>: V {} // Error, type parameter used as base class class C<V>: Base<V[]> {} // Ok
```

end example]

The direct base class (and any type arguments) of a class type shall be at least as accessible as the class type itself (§10.5.4). For example, it is a compile-time error for a **publ** i c class to derive from a **pri** vate or internal class.

The direct base class of a class type shall not be any of the following types: System. Array, System. Del egate, System. Enum, or System. ValueType.

The base classes of a class are the direct base class and its base classes (after substituting type arguments for type parameters in constructed generic types). In other words, the set of base classes is the transitive closure of the direct base class relationship. [*Note*: Referring to the example above, the base classes of **B** are **A** and object. *end note*]

Except for class **obj ect**, every class has exactly one direct base class. The **obj ect** class has no direct base class and is the ultimate base class of all other classes.

When a class **B** derives from a class **A**, it is a compile-time error for **A** to depend on **B**. A class *directly depends on* its direct base class (if any) and *directly depends on* the class within which it is immediately nested (if any). Given this definition, the complete set of classes upon which a class depends is the transitive closure of the *directly depends on* relationship.

[Example: The example

```
class A: B {}
class B: C {}
class C: A {}
```

is in error because the classes circularly depend on themselves. Likewise, the example

```
class A: B.C {}
```

```
class B: A
{
    public class C {}
}
```

results in a compile-time error because A depends on B. C (its direct base class), which depends on B (its immediately enclosing class), which circularly depends on A. end example]

A class does not depend on the classes that are nested within it. [Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
     class B: A {}
}
```

B depends on A (because A is both its direct base class and its immediately enclosing class), but A does not depend on B (since B is neither a base class nor an enclosing class of A). Thus, the example is valid. *end example*]

It is not possible to derive from a seal ed class. [Example: In the following code

```
sealed class A {}
class B: A {}
    // Error, cannot derive from a sealed class
```

class B results in a compile-time error because it attempts to derive from the seal ed class A. end example]

## 17.1.2.2 Interface implementations

A *class-base* specification can include a list of interface types, in which case the class is said to implement the given interface types.

The set of interfaces for a type declared in multiple parts (§17.1.4) is the union of the interfaces specified on each part. A particular interface can only be named once on each part, but multiple parts can name the same base interface(s). There shall only be one implementation of each member of any given interface. [Example: In the following:

```
partial class C: IA, IB {...}
partial class C: IC {...}
partial class C: IA, IB {...}
```

the set of base interfaces for class C is IA, IB, and IC. end example]

Typically, each part provides an implementation of the interface(s) declared on that part; however, this is not a requirement. A part can provide the implementation for an interface declared on a different part. [Example:

```
partial class X
{
    int IComparable.CompareTo(object o) {...}
}
partial class X: IComparable
{
    ...
}
```

end example]

The base interfaces specified in a class declaration can be constructed interface types (§25.5). A base interface cannot be a type parameter on its own, though it can involve the type parameters that are in scope. [*Example*: The following code illustrates how a class can implement and extend constructed types:

```
class C<U, V> {}
interface I1<V> {}
class D: C<string, int>, I1<string> {}
class E<T>: C<int, T>, I1<T> {}
end example]
```

Interface implementations are discussed further in §20.4.

## 17.1.3 Class body

The *class-body* of a class defines the members of that class.

```
class-body:
    { class-member-declarations<sub>opt</sub> }
```

#### 17.1.4 Partial declarations

The modifier partial is used when defining a class, struct, or interface type in multiple parts. Like get and set in property accessors, partial is not a keyword. partial shall appear immediately before one of the keywords class, struct, or interface.

Each part of a *partial type* declaration shall include a *partial* modifier and shall be declared in the same namespace or containing type as the other parts. The *partial* modifier indicates that additional parts of the type declaration might exist elsewhere, but the existence of such additional parts is not a requirement; it is valid for the only declaration of a type to include the *partial* modifier.

All parts of a partial type shall be compiled together such that the parts can be merged at compile-time. Partial types specifically do not allow already compiled types to be extended.

Nested types can be declared in multiple parts by using the partial modifier. Typically, the containing type is declared using partial as well, and each part of the nested type is declared in a different part of the containing type.

[*Example*: The following partial class is implemented in two parts, which reside in different source files. The first part is machine generated by a database-mapping tool while the second part is manually authored:

```
public partial class Customer
{
    private int id;
    private string name;
    private string address;
    private List<0rder> orders;
    public Customer() {
        ...
    }
}
public partial class Customer
{
    public void SubmitOrder(Order orderSubmitted) {
        orders. Add(orderSubmitted);
    }
    public bool HasOutstandingOrders() {
        return orders. Count > 0;
    }
}
```

When the two parts above are compiled together, the resulting code behaves as if the class had been written as a single unit, as follows:

```
public class Customer
{
    private int id;
    private string name;
    private string address;
    private List<Order> orders;
    public Customer() {
        ...
}
```

```
public void SubmitOrder(Order orderSubmitted) {
          orders. Add(orderSubmitted);
}

public bool HasOutstandingOrders() {
         return orders. Count > 0;
}

end example]
```

The handling of attributes specified on the type or type parameters of different parts of a partial declaration is discussed in §24.2

### 17.2 Class members

The members of a class consist of the members introduced by its *class-member-declarations* and the members inherited from the direct base class.

```
class-member-declarations:
    class-member-declaration class-member-declarations class-member-declaration

class-member-declaration:
    constant-declaration
    field-declaration
    method-declaration
    property-declaration
    event-declaration
    indexer-declaration
    operator-declaration
    constructor-declaration
    static-constructor-declaration
    type-declaration
```

The members of a class are divided into the following categories:

- Constants, which represent constant values associated with that class (§17.3).
- Fields, which are the variables of that class (§17.4).
- Methods, both non-generic and generic, which implement the computations and actions that can be performed by that class (§17.5, §25.6).
- Properties, which define named characteristics and the actions associated with reading and writing those characteristics (§17.6).
- Events, which define notifications that can be generated by that class (§17.7).
- Indexers, which permit instances of that class to be indexed in the same way as arrays (§17.8).
- Operators, which define the expression operators that can be applied to instances of that class (§17.9).
- Instance constructors, which implement the actions required to initialize instances of that class (§17.10)
- Finalizers, which implement the actions to be performed before instances of that class are permanently discarded (§17.12).
- Static constructors, which implement the actions required to initialize that class itself (§17.11).
- Types, which represent the types that are local to that class (§16.6).

Members that can contain executable code are collectively known as the *function members* of the class. The function members of a class are the methods, properties, events, indexers, operators, instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors of that class.

## C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

A *class-declaration* creates a new declaration space (§10.3), and the *type-parameters* and the *class-member-declarations* immediately contained by the *class-declaration* introduce new members into this declaration space. The following rules apply to *class-member-declarations*:

- Instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors shall have the same name as the immediately
  enclosing class. All other members shall have names that differ from the name of the immediately
  enclosing class.
- The name of a type parameter in the *type-parameter-list* of a class declaration shall differ from the names of all other type parameters in the same *type-parameter-list* and shall differ from the name of the class and the names of all members of the class.
- The name of a type shall differ from the names of all non-type members declared in the same class. If two or more type declarations share the same fully qualified name, the declarations shall have the partial modifier (§17.1.4) and these declarations combine to define a single type. [*Note*: Since the fully qualified name of a type declaration encodes the number of type parameters, two distinct types may share the same name as long as they have different number of type parameters. *end note*]
- The name of a constant, field, property, or event shall differ from the names of all other members declared in the same class.
- The name of a method shall differ from the names of all other non-methods declared in the same class. In addition, the signature (§10.6) of a method shall differ from the signatures of all other methods declared in the same class, and two methods declared in the same class shall not have signatures that differ solely by ref and out.
- The signature of an instance constructor shall differ from the signatures of all other instance constructors declared in the same class, and two constructors declared in the same class shall not have signatures that differ solely by ref and out.
- The signature of an indexer shall differ from the signatures of all other indexers declared in the same class.
- The signature of an operator shall differ from the signatures of all other operators declared in the same class

The inherited members of a class (§17.2.1) are not part of the declaration space of a class. [*Note*: Thus, a derived class is allowed to declare a member with the same name or signature as an inherited member (which in effect hides the inherited member). *end note*]

The set of members of a type declared in multiple parts (§17.1.4) is the union of the members declared in each part. The bodies of all parts of the type declaration share the same declaration space (§10.3), and the scope of each member (§10.7) extends to the bodies of all the parts. The accessibility domain of any member always includes all the parts of the enclosing type; a **pri vate** member declared in one part is freely accessible from another part. It is a compile-time error to declare the same member in more than one part of the type, unless that member is a type having the **partial** modifier. [Example:

```
partial class Inner  // 0k, Inner is a partial type
{
   int z;
}
```

end example]

The ordering of members within a type declared in multiple parts is undefined. [*Note*: Although the ordering of members within a type is not significant to C# code, it may be significant when interfacing with other languages and environments. *end note*]

#### 17.2.1 Inheritance

A class *inherits* the members of its direct base class. Inheritance means that a class implicitly contains all members of its direct base class, except for the instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors of the base class. Some important aspects of inheritance are:

- Inheritance is transitive. If C is derived from B, and B is derived from A, then C inherits the members declared in A as well as the members declared in B.
- A derived class *extends* its direct base class. A derived class can add new members to those it inherits, but it cannot remove the definition of an inherited member.
- Instance constructors, finalizers, and static constructors are not inherited, but all other members are, regardless of their declared accessibility (§10.5). However, depending on their declared accessibility, inherited members might not be accessible in a derived class.
- A derived class can *hide* (§10.7.1.2) inherited members by declaring new members with the same name or signature. However, hiding an inherited member does not remove that member—it merely means that member will not be found by member lookup within the derived class.
- An instance of a class contains a set of all instance fields declared in the class and its base classes, and
  an implicit conversion (§13.1.4) exists from a derived class type to any of its base class types. Thus, a
  reference to an instance of some derived class can be treated as a reference to an instance of any of its
  base classes.
- A class can declare virtual methods, properties, indexers, and events, and derived classes can override
  the implementation of these function members. This enables classes to exhibit polymorphic behavior
  wherein the actions performed by a function member invocation varies depending on the run-time type
  of the instance through which that function member is invoked.
- Members inherited from a constructed generic type are inherited after type substitution. That is, any constituent types in the member have the base class declaration's type parameters replaced with the corresponding type arguments used in the *class-base* specification.

[Example: In the example:

```
class A<S>
{
    public S field;
}
class B<T> : A<T[]>
{
    // inherited: public T[] field;
    public A<T> Meth(T t) { ... }
}
class C : B<string>
{
    // inherited: public string[] field;
    // inherited: public A<string> Meth(string t);
}
```

class B<T> inherits member field from A<S> after type parameter S is replaced with the type argument T[]. Similarly, class C inherits the members of B<T> (including the inherited member field) after type parameter T is replaced with the type argument string. end example]

#### 17.2.2 The new modifier

A *class-member-declaration* is permitted to declare a member with the same name or signature as an inherited member. When this occurs, the derived class member is said to *hide* the base class member. See §10.7.1.2 for a precise specification of when a member hides an inherited member.

An inherited member M is considered to be *available* if M is accessible and there is no other inherited accessible member N that already hides M

Hiding an available inherited member is not considered an error, but it does cause the compiler to issue a warning. To suppress the warning, the declaration of the derived class member can include a new modifier to indicate that the derived member is intended to hide the base member. If one or more parts of a partial declaration §17.1.4) of a nested type include the new modifier, no warning is issued if the nested type hides an available inherited member.

If a new modifier is included in a declaration that doesn't hide an available inherited member, a warning to that effect is issued

#### 17.2.3 Access modifiers

A *class-member-declaration* can have any one of the five possible kinds of declared accessibility (§10.5.1): public, protected internal, protected, internal, or private. Except for the protected internal combination, it is a compile-time error to specify more than one access modifier. When a *class-member-declaration* does not include any access modifiers, private is assumed.

# 17.2.4 Constituent types

Types that are used in the declaration of a member are called the *constituent types* of that member. Possible constituent types are the type of a constant, field, property, event, or indexer, the return type of a method or operator, and the parameter types of a method, indexer, operator, or instance constructor. The constituent types of a member shall be at least as accessible as that member itself (§10.5.4).

## 17.2.5 Static and instance members

Members of a class are either *static members* or *instance members*. [*Note*: Generally speaking, it is useful to think of static members as belonging to classes and instance members as belonging to objects (instances of classes). *end note*]

When a field, method, property, event, operator, or constructor declaration includes a static modifier, it declares a static member. In addition, a constant or type declaration implicitly declares a static member. Static members have the following characteristics:

- When a static member is referenced in a *member-access* (§14.5.4) of the form E. M. E shall denote a type that has a member M. It is a compile-time error for E to denote an instance.
- A static field in a non-generic class identifies exactly one storage location. No matter how many instances of a non-generic class are created, there is only ever one copy of a static field. Each distinct closed constructed type (§25.5.2) has its own set of static fields, regardless of the number of instances of the closed constructed type.
- A static function member (method, property, event, operator, or constructor) does not operate on a specific instance, and it is a compile-time error to refer to this in such a function member.

When a field, method, property, event, indexer, constructor, or finalizer declaration does not include a static modifier, it declares an instance member. (An instance member is sometimes called a non-static member.) Instance members have the following characteristics:

- When an instance member is referenced in a *member-access* (§14.5.4) of the form E. M. E shall denote an instance of a type that has a member M. It is a compile-time error for E to denote a type.
- Every instance of a class contains a separate set of all instance fields of the class.
- An instance function member (method, property, indexer, event, instance constructor, or finalizer) operates on a given instance of the class, and this instance can be accessed as this (§14.5.7).

[Example: The following example illustrates the rules for accessing static and instance members:

```
class Test
   int x;
   static int y;
   voi d F() {
                      // 0k, same as this.x = 1
      x = 1;
      y = 1;
                      // 0k, same as Test. y = 1
   static void G() {
                      // Error. cannot access this.x
      x = 1;
                      // 0k, same as Test. v = 1
      y = 1;
   static void Main() {
      Test t = new Test();
      t. x = 1;
                  // Error, cannot access static member through instance
      t.y = 1;
      Test. x = 1; // Error, cannot access instance member through type
      Test. y = 1; // 0k
}
```

The F method shows that in an instance function member, a *simple-name* (§14.5.2) can be used to access both instance members and static members. The G method shows that in a static function member, it is a compile-time error to access an instance member through a *simple-name*. The Mai n method shows that in a *member-access* (§14.5.4), instance members shall be accessed through instances, and static members shall be accessed through types. *end example*]

## 17.2.6 Nested types

A type declared within a class or struct is called a *nested type*. A type that is declared within a compilation unit or namespace is called a *non-nested type*. [*Example*: In the following example:

```
using System;
class A
{
   class B
      {
       static void F() {
            Console. WriteLine("A. B. F");
       }
   }
}
```

class **B** is a nested type because it is declared within class **A**, and class **A** is a non-nested type because it is declared within a compilation unit. *end example*]

## 17.2.6.1 Fully qualified name

The fully qualified name (§10.8.2) for a nested type declaration is S. N where S is the fully qualified name of the type declaration in which type N is declared and N is the unqualified name (§10.8.1) of the nested type declaration (including any *generic-dimension-specifier* (§14.5.11).

## 17.2.6.2 Declared accessibility

Non-nested types can have public or internal declared accessibility and they have internal declared accessibility by default. Nested types can have these forms of declared accessibility too, plus one or more additional forms of declared accessibility, depending on whether the containing type is a class or struct:

- A nested type that is declared in a class can have any of five forms of declared accessibility (public, protected internal, protected, internal, or private) and, like other class members, defaults to private declared accessibility.
- A nested type that is declared in a struct can have any of three forms of declared accessibility (public, internal, or private) and, like other struct members, defaults to private declared accessibility.

[Example: The example

```
public class List
   // Private data structure
   private class Node
      public object Data;
      public Node Next;
       public Node(object data, Node next) {
          this. Data = data;
          this. Next = next;
      }
   }
   private Node first = null;
   private Node last = null;
   // Public interface
   public void AddToFront(object o) {...}
   public void AddToBack(object o)
   public object RemoveFromFront() {...}
public object AddToFront() {...}
   public int Count { get {...}}
```

declares a private nested class Node. end example]

## 17.2.6.3 Hiding

A nested type can hide (§10.7.1.1) a base member. The **new** modifier (§17.2.2) is permitted on nested type declarations so that hiding can be expressed explicitly. [*Example*: The example

```
using System;
class Base
{
   public static void M() {
       Console. WriteLine("Base. M");
   }
}
class Derived: Base
{
   new public class M
   {
      public static void F() {
            Console. WriteLine("Derived. M. F");
      }
   }
}
class Test
{
   static void Main() {
       Derived. M. F();
   }
}
```

shows a nested class Mthat hides the method Mdefined in Base. end example]

#### 17.2.6.4 this access

A nested type and its containing type do not have a special relationship with regard to *this-access* (§14.5.7). Specifically, **this** within a nested type cannot be used to refer to instance members of the containing type. In cases where a nested type needs access to the instance members of its containing type, access can be provided by providing the **this** for the instance of the containing type as a constructor argument for the nested type. [*Example*: The following example

```
using System;
class C
   int i = 123;
   public void F() {
      Nested n = new Nested(this);
      n. G();
   public class Nested
      C this_c;
      public Nested(C c) {
          this_c = c;
      public void G() {
   Console. WriteLine(this_c.i);
   }
}
class Test
   static void Main() {
      C c = new C();
      c. F();
   }
}
```

shows this technique. An instance of C creates an instance of Nested, and passes its own this to Nested's constructor in order to provide subsequent access to C's instance members. *end example*]

## 17.2.6.5 Access to private and protected members of the containing type

A nested type has access to all of the members that are accessible to its containing type, including members of the containing type that have private and protected declared accessibility. [Example: The example

```
using System;
class C
{
    private static void F() {
        Console. WriteLine("C.F");
    }
    public class Nested
    {
        public static void G() {
            F();
        }
    }
}
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        C. Nested. G();
    }
}
```

shows a class C that contains a nested class Nested. Within Nested, the method G calls the static method F defined in C, and F has private declared accessibility. *end example*]

A nested type also can access protected members defined in a base type of its containing type. [Example: In the following code

```
using System;
class Base
   protected void F() {
      Consol e. Wri teLi ne ("Base. F");
}
class Derived: Base
   public class Nested
      public void G() {
         Derived d = new Derived();
         d. F():
                      // ok
   }
}
class Test
   static void Main() {
      Derived. Nested n = new Derived. Nested();
      n. G();
   }
}
```

the nested class **Deri ved**. **Nested** accesses the protected method **F** defined in **Deri ved**'s base class, **Base**, by calling through an instance of **Deri ved**. *end example*]

## 17.2.7 Reserved member names

To facilitate the underlying C# runtime implementation, for each source member declaration that is a property, event, or indexer, the implementation shall reserve two method signatures based on the kind of the member declaration, its name, and its type (§17.2.7.1, §17.2.7.2, §17.2.7.3). It is a compile-time error for a program to declare a member whose signature matches a signature reserved by a member declared in the same scope, even if the underlying runtime implementation does not make use of these reservations.

The reserved names do not introduce declarations, thus they do not participate in member lookup. However, a declaration's associated reserved method signatures do participate in inheritance (§17.2.1), and can be hidden with the new modifier (§17.2.2).

[Note: The reservation of these names serves three purposes:

- 1. To allow the underlying implementation to use an ordinary identifier as a method name for get or set access to the C# language feature.
- 2. To allow other languages to interoperate using an ordinary identifier as a method name for get or set access to the C# language feature.
- 3. To help ensure that the source accepted by one conforming compiler is accepted by another, by making the specifics of reserved member names consistent across all C# implementations.

end note]

The declaration of a finalizer (§17.12) also causes a signature to be reserved (§17.2.7.4).

## 17.2.7.1 Member names reserved for properties

For a property P (§17.6) of type T, the following signatures are reserved:

```
T get_P();
void set_P(T value);
```

Both signatures are reserved, even if the property is read-only or write-only.

[Example: In the following code

```
using System;
class A
   public int P {
      get { return 123; }
}
class B: A
   new public int get_P() {
      return 456;
   new public void set_P(int value) {
}
class Test
   static void Main() {
      B b = new B();
      A a = b;
Consol e. WriteLine(a. P);
      Consol e. WriteLine(b. P):
      Consol e. Wri teLi ne(b. get_P());
   }
```

a class A defines a read-only property P, thus reserving signatures for get\_P and set\_P methods. A class B derives from A and hides both of these reserved signatures. The example produces the output:

123 123 456

end example]

## 17.2.7.2 Member names reserved for events

For an event E (§17.7) of delegate type T, the following signatures are reserved:

```
voi d add_E(T handler);
voi d remove_E(T handler);
```

## 17.2.7.3 Member names reserved for indexers

For an indexer (§17.8) of type T with parameter-list L, the following signatures are reserved:

```
T get_Item(L);
void set_Item(L, T value);
```

Both signatures are reserved, even if the indexer is read-only or write-only.

## 17.2.7.4 Member names reserved for finalizers

For a class containing a finalizer (§17.12), the following signature is reserved:

```
void Finalize();
```

## 17.3 Constants

A *constant* is a class member that represents a constant value: a value that can be computed at compile-time. A *constant-declaration* introduces one or more constants of a given type.

```
constant-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> constant-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> const type constant-declarators ;
constant-modifiers:
    constant-modifier
    constant-modifiers constant-modifier
constant-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
constant-declarators:
    constant-declarator
    constant-declarators . constant-declarator
constant-declarator:
    identifier = constant-expression
```

A *constant-declaration* can include a set of *attributes* (§24), a new modifier (§17.2.2), and a valid combination of the four access modifiers (§17.2.3). The attributes and modifiers apply to all of the members declared by the *constant-declaration*. Even though constants are considered static members, a *constant-declaration* neither requires nor allows a static modifier. It is an error for the same modifier to appear multiple times in a constant declaration.

The *type* of a *constant-declaration* specifies the type of the members introduced by the declaration. The type is followed by a list of *constant-declarators*, each of which introduces a new member. A *constant-declarator* consists of an *identifier* that names the member, followed by an "=" token, followed by a *constant-expression* (§14.16) that gives the value of the member.

The *type* specified in a constant declaration shall be **sbyte**, **byte**, **short**, **ushort**, **int**, **uint**, **long**, **ulong**, **char**, **float**, **double**, **decimal**, **bool**, **string**, an *enum-type*, or a *reference-type*. Each *constant-expression* shall yield a value of the target type or of a type that can be converted to the target type by an implicit conversion (§13.1).

The type of a constant shall be at least as accessible as the constant itself (§10.5.4).

The value of a constant is obtained in an expression using a *simple-name* (§14.5.2) or a *member-access* (§14.5.4).

A constant can itself participate in a *constant-expression*. Thus, a constant can be used in any construct that requires a *constant-expression*. [Note: Examples of such constructs include case labels, goto case statements, enum member declarations, attributes, and other constant declarations. end note]

[Note: As described in §14.16, a constant-expression is an expression that can be fully evaluated at compile-time. Since the only way to create a non-null value of a reference-type other than string is to apply the new operator, and since the new operator is not permitted in a constant-expression, the only possible value for constants of reference-types other than string is null.end note]

When a symbolic name for a constant value is desired, but when the type of that value is not permitted in a constant declaration, or when the value cannot be computed at compile-time by a *constant-expression*, a readonly field (§17.4.2) can be used instead. [*Note*: The versioning semantics of const and readonly differ (§17.4.2.2). *end-note*]

A constant declaration that declares multiple constants is equivalent to multiple declarations of single constants with the same attributes, modifiers, and type. [Example:

```
class A { public const double X = 1.0, Y = 2.0, Z = 3.0;
```

```
is equivalent to
     class A
     {
         public const double X = 1.0;
         public const double Y = 2.0;
         public const double Z = 3.0;
     }
end example]
```

Constants are permitted to depend on other constants within the same program as long as the dependencies are not of a circular nature. The compiler automatically arranges to evaluate the constant declarations in the appropriate order. [Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
    public const int X = B.Z + 1;
    public const int Y = 10;
}
class B
{
    public const int Z = A.Y + 1;
}
```

the compiler first evaluates A. Y, then evaluates B. Z, and finally evaluates A. X, producing the values 10, 11, and 12. *end example*] Constant declarations can depend on constants from other programs, but such dependencies are only possible in one direction. [*Example*: Referring to the example above, if A and B were declared in separate programs, it would be possible for A. X to depend on B. Z, but B. Z could then not simultaneously depend on A. Y. *end example*]

#### 17.4 Fields

A *field* is a member that represents a variable associated with an object or class. A *field-declaration* introduces one or more fields of a given type.

```
field-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> field-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> type variable-declarators ;
field-modifiers:
    field-modifier
    field-modifiers field-modifier
field-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
    stati c
    readonly
    volatile
variable-declarators:
    variable-declarator
    variable-declarators, variable-declarator
variable-declarator:
    identifier
    identifier = variable-initializer
variable-initializer:
    expression
    array-initializer
```

A *field-declaration* can include a set of *attributes* (§24), a new modifier (§17.2.2), a valid combination of the four access modifiers (§17.2.3), and a static modifier (§17.4.1). In addition, a *field-declaration* can include a readonly modifier (§17.4.2) or a vol atile modifier (§17.4.3), but not both. The attributes and modifiers apply to all of the members declared by the *field-declaration*. It is an error for the same modifier to appear multiple times in a *field declaration*.

The *type* of a *field-declaration* specifies the type of the members introduced by the declaration. The type is followed by a list of *variable-declarators*, each of which introduces a new member. A *variable-declarator* consists of an *identifier* that names that member, optionally followed by an "=" token and a *variable-initializer* (§17.4.5) that gives the initial value of that member.

The *type* of a field shall be at least as accessible as the field itself (§10.5.4).

The value of a field is obtained in an expression using a *simple-name* (§14.5.2), a *member-access* (§14.5.4), a *this-access* (§14.5.7), or a *base-access* (§14.5.8). The value of a non-readonly field is modified using an *assignment* (§14.14). The value of a non-readonly field can be both obtained and modified using postfix increment and decrement operators (§14.5.9) and prefix increment and decrement operators (§14.6.5).

A field declaration that declares multiple fields is equivalent to multiple declarations of single fields with the same attributes, modifiers, and type. [Example:

```
class A
{
    public static int X = 1, Y, Z = 100;
}
is equivalent to
    class A
    {
        public static int X = 1;
        public static int Y;
        public static int Z = 100;
    }
end example]
```

#### 17.4.1 Static and instance fields

When a field declaration includes a static modifier, the fields introduced by the declaration are *static fields*. When no static modifier is present, the fields introduced by the declaration are *instance fields*. Static fields and instance fields are two of the several kinds of variables (§12) supported by C#, and at times they are referred to as *static variables* and *instance variables*, respectively.

As explained in §17.2.5, each instance of a class contains a complete set of the instance fields of the class, while there is only one set of static fields for each non-generic class or closed constructed type, regardless of the number of instances of the class or closed constructed type.

## 17.4.2 Readonly fields

When a *field-declaration* includes a **readonl** y modifier, the fields introduced by the declaration are *readonly fields*. Direct assignments to readonly fields can only occur as part of that declaration or in an instance constructor or static constructor in the same class. (A readonly field can be assigned to multiple times in these contexts.) Specifically, direct assignments to a **readonl** y field are permitted only in the following contexts:

- In the *variable-declarator* that introduces the field (by including a *variable-initializer* in the declaration).
- For an instance field, in the instance constructors of the class that contains the field declaration; for a static field, in the static constructor of the class that contains the field declaration. These are also the only contexts in which it is valid to pass a readonly field as an out or ref parameter.

Attempting to assign to a readonly field or pass it as an out or ref parameter in any other context is a compile-time error.

## 17.4.2.1 Using static readonly fields for constants

A static readonly field is useful when a symbolic name for a constant value is desired, but when the type of the value is not permitted in a const declaration, or when the value cannot be computed at compiletime. [Example: In the following code

```
public class Color
{
   public static readonly Color Black = new Color(0, 0, 0);
   public static readonly Color White = new Color(255, 255, 255);
   public static readonly Color Red = new Color(255, 0, 0);
   public static readonly Color Green = new Color(0, 255, 0);
   public static readonly Color Blue = new Color(0, 0, 255);

   private byte red, green, blue;

   public Color(byte r, byte g, byte b) {
      red = r;
      green = g;
      blue = b;
   }
}
```

the **Bl** ack, **White**, **Red**, **Green**, and **Bl** ue members cannot be declared as **const** members because their values cannot be computed at compile-time. However, declaring them **static readonly** instead has much the same effect. *end example*]

## 17.4.2.2 Versioning of constants and static readonly fields

Constants and readonly fields have different binary versioning semantics. When an expression references a constant, the value of the constant is obtained at compile-time, but when an expression references a readonly field, the value of the field is not obtained until run-time. [Example: Consider an application that consists of two separate programs:

The Program1 and Program2 namespaces denote two programs that are compiled separately. Because Program1. Utils. X is declared as a static readonly field, the value output by the Console. WriteLine statement is not known at compile-time, but rather is obtained at run-time. Thus, if the value of X is changed and Program1 is recompiled, the Console. WriteLine statement will output the new value even if Program2 isn't recompiled. However, had X been a constant, the value of X would have been obtained at the time Program2 was compiled, and would remain unaffected by changes in Program1 until Program2 is recompiled. end example]

#### 17.4.3 Volatile fields

When a *field-declaration* includes a **vol atil** e modifier, the fields introduced by that declaration are **volatile fields**. For non-volatile fields, optimization techniques that reorder instructions can lead to unexpected and unpredictable results in multi-threaded programs that access fields without synchronization such as that provided by the *lock-statement* (§15.12). These optimizations can be performed by the compiler, by the runtime system, or by hardware. For volatile fields, such reordering optimizations are restricted:

- A read of a volatile field is called a *volatile read*. A volatile read has "acquire semantics"; that is, it is guaranteed to occur prior to any references to memory that occur after it in the instruction sequence.
- A write of a volatile field is called a *volatile write*. A volatile write has "release semantics"; that is, it is guaranteed to happen after any memory references prior to the write instruction in the instruction sequence.

These restrictions ensure that all threads will observe volatile writes performed by any other thread in the order in which they were performed. A conforming implementation is not required to provide a single total ordering of volatile writes as seen from all threads of execution. The type of a volatile field shall be one of the following:

- A reference-type.
- A type-parameter that is known to be a reference type (§25.7).
- The type byte, sbyte, short, ushort, int, uint, char, float, or bool.
- An *enum-type* having an enum base type of byte, sbyte, short, ushort, int, or uint.

```
[Example: The example
   using System;
using System. Threading;
   class Test
       public static int result;
       public static volatile bool finished;
       static void Thread2() {
          result = 143;
          finished = true;
       static void Main() {
          finished = false;
          // Run Thread2() in a new thread
          new Thread(new ThreadStart(Thread2)). Start();
          // Wait for Thread2 to signal that it has a result by setting // finished to true.
          for (;;) {
    if (fin
                 (finished) {
                 Console. WriteLine("result = {0}", result);
                 return:
              }
          }
      }
   }
```

produces the output:

```
result = 143
```

In this example, the method Main starts a new thread that runs the method Thread2. This method stores a value into a non-volatile field called result, then stores true in the volatile field finished. The main thread waits for the field finished to be set to true, then reads the field result. Since finished has been declared volatile, the main thread shall read the value 143 from the field result. If the field finished had not been declared volatile, then it would be permissible for the store to result to be visible to the main thread after the store to finished, and hence for the main thread to read the value 0

from the field result. Declaring fini shed as a vol atile field prevents any such inconsistency. end example]

#### 17.4.4 Field initialization

The initial value of a field, whether it be a static field or an instance field, is the default value (§12.2) of the field's type. It is not possible to observe the value of a field before this default initialization has occurred, and a field is thus never "uninitialized". [Example: The example

```
using System;
class Test
   static bool b;
   int i;
   static void Main() {
       Test t = new Test();
Console. WriteLine("b = \{0\}, i = \{1\}", b, t.i);
}
```

produces the output

```
b = False, i = 0
```

because b and i are both automatically initialized to default values. end example

#### 17.4.5 Variable initializers

Field declarations can include variable-initializers. For static fields, variable initializers correspond to assignment statements that are executed during class initialization. For instance fields, variable initializers correspond to assignment statements that are executed when an instance of the class is created.

[Example: The example

```
using System;
class Test
   static double x = Math. Sqrt(2.0);
   int i = 100;
string s = "Hello";
   static void Main() {
       Test a = new Test(); Console. WriteLine("x = \{0\}, i = \{1\}, s = \{2\}", x, a.i, a.s);
   }
}
```

produces the output

```
x = 1.4142135623731, i = 100, s = Hello
```

because an assignment to x occurs when static field initializers execute and assignments to i and s occur when the instance field initializers execute. *end example*]

The default value initialization described in §17.4.3 occurs for all fields, including fields that have variable initializers. Thus, when a class is initialized, all static fields in that class are first initialized to their default values, and then the static field initializers are executed in textual order. Likewise, when an instance of a class is created, all instance fields in that instance are first initialized to their default values, and then the instance field initializers are executed in textual order. When there are field declarations in multiple partial type declarations for the same type, the order of the parts is unspecified. However, within each part the field initializers are executed in order.

It is possible for static fields with variable initializers to be observed in their default value state. [Example: However, this is strongly discouraged as a matter of style. The example

```
using System;
```

```
class Test
{
    static int a = b + 1;
    static int b = a + 1;
    static void Main() {
        Console. WriteLine("a = {0}, b = {1}", a, b);
    }
}
```

exhibits this behavior. Despite the circular definitions of a and b, the program is valid. It results in the output

```
a = 1, b = 2
```

because the static fields **a** and **b** are initialized to **0** (the default value for **i** nt) before their initializers are executed. When the initializer for **a** runs, the value of **b** is zero, and so **a** is initialized to 1. When the initializer for **b** runs, the value of **a** is already 1, and so **b** is initialized to 2. *end example*]

## 17.4.5.1 Static field initialization

The static field variable initializers of a class declaration correspond to a sequence of assignments that are executed in the textual order in which they appear in the class declaration. If a static constructor (§17.11) exists in the class, execution of the static field initializers occurs immediately prior to executing that static constructor. Otherwise, the static field initializers are executed at an implementation-dependent time prior to the first use of a static field of that class. [Example: The example

```
using System;
        class Test
            \begin{array}{c} static\ voi\ d\ Mai\ n()\ \{\\ Consol\ e.\ Wri\ teLi\ ne("\{0\}\ \{1\}",\ B.\ Y,\ A.\ X)\,; \end{array}
            public static int f(string s) {
                Consol e. WriteLine(s);
                return 1:
        }
        class A
            public static int X = Test.f("Init A");
        }
        class B
            public static int Y = Test.f("Init B");
might produce either the output:
        Init A
        Init B
        1 1
or the output:
        Init B
        Init A
```

because the execution of X's initializer and Y's initializer could occur in either order; they are only constrained to occur before the references to those fields. However, in the example:

```
using System;
```

```
class Test
         static void Main() {
            Consol e. WriteLine("{0} {1}", B. Y. A. X);
         public static int f(string s) {
            Consol e. WriteLine(s);
            return 1;
      }
      class A
         static A() {}
         public static int X = Test. f("Init A");
      class B
         static B() {}
         public static int Y = Test.f("Init B");
the output shall be:
      Init B
      Init A
```

because the rules for when static constructors execute provide that **B**'s static constructor (and hence **B**'s static field initializers) shall run before **A**'s static constructor and field initializers. *end example*]

## 17.4.5.2 Instance field initialization

The instance field variable initializers of a class correspond to a sequence of assignments that are executed immediately upon entry to any one of the instance constructors (§17.10.2) of that class. The variable initializers are executed in the textual order in which they appear in the class declaration. The class instance creation and initialization process is described further in §17.10.

A variable initializer for an instance field cannot reference the instance being created. Thus, it is a compile-time error to reference this in a variable initializer, as it is a compile-time error for a variable initializer to reference any instance member through a *simple-name*. [Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
   int x = 1;
   int y = x + 1;  // Error, reference to instance member of this
}
```

the variable initializer for y results in a compile-time error because it references a member of the instance being created. *end example*]

#### 17.5 Methods

A *method* is a member that implements a computation or action that can be performed by an object or class. Methods are declared using *method-declarations*:

```
method-declaration:
    method-header method-body

method-header:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> method-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> return-type member-name type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>
    ( formal-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub> ) type-parameter-constraints-clauses<sub>opt</sub>

method-modifiers:
    method-modifier
    method-modifiers method-modifier
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
method-modifier:
   new
   publ i c
   protected
   i nternal
   pri vate
   static
   vi rtual
   seal ed
   overri de
   abstract
   extern
return-type:
   type
   voi d
member-name:
   identifier
   interface-type . identifier
method-body:
   block
```

The *member-name* specifies the name of the method. Unless the method is an explicit interface member implementation (§20.4.1), the *member-name* is simply an *identifier*. For an explicit interface member implementation, the *member-name* consists of an *interface-type* followed by a "." and an *identifier*.

A *method-declaration* can include a set of *attributes* (§24) and a valid combination of the four access modifiers (§17.2.3), the new (§17.2.2), static (§17.5.2), virtual (§17.5.3), override (§17.5.4), seal ed (§17.5.5), abstract (§17.5.6), and extern (§17.5.7) modifiers.

A declaration has a valid combination of modifiers if all of the following are true:

- The declaration includes a valid combination of access modifiers (§17.2.3).
- The declaration does not include the same modifier multiple times.
- The declaration includes at most one of the following modifiers: static, virtual, and override.
- The declaration includes at most one of the following modifiers: new and override.
- If the declaration includes the abstract modifier, then the declaration does not include any of the following modifiers: static, virtual, sealed, or extern.
- If the declaration includes the **pri vate** modifier, then the declaration does not include any of the following modifiers: **vi rtual**, **overri de**, or **abstract**.
- If the declaration includes the seal ed modifier, then the declaration also includes the override modifier.
- If the declaration is an explicit interface member implementation (indicated by a *member-name* including an *interface-type*, §20.4.1), then the declaration includes no modifiers other than possibly the extern modifier.

The *return-type* of a method declaration specifies the type of the value computed and returned by the method. The *return-type* is **voi** d if the method does not return a value.

The optional *type-parameter-list* specifies the type parameters for a generic method. The optional *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* specify the constraints for the type parameters. A *method-declaration* shall not have *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* unless it also has a *type-parameter-list*. A *method-declaration* for an explicit interface member implementation shall not have any *type-parameter-constraints-clauses*. A

generic *method-declaration* for an explicit interface member implementation inherits any constraints from the constraints on the interface method. Similarly, a method declaration with the **overri de** modifier shall not have any *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* and the constraints of the method's type parameters are inherited from the virtual method being overridden. Generic methods are fully specified in §25.6.

The optional formal-parameter-list specifies the parameters of the method (§17.5.1).

The *return-type* and each of the types referenced in the *formal-parameter-list* of a method shall be at least as accessible as the method itself (§10.5.4).

For abstract and extern methods, the *method-body* consists simply of a semicolon. For all other methods, the *method-body* consists of a *block*, which specifies the statements to execute when the method is invoked.

The name, the number of type parameters, and the formal parameter list of a method define the signature (§10.6) of the method. Specifically, the signature of a method consists of its name, the number of its type parameters, and the number, *parameter-modifiers*, and types of its formal parameters. The return type is not part of a method's signature, nor are the names of the formal parameters, the names of the type parameters, or the constraints. When a formal parameter type references a type parameter of the method, the ordinal position of the type parameter (not the name of the type parameter) is used for type equivalence.

The name of a method shall differ from the names of all other non-methods declared in the same class. In addition, the signature of a method shall differ from the signatures of all other methods declared in the same class, and two methods declared in the same class shall not have signatures that differ solely by ref and out.

## 17.5.1 Method parameters

The parameters of a method, if any, are declared by the method's formal-parameter-list.

```
formal-parameter-list:
    fixed-parameters
    fixed-parameters, parameter-array
    parameter-array

fixed-parameters:
    fixed-parameter
    fixed-parameter
    fixed-parameters, fixed-parameter

fixed-parameter:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> parameter-modifier<sub>opt</sub> type identifier

parameter-modifier:
    ref
    out

parameter-array:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> params array-type identifier
```

The formal parameter list consists of one or more comma-separated parameters of which only the last can be a *parameter-array*.

A *fixed-parameter* consists of an optional set of *attributes* (§24), an optional ref or out modifier, a *type*, and an *identifier*. Each *fixed-parameter* declares a parameter of the given type with the given name.

A parameter-array consists of an optional set of attributes (§24), a params modifier, an array-type, and an identifier. A parameter array declares a single parameter of the given array type with the given name. The array-type of a parameter array shall be a single-dimensional array type (§19.1). In a method invocation, a parameter array permits either a single argument of the given array type to be specified, or it permits zero or more arguments of the array element type to be specified. Parameter arrays are described further in §17.5.1.4.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

A method declaration creates a separate declaration space (§10.3) for type parameters, formal parameters, local variables, and local constants. Names are introduced into this declaration space by the type parameter list and formal parameter list of the method and by local variable declarations and by local constant declarations in the *block* of the method. It is an error for two members of a method declaration space to have the same name. It is an error for the method declaration space and the local variable declaration space of a nested declaration space to contain elements with the same name.

A method invocation (§14.5.5.1) creates a copy, specific to that invocation, of the formal parameters and local variables of the method, and the argument list of the invocation assigns values or variable references to the newly created formal parameters. Within the *block* of a method, formal parameters can be referenced by their identifiers in *simple-name* expressions (§14.5.2).

There are four kinds of formal parameters:

- Value parameters, which are declared without any modifiers.
- Reference parameters, which are declared with the ref modifier.
- Output parameters, which are declared with the out modifier.
- Parameter arrays, which are declared with the params modifier.

[*Note*: As described in §10.6, the ref and out modifiers are part of a method's signature, but the params modifier is not. *end note*]

## 17.5.1.1 Value parameters

A parameter declared with no modifiers is a value parameter. A value parameter corresponds to a local variable that gets its initial value from the corresponding argument supplied in the method invocation.

When a formal parameter is a value parameter, the corresponding argument in a method invocation shall be an expression of a type that is implicitly convertible (§13.1) to the formal parameter type.

A method is permitted to assign new values to a value parameter. Such assignments only affect the local storage location represented by the value parameter—they have no effect on the actual argument given in the method invocation.

## 17.5.1.2 Reference parameters

A parameter declared with a ref modifier is a reference parameter. Unlike a value parameter, a reference parameter does not create a new storage location. Instead, a reference parameter represents the same storage location as the variable given as the argument in the method invocation.

When a formal parameter is a reference parameter, the corresponding argument in a method invocation shall consist of the keyword ref followed by a *variable-reference* (§12.3.3.27) of the same type as the formal parameter. A variable shall be definitely assigned before it can be passed as a reference parameter.

Within a method, a reference parameter is always considered definitely assigned.

[Example: The example

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Swap(ref int x, ref int y) {
        int temp = x;
        x = y;
        y = temp;
    }
}
```

```
static void Main() {
   int i = 1, j = 2;
   Swap(ref i, ref j);
   Console. WriteLine("i = {0}, j = {1}", i, j);
}
```

produces the output

```
i = 2, j = 1
```

For the invocation of Swap in Mai n, x represents i and y represents j. Thus, the invocation has the effect of swapping the values of i and j. end example

In a method that takes reference parameters, it is possible for multiple names to represent the same storage location. [Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
    string s;
    void F(ref string a, ref string b) {
        s = "0ne";
        a = "Two";
        b = "Three";
    }
    void G() {
        F(ref s, ref s);
    }
}
```

the invocation of F in G passes a reference to s for both a and b. Thus, for that invocation, the names s, a, and b all refer to the same storage location, and the three assignments all modify the instance field s. *end example*]

## 17.5.1.3 Output parameters

A parameter declared with an out modifier is an output parameter. Similar to a reference parameter, an output parameter does not create a new storage location. Instead, an output parameter represents the same storage location as the variable given as the argument in the method invocation.

When a formal parameter is an output parameter, the corresponding argument in a method invocation shall consist of the keyword out followed by a *variable-reference* (§12.3.3.27) of the same type as the formal parameter. A variable need not be definitely assigned before it can be passed as an output parameter, but following an invocation where a variable was passed as an output parameter, the variable is considered definitely assigned.

Within a method, just like a local variable, an output parameter is initially considered unassigned and shall be definitely assigned before its value is used.

Every output parameter of a method shall be definitely assigned before the method returns.

Output parameters are typically used in methods that produce multiple return values. [Example:

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void SplitPath(string path, out string dir, out string name) {
        int i = path. Length;
        while (i > 0) {
            char ch = path[i - 1];
            if (ch == '\\' || ch == '/' || ch == ':') break;
            i--;
        }
        dir = path. Substring(0, i);
        name = path. Substring(i);
    }
}
```

```
static void Main() {
    string dir, name;
    SplitPath(@"c:\Windows\System\hello.txt", out dir, out name);
    Console. WriteLine(dir);
    Console. WriteLine(name);
}
```

The example produces the output:

```
c: \Wi ndows\System\
hello.txt
```

Note that the dir and name variables can be unassigned before they are passed to SplitPath, and that they are considered definitely assigned following the call. *end example*]

## 17.5.1.4 Parameter arrays

A parameter declared with a params modifier is a parameter array. If a formal parameter list includes a parameter array, it shall be the last parameter in the list and it shall be of a single-dimensional array type. [Example: The types string[] and string[][,] can be used as the type of a parameter array, but the type string[,] can not. end example] It is not possible to combine the params modifier with the modifiers ref and out.

A parameter array permits arguments to be specified in one of two ways in a method invocation:

- The argument given for a parameter array can be a single expression that is implicitly convertible (§13.1) to the parameter array type. In this case, the parameter array acts precisely like a value parameter.
- Alternatively, the invocation can specify zero or more arguments for the parameter array, where each argument is an expression that is implicitly convertible (§13.1) to the element type of the parameter array. In this case, the invocation creates an instance of the parameter array type with a length corresponding to the number of arguments, initializes the elements of the array instance with the given argument values, and uses the newly created array instance as the actual argument.

Except for allowing a variable number of arguments in an invocation, a parameter array is precisely equivalent to a value parameter (§17.5.1.1) of the same type.

[Example: The example

produces the output

```
Array contains 3 elements: 1 2 3
Array contains 4 elements: 10 20 30 40
Array contains 0 elements:
```

The first invocation of F simply passes the array  $\mathtt{arr}$  as a value parameter. The second invocation of F automatically creates a four-element i nt [] with the given element values and passes that array instance as a

value parameter. Likewise, the third invocation of F creates a zero-element i nt[] and passes that instance as a value parameter. The second and third invocations are precisely equivalent to writing:

```
F(new int[] {10, 20, 30, 40});
F(new int[] {});
end example]
```

When performing overload resolution, a method with a parameter array might be applicable, either in its normal form or in its expanded form (§14.4.2.1). The expanded form of a method is available only if the normal form of the method is not applicable and only if a method with the same signature as the expanded form is not already declared in the same type.

```
[Example: The example
       using System;
       class Test
           static void F(params object[] a) {
   Console. WriteLine("F(object[])");
           static void F() {
               Consol e. WriteLine("F()");
           static void F(object a0, object a1) {
               Consol e. WriteLine("F(object, object)");
           static void Main() {
               F();
F(1);
               F(1, 2);
               \mathbf{F}(1, 2, 1)
                          3);
               F(1,
           }
       }
produces the output
       F(object[]);
       F(obj ect, obj ect);
       F(obj ect[]);
F(obj ect[]);
```

In the example, two of the possible expanded forms of the method with a parameter array are already included in the class as regular methods. These expanded forms are therefore not considered when performing overload resolution, and the first and third method invocations thus select the regular methods. When a class declares a method with a parameter array, it is not uncommon to also include some of the expanded forms as regular methods. By doing so, it is possible to avoid the allocation of an array instance that occurs when an expanded form of a method with a parameter array is invoked. *end example*]

When the type of a parameter array is **obj ect**[], a potential ambiguity arises between the normal form of the method and the expended form for a single **obj ect** parameter. The reason for the ambiguity is that an **obj ect**[] is itself implicitly convertible to type **obj ect**. The ambiguity presents no problem, however, since it can be resolved by inserting a cast if needed.

```
[Example: The example using System;
```

```
class Test
            static void F(params object[] args) {
                foreach (object o in args) {
    Console. Write(o. GetType(). FullName);
    Console. Write(" ");
                 Consol e. WriteLine();
            }
            static void Main() {
   object[] a = {1, "Hello", 123.456};
                 obj ect o = a;
                F(a);
F((obj ect) a);
                 F(o):
                 F((object[])o);
            }
        }
produces the output
        System. Int32 System. String System. Double
        System. Object[]
System. Object[]
        System. I nt 32 System. String System. Double
```

In the first and last invocations of F, the normal form of F is applicable because an implicit conversion exists from the argument type to the parameter type (both are of type obj ect[]). Thus, overload resolution selects the normal form of F, and the argument is passed as a regular value parameter. In the second and third invocations, the normal form of F is not applicable because no implicit conversion exists from the argument type to the parameter type (type obj ect cannot be implicitly converted to type obj ect[]). However, the expanded form of F is applicable, so it is selected by overload resolution. As a result, a one-element obj ect[] is created by the invocation, and the single element of the array is initialized with the given argument value (which itself is a reference to an obj ect[]). end example]

## 17.5.2 Static and instance methods

When a method declaration includes a static modifier, that method is said to be a static method. When no static modifier is present, the method is said to be an instance method.

A static method does not operate on a specific instance, and it is a compile-time error to refer to this in a static method.

An instance method operates on a given instance of a class, and that instance can be accessed as this (§14.5.7).

The differences between static and instance members are discussed further in §17.2.5.

#### 17.5.3 Virtual methods

When an instance method declaration includes a virtual modifier, that method is said to be a *virtual method*. When no virtual modifier is present, the method is said to be a *non-virtual method*.

The implementation of a non-virtual method is invariant: The implementation is the same whether the method is invoked on an instance of the class in which it is declared or an instance of a derived class. In contrast, the implementation of a virtual method can be superseded by derived classes. The process of superseding the implementation of an inherited virtual method is known as *overriding* that method (§17.5.4).

In a virtual method invocation, the *run-time type* of the instance for which that invocation takes place determines the actual method implementation to invoke. In a non-virtual method invocation, the *compile-time type* of the instance is the determining factor. In precise terms, when a method named N is invoked with an argument list A on an instance with a compile-time type C and a run-time type R (where R is either C or a class derived from C), the invocation is processed as follows:

- First, overload resolution is applied to C, N, and A, to select a specific method M from the set of methods declared in and inherited by C. This is described in §14.5.5.1.
- Then, if Mis a non-virtual method, Mis invoked.
- Otherwise, M is a virtual method, and the most derived implementation of M with respect to R is invoked.

For every virtual method declared in or inherited by a class, there exists a *most derived implementation* of the method with respect to that class. The most derived implementation of a virtual method M with respect to a class R is determined as follows:

- If R contains the introducing virtual declaration of M, then this is the most derived implementation of M
- Otherwise, if **R** contains an **overri de** of **M**, then this is the most derived implementation of **M** with respect to **R**.
- Otherwise, the most derived implementation of M with respect to R is the same as the most derived implementation of M with respect to the direct base class of R.

[Example: The following example illustrates the differences between virtual and non-virtual methods:

```
using System;
class A
{
    public void F() { Console. WriteLine("A.F"); }
    public virtual void G() { Console. WriteLine("A.G"); }
}
class B: A
{
    new public void F() { Console. WriteLine("B.F"); }
    public override void G() { Console. WriteLine("B.G"); }
}
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        B b = new B();
        A a = b;
        a.F();
        b.F();
        a.G();
        b.G();
    }
}
```

In the example, A introduces a non-virtual method F and a virtual method G. The class B introduces a *new* non-virtual method F, thus *hiding* the inherited F; it also *overrides* the inherited method G. The example produces the output:

- A. F B. F B. G
- B. G

Notice that the statement a. G() invokes B. G, not A. G. This is because the run-time type of the instance (which is B), not the compile-time type of the instance (which is A), determines the actual method implementation to invoke. *end example*]

Because methods are allowed to hide inherited methods, it is possible for a class to contain several virtual methods with the same signature. This does not present an ambiguity problem, since all but the most derived method are hidden. [Example: In the following code

```
using System;
```

```
class A
   public virtual void F() { Console. WriteLine("A. F"); }
class B: A
   public override void F() { Console. WriteLine("B. F"); }
class C: B
   new public virtual void F() { Console. WriteLine("C. F"); }
class D: C
   public override void F() { Console. WriteLine("D. F"); }
class Test
   static void Main() {
      D d = new D();
      A a = d;
      B b = d;
      C c = d;
a. F();
b. F();
      c. F();
      d. F();
   }
}
```

the C and D classes contain two virtual methods with the same signature: The one introduced by A and the one introduced by C. The method introduced by C hides the method inherited from A. Thus, the override declaration in D overrides the method introduced by C, and it is not possible for D to override the method introduced by A. The example produces the output:

- B. F
- B. F
- D. F

Note that it is possible to invoke the hidden virtual method by accessing an instance of **D** through a less derived type in which the method is not hidden. *end example*]

#### 17.5.4 Override methods

When an instance method declaration includes an **override** modifier, the method is said to be an **override method**. An override method overrides an inherited virtual method with the same signature. Whereas a virtual method declaration *introduces* a new method, an override method declaration *specializes* an existing inherited virtual method by providing a new implementation of that method.

The method overridden by an override declaration is known as the *overridden base method*. For an override method Mdeclared in a class C, the overridden base method is determined by examining each base class of C, starting with the direct base class of C and continuing with each successive direct base class, until an accessible method with the same signature as Mis located. For the purposes of locating the overridden base method, a method is considered accessible if it is public, if it is protected, if it is protected internal, or if it is internal and declared in the same program as C.

A compile-time error occurs unless all of the following are true for an override declaration:

- An overridden base method can be located as described above.
- The overridden base method is a virtual, abstract, or override method. In other words, the overridden base method cannot be static or non-virtual.

- The overridden base method is not a sealed method.
- The override declaration and the overridden base method have the same return type.
- The override declaration and the overridden base method have the same declared accessibility. In other words, an override declaration cannot change the accessibility of the virtual method.

An override declaration can access the overridden base method using a *base-access* (§14.5.8). [Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
   int x;
   public virtual void PrintFields() {
        Console. WriteLine("x = {0}", x);
   }
}
class B: A
{
   int y;
   public override void PrintFields() {
        base. PrintFields();
        Console. WriteLine("y = {0}", y);
   }
}
```

the base. PrintFields() invocation in B invokes the PrintFields method declared in A. A base-access disables the virtual invocation mechanism and simply treats the base method as a non-virtual method. Had the invocation in B been written ((A)this). PrintFields(), it would recursively invoke the PrintFields method declared in B, not the one declared in A, since PrintFields is virtual and the runtime type of ((A)this) is B. end example]

Only by including an **overri de** modifier can a method override another method. In all other cases, a method with the same signature as an inherited method simply hides the inherited method. [*Example*: In the following code

```
class A
{
    public virtual void F() {}
}
class B: A
{
    public virtual void F() {} // Warning, hiding inherited F()
}
```

the F method in B does not include an **override** modifier and therefore does not override the F method in A. Rather, the F method in B hides the method in A, and a warning is reported because the declaration does not include a **new** modifier. *end example*]

[Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
    public virtual void F() {}
}
class B: A
{
    new private void F() {} // Hides A. F within B
}
class C: B
{
    public override void F() {} // Ok, overrides A. F
```

the F method in B hides the virtual F method inherited from A. Since the new F in B has private access, its scope only includes the class body of B and does not extend to C. Therefore, the declaration of F in C is permitted to override the F inherited from A. *end example*]

#### 17.5.5 Sealed methods

When an instance method declaration includes a seal ed modifier, that method is said to be a *sealed method*. A sealed method overrides an inherited virtual method with the same signature. A sealed method shall also be marked with the **override** modifier. Use of the seal ed modifier prevents a derived class from further overriding the method.

[Example: The example

```
using System;
class A
{
    public virtual void F() {
        Console. WriteLine("A. F");
    }
    public virtual void G() {
        Console. WriteLine("A. G");
    }
}
class B: A
{
    public sealed override void F() {
        Console. WriteLine("B. F");
    }
    public override void G() {
        Console. WriteLine("B. G");
    }
}
class C: B
{
    public override void G() {
        Console. WriteLine("C. G");
    }
}
```

the class B provides two override methods: an F method that has the  $seal\ ed$  modifier and a G method that does not. B's use of the  $seal\ ed$  modifier prevents C from further overriding F.  $end\ example$ 

## 17.5.6 Abstract methods

When an instance method declaration includes an abstract modifier, that method is said to be an *abstract method*. Although an abstract method is implicitly also a virtual method, it cannot have the modifier virtual.

An abstract method declaration introduces a new virtual method but does not provide an implementation of that method. Instead, non-abstract derived classes are required to provide their own implementation by overriding that method. Because an abstract method provides no actual implementation, the *method-body* of an abstract method simply consists of a semicolon.

Abstract method declarations are only permitted in abstract classes (§17.1.1.1).

```
[Example: In the following code
```

```
public abstract class Shape
{
    public abstract void Paint(Graphics g, Rectangle r);
}
```

```
public class Ellipse: Shape
{
    public override void Paint(Graphics g, Rectangle r) {
        g.DrawEllipse(r);
    }
}

public class Box: Shape
{
    public override void Paint(Graphics g, Rectangle r) {
        g.DrawRect(r);
    }
}
```

the Shape class defines the abstract notion of a geometrical shape object that can paint itself. The Paint method is abstract because there is no meaningful default implementation. The Ellipse and Box classes are concrete Shape implementations. Because these classes are non-abstract, they are required to override the Paint method and provide an actual implementation. *end example*]

It is a compile-time error for a *base-access* (§14.5.8) to reference an abstract method. [*Example*: In the following code

```
abstract class A
{
    public abstract void F();
}
class B: A
{
    public override void F() {
        base.F();
    }
}
// Error, base.F is abstract
}
```

a compile-time error is reported for the base. F() invocation because it references an abstract method. *end example*]

An abstract method declaration is permitted to override a virtual method. This allows an abstract class to force re-implementation of the method in derived classes, and makes the original implementation of the method unavailable. [Example: In the following code

```
using System;
class A
{
    public virtual void F() {
        Console. WriteLine("A. F");
    }
}
abstract class B: A
{
    public abstract override void F();
}
class C: B
{
    public override void F() {
        Console. WriteLine("C. F");
    }
}
```

class A declares a virtual method, class B overrides this method with an abstract method, and class C overrides that abstract method to provide its own implementation. *end example*]

#### 17.5.7 External methods

When a method declaration includes an extern modifier, the method is said to be an *external method*. External methods are implemented externally, typically using a language other than C#. Because an external

method declaration provides no actual implementation, the *method-body* of an external method simply consists of a semicolon.

The mechanism by which linkage to an external method is achieved, is implementation-defined.

[Example: The following example demonstrates the use of the extern modifier in combination with a DllImport attribute that specifies the name of the external library in which the method is implemented:

```
using System.Text;
using System.Security.Permissions;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;

class Path
{
    [DllImport("kernel 32", SetLastError=true)]
    static extern bool CreateDirectory(string name, SecurityAttribute sa);
    [DllImport("kernel 32", SetLastError=true)]
    static extern bool RemoveDirectory(string name);

    [DllImport("kernel 32", SetLastError=true)]
    static extern int GetCurrentDirectory(int bufSize, StringBuilder buf);
    [DllImport("kernel 32", SetLastError=true)]
    static extern bool SetCurrentDirectory(string name);
}
end example]
```

## 17.5.8 Method body

The *method-body* of a method declaration consists of either a *block* or a semicolon.

Abstract and external method declarations do not provide a method implementation, so their method bodies simply consist of a semicolon. For any other method, the method body is a block (§15.2) that contains the statements to execute when that method is invoked.

When the return type of a method is **voi** d, **return** statements (§15.9.4) in that method's body are not permitted to specify an expression. If execution of the method body of a void method completes normally (that is, control flows off the end of the method body), that method simply returns to its caller.

When the return type of a method is not **voi d**, each **return** statement in that method body shall specify an expression of a type that is implicitly convertible to the return type. The endpoint of the method body of a value-returning method shall not be reachable. In other words, in a value-returning method, control is not permitted to flow off the end of the method body.

[Example: In the following code

the value-returning F method results in a compile-time error because control can flow off the end of the method body. The G and H methods are correct because all possible execution paths end in a return statement that specifies a return value. *end example*]

## 17.5.9 Method overloading

The method overload resolution rules are described in §14.4.2.

# 17.6 Properties

A *property* is a member that provides access to a characteristic of an object or a class. Examples of properties include the length of a string, the size of a font, the caption of a window, the name of a customer, and so on. Properties are a natural extension of fields—both are named members with associated types, and the syntax for accessing fields and properties is the same. However, unlike fields, properties do not denote storage locations. Instead, properties have *accessors* that specify the statements to be executed when their values are read or written. Properties thus provide a mechanism for associating actions with the reading and writing of an object's characteristics; furthermore, they permit such characteristics to be computed.

Properties are declared using property-declarations:

```
property-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> property-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> type member-name { accessor-declarations }
property-modifiers:
   property-modifier
    property-modifiers property-modifier
property-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
    static
    vi rtual
    seal ed
    overri de
    abstract
    extern
```

A property-declaration can include a set of attributes (§24) and a valid combination of the four access modifiers (§17.2.3), the new (§17.2.2), static (§17.6.1), virtual (§17.5.3, §17.6.3), override (§17.5.4, §17.6.3), sealed (§17.5.5), abstract (§17.5.6, §17.6.3), and extern modifiers.

Property declarations are subject to the same rules as method declarations (§17.5) with regard to valid combinations of modifiers.

The *type* of a property declaration specifies the type of the property introduced by the declaration, and the *member-name* specifies the name of the property. Unless the property is an explicit interface member implementation, the *member-name* is simply an *identifier*. For an explicit interface member implementation (§20.4.1), the *member-name* consists of an *interface-type* followed by a ". " and an *identifier*.

The type of a property shall be at least as accessible as the property itself (§10.5.4).

The accessor-declarations, which shall be enclosed in "{" and "}" tokens, declare the accessors (§17.6.2) of the property. The accessors specify the executable statements associated with reading and writing the property.

Even though the syntax for accessing a property is the same as that for a field, a property is not classified as a variable. Thus, it is not possible to pass a property as a ref or out argument.

When a property declaration includes an extern modifier, the property is said to be an *external property*. Because an external property declaration provides no actual implementation, each of its *accessor-declarations* consists of a semicolon.

## 17.6.1 Static and instance properties

When a property declaration includes a static modifier, the property is said to be a *static property*. When no static modifier is present, the property is said to be an *instance property*.

A static property is not associated with a specific instance, and it is a compile-time error to refer to thi s in the accessors of a static property.

An instance property is associated with a given instance of a class, and that instance can be accessed as this (§14.5.7) in the accessors of that property.

The differences between static and instance members are discussed further in §17.2.5.

#### 17.6.2 Accessors

The *accessor-declarations* of a property specify the executable statements associated with reading and writing that property.

```
accessor-declarations:
    get-accessor-declaration set-accessor-declaration<sub>opt</sub>
    set-accessor-declaration get-accessor-declaration<sub>opt</sub>

get-accessor-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> accessor-modifier<sub>opt</sub> get accessor-body

set-accessor-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> accessor-modifier<sub>opt</sub> set accessor-body

accessor-modifier:
    protected
    internal
    private
    protected internal
    internal protected

accessor-body:
    block
    .
```

The accessor declarations consist of a *get-accessor-declaration*, a *set-accessor-declaration*, or both. Each accessor declaration consists of the token get or set followed by an *accessor-body*. For abstract and extern properties, the *accessor-body* for each accessor specified is simply a semicolon. For the accessors of any non-abstract, non-extern property, the *accessor-body* is a *block* that specifies the statements to be executed when the corresponding accessor is invoked.

A get accessor corresponds to a parameterless method with a return value of the property type. Except as the target of an assignment, when a property is referenced in an expression, the get accessor of the property is invoked to compute the value of the property (§14.1.1). The body of a get accessor shall conform to the rules for value-returning methods described in §17.5.8. In particular, all return statements in the body of a get accessor shall specify an expression that is implicitly convertible to the property type. Furthermore, the endpoint of a get accessor shall not be reachable.

A set accessor corresponds to a method with a single value parameter of the property type and a voi d return type. The implicit parameter of a set accessor is always named val ue. When a property is referenced as the target of an assignment (§14.14), or as the operand of ++ or -- (§14.5.9, 14.6.5), the set accessor is invoked with an argument that provides the new value (§14.14.1). The body of a set accessor shall conform to the rules for voi d methods described in §17.5.8. In particular, return statements in the set accessor body are not permitted to specify an expression. Since a set accessor implicitly has a parameter named val ue, it is a compile-time error for a local variable declaration or a local constant declaration in a set accessor to have that name.

Based on the presence or absence of the get and set accessors, a property is classified as follows:

- A property that includes both a get accessor and a set accessor is said to be a *read-write* property.
- A property that has only a get accessor is said to be a *read-only* property. It is a compile-time error for a read-only property to be the target of an assignment.
- A property that has only a set accessor is said to be a *write-only* property. Except as the target of a simple assignment, it is a compile-time error to reference a write-only property in an expression. [*Note*: The pre- and postfix ++ and - operators and compound assignment operators cannot be applied to write-only properties, since these operators read the old value of their operand before they write the new one. *end note*]

The use of accessor-modifiers is governed by the following restrictions:

- An accessor-modifier cannot be used in an interface or in an explicit interface member implementation.
- For a property or indexer that has no **overri de** modifier, an *accessor-modifier* is permitted only if the property or indexer has both a **get** and **set** accessor, and then is permitted only on one of those accessors.
- For a property or indexer that includes an **override** modifier, the *accessor-modifier* of an accessor shall match the *accessor-modifier*, if any, of the accessor being overridden.
- The *accessor-modifier* shall declare an accessibility that is strictly more restrictive than the declared accessibility of the property or indexer itself. To be precise:
  - o If the property or indexer has a declared accessibility of public, any accessor-modifier can be used.
  - o If the property or indexer has a declared accessibility of protected internal, the accessor-modifier can be internal, protected, or private.
  - o If the property or indexer has a declared accessibility of internal or protected, the accessor-modifier shall be private.
  - o If the property or indexer has a declared accessibility of private, no accessor-modifier shall be used.

If an accessor has an *accessor-modifier*, the accessibility domain (§10.5.2) of the accessor is determined using the declared accessibility of the *accessor-modifier*. If an accessor does not have an *accessor-modifier*, the accessibility domain of the accessor is determined from the declared accessibility of the property or indexer.

[Example: In the following code

```
public class Button: Control
{
    private string caption;
    public string Caption {
        get {
            return caption;
        }
        set {
            if (caption != value) {
                 caption = value;
                 Repaint();
            }
        }
        public override void Paint(Graphics g, Rectangle r) {
            // Painting code goes here
        }
}
```

the **Button** control declares a public **Capti on** property. The **get** accessor of the **Capti on** property returns the string stored in the private **capti on** field. The **set** accessor checks if the new value is different from the current value, and if so, it stores the new value and repaints the control. Properties often follow the pattern shown above: The **get** accessor simply returns a value stored in a private field, and the **set** accessor

modifies that private field and then performs any additional actions required to update fully the state of the object.

Given the Button class above, the following is an example of use of the Capti on property:

Here, the set accessor is invoked by assigning a value to the property, and the get accessor is invoked by referencing the property in an expression. *end example*]

The get and set accessors of a property are not distinct members, and it is not possible to declare the accessors of a property separately. [Example: The example

```
class A
{
    private string name;
    public string Name {
        get { return name; }
    }
    public string Name {
        set { name = value; }
    }
}
// Error, duplicate member name
```

does not declare a single read-write property. Rather, it declares two properties with the same name, one read-only and one write-only. Since two members declared in the same class cannot have the same name, the example causes a compile-time error to occur. *end example*]

When a derived class declares a property by the same name as an inherited property, the derived property hides the inherited property with respect to both reading and writing. [Example: In the following code

```
class A
{
    public int P {
        set {...}
    }
}
class B: A
{
    new public int P {
        get {...}
    }
}
```

the P property in B hides the P property in A with respect to both reading and writing. Thus, in the statements

the assignment to b. P causes a compile-time error to be reported, since the read-only P property in B hides the write-only P property in A. Note, however, that a cast can be used to access the hidden P property.  $end\ example$ 

Unlike public fields, properties provide a separation between an object's internal state and its public interface. [*Example*: Consider the following:

```
class Label
{
   private int x, y;
   private string caption;
```

```
public Label(int x, int y, string caption) {
    this.x = x;
    this.y = y;
    this.caption = caption;
}

public int X {
    get { return x; }
}

public int Y {
    get { return y; }
}

public Point Location {
    get { return new Point(x, y); }
}

public string Caption {
    get { return caption; }
}
```

Here, the Label class uses two int fields, x and y, to store its location. The location is publicly exposed both as an X and a Y property and as a Location property of type Point. If, in a future version of Label, it becomes more convenient to store the location as a Point internally, the change can be made without affecting the public interface of the class:

```
class Label
{
    private Point location;
    private string caption;

    public Label(int x, int y, string caption) {
        this.location = new Point(x, y);
        this.caption = caption;
    }

    public int X {
        get { return location.x; }
    }

    public int Y {
        get { return location.y; }
    }

    public Point Location {
        get { return location; }
    }

    public string Caption {
        get { return caption; }
}
```

Had x and y instead been public readonly fields, it would have been impossible to make such a change to the Label class. *end example*]

[Note: Exposing state through properties is not necessarily any less efficient than exposing fields directly. In particular, when a property is non-virtual and contains only a small amount of code, the execution environment might replace calls to accessors with the actual code of the accessors. This process is known as *inlining*, and it makes property access as efficient as field access, yet preserves the increased flexibility of properties. *end note*]

[Example: Since invoking a get accessor is conceptually equivalent to reading the value of a field, it is considered bad programming style for get accessors to have observable side-effects. In the example

```
class Counter
{
    private int next;
```

```
public int Next {
    get { return next++; }
}
```

the value of the Next property depends on the number of times the property has previously been accessed. Thus, accessing the property produces an observable side effect, and the property should be implemented as a method instead. *end example*]

[*Note*: The "no side-effects" convention for get accessors doesn't mean that get accessors should always be written simply to return values stored in fields. Indeed, get accessors often compute the value of a property by accessing multiple fields or invoking methods. However, a properly designed get accessor performs no actions that cause observable changes in the state of the object. *end note*]

Properties can be used to delay initialization of a resource until the moment it is first referenced. [Example:

```
using System. IO;
public class Console
   private static TextReader reader;
   private static TextWriter writer;
   private static TextWriter error;
   public static TextReader In {
      get
            (reader == null) {
            reader = new StreamReader(Consol e. OpenStandardInput());
         return reader;
      }
   }
   public static TextWriter Out {
      get {
   if
            (writer == null) {
            writer = new StreamWriter(Consol e. OpenStandardOutput());
         return writer;
      }
   }
   public static TextWriter Error {
      get
            (error == null) {
            error = new StreamWriter(Console.OpenStandardError());
         return error;
      }
   }
```

The Consol e class contains three properties, In, Out, and Error, that represent the standard input, output, and error devices, respectively. By exposing these members as properties, the Consol e class can delay their initialization until they are actually used. For example, upon first referencing the Out property, as in

```
Console. Out. WriteLine("hello, world");
```

the underlying TextWriter for the output device is created. However, if the application makes no reference to the In and Error properties, then no objects are created for those devices. *end example*]

The presence of an *accessor-modifier* never affects member lookup (§14.3) or overload resolution (§14.4.2). The modifiers on the property or indexer always determine which property or indexer is bound to, regardless of the context of the access.

Once a particular property or indexer has been selected, the accessibility domains of the specific accessors involved are used to determine if that usage is valid:

• If the usage is as a value (§14.1.1), the get accessor shall exist and be accessible.

- If the usage is as the target of a simple assignment (§14.14.1), the set accessor shall exist and be accessible.
- If the usage is as the target of compound assignment (§14.14.2), or as the target of the ++ or operators (§14.5.9, §14.6.5), both the get accessors and the set accessor shall exist and be accessible.

[Example: In the following example, the property A. Text is hidden by the property B. Text, even in contexts where only the set accessor is called. In contrast, the property B. Count is not accessible to class M, so the accessible property A. Count is used instead.

```
class A
   public string Text {
       get { return "hello"; }
set { }
   }
   public int Count {
       get { return 5; }
set { }
}
class B: A
   private string text = "goodbye";
   private int count = 0;
   new public string Text {
       get { return text; }
       protected set { text = value; }
   new protected int Count {
       get { return count; }
set { count = value; }
   }
}
class M
   static void Main() {
       B b = new B();
       b. Count = 12;
                                // Calls A. Count set accessor
                                // Calls A. Count get accessor
// Error, B. Text set accessor not accessible
       int i = b. Count;
       b. Text = "howdy";
                                // Calls B. Text get accessor
       string s = b. Text;
   }
}
```

end example]

An accessor that is used to implement an interface cannot have an *accessor-modifier*. However, if only one accessor is used to implement an interface, the other accessor can be declared with an *accessor-modifier*: [Example:

```
public interface I
{
    string Prop { get; }
}

public class C: I
{
    public string Prop {
        get { return "April"; } // Shall not have a modifier here
        internal set {...} // 0k, because I. Prop has no set accessor
    }
}
```

end example]

#### 17.6.3 Virtual, sealed, override, and abstract accessors

A virtual property declaration specifies that the accessors of the property are virtual. The virtual modifier applies to all non-private accessors of a property. When an accessor of a virtual property has the private accessor-modifier, the private accessor is implicitly not virtual.

An abstract property declaration specifies that the accessors of the property are virtual, but does not provide an actual implementation of the accessors. Instead, non-abstract derived classes are required to provide their own implementation for the accessors by overriding the property. Because an accessor for an abstract property declaration provides no actual implementation, its *accessor-body* simply consists of a semicolon. An abstract property shall not have a **pri vate** accessor.

A property declaration that includes both the abstract and override modifiers specifies that the property is abstract and overrides a base property. The accessors of such a property are also abstract.

Abstract property declarations are only permitted in abstract classes (§17.1.1.1). The accessors of an inherited virtual property can be overridden in a derived class by including a property declaration that specifies an override directive. This is known as an *overriding property declaration*. An overriding property declaration does not declare a new property. Instead, it simply specializes the implementations of the accessors of an existing virtual property.

An overriding property declaration shall specify the exact same accessibility modifiers, type, and name as the inherited property. If the inherited property has only a single accessor (i.e., if the inherited property is read-only or write-only), the overriding property shall include only that accessor. If the inherited property includes both accessors (i.e., if the inherited property is read-write), the overriding property can include either a single accessor or both accessors. If one of the inherited accessors is not accessible to the overriding type, the overriding property shall not include that accessor. In addition, the declared accessibility of the accessors shall match that of the overridden accessors. [Example:

```
public class B
  public virtual int P {
     protected set {...}
     get {...}
  get {...}
}
public class D: B
   public override int P {
     protected set {...}
                                Must specify protected here
                             // Must not have a modifier here
     get {...}
  public override int Q {
                                Error: inherited set is not accessible
     pri vate set {...}
                             // Must not have a modifier here
     get {...}
  }
}
```

end example]

An overriding property declaration can include the **seal ed** modifier. Use of this modifier prevents a derived class from further overriding the property. The accessors of a sealed property are also sealed.

Except for differences in declaration and invocation syntax, virtual, sealed, override, and abstract accessors behave exactly like virtual, sealed, override and abstract methods. Specifically, the rules described in §17.5.3, §17.5.4, §17.5.5, and §17.5.6 apply as if accessors were methods of a corresponding form:

• A get accessor corresponds to a parameterless method with a return value of the property type and the same modifiers as the containing property.

• A set accessor corresponds to a method with a single value parameter of the property type, a voi d return type, and the same modifiers as the containing property.

[Example: In the following code

```
abstract class A
{
   int y;
   public virtual int X {
      get { return 0; }
   }
   public virtual int Y {
      get { return y; }
      set { y = value; }
   }
   public abstract int Z { get; set; }
}
```

**X** is a virtual read-only property, **Y** is a virtual read-write property, and **Z** is an abstract read-write property. Because **Z** is abstract, the containing class **A** shall also be declared abstract.

A class that derives from A is show below:

```
class B: A
{
   int z;
   public override int X {
      get { return base. X + 1; }
   }
   public override int Y {
      set { base. Y = value < 0? 0: value; }
   }
   public override int Z {
      get { return z; }
      set { z = value; }
   }
}</pre>
```

Here, the declarations of **X**, **Y**, and **Z** are overriding property declarations. Each property declaration exactly matches the accessibility modifiers, type, and name of the corresponding inherited property. The get accessor of **X** and the set accessor of **Y** use the base keyword to access the inherited accessors. The declaration of **Z** overrides both abstract accessors—thus, there are no outstanding abstract function members in **B**, and **B** is permitted to be a non-abstract class. *end example*]

#### 17.7 Events

An *event* is a member that enables an object or class to provide notifications. Clients can attach executable code for events by supplying *event handlers*.

Events are declared using event-declarations:

```
event-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> event-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> event type variable-declarators;
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> event-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> event type member-name
    { event-accessor-declarations }

event-modifiers:
    event-modifier
    event-modifiers event-modifier
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
event-modifier:
   new
   publ i c
   protected
   internal
   pri vate
   static
   vi rtual
   seal ed
   overri de
   abstract
   extern
event-accessor-declarations:
   add-accessor-declaration remove-accessor-declaration
   remove-accessor-declaration add-accessor-declaration
add-accessor-declaration:
   attributesopt add block
remove-accessor-declaration:
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> remove block
```

An *event-declaration* can include a set of *attributes* ( $\S24$ ) and a valid combination of the four access modifiers ( $\S17.2.3$ ), the new ( $\S17.2.2$ ), static ( $\S17.5.2$ ,  $\S17.7.3$ ), virtual ( $\S17.5.3$ ,  $\S17.7.4$ ), override ( $\S17.5.4$ ,  $\S17.7.4$ ), seal ed ( $\S17.5.5$ ), abstract ( $\S17.5.6$ ,  $\S17.7.4$ ), and extern modifiers.

Event declarations are subject to the same rules as method declarations (§17.5) with regard to valid combinations of modifiers.

The *type* of an event declaration shall be a *delegate-type* (§11.2), and that *delegate-type* shall be at least as accessible as the event itself (§10.5.4).

An event declaration can include *event-accessor-declarations*. However, if it does not, for non-extern, non-abstract events, the compiler shall supply them automatically (§17.7.1); for extern events, the accessors are provided externally.

An event declaration that omits *event-accessor-declarations* defines one or more events—one for each of the *variable-declarators*. The attributes and modifiers apply to all of the members declared by such an *event-declaration*.

It is a compile-time error for an *event-declaration* to include both the abstract modifier and *variable-initializers* or brace-delimited *event-accessor-declarations*.

When an event declaration includes an **extern** modifier, the event is said to be an **external event**. Because an external event declaration provides no actual implementation, it is an error for it to include both the **extern** modifier and **event-accessor-declarations**.

An event can be used as the left-hand operand of the += and -= operators. These operators are used, respectively, to attach event handlers to, or to remove event handlers from an event, and the access modifiers of the event control the contexts in which such operations are permitted.

The only operations that are permitted on an event by code that is outside the type in which that event is declared, are += and -=. Therefore, while such code can add and remove handlers for an event, it cannot directly obtain or modify the underlying list of event handlers. In an operation of the form  $\mathbf{x} += \mathbf{y}$  or  $\mathbf{x} -= \mathbf{y}$ , when  $\mathbf{x}$  is an event and the reference takes place outside the type that contains the declaration of  $\mathbf{x}$ , the result of the operation has type  $\mathbf{voi}$  d (as opposed to having the type of  $\mathbf{x}$ , with the value of  $\mathbf{x}$  after the assignment). This rule prohibits external code from indirectly examining the underlying delegate of an event.

[Example: The following example shows how event handlers are attached to instances of the Button class:

```
public delegate void EventHandler(object sender, EventArgs e);
public class Button: Control
   public event EventHandler Click;
public class LoginDialog: Form
   Button OkButton;
   Button Cancel Button;
   public LoginDialog() {
      OkButton = new Button(...);
      OkButton. Click += OkButtonClick;
      Cancel Button = new Button(...);
      Cancel Button. Click += Cancel ButtonClick;
   }
   void OkButtonClick(object sender, EventArgs e) {
      // Handle OkButton. Click event
   void Cancel ButtonClick(object sender, EventArgs e) {
      // Handle Cancel Button. Click event
}
```

Here, the Logi nDi al og instance constructor creates two Button instances and attaches event handlers to the Click events. *end example*]

#### 17.7.1 Field-like events

Within the program text of the class or struct that contains the declaration of an event, certain events can be used like fields. To be used in this way, an event shall not be abstract or extern, and shall not explicitly include *event-accessor-declarations*. Such an event can be used in any context that permits a field. The field contains a delegate (§22), which refers to the list of event handlers that have been added to the event. If no event handlers have been added, the field contains null.

[Example: In the following code

```
public delegate void EventHandler(object sender, EventArgs e);
public class Button: Control
{
   public event EventHandler Click;
   protected void OnClick(EventArgs e) {
        EventHandler toRaise = Click;
        if (toRaise != null)
            toRaise(this, e);
   }
   public void Reset() {
      Click = null;
   }
}
```

Click is used as a field within the Button class. As the example demonstrates, the field can be examined, modified, and used in delegate invocation expressions. The OnClick method in the Button class "raises" the Click event. The notion of raising an event is precisely equivalent to invoking the delegate represented by the event—thus, there are no special language constructs for raising events. Note that the delegate invocation is preceded by a check that ensures the delegate is non-null and that the check is made on a local copy to ensure thread safety.

Outside the declaration of the **Button** class, the **Click** member can only be used on the left-hand side of the += and -= operators, as in

```
b. Click += new EventHandler(...);
```

which appends a delegate to the invocation list of the Cl i ck event, and

```
b. Click -= new EventHandler(...);
```

which removes a delegate from the invocation list of the Cl i ck event. end example]

When compiling a field-like event, the compiler automatically creates storage to hold the delegate, and creates accessors for the event that add or remove event handlers to the delegate field. In order to be thread-safe:

- The addition and removal operations on all instance events of a class shall be done while holding the lock (§15.12) on an object uniquely associated with the containing object (thi s). [*Note*: For example, the unique object may be the containing object itself, or a hidden instance field. *end note*]
- The addition and removal operations on all static events of a class shall be done while holding the lock (§15.12) on an object uniquely associated with the containing class. [*Note*: For example, the unique object may be the type object (§14.5.11) for the containing class, or a hidden static field. *end note*]

[Note: Thus, instance event declarations of the form:

```
class X
          public event D Ev1;
          public event D Ev2;
could be compiled to:
       class X
          public event D Ev1 {
               add {
                    lock(this) { __ev1 = __ev1 + value; }
               remove {
                   lock(this) { _ev1 = _ev1 - value; }
          }
          public event D Ev2 {
               add {
                    lock(this) { __ev2 = __ev2 + value; }
               remove {
    lock(this) { __ev2 = __ev2 - value; }
          }
          private D \_ev1; // field to hold a delegate
          private D __ev2;
                              // field to hold a delegate
or to:
       class X
          public event D Ev1 {
               add {
                    lock(kev) { ev1 = ev1 + value; }
               remove {
                    lock(\underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} key) { \underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} ev1 = \underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} ev1 - value; }
          }
          public event D Ev2 {
               add {
    lock(__key) { __ev2 = __ev2 + value; }
```

```
remove {
                        lock(__key) { __ev2 = __ev2 - value; }
            private D \_ev1; // field to hold a delegate private D \_ev2; // field to hold a delegate
            private readonly object __key = new object();
Similarly, static event declarations of the form:
        class X
              public static event D Ev1;
public static event D Ev2;
could be compiled to:
        class X
              public static event D Ev1
                    add {
    lock(typeof(X)) { __ev1 = __ev1 + value; }
                    remove {
                         lock(typeof(X)) { \_ev1 = \_ev1 - value; }
              }
              public\ static\ event\ D\ Ev2
                    add {
    lock(typeof(X)) { __ev2 = __ev2 + value; }
                    remove {
                         lock(typeof(X)) { \_ev2 = \_ev2 - value; }
              }
              private static D \_ev1; // field to hold a delegate private static D \_ev2; // field to hold a delegate
or to:
        class X
              public static event D Ev1
{
                    add {
    lock(__key) { __ev1 = __ev1 + value; }
                    remove {
                         lock(\underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} key) { \underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} ev1 = \underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} ev1 - value; }
              public static event D Ev2
                    add {
    lock(__key) { __ev2 = __ev2 + value; }
                    remove {
                         lock(\underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} key) { \underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} ev2 = \underline{\hspace{0.1cm}} ev2 - value; }
              }
```

```
private static D __ev1; // field to hold a delegate
private static D __ev2; // field to hold a delegate
private static readonly object __key = new object();
}
```

Within class X, references to Ev1 and Ev2 are compiled to reference the hidden fields \_\_ev1 and \_\_ev2 instead. The names \_\_ev1 and \_\_ev2 are arbitrary; the hidden fields could have any name or no name at all. end note]

[Note: Access to a field-like event contained within a struct type is not thread-safe, end note]

#### 17.7.2 Event accessors

[Note: Event declarations typically omit event-accessor-declarations, as in the Button example above. One situation for doing so involves the case in which the storage cost of one field per event is not acceptable. In such cases, a class can include event-accessor-declarations and use a private mechanism for storing the list of event handlers. Similarly, in cases where the handling of an event requires access to external resources, event accessors can be used to manage these resources. end note]

The *event-accessor-declarations* of an event specify the executable statements associated with adding and removing event handlers.

The accessor declarations consist of an *add-accessor-declaration* and a *remove-accessor-declaration*. Each accessor declaration consists of the token **add** or **remove** followed by a *block*. The *block* associated with an *add-accessor-declaration* specifies the statements to execute when an event handler is added, and the *block* associated with a *remove-accessor-declaration* specifies the statements to execute when an event handler is removed.

Each *add-accessor-declaration* and *remove-accessor-declaration* corresponds to a method with a single value parameter of the event type, and a **voi** d return type. The implicit parameter of an event accessor is named **val** ue. When an event is used in an event assignment, the appropriate event accessor is used. Specifically, if the assignment operator is += then the add accessor is used, and if the assignment operator is -= then the remove accessor is used. In either case, the right-hand operand of the assignment operator is used as the argument to the event accessor. The block of an *add-accessor-declaration* or a *remove-accessor-declaration* shall conform to the rules for **voi** d methods described in §17.5.8. In particular, **return** statements in such a block are not permitted to specify an expression.

Since an event accessor implicitly has a parameter named val ue, it is a compile-time error for a local variable or constant declared in an event accessor to have that name.

[Example: In the following code

```
class Control: Component
{
    // Unique keys for events
    static readonly object mouseDownEventKey = new object();
    static readonly object mouseUpEventKey = new object();

    // Return event handler associated with key
    protected Delegate GetEventHandler(object key) {...}

    // Add event handler associated with key
    protected void AddEventHandler(object key, Delegate handler) {...}

    // Remove event handler associated with key
    protected void RemoveEventHandler(object key, Delegate handler) {...}

    // MouseDown event
    public event MouseEventHandler MouseDown {
        add { AddEventHandler(mouseDownEventKey, value); }
        remove { RemoveEventHandler(mouseDownEventKey, value); }
}
```

```
// MouseUp event
public event MouseEventHandler MouseUp {
   add { AddEventHandler(mouseUpEventKey, value); }
   remove { RemoveEventHandler(mouseUpEventKey, value); }
}

// Invoke the MouseUp event
protected void OnMouseUp(MouseEventArgs args) {
   MouseEventHandler handler;
   handler = (MouseEventHandler)GetEventHandler(mouseUpEventKey);
   if (handler!= null)
        handler(this, args);
}
```

the **Control** class implements an internal storage mechanism for events. The **AddEventHandl** er method associates a delegate value with a key, the **GetEventHandl** er method returns the delegate currently associated with a key, and the **RemoveEventHandl** er method removes a delegate as an event handler for the specified event. Presumably, the underlying storage mechanism is designed such that there is no cost for associating a **null** delegate value with a key, and thus unhandled events consume no storage. *end example*]

#### 17.7.3 Static and instance events

When an event declaration includes a static modifier, the event is said to be a *static event*. When no static modifier is present, the event is said to be an *instance event*.

A static event is not associated with a specific instance, and it is a compile-time error to refer to this in the accessors of a static event.

An instance event is associated with a given instance of a class, and this instance can be accessed as this (§14.5.7) in the accessors of that event.

When an event is referenced in a *member-access* (§14.5.4) of the form E. M, if M is a static event, E shall denote a type, and if M is an instance event, E shall denote an instance.

The differences between static and instance members are discussed further in §17.2.5.

## 17.7.4 Virtual, sealed, override, and abstract accessors

A vi rtual event declaration specifies that the accessors of that event are virtual. The vi rtual modifier applies to both accessors of an event.

An abstract event declaration specifies that the accessors of the event are virtual, but does not provide an actual implementation of the accessors. Instead, non-abstract derived classes are required to provide their own implementation for the accessors by overriding the event. Because an accessor for an abstract event declaration provides no actual implementation, its *accessor-body* simply consists of a semicolon.

An event declaration that includes both the abstract and override modifiers specifies that the event is abstract and overrides a base event. The accessors of such an event are also abstract.

Abstract event declarations are only permitted in abstract classes (§17.1.1.1).

The accessors of an inherited virtual event can be overridden in a derived class by including an event declaration that specifies an override modifier. This is known as an *overriding event declaration*. An overriding event declaration does not declare a new event. Instead, it simply specializes the implementations of the accessors of an existing virtual event.

An overriding event declaration shall specify the exact same accessibility modifiers, type, and name as the overridden event.

An overriding event declaration can include the **seal ed** modifier. Use of this modifier prevents a derived class from further overriding the event. The accessors of a sealed event are also sealed.

It is a compile-time error for an overriding event declaration to include a new modifier.

Except for differences in declaration and invocation syntax, virtual, sealed, override, and abstract accessors behave exactly like virtual, sealed, override and abstract methods. Specifically, the rules described in §17.5.3, §17.5.4, §17.5.5, and §17.5.6 apply as if accessors were methods of a corresponding form. Each accessor corresponds to a method with a single value parameter of the event type, a **voi d** return type, and the same modifiers as the containing event.

#### 17.8 Indexers

An *indexer* is a member that enables an object to be indexed similar to an array. Indexers are declared using *indexer-declarations*:

```
indexer-declaration:
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> indexer-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> indexer-declarator { accessor-declarations }
indexer-modifiers:
   indexer-modifier
   indexer-modifiers indexer-modifier
indexer-modifier:
   new
   publ i c
   protected
   i nternal
   pri vate
   vi rtual
   seal ed
   overri de
   abstract
   extern
indexer-declarator:
   type this [ formal-parameter-list ]
   type interface-type . this [ formal-parameter-list ]
```

An *indexer-declaration* can include a set of *attributes* (§24) and a valid combination of the four access modifiers (§17.2.3), the new (§17.2.2), vi rtual (§17.5.3), overri de (§17.5.4), seal ed (§17.5.5), abstract (§17.5.6), and extern (§17.5.7) modifiers.

Indexer declarations are subject to the same rules as method declarations (§17.5) with regard to valid combinations of modifiers, with the one exception being that the static modifier is not permitted on an indexer declaration.

The modifiers virtual, override, and abstract are mutually exclusive except in one case. The abstract and override modifiers can be used together so that an abstract indexer can override a virtual one.

The *type* of an indexer declaration specifies the element type of the indexer introduced by the declaration. Unless the indexer is an explicit interface member implementation, the *type* is followed by the keyword thi s. For an explicit interface member implementation, the *type* is followed by an *interface-type*, a ". ", and the keyword thi s. Unlike other members, indexers do not have user-defined names.

The *formal-parameter-list* specifies the parameters of the indexer. The formal parameter list of an indexer corresponds to that of a method (§17.5.1), except that at least one parameter shall be specified, and that the ref and out parameter modifiers are not permitted.

The *type* of an indexer and each of the types referenced in the *formal-parameter-list* shall be at least as accessible as the indexer itself (§10.5.4).

The accessor-declarations (§17.6.2), which shall be enclosed in "{" and "}" tokens, declare the accessors of the indexer. The accessors specify the executable statements associated with reading and writing indexer elements.

Even though the syntax for accessing an indexer element is the same as that for an array element, an indexer element is not classified as a variable. Thus, it is not possible to pass an indexer element as a ref or out argument.

The *formal-parameter-list* of an indexer defines the signature (§10.6) of the indexer. Specifically, the signature of an indexer consists of the number and types of its formal parameters. The element type and names of the formal parameters are not part of an indexer's signature.

The signature of an indexer shall differ from the signatures of all other indexers declared in the same class.

Indexers and properties are very similar in concept, but differ in the following ways:

- A property is identified by its name, whereas an indexer is identified by its signature.
- A property is accessed through a *simple-name* (§14.5.2) or a *member-access* (§14.5.4), whereas an indexer element is accessed through an *element-access* (§14.5.6.2).
- A property can be a static member, whereas an indexer is always an instance member.
- A get accessor of a property corresponds to a method with no parameters, whereas a get accessor of an indexer corresponds to a method with the same formal parameter list as the indexer.
- A set accessor of a property corresponds to a method with a single parameter named value, whereas a set accessor of an indexer corresponds to a method with the same formal parameter list as the indexer, plus an additional parameter named value.
- It is a compile-time error for an indexer accessor to declare a local variable or local constant with the same name as an indexer parameter.
- In an overriding property declaration, the inherited property is accessed using the syntax base. P, where P is the property name. In an overriding indexer declaration, the inherited indexer is accessed using the syntax base [E], where E is a comma-separated list of expressions.

Aside from these differences, all rules defined in §17.6.2 and §17.6.3 apply to indexer accessors as well as to property accessors.

When an indexer declaration includes an extern modifier, the indexer is said to be an *external indexer*. Because an external indexer declaration provides no actual implementation, each of its *accessor-declarations* consists of a semicolon.

[Example: The example below declares a **Bi tArray** class that implements an indexer for accessing the individual bits in the bit array.

```
using System;
class BitArray
{
   int[] bits;
   int length;
   public BitArray(int length) {
      if (length < 0) throw new ArgumentException();
      bits = new int[((length - 1) >> 5) + 1];
      this.length = length;
   }
   public int Length {
      get { return length; }
}
```

```
public bool this[int index] {
      ; {
i f
   get
          (index < 0 \mid | index >= length) {
         throw new IndexOutOfRangeException():
      return (bits[index >> 5] & 1 << index) != 0;
   }
   set
         (index < 0 \mid | index >= length) {
         throw new IndexOutOfRangeException();
         (value) {
         bits[index >> 5] |= 1 << index;
      else {
         bits[index \gg 5] &= \sim(1 \ll index);
   }
}
```

An instance of the **BitArray** class consumes substantially less memory than a corresponding **bool** [] (since each value of the former occupies only one bit instead of the latter's one byte), but it permits the same operations as a **bool** [].

The following CountPri mes class uses a Bi tArray and the classical "sieve" algorithm to compute the number of primes between 2 and a given maximum:

Note that the syntax for accessing elements of the **BitArray** is precisely the same as for a **bool** []. *end example*]

[*Example*: The following example shows a 26×10 grid class that has an indexer with two parameters. The first parameter is required to be an upper- or lowercase letter in the range A–Z, and the second is required to be an integer in the range 0–9.

```
using System;
class Grid
{
  const int NumRows = 26;
  const int NumCols = 10;
  int[,] cells = new int[NumRows, NumCols];
```

```
public int this[char c, int colm]
{
    get {
        c = Char.ToUpper(c);
        if (c < 'A' | c > 'Z') {
            throw new ArgumentException();
        }
        if (colm < 0 || colm >= NumCols) {
            throw new IndexOutOfRangeException();
        }
        return cells[c - 'A', colm];
    }
    set {
        c = Char.ToUpper(c);
        if (c < 'A' | c > 'Z') {
            throw new ArgumentException();
        }
        if (colm < 0 || colm >= NumCols) {
            throw new IndexOutOfRangeException();
        }
        cells[c - 'A', colm] = value;
    }
}
end example]
```

#### 17.8.1 Indexer overloading

The indexer overload resolution rules are described in §14.4.2.

## 17.9 Operators

An *operator* is a member that defines the meaning of an expression operator that can be applied to instances of the class. Operators are declared using *operator-declarations*:

```
operator-declaration:
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> operator-modifiers operator-declarator operator-body
operator-modifiers:
   operator-modifier
   operator-modifiers operator-modifier
operator-modifier:
   public
   stati c
   extern
operator-declarator:
   unary-operator-declarator
   binary-operator-declarator
   conversion-operator-declarator
unary-operator-declarator:
   type operator overloadable-unary-operator ( type identifier )
overloadable-unary-operator: one of
             !
                        ++
                                    true
                                              false
binary-operator-declarator:
   type operator overloadable-binary-operator (type identifier, type identifier)
```

There are three categories of overloadable operators: Unary operators (§17.9.1), binary operators (§17.9.2), and conversion operators (§17.9.3).

When an operator declaration includes an **extern** modifier, the operator is said to be an **external operator**. Because an external operator provides no actual implementation, its **operator-body** consists of a semi-colon. For all other operators, the **operator-body** consists of a **block**, which specifies the statements to execute when the operator is invoked. The **block** of an operator shall conform to the rules for value-returning methods described in §17.5.8.

The following rules apply to all operator declarations:

- An operator declaration shall include both a public and a static modifier.
- The parameter(s) of an operator shall be value parameters. It is a compile-time error for an operator declaration to specify ref or out parameters.
- The signature of an operator (§17.9.1, §17.9.2, §17.9.3) shall differ from the signatures of all other operators declared in the same class.
- All types referenced in an operator declaration shall be at least as accessible as the operator itself (§10.5.4).
- It is an error for the same modifier to appear multiple times in an operator declaration.

Each operator category imposes additional restrictions, as described in the following subclauses.

Like other members, operators declared in a base class are inherited by derived classes. Because operator declarations always require the class or struct in which the operator is declared to participate in the signature of the operator, it is not possible for an operator declared in a derived class to hide an operator declared in a base class. Thus, the **new** modifier is never required, and therefore never permitted, in an operator declaration.

Additional information on unary and binary operators can be found in §14.2.

Additional information on conversion operators can be found in §13.4.

#### 17.9.1 Unary operators

The following rules apply to unary operator declarations, where T denotes the class or struct type that contains the operator declaration:

- A unary +, -, !, or ~ operator shall take a single parameter of type T or T? and can return any type.
- A unary ++ or - operator shall take a single parameter of type T or T? and shall return type that same type.
- A unary true or fal se operator shall take a single parameter of type T or T? and shall return type bool.

The signature of a unary operator consists of the operator token (+, -, !, ~, ++, --, true, or fal se) and the type of the single formal parameter. The return type is not part of a unary operator's signature, nor is the name of the formal parameter.

The true and fal se unary operators require pair-wise declaration. A compile-time error occurs if a class declares one of these operators without also declaring the other. The true and fal se operators are described further in §14.17.

[Example: The following example shows an implementation and subsequent usage of operator++ for an integer vector class:

```
public class IntVector
   public int Length { ... } // read-only property
public int this[int index] { ... } // read-write indexer
public IntVector(int vectorLength) { ... }
    public IntVector(int vectorLength) { ... }
public static IntVector operator++(IntVector iv) {
        IntVector temp = new IntVector(iv. Length);
        for (int i = 0; i < iv. Length; ++i)
            temp[i] = iv[i] + 1;
        return temp;
    }
}
class Test
    static void Main() {
        IntVector iv1 = new IntVector(4);
                                                        // vector of 4x0
        IntVector iv2;
        iv2 = iv1++
                            // iv2 contains 4x0, iv1 contains 4x1
                            // iv2 contains 4x2, iv1 contains 4x2
        iv2 = ++iv1;
}
```

Note how the operator method returns the value produced by adding 1 to the operand, just like the postfix increment and decrement operators (§14.5.9), and the prefix increment and decrement operators (§14.6.5). Unlike in C++, this method need not, and, in fact, should not, modify the value of its operand directly. *end example*]

#### 17.9.2 Binary operators

The following rules apply to binary operator declarations, where T denotes the class or struct type that contains the operator declaration:

- A binary non-shift operator must take two parameters, at least one of which must have type T or T?, and can return any type.
- A binary << or >> operator (§14.8) must take two parameters, the first of which must have type T or T? and the second of which must have type i nt or i nt?, and can return any type.

The signature of a binary operator consists of the operator token  $(+, -, *, /, %, \&, |, ^, <<, right-shift, ==, !=, >, <, >=, or <=) and the types of the two formal parameters. The return type and the names of the formal parameters are not part of a binary operator's signature.$ 

Certain binary operators require pair-wise declaration. For every declaration of either operator of a pair, there shall be a matching declaration of the other operator of the pair. Two operator declarations match when they have the same return type and the same type for each parameter. The following operators require pairwise declaration:

- operator == and operator !=
- operator > and operator <
- operator >= and operator <=

#### 17.9.3 Conversion operators

A conversion operator declaration introduces a *user-defined conversion operator* (§13.4), which augments the pre-defined implicit and explicit conversions.

A conversion operator declaration that includes the **i mpl i ci t** keyword introduces a user-defined implicit conversion operator. Implicit conversions can occur in a variety of situations, including function member invocations, cast expressions, and assignments. This is described further in §13.1.

A conversion operator declaration that includes the **expl i ci t** keyword introduces a user-defined explicit conversion operator. Explicit conversions can occur in cast expressions, and are described further in §13.2.

A conversion operator converts from a source type, indicated by the parameter type of the conversion operator, to a target type, indicated by the return type of the conversion operator. A class or struct is permitted to declare a conversion from a source type S to a target type T only if all of the following are true, where S0 and T0 are the types that result from removing the trailing? modifiers, if any, from S and T:

- S0 and T0 are different types.
- Either S0 or T0 is the class or struct type in which the operator declaration takes place.
- Neither S0 nor T0 is an *interface-type*.
- Excluding user-defined conversions, a conversion does not exist from S to T or from T to S.

From the second rule it follows that a conversion operator shall convert either to or from the class or struct type in which the operator is declared. [*Example*: It is possible for a class or struct type C to define a conversion from C to i nt and from i nt to C, but not from i nt to bool . *end example*]

It is not possible to redefine a pre-defined conversion. Thus, conversion operators are not allowed to convert from or to **obj** ect because implicit and explicit conversions already exist between **obj** ect and all other types. Likewise, neither the source nor the target types of a conversion can be a base type of the other, since a conversion would then already exist.

User-defined conversions are not allowed to convert from or to *interface-types*. In particular, this restriction ensures that no user-defined transformations occur when converting to an *interface-type*, and that a conversion to an *interface-type* succeeds only if the object being converted actually implements the specified *interface-type*.

The signature of a conversion operator consists of the source type and the target type. (This is the only form of member for which the return type participates in the signature.) The **i mpl i ci t** or **expl i ci t** classification of a conversion operator is not part of the operator's signature. Thus, a class or struct cannot declare both an **i mpl i ci t** and an **expl i ci t** conversion operator with the same source and target types.

[*Note*: In general, user-defined implicit conversions should be designed to never throw exceptions and never lose information. If a user-defined conversion can give rise to exceptions (for example, because the source argument is out of range) or loss of information (such as discarding high-order bits), then that conversion should be defined as an explicit conversion. *end note*]

[Example: In the following code

```
using System;
public struct Digit
{
    byte value;
    public Digit(int value) {
        if (value < 0 || value > 9) throw new ArgumentException();
        this.value = value;
    }
    public static implicit operator byte(Digit d) {
        return d. value;
    }
}
```

```
public static explicit operator Digit(int n) {
    return new Digit(n);
}
```

the conversion operator from **Di** gi t to byte is implicit because it never throws exceptions or loses information, but the conversion operator from i nt to **Di** gi t is explicit since **Di** gi t can only represent a subset of the possible values of an i nt. *end example*]

#### 17.10 Instance constructors

An *instance constructor* is a member that implements the actions required to initialize an instance of a class. Instance constructors are declared using *constructor-declarations*:

```
constructor-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> constructor-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> constructor-declarator constructor-body
constructor-modifiers:
    constructor-modifier
    constructor-modifiers constructor-modifier
constructor-modifier:
    publ i c
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
    extern
constructor-declarator:
    identifier ( formal-parameter-list_{opt} ) constructor-initializer_{opt}
constructor-initializer:
    : base ( argument-list<sub>opt</sub> )
    : this ( argument-list<sub>opt</sub> )
constructor-body:
    block
```

A *constructor-declaration* can include a set of *attributes* (§24), a valid combination of the four access modifiers (§17.2.3), and an **extern** (§17.5.7) modifier. A constructor declaration is not permitted to include the same modifier multiple times.

The *identifier* of a *constructor-declarator* shall name the class in which the instance constructor is declared. If any other name is specified, a compile-time error occurs.

The optional *formal-parameter-list* of an instance constructor is subject to the same rules as the *formal-parameter-list* of a method (§17.5). The formal parameter list defines the signature (§10.6) of an instance constructor and governs the process whereby overload resolution (§14.4.2) selects a particular instance constructor in an invocation.

Each of the types referenced in the *formal-parameter-list* of an instance constructor shall be at least as accessible as the constructor itself (§10.5.4).

The optional *constructor-initializer* specifies another instance constructor to invoke before executing the statements given in the *constructor-body* of this instance constructor. This is described further in §17.10.1.

When a constructor declaration includes an extern modifier, the constructor is said to be an *external constructor*.

Because an external constructor declaration provides no actual implementation, its *constructor-body* consists of a semicolon. For all other constructors, the *constructor-body* consists of a *block*, which specifies the statements to initialize a new instance of the class. This corresponds exactly to the *block* of an instance method with a **voi** d return type (§17.5.8).

Instance constructors are not inherited. Thus, a class has no instance constructors other than those actually declared in the class. If a class contains no instance constructor declarations, a default instance constructor is automatically provided (§17.10.4).

Instance constructors are invoked by *object-creation-expressions* (§14.5.10.1) and through *constructor-initializers*.

#### 17.10.1 Constructor initializers

All instance constructors (except those for class **obj ect**) implicitly include an invocation of another instance constructor immediately before the *constructor-body*. The constructor to implicitly invoke is determined by the *constructor-initializer*:

- An instance constructor initializer of the form base (*argument-list<sub>opt</sub>*) causes an instance constructor from the direct base class to be invoked. That constructor is selected using *argument-list* and the overload resolution rules of §14.4.2. The set of candidate instance constructors consists of all accessible instance constructors declared in the direct base class, or the default constructor (§17.10.4), if no instance constructors are declared in the direct base class. If this set is empty, or if a single best instance constructor cannot be identified, a compile-time error occurs.
- An instance constructor initializer of the form this (argument-listopt) causes an instance constructor from the class itself to be invoked. The constructor is selected using argument-list and the overload resolution rules of §14.4.2. The set of candidate instance constructors consists of all accessible instance constructors declared in the class itself. If that set is empty, or if a single best instance constructor cannot be identified, a compile-time error occurs. If an instance constructor declaration includes a constructor initializer that invokes the constructor itself, a compile-time error occurs.

If an instance constructor has no constructor initializer, a constructor initializer of the form base() is implicitly provided. [*Note*: Thus, an instance constructor declaration of the form

```
C(...) {...}
```

is exactly equivalent to

```
C(...): base() {...}
```

end note]

The scope of the parameters given by the *formal-parameter-list* of an instance constructor declaration includes the constructor initializer of that declaration. Thus, a constructor initializer is permitted to access the parameters of the constructor. [Example:

```
class A
{
    public A(int x, int y) {}
}
class B: A
{
    public B(int x, int y): base(x + y, x - y) {}
}
```

end example]

An instance constructor initializer cannot access the instance being created. Therefore it is a compile-time error to reference **this** in an argument expression of the constructor initializer, as it is a compile-time error for an argument expression to reference any instance member through a *simple-name*.

#### 17.10.2 Instance variable initializers

When an instance constructor has no constructor initializer, or it has a constructor initializer of the form base(...), that constructor implicitly performs the initializations specified by the *variable-initializers* of the instance fields declared in its class. This corresponds to a sequence of assignments that are executed immediately upon entry to the constructor and before the implicit invocation of the direct base class

constructor. The variable initializers are executed in the textual order in which they appear in the class declaration (§17.4.5).

## 17.10.3 Constructor execution

Variable initializers are transformed into assignment statements, and these assignment statements are executed *before* the invocation of the base class instance constructor. This ordering ensures that all instance fields are initialized by their variable initializers before *any* statements that have access to that instance are executed. [*Example*:

```
using System;
class A
{
    public A() {
        PrintFields();
    }
    public virtual void PrintFields() {}
}
class B: A
{
    int x = 1;
    int y;
    public B() {
        y = -1;
    }
    public override void PrintFields() {
        Console. WriteLine("x = {0}, y = {1}", x, y);
    }
}
```

When new B() is used to create an instance of B, the following output is produced:

```
x = 1, \quad y = 0
```

The value of x is 1 because the variable initializer is executed before the base class instance constructor is invoked. However, the value of y is 0 (the default value of an int) because the assignment to y is not executed until after the base class constructor returns.

It is useful to think of instance variable initializers and constructor initializers as statements that are automatically inserted before the *constructor-body*. The example

```
using System. Collections;
class A
{
  int x = 1, y = -1, count;
  public A() {
     count = 0;
  }
  public A(int n) {
     count = n;
  }
}
class B: A
{
  double sqrt2 = Math. Sqrt(2.0);
  ArrayList items = new ArrayList(100);
  int max;
  public B(): this(100) {
    items. Add("default");
  }
```

```
public B(int n): base(n - 1) {
    max = n;
}
```

contains several variable initializers; it also contains constructor initializers of both forms (base and this). The example corresponds to the code shown below, where each comment indicates an automatically inserted statement (the syntax used for the automatically inserted constructor invocations isn't valid, but merely serves to illustrate the mechanism).

```
using System. Collections;
class A
{
   int x, y, count;
   public A() {
      x = 1;

y = -1;
                                      // Variable initializer
                                      // Variable initializer
                                      // Invoke object() constructor
      object();
      count = 0;
   public A(int n) {
      x = 1;
                                      // Variable initializer
      y = -1;
                                      // Variable initializer
                                      // Invoke object() constructor
      obj ect();
      count = n;
}
class B: A
   double sqrt2;
   ArrayList items;
   int max;
   public B(): this (100) {
      B(100)
                                      // Invoke B(int) constructor
      i tems. Add("default");
   public B(int n): base(n - 1) {
      sqrt2 = Math. Sqrt(2.0);
                                      // Variable initializer
      items = new ArrayList(100);
                                      // Variable initializer
      A(n-1);
                                      // Invoke A(int) constructor
      max = n;
}
```

end example]

#### 17.10.4 Default constructors

If a class contains no instance constructor declarations, a default instance constructor is automatically provided. That default constructor simply invokes the parameterless constructor of the direct base class. If the direct base class does not have an accessible parameterless instance constructor, a compile-time error occurs. If the class is abstract then the declared accessibility for the default constructor is protected. Otherwise, the declared accessibility for the default constructor is public. [*Note*: Thus, the default constructor is always of the form

```
protected C(): base() {}
or
    public C(): base() {}
where C is the name of the class. end note]
[Example: In the following code
```

```
class Message
{
    object sender;
    string text;
}
```

a default constructor is provided because the class contains no instance constructor declarations. Thus, the example is precisely equivalent to

```
class Message
{
    object sender;
    string text;
    public Message(): base() {}
}
end example]
```

#### 17.10.5 Private constructors

When a class declares only private instance constructors, it is not possible for other classes (that are not nested in the class) to derive from that class or to create instances of that class. [*Example*: Private instance constructors can be used to restrict instantiation of the class to a prescribed set of instances. For example:

```
public class Color
{
   private byte val;
   private Color(byte val) { this.val = val; }
   public static readonly Color Red = new Color(0);
   public static readonly Color Green = new Color(1);
   public static readonly Color Blue = new Color(2);
}
```

Since Col or's constructor is private, there will never be more than three instances of the Col or class, namely the ones stored in the static fields and returned by the static properties. *end example*]

At least one instance constructor shall be declared to suppress the automatic generation of a default constructor.

#### 17.10.6 Optional instance constructor parameters

[Note: The this(...) form of constructor initializer is commonly used in conjunction with overloading to implement optional instance constructor parameters. In the example

```
class Text
{
   public Text(): this(0, 0, null) {}
   public Text(int x, int y): this(x, y, null) {}
   public Text(int x, int y, string s) {
        // Actual constructor implementation
   }
}
```

the first two instance constructors merely provide the default values for the missing arguments. Both use a this(...) constructor initializer to invoke the third instance constructor, which actually does the work of initializing the new instance. The effect is that of optional constructor parameters:

```
Text t1 = new Text();
    Text t2 = new Text(5, 10);
    Text t3 = new Text(5, 20, "Hello");

end note]

// Same as Text(0, 0, null)
// Same as Text(5, 10, null)
```

#### 17.11 Static constructors

A *static constructor* is a member that implements the actions required to initialize a class. Static constructors are declared using *static-constructor-declarations*:

```
static-constructor-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> static-constructor-modifiers identifier ( ) static-constructor-body

static-constructor-modifiers:
    extern<sub>opt</sub> static
    static extern<sub>opt</sub>

static-constructor-body:
    block
```

A static-constructor-declaration can include a set of attributes (§24) and an extern modifier (§17.5.7).

The *identifier* of a *static-constructor-declaration* shall name the class in which the static constructor is declared. If any other name is specified, a compile-time error occurs.

When a static constructor declaration includes an extern modifier, the static constructor is said to be an external static constructor. Because an external static constructor declaration provides no actual implementation, its static-constructor-body consists of a semicolon. For all other static constructor declarations, the static-constructor-body consists of a block, which specifies the statements to execute in order to initialize the class. This corresponds exactly to the method-body of a static method with a voi d return type (§17.5.8).

Static constructors are not inherited, and cannot be called directly.

The static constructor for a non-generic class executes at most once in a given application domain. The static constructor for a generic class declaration executes at most once for each closed constructed type constructed from the class declaration (§25.1.5). The execution of a static constructor is triggered by the first of the following events to occur within an application domain:

- An instance of the class is created.
- Any of the static members of the class are referenced.

If a class contains the Mai n method (§10.1) in which execution begins, the static constructor for that class executes before the Mai n method is called. If a class contains any static fields with initializers, those initializers are executed in textual order immediately prior to executing the static constructor (§17.4.5).

[Example: The example

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        A.F();
        B.F();
    }
}
class A
{
    static A() {
        Console. WriteLine("Init A");
    }
    public static void F() {
        Console. WriteLine("A.F");
    }
}
```

```
class B
{
    static B() {
        Console. WriteLine("Init B");
    }
    public static void F() {
        Console. WriteLine("B. F");
    }
}
shall produce the output:
    Init A
    A. F
    Init B
```

because the execution of A's static constructor is triggered by the call to A. F, and the execution of B's static constructor is triggered by the call to B. F. *end example*]

It is possible to construct circular dependencies that allow static fields with variable initializers to be observed in their default value state.

[Example: The example

B. F

```
using System;
class A
{
   public static int X;
   static A() { X = B. Y + 1; }
}
class B
{
   public static int Y = A. X + 1;
   static B() {}
   static void Main() {
      Console. WriteLine("X = {0}, Y = {1}", A. X, B. Y);
   }
}
```

produces the output

$$X = 1. Y = 2$$

To execute the Mai n method, the system first runs the initializer for B. Y, prior to class B's static constructor. Y's initializer causes A's static constructor to be run because the value of A. X is referenced. The static constructor of A in turn proceeds to compute the value of X, and in doing so fetches the default value of Y, which is zero. A. X is thus initialized to 1. The process of running A's static field initializers and static constructor then completes, returning to the calculation of the initial value of Y, the result of which becomes 2. end example]

#### 17.12 Finalizers

[*Note*: In the previous version of this standard, what is now referred to as a "finalizer" was called a "destructor". Experience has shown that the term "destructor" caused confusion and often resulted to incorrect expectations, especially to programmers knowing C++. In C++, a destructor is called in a determinate manner, whereas, in C#, a finalizer is not. To get determinate behavior from C#, one should use **Di spose**. *end note*]

A *finalizer* is a member that implements the actions required to finalize an instance of a class. A finalizer is declared using a *finalizer-declaration*:

```
finalizer-declaration:

attributes<sub>opt</sub> extern<sub>opt</sub> ~ identifier ( ) finalizer-body
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
finalizer-body:
block
·
```

A finalizer-declaration can include a set of attributes (§24).

The *identifier* of a *finalizer-declarator* shall name the class in which the finalizer is declared. If any other name is specified, a compile-time error occurs.

When a finalizer declaration includes an **extern** modifier, the finalizer is said to be an **external finalizer**. Because an external finalizer declaration provides no actual implementation, its *finalizer-body* consists of a semicolon. For all other finalizers, the *finalizer-body* consists of a *block*, which specifies the statements to execute in order to finalize an instance of the class. A *finalizer-body* corresponds exactly to the *method-body* of an instance method with a **voi** d return type (§17.5.8).

Finalizers are not inherited. Thus, a class has no finalizers other than the one that can be declared in that class.

[Note: Since a finalizer is required to have no parameters, it cannot be overloaded, so a class can have, at most, one finalizer. end note]

Finalizers are invoked automatically, and cannot be invoked explicitly. An instance becomes eligible for finalization when it is no longer possible for any code to use that instance. Execution of the finalizer for the instance can occur at any time after the instance becomes eligible for finalization (§10.9). When an instance is finalized, the finalizers in that instance's inheritance chain are called, in order, from most derived to least derived. [*Example*: The output of the example

```
using System;
      class A
          ~A() {
             Console. WriteLine("A's finalizer");
      }
      class B: A
          \sim B() {
             Console. WriteLine("B's finalizer");
      }
      class Test
         static void Main() {
             B b = new B();
             b = null;
             GC. Collect();
             GC. WaitForPendingFinalizers();
         }
      }
is
      B's finalizer
      A's finalizer
```

since finalizers in an inheritance chain are called in order, from most derived to least derived. end example]

[Note: If an uncaught exception is thrown, it is unspecified whether the base class finalizer is called (§23.3). end note]

A C# implementation can implement finalizers by overriding the virtual method Fi nal i ze on System. Obj ect. However, C# programs are not permitted to override this method or call it (or overrides of it) directly. [Example: For instance, the program

```
class A
{
    protected override void Finalize() {} // error
    public void F() {
        this.Finalize(); // error
    }
}
```

contains two errors. end example]

The compiler behaves as if **System**. **Obj** ect. **Fi** nal i ze, and overrides of it, does not exist at all. [*Example*: Thus, this program:

```
class A
{
    void Finalize() {} // permitted
}
```

is valid and the method shown hides System. Object's Finalize method, without requiring the new modifier. *end example*]

For a discussion of the behavior when an exception is thrown from a finalizer, see §23.3.

## 18. Structs

Structs are similar to classes in that they represent data structures that can contain data members and function members. However, unlike classes, structs are value types and do not require heap allocation. A variable of a struct type directly contains the data of the struct, whereas a variable of a class type contains a reference to the data, the latter known as an object.

[*Note*: Structs are particularly useful for small data structures that have value semantics. Complex numbers, points in a coordinate system, or key-value pairs in a dictionary are all good examples of structs. Key to these data structures is that they have few data members, that they do not require use of inheritance or referential identity, and that they can be conveniently implemented using value semantics where assignment copies the value instead of the reference. *end note*]

As described in §11.1.4, the simple types provided by C#, such as int, double, and bool, are, in fact, all struct types. Just as these predefined types are structs, it is also possible to use structs and operator overloading to implement new "primitive" types in the C# language.

#### 18.1 Struct declarations

A struct-declaration is a type-declaration (§16.6) that declares a new struct:

```
struct-declaration: attributes_{opt} struct-modifiers_{opt} partial_{opt} struct identifier type-parameter-list_{opt} struct-interfaces_{opt} type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt} struct-body ; _{opt}
```

A struct-declaration consists of an optional set of attributes (§24), followed by an optional set of struct-modifiers (§18.1.1), followed by an optional partial modifier (§17.1.4), followed by the keyword struct and an identifier that names the struct, followed by an optional type-parameter-list (§25.1.1), followed by an optional struct-interfaces specification (§18.1.2), followed by an optional type-parameter-constraints-clauses (§25.7), followed by a struct-body (§18.1.3), optionally followed by a semicolon.

A struct declaration shall not supply a *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* unless it also supplies a *type-parameter-list*.

A struct declaration that supplies a type-parameter-list is a generic struct declaration (§25.2).

#### 18.1.1 Struct modifiers

A struct-declaration can optionally include a sequence of struct modifiers:

```
struct-modifiers:
    struct-modifier
    struct-modifiers struct-modifier

struct-modifier:
    new
    public
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
```

It is a compile-time error for the same modifier to appear multiple times in a struct declaration.

The modifiers of a struct declaration have the same meaning as those of a class declaration (§17.1.1).

#### 18.1.2 Struct interfaces

A struct declaration can include a *struct-interfaces* specification, in which case the struct is said to implement the given interface types.

```
struct-interfaces:
: interface-type-list
```

The handling of interfaces on multiple parts of a partial struct declaration (§17.1.4) are discussed further in §17.1.2.2.

Interface implementations are discussed further in §20.4.

## 18.1.3 Struct body

The *struct-body* of a struct defines the members of the struct.

```
struct-body:
    { struct-member-declarations<sub>opt</sub> }
```

### 18.2 Struct members

The members of a struct consist of the members introduced by its *struct-member-declarations* and the members inherited from the type **System**. **ValueType**.

```
struct-member-declarations:
    struct-member-declaration
    struct-member-declarations struct-member-declaration

struct-member-declaration:
    constant-declaration
    field-declaration
    method-declaration
    property-declaration
    event-declaration
    indexer-declaration
    operator-declaration
    constructor-declaration
    static-constructor-declaration
    type-declaration
```

All kinds of *class-member-declarations* except *finalizer-declaration* are also *struct-member-declarations*. Except for the differences noted in §18.3, the descriptions of class members provided in §17.1.4 through §17.11 apply to struct members as well.

#### 18.3 Class and struct differences

#### 18.3.1 Value semantics

Structs are value types (§11.1) and are said to have value semantics. Classes, on the other hand, are reference types (§11.2) and are said to have reference semantics.

A variable of a struct type directly contains the data of the struct, whereas a variable of a class type contains a reference to the data, the latter known as an object.

With classes, it is possible for two variables to reference the same object, and thus possible for operations on one variable to affect the object referenced by the other variable. With structs, the variables each have their own copy of the data, and it is not possible for operations on one to affect the other. Furthermore, because structs are not reference types, it is not possible for values of a struct type to be null.

[Example: Given the declaration

```
struct Point
{
    public int x, y;
    public Point(int x, int y) {
        this. x = x;
        this. y = y;
    }
}
the code fragment
Point a = new Point(10, 10);
Point b = a;
    a. x = 100;
```

System. Consol e. WriteLine(b. x);

outputs the value 10. The assignment of a to b creates a copy of the value, and b is thus unaffected by the assignment to a. x. Had Poi nt instead been declared as a class, the output would be 100 because a and b would reference the same object. *end example*]

#### 18.3.2 Inheritance

All struct types implicitly inherit from **System**. **ValueType**, which, in turn, inherits from class **obj** ect. A struct declaration can specify a list of implemented interfaces, but it is not possible for a struct declaration to specify a base class.

Struct types are never abstract and are always implicitly sealed. The abstract and seal ed modifiers are therefore not permitted in a struct declaration.

Since inheritance isn't supported for structs, the declared accessibility of a struct member cannot be protected or protected internal.

Function members in a struct cannot be abstract or virtual, and the override modifier is allowed only to override methods inherited from the type System. ValueType.

## 18.3.3 Assignment

Assignment to a variable of a struct type creates a *copy* of the value being assigned. This differs from assignment to a variable of a class type, which copies the reference but not the object identified by the reference.

Similar to an assignment, when a struct is passed as a value parameter or returned as the result of a function member, a copy of the struct is created. A struct can be passed by reference to a function member using a ref or out parameter.

When a property or indexer of a struct is the target of an assignment, the instance expression associated with the property or indexer access shall be classified as a variable. If the instance expression is classified as a value, a compile-time error occurs. This is described in further detail in §14.14.1.

#### 18.3.4 Default values

As described in §12.2, several kinds of variables are automatically initialized to their default value when they are created. For variables of class types and other reference types, this default value is nul 1. However, since structs are value types that cannot be nul 1, the default value of a struct is the value produced by setting all value type fields to their default value and all reference type fields to nul 1.

[Example: Referring to the Poi nt struct declared above, the example

```
Point[] a = new Point[100];
```

initializes each Poi nt in the array to the value produced by setting the x and y fields to zero. end example]

The default value of a struct corresponds to the value returned by the default constructor of the struct (§11.1.1). Unlike a class, a struct is not permitted to declare a parameterless instance constructor. Instead,

every struct implicitly has a parameterless instance constructor, which always returns the value that results from setting all value type fields to their default value and all reference type fields to nul 1.

[Note: Structs should be designed to consider the default initialization state a valid state. In the example

```
using System;
struct KeyValuePair
{
   string key;
   string value;

   public KeyValuePair(string key, string value) {
      if (key == null || value == null) throw new ArgumentException();
      this. key = key;
      this. value = value;
   }
}
```

the user-defined instance constructor protects against null values only where it is explicitly called. In cases where a **KeyVal uePai** r variable is subject to default value initialization, the **key** and **val ue** fields will be null, and the struct should be prepared to handle this state. *end note*]

## 18.3.5 Boxing and unboxing

A value of a class type can be converted to type **obj ect** or to an interface type that is implemented by the class simply by treating the reference as another type at compile-time. Likewise, a value of type **obj ect** or a value of an interface type can be converted back to a class type without changing the reference (but, of course, a run-time type check is required in this case).

Since structs are not reference types, these operations are implemented differently for struct types. When a value of a struct type is converted to type object or to an interface type that is implemented by the struct, a boxing operation takes place. Likewise, when a value of type object or a value of an interface type is converted back to a struct type, an unboxing operation takes place. A key difference from the same operations on class types is that boxing and unboxing *copies* the struct value either into or out of the boxed instance. [*Note*: Thus, following a boxing or unboxing operation, changes made to the unboxed struct are not reflected in the boxed struct. *end note*]

For further details on boxing and unboxing, see §11.3.

## 18.3.6 Meaning of this

Within an instance constructor or instance function member of a class, this is classified as a value. Thus, while this can be used to refer to the instance for which the function member was invoked, it is not possible to assign to this in a function member of a class.

Within an instance constructor of a struct, **this** corresponds to an **out** parameter of the struct type, and within an instance function member of a struct, **this** corresponds to a **ref** parameter of the struct type. In both cases, **this** is classified as a variable, and it is possible to modify the entire struct for which the function member was invoked by assigning to **this** or by passing **this** as a **ref** or **out** parameter.

#### 18.3.7 Field initializers

As described in §18.3.4, the default value of a struct consists of the value that results from setting all value type fields to their default value and all reference type fields to **nul1**. For this reason, a struct does not permit instance field declarations to include variable initializers. [*Example*: As such, the following example results in one or more compile-time errors:

```
struct Point
{
    public int x = 1; // Error, initializer not permitted
    public int y = 1; // Error, initializer not permitted
}
end example]
```

This restriction applies only to instance fields. Static fields of a struct are permitted to include variable initializers.

#### 18.3.8 Constructors

Unlike a class, a struct is not permitted to declare a parameterless instance constructor. Instead, every struct implicitly has a parameterless instance constructor, which always returns the value that results from setting all value type fields to their default value and all reference type fields to **null** (§11.1.1). A struct can declare instance constructors having parameters. [*Example*:

```
struct Point
{
   int x, y;
   public Point(int x, int y) {
      this. x = x;
      this. y = y;
   }
}
```

Given the above declaration, the statements

```
Point p1 = new Point();
Point p2 = new Point(0, 0);
```

both create a **Poi** nt with x and y initialized to zero. *end example*]

A struct instance constructor is not permitted to include a constructor initializer of the form **base**( $argument-list_{opt}$ ).

The **thi** s variable of a struct instance constructor corresponds to an **out** parameter of the struct type, and similar to an **out** parameter, **thi** s shall be definitely assigned (§12.3) at every location where the constructor returns. [Example: Consider the instance constructor implementation below:

No instance member function (including the set accessors for the properties **X** and **Y**) can be called until all fields of the struct being constructed have been definitely assigned. Note, however, that if **Poi** nt were a class instead of a struct, the instance constructor implementation would be permitted.

end example]

#### 18.3.9 Finalizers

A struct is not permitted to declare a finalizer.

#### 18.3.10 Static constructors

Static constructors for structs follow most of the same rules as for classes. The execution of a static constructor for a struct is triggered by the first of the following events to occur within an application domain:

• An instance member of the struct is referenced.

## C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

- A static member of the struct is referenced.
- An explicitly declared constructor of the struct is called.

[Note: The creation of default values (§18.3.4) of struct types does not trigger the static constructor. (An example of this is the initial value of elements in an array.) end note]

# 19. Arrays

An array is a data structure that contains a number of variables that are accessed through computed indices. The variables contained in an array, also called the *elements* of the array, are all of the same type, and this type is called the *element type* of the array.

An array has a rank that determines the number of indices associated with each array element. The rank of an array is also referred to as the dimensions of the array. An array with a rank of one is called a *single-dimensional array*. An array with a rank greater than one is called a *multi-dimensional array*. Specific sized multi-dimensional arrays are often referred to as two-dimensional arrays, three-dimensional arrays, and so on. Each dimension of an array has an associated length that is an integral number greater than or equal to zero. The dimension lengths are not part of the type of the array, but rather are established when an instance of the array type is created at run-time. The length of a dimension determines the valid range of indices for that dimension: For a dimension of length N, indices can range from 0 to N-1 inclusive. The total number of elements in an array is the product of the lengths of each dimension in the array. If one or more of the dimensions of an array have a length of zero, the array is said to be empty.

The element type of an array can be any type, including an array type.

## 19.1 Array types

An array type is written as a *non-array-type* followed by one or more *rank-specifiers*:

```
array-type:
    non-array-type rank-specifiers

non-array-type:
    value-type
    class-type
    interface-type
    delegate-type
    type-parameter

rank-specifiers:
    rank-specifiers rank-specifier

rank-specifier:
    [ dim-separators ]

dim-separators .
```

A non-array-type is any type that is not itself an array-type.

The rank of an array type is given by the leftmost *rank-specifier* in the *array-type*: A *rank-specifier* indicates that the array is an array with a rank of one plus the number of ", " tokens in the *rank-specifier*.

The element type of an array type is the type that results from deleting the leftmost rank-specifier:

- An array type of the form T[R] is an array with rank R and a non-array element type T.
- An array type of the form  $T[R][R_1]...[R_N]$  is an array with rank R and an element type  $T[R_1]...[R_N]$ .

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

In effect, the *rank-specifiers* are read from left to right *before* the final non-array element type. [*Example*: The type int[][,,][,] is a single-dimensional array of three-dimensional arrays of two-dimensional arrays of int. *end example*]

At run-time, a value of an array type can be **nul 1** or a reference to an instance of that array type or a covariant array type, as described in §19.5.

## 19.1.1 The System.Array type

The type **System**. **Array** is the abstract base type of all array types. An implicit reference conversion (§13.1.4) exists from any array type to **System**. **Array** and to any interface type implemented by **System**. **Array**. An explicit reference conversion (§13.2.3) exists from **System**. **Array** and any interface type implemented by **System**. **Array** to any array type. **System**. **Array** is not itself an *array-type*. Rather, it is a *class-type* from which all *array-types* are derived.

At run-time, a value of type System. Array can be null or a reference to an instance of any array type.

## 19.2 Array creation

Array instances are created explicitly by *array-creation-expressions* (§14.5.10.2) or by field or local variable declarations that include an *array-initializer* (§19.6). Array instances can also be created implicitly by invoking a method in its expanded form (§14.4.1).

When an array instance is created, the rank and length of each dimension are established and then remain constant for the entire lifetime of the instance. In other words, it is not possible to change the rank of an existing array instance, nor is it possible to resize its dimensions.

An array instance is always of an array type. The **System**. **Array** type is an abstract type that cannot be instantiated.

Elements of arrays created by *array-creation-expressions* are always initialized to their default value (§12.2).

#### 19.3 Array element access

Array elements are accessed using *element-access* expressions (§14.5.6.1) of the form  $A[I_1, I_2, ..., I_N]$ , where A is an expression of an array type and each  $I_X$  is an expression of type i nt, ui nt, l ong, ul ong, or of a type that can be implicitly converted to one or more of these types. The result of an array element access is a variable, namely the array element selected by the indices.

The elements of an array can be enumerated using a foreach statement (§15.8.4).

## 19.4 Array members

Every array type inherits the members declared by the System. Array type.

## 19.5 Array covariance

For any two *reference-types* A and B, if an implicit reference conversion (§13.1.4) or explicit reference conversion (§13.2.3) exists from A to B, then the same reference conversion also exists from the array type A[R] to the array type B[R], where R is any given *rank-specifier* (but the same for both array types). This relationship is known as *array covariance*. Array covariance, in particular, means that a value of an array type A[R] might actually be a reference to an instance of an array type B[R], provided an implicit reference conversion exists from B to A.

Because of array covariance, assignments to elements of reference type arrays include a run-time check which ensures that the value being assigned to the array element is actually of a permitted type (§14.14.1). [*Example*:

```
class Test
{
    static void Fill(object[] array, int index, int count, object value) {
        for (int i = index; i < index + count; i++) array[i] = value;
    }
    static void Main() {
        string[] strings = new string[100];
        Fill(strings, 0, 100, "Undefined");
        Fill(strings, 0, 10, null);
        Fill(strings, 90, 10, 0);
    }
}</pre>
```

The assignment to array[i] in the Fill method implicitly includes a run-time check, which ensures that the object referenced by value is either null or an instance of a type that is compatible with the actual element type of array. In Main, the first two invocations of Fill succeed, but the third invocation causes a System. ArrayTypeMi smatchException to be thrown upon executing the first assignment to array[i]. The exception occurs because a boxed intranot be stored in a string array. end example]

Array covariance specifically does not extend to arrays of *value-types*. For example, no conversion exists that permits an int[] to be treated as an object[].

## 19.6 Arrays and the generic IList interface

A one-dimensional array S[] implements the interface System. Collections. Generic. IList<S> (IList<S> for short) and its base interfaces. Accordingly, there is an implicit conversion from S[] to IList<S> and its base interfaces. In addition, if there is an implicit reference conversion from S to T then S[] implements IList<T> and there is an implicit reference conversion from S[] to IList<T> and its base interfaces ( $\S13.1.4$ ). If there is an explicit reference conversion from S to T then there is an explicit reference conversion from S[] to IList<T> and its base interfaces ( $\S13.2.3$ ). [Example: For example:

```
using System Collections. Generic;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        string[] sa = new string[5];
        object[] oa1 = new object[5];
        object[] oa2 = sa;

        IList<string> lst1 = sa; // OK
        IList<string> lst2 = oa1; // Error - need cast
        IList<object> lst3 = sa; // OK
        IList<object> lst4 = oa1; // OK

        IList<string> lst5 = (IList<string>) oa1; // Exception
        IList<string> lst6 = (IList<string>) oa2; // OK
    }
}
```

The assignment lst2 = oal generates a compile-time error since the conversion from object[] to IList<string> is an explicit conversion, not implicit. The cast (IList<string>) oal will cause an exception to be thrown at runtime since oal references an object[] and not a string[]. However the cast (IList<string>) oal will not cause an exception to be thrown since oal references a string[]. end example]

Whenever there is an implicit or explicit reference conversion from S[] to ILi st<T>, there is also an explicit reference conversion from ILi st<T> and its base interfaces to S[] (§13.2.3).

When an array type S[] implements  $ILi\ st < T>$ , some of the members of the implemented interface may throw exceptions. The precise behavior of the implementation of the interface is beyond the scope of this specification.

## 19.7 Array initializers

Array initializers can be specified in field declarations (§17.4), local variable declarations (§15.5.1), and array creation expressions (§14.5.10.2):

```
array-initializer:
{ variable-initializer-list<sub>opt</sub> }
{ variable-initializer-list , }

variable-initializer-list:
 variable-initializer
 variable-initializer-list , variable-initializer

variable-initializer:
 expression
 array-initializer
```

An array initializer consists of a sequence of variable initializers, enclosed by "{"and "}" tokens and separated by ", " tokens. Each variable initializer is an expression or, in the case of a multi-dimensional array, a nested array initializer.

The context in which an array initializer is used determines the type of the array being initialized. In an array creation expression, the array type immediately precedes the initializer. In a field or variable declaration, the array type is the type of the field or variable being declared. When an array initializer is used in a field or variable declaration, [*Example*:

```
int[] a = \{0, 2, 4, 6, 8\};
```

end example] it is simply shorthand for an equivalent array creation expression: [Example:

```
int[] a = new int[] {0, 2, 4, 6, 8};
```

end example]

For a single-dimensional array, the array initializer shall consist of a sequence of expressions that are assignment compatible with the element type of the array. The expressions initialize array elements in increasing order, starting with the element at index zero. The number of expressions in the array initializer determines the length of the array instance being created. [Example: The array initializer above creates an int[] instance of length 5 and then initializes the instance with the following values:

$$a[0] = 0$$
;  $a[1] = 2$ ;  $a[2] = 4$ ;  $a[3] = 6$ ;  $a[4] = 8$ ;

end example]

For a multi-dimensional array, the array initializer shall have as many levels of nesting as there are dimensions in the array. The outermost nesting level corresponds to the leftmost dimension and the innermost nesting level corresponds to the rightmost dimension. The length of each dimension of the array is determined by the number of elements at the corresponding nesting level in the array initializer. For each nested array initializer, the number of elements shall be the same as the other array initializers at the same level. [*Example*: The example:

```
int[,] b = \{\{0, 1\}, \{2, 3\}, \{4, 5\}, \{6, 7\}, \{8, 9\}\}\};
```

creates a two-dimensional array with a length of five for the leftmost dimension and a length of two for the rightmost dimension:

```
int[,] b = new int[5, 2];
```

and then initializes the array instance with the following values:

end example]

When an array creation expression includes both explicit dimension lengths and an array initializer, the lengths shall be constant expressions and the number of elements at each nesting level shall match the corresponding dimension length. [Example: Here are some examples:

```
int i = 3; int[] x = \text{new int}[3] \{0, 1, 2\}; // OK int[] y = \text{new int}[i] \{0, 1, 2\}; // Error, i not a constant int[] z = \text{new int}[3] \{0, 1, 2, 3\}; // Error, length/initializer mismatch
```

Here, the initializer for y results in a compile-time error because the dimension length expression is not a constant, and the initializer for z results in a compile-time error because the length and the number of elements in the initializer do not agree. *end example*]

[*Note*: Like Standard C++, C# allows a trailing comma at the end of an *array-initializer*. This syntax provides flexibility in adding or deleting members from such a list, and simplifies machine generation of such lists. *end note*]

## 20. Interfaces

An interface defines a contract. A class or struct that implements an interface shall adhere to its contract. An interface can inherit from multiple base interfaces, and a class or struct can implement multiple interfaces.

Interfaces can contain methods, properties, events, and indexers. The interface itself does not provide implementations for the members that it declares. The interface merely specifies the members that shall be supplied by classes or interfaces that implement the interface.

## 20.1 Interface declarations

An interface-declaration is a type-declaration (§16.6) that declares a new interface type.

```
interface-declaration:

attributes<sub>opt</sub> interface-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> partial<sub>opt</sub> interface identifier type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>

interface-base<sub>opt</sub> type-parameter-constraints-clauses<sub>opt</sub> interface-body; _{opt}
```

An *interface-declaration* consists of an optional set of *attributes* (§24), followed by an optional set of *interface-modifiers* (§20.1.1), followed by an optional partial modifier (§17.1.4), followed by the keyword interface and an *identifier* that names the interface, followed by an optional *type-parameter-list* (§25.1.1), followed by an optional *interface-base* specification (§20.1.2), followed by an optional *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* (§25.7), followed by an *interface-body* (§20.1.3), optionally followed by a semicolon.

An interface declaration shall not supply a *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* unless it also supplies a *type-parameter-list*.

An interface declaration that supplies a type-parameter-list is a generic interface declaration (§25.3).

#### 20.1.1 Interface modifiers

An interface-declaration can optionally include a sequence of interface modifiers:

```
interface-modifiers:
    interface-modifier
    interface-modifiers interface-modifier
interface-modifier:
    new
    public
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
```

It is a compile-time error for the same modifier to appear multiple times in an interface declaration.

The new modifier is only permitted on nested interfaces. It specifies that the interface hides an inherited member by the same name, as described in §17.2.2.

The public, protected, internal, and private modifiers control the accessibility of the interface. Depending on the context in which the interface declaration occurs, only some of these modifiers might be permitted (§10.5.1). When a partial type declaration (§17.1.4) includes an accessibility specification (via the public, protected, internal, and private modifiers), the rules in §17.1.1 apply.

#### 20.1.2 Base interfaces

An interface can inherit from one or more interfaces, which are called the *explicit base interfaces* of the interface. When an interface has one or more explicit base interfaces, then in the declaration of that interface, the interface identifier is followed by a colon and a comma-separated list of base interfaces.

The explicit base interfaces can be constructed interface types (§25.5). A base interface cannot be a type parameter on its own, though it can involve the type parameters that are in scope.

The explicit base interfaces (and any type arguments) of an interface shall be at least as accessible as the interface itself (§10.5.4). [*Note*: For example, it is a compile-time error to specify a **pri vate** or **internal** interface in the *interface-base* of a **publ i** c interface. *end note*]

It is a compile-time error for an interface to directly or indirectly inherit from itself.

The *base interfaces* of an interface are the explicit base interfaces and their base interfaces (after substituting type arguments for type parameters in constructed generic types). In other words, the set of base interfaces is the complete transitive closure of the explicit base interfaces, their explicit base interfaces, and so on. An interface inherits all members of its base interfaces. [*Example*: In the following code

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
interface ITextBox: IControl
{
    void SetText(string text);
}
interface IListBox: IControl
{
    void SetItems(string[] items);
}
interface IComboBox: ITextBox, IListBox {}
```

the base interfaces of I ComboBox are I Control, I TextBox, and I ListBox. In other words, the I ComboBox interface above inherits members SetText and SetItems as well as Paint. end example]

Members inherited from a constructed generic type are inherited after type substitution. That is, any constituent types in the member have the base class declaration's type parameters replaced with the corresponding type arguments used in the *class-base* specification. [*Example*: In the following code

```
interface IBase<T>
{
    T[] Combine(T a, T b);
}
interface IDerived : IBase<string[,]>
{
    // Inherited: string[][,] Combine(string[,] a, string[,] b);
}
```

the interface I Deri ved inherits the Combi ne method after the type parameter T is replaced with string[,]. end example]

A class or struct that implements an interface also implicitly implements all of the interface's base interfaces.

The handling of interfaces on multiple parts of a partial interface declaration (§17.1.4) are discussed further in §17.1.2.2.

#### 20.1.3 Interface body

The *interface-body* of an interface defines the members of the interface.

```
interface-body:
    { interface-member-declarations<sub>opt</sub> }
```

#### 20.2 Interface members

The members of an interface are the members inherited from the base interfaces and the members declared by the interface itself.

```
interface-member-declarations:
    interface-member-declaration
    interface-member-declarations interface-member-declaration

interface-member-declaration:
    interface-method-declaration
    interface-property-declaration
    interface-event-declaration
    interface-indexer-declaration
```

An interface declaration can declare zero or more members. The members of an interface shall be methods, properties, events, or indexers. An interface cannot contain constants, fields, operators, instance constructors, finalizers, or types, nor can an interface contain static members of any kind.

All interface members implicitly have public access. It is a compile-time error for interface member declarations to include any modifiers. In particular, interface members cannot be declared with the modifiers abstract, public, protected, internal, private, virtual, override, or static.

[Example: The example

```
public delegate void StringListEventHandler(IStringList sender,
    ListEventArgs e);
public interface IStringList
{
    void Add(string s);
    int Count { get; }
    event StringListEventHandler Changed;
    string this[int index] { get; set; }
}
```

declares an interface that contains one each of the possible kinds of members: A method, a property, an event, and an indexer. *end example*]

An *interface-declaration* creates a new declaration space (§10.3), and the type parameters and *interface-member-declarations* immediately contained by the *interface-declaration* introduce new members into this declaration space. The following rules apply to *interface-member-declarations*:

- The name of a type parameter in the *type-parameter-list* of an interface declaration shall differ from the names of all other type parameters in the same *type-parameter-list* and shall differ from the names of all members of the interface.
- The name of a method shall differ from the names of all properties and events declared in the same interface. In addition, the signature (§10.6) of a method shall differ from the signatures of all other methods declared in the same interface, and two methods declared in the same interface shall not have signatures that differ solely by ref and out.
- The name of a property or event shall differ from the names of all other members declared in the same interface.
- The signature of an indexer shall differ from the signatures of all other indexers declared in the same interface.

The inherited members of an interface are specifically not part of the declaration space of the interface. Thus, an interface is allowed to declare a member with the same name or signature as an inherited member.

When this occurs, the derived interface member is said to *hide* the base interface member. Hiding an inherited member is not considered an error, but it does cause the compiler to issue a warning. To suppress the warning, the declaration of the derived interface member shall include a new modifier to indicate that the derived member is intended to hide the base member. This topic is discussed further in §10.7.1.2.

If a new modifier is included in a declaration that doesn't hide an inherited member, a warning is issued to that effect. This warning is suppressed by removing the new modifier.

[Note: The members in class obj ect are not, strictly speaking, members of any interface (§20.2). However, the members in class obj ect are available via member lookup in any interface type (§14.3). end note]

For a discussion about members of an interface declared in multiple parts (§17.1.4), see §17.2.

#### 20.2.1 Interface methods

Interface methods are declared using interface-method-declarations:

```
interface-method-declaration:

attributes_{opt} \mathbf{new}_{opt} return-type identifier type-parameter-list_{opt}

( formal-parameter-list_{opt} ) type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt} ;
```

The attributes, return-type, identifier, and formal-parameter-list of an interface method declaration have the same meaning as those of a method declaration in a class (§17.5). An interface method declaration is not permitted to specify a method body; therefore, the declaration always ends with a semicolon. An interface-method-declaration shall not have type-parameter-constraints-clauses unless it also has a type-parameter-list.

### 20.2.2 Interface properties

Interface properties are declared using *interface-property-declarations*:

```
interface-property-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> new<sub>opt</sub> type identifier { interface-accessors }
interface-accessors:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> get ;
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> set ;
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> get ; attributes<sub>opt</sub> set ;
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> set ; attributes<sub>opt</sub> get ;
```

The *attributes*, *type*, and *identifier* of an interface property declaration have the same meaning as those of a property declaration in a class (§17.6).

The accessors of an interface property declaration correspond to the accessors of a class property declaration (§17.6.2), except that the accessor body shall always be a semicolon. Thus, the accessors simply indicate whether the property is read-write, read-only, or write-only.

#### 20.2.3 Interface events

Interface events are declared using interface-event-declarations:

```
interface-event-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> new<sub>opt</sub> event type identifier ;
```

The *attributes*, *type*, and *identifier* of an interface event declaration have the same meaning as those of an event declaration in a class (§17.7).

#### 20.2.4 Interface indexers

Interface indexers are declared using *interface-indexer-declarations*:

```
interface-indexer-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> new<sub>opt</sub> type this [ formal-parameter-list ] { interface-accessors }
```

The *attributes*, *type*, and *formal-parameter-list* of an interface indexer declaration have the same meaning as those of an indexer declaration in a class (§17.8).

The accessors of an interface indexer declaration correspond to the accessors of a class indexer declaration (§17.8), except that the accessor body shall always be a semicolon. Thus, the accessors simply indicate whether the indexer is read-write, read-only, or write-only.

#### 20.2.5 Interface member access

Interface members are accessed through member access (§14.5.4) and indexer access (§14.5.6.2) expressions of the form I. M and I [A], where I is an expression having an interface type, M is a method, property, or event of that interface type, and A is an indexer argument list.

For interfaces that are strictly single-inheritance (each interface in the inheritance chain has exactly zero or one direct base interface), the effects of the member lookup (§14.3), method invocation (§14.5.5.1), and indexer access (§14.5.6.2) rules are same as for classes and structs: More derived members hide less derived members with the same name or signature. However, for multiple-inheritance interfaces, ambiguities can occur when two or more unrelated base interfaces declare members with the same name or signature. This subclause shows several examples of such situations. In all cases, explicit casts can be used to resolve the ambiguities.

[Example: In the following code

```
interface IList
   int Count { get; set; }
interface I Counter
   void Count(int i);
interface IListCounter: IList, ICounter {}
class C
   void Test(IListCounter x) {
      x. Count (1);
                                   // Error
                                   // Error
      x. Count = 1
      ((IList)x).Count = 1;
                                  // Ok, invokes IList. Count. set
                                   // Ok, invokes I Counter. Count
      ((ICounter)x).Count(1);
   }
}
```

the first two statements cause compile-time errors because the member lookup (§14.3) of Count in I Li stCounter is ambiguous. As illustrated by the example, the ambiguity is resolved by casting x to the appropriate base interface type. Such casts have no run-time costs—they merely consist of viewing the instance as a less derived type at compile-time. *end example*]

[Example: In the following code

```
interface IInteger
{
    void Add(int i);
}
interface IDouble
{
    void Add(double d);
}
interface INumber: IInteger, IDouble {}
```

the invocation n. Add(1) is ambiguous because a method invocation (§14.5.5.1) requires all overloaded candidate methods to be declared in the same type. However, the invocation n. Add(1.0) is permitted because only I Doubl e. Add is applicable. When explicit casts are inserted, there is only one candidate method, and thus no ambiguity. *end example*]

[Example: In the following code

```
interface IBase
   void F(int i);
interface ILeft: IBase
   new void F(int i);
interface IRight: IBase
   voi d G();
interface IDerived: ILeft, IRight {}
class A
   void Test(IDerived d) {
      d. F(1);
                             // Invokes ILeft. F
                             // Invokes IBase. F
      ((I Base) d). F(1);
      ((ILeft)d).F(1);
                             // Invokes ILeft. F
      ((I Ri ght) d). F(1);
                             // Invokes IBase. F
   }
}
```

the I Base. F member is hidden by the I Left. F member. The invocation d. F(1) thus selects I Left. F, even though I Base. F appears to not be hidden in the access path that leads through I Ri ght.

The intuitive rule for hiding in multiple-inheritance interfaces is simply this: If a member is hidden in any access path, it is hidden in all access paths. Because the access path from I Deri ved to I Left to I Base hides I Base. F, the member is also hidden in the access path from I Deri ved to I Ri ght to I Base. end example

## 20.3 Fully qualified interface member names

An interface member is sometimes referred to by a *qualified interface member name*. A qualified interface member name consists of a name identifying the interface in which the member is declared, followed by a dot, followed by the name of the member. [*Example*: Given the declarations

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
interface ITextBox: IControl
{
    void SetText(string text);
}
```

a qualified interface member name for Pai nt is I Control. Pai nt and a qualified interface member name for SetText is I TextBox. SetText. In the example above, it is not possible to refer to Pai nt as I TextBox. Pai nt. end example

When an interface is part of a namespace, a qualified interface member name can include the namespace name. [*Example*:

Within the System namespace, both I Cl one abl e. Cl one and System. I Cl oneabl e. Cl one are qualified interface member names for the Cl one method. *end example*]

## 20.4 Interface implementations

Interfaces can be implemented by classes and structs. To indicate that a class or struct implements an interface, the interface is included in the base class list of the class or struct. [Example:

```
interface ICloneable
{
    object Clone();
}
interface IComparable
{
    int CompareTo(object other);
}
class ListEntry: ICloneable, IComparable
{
    public object Clone() {...}
    public int CompareTo(object other) {...}
}
```

end example]

A class or struct that implements an interface also implicitly implements all of the interface's base interfaces. This is true even if the class or struct doesn't explicitly list all base interfaces in the base class list. [Example:

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
interface ITextBox: IControl
{
    void SetText(string text);
}
class TextBox: ITextBox
{
    public void Paint() {...}
    public void SetText(string text) {...}
}
```

Here, class TextBox implements both I Control and I TextBox. end example]

## 20.4.1 Explicit interface member implementations

For purposes of implementing interfaces, a class or struct can declare *explicit interface member implementations*. An explicit interface member implementation is a method, property, event, or indexer declaration that references a qualified interface member name. [*Example*:

```
interface ICloneable
{
   object Clone();
}
interface IComparable
{
   int CompareTo(object other);
}
class ListEntry: ICloneable, IComparable
{
   object ICloneable.Clone() {...}
   int IComparable.CompareTo(object other) {...}
}
```

Here, I Cl oneable. Cl one and I Comparable. CompareTo are explicit interface member implementations. *end example*]

[*Example*: In some cases, the name of an interface member might not be appropriate for the implementing class, in which case, the interface member can be implemented using explicit interface member implementation. A class implementing a file abstraction, for example, would likely implement a Close member function that has the effect of releasing the file resource, and implement the **Di spose** method of the **I Di sposabl** e interface using explicit interface member implementation:

```
interface IDisposable
{
    void Dispose();
}

class MyFile: IDisposable
{
    void IDisposable. Dispose()
    {
        Close();
    }

    public void Close()
    {
        // Do what's necessary to close the file
        System. GC. SuppressFinalize(this);
    }
}
```

end example]

It is not possible to access an explicit interface member implementation through a qualified interface member name in a method invocation, property access, event access, or indexer access. An explicit interface member implementation can only be accessed through an interface instance, and is in that case referenced simply by its member name.

It is a compile-time error for an explicit interface member implementation to include any modifiers other than extern (§17.5). It is a compile-time error for an explicit interface method implementation to include *type-parameter-constraints-clauses*. The constraints for a generic explicit interface method implementation are inherited from the interface method.

Explicit interface member implementations have different accessibility characteristics than other members. Because explicit interface member implementations are never accessible through a qualified interface member name in a method invocation or a property access, they are in a sense private. However, since they can be accessed through an interface instance, they are in a sense also public.

Explicit interface member implementations serve two primary purposes:

• Because explicit interface member implementations are not accessible through class or struct instances, they allow interface implementations to be excluded from the public interface of a class or struct. This is particularly useful when a class or struct implements an internal interface that is of no interest to a consumer of that class or struct.

• Explicit interface member implementations allow disambiguation of interface members with the same signature. Without explicit interface member implementations it would be impossible for a class or struct to have different implementations of interface members with the same signature and return type, as would it be impossible for a class or struct to have any implementation at all of interface members with the same signature but with different return types.

For an explicit interface member implementation to be valid, the class or struct shall name an interface in its base class list that contains a member whose containing type, name, type, number of type parameters, and parameter types exactly match those of the explicit interface member implementation. If an interface function member has a parameter array, the corresponding parameter of an associated explicit interface member implementation is allowed, but not required, to have the **params** modifier. If the interface function member does not have a parameter array then an associated explicit interface member implementation shall not have a parameter array. [*Example*: Thus, in the following class

```
class Shape: ICloneable
{
   object ICloneable.Clone() {...}
   int IComparable.CompareTo(object other) {...} // invalid
}
```

the declaration of I Comparabl e. CompareTo results in a compile-time error because I Comparabl e is not listed in the base class list of Shape and is not a base interface of I Cl oneabl e. Likewise, in the declarations

```
class Shape: ICloneable
{
    object ICloneable.Clone() {...}
}
class Ellipse: Shape
{
    object ICloneable.Clone() {...} // invalid
}
```

the declaration of I Cl oneable. Cl one in Ellipse results in a compile-time error because I Cl oneable is not explicitly listed in the base class list of Ellipse. *end example*]

The qualified interface member name of explicit interface member implementation shall reference the interface in which the member was declared. [*Example*: Thus, in the declarations

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
interface ITextBox: IControl
{
    void SetText(string text);
}
class TextBox: ITextBox
{
    void IControl.Paint() {...}
    void ITextBox.SetText(string text) {...}
}
```

the explicit interface member implementation of Pai nt shall be written as I Control. Pai nt and not as I TextBox. Pai nt. end example]

## 20.4.2 Interface mapping

A class or struct shall provide implementations of all members of the interfaces that are listed in the base class list of the class or struct. The process of locating implementations of interface members in an implementing class or struct is known as *interface mapping*.

## C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

Interface mapping for a class or struct C locates an implementation for each member of each interface specified in the base class list of C. The implementation of a particular interface member I. M, where I is the interface in which the member M is declared, is determined by examining each class or struct S, starting with C and repeating for each successive base class of C, until a match is located:

- If S contains a declaration of an explicit interface member implementation that matches I and M, then this member is the implementation of I. M.
- Otherwise, if S contains a declaration of a non-static public member that matches M, then this member is the implementation of I. M.

A compile-time error occurs if implementations cannot be located for all members of all interfaces specified in the base class list of C. The members of an interface include those members that are inherited from base interfaces.

Members of a constructed interface type are considered to have any type parameters replaced with the corresponding type arguments as specified in §25.5.4. [*Example*: For example, given the generic interface declaration:

```
interface I<T>
{
    T F(int x, T[,] y);
    T this[int y] { get; }
}
```

the constructed interface I < stri ng[] > has the members:

```
string[] F(int x, string[,][] y);
string[] this[int y] { get; }
```

end example]

For purposes of interface mapping, a class member A matches an interface member B when:

- A and B are methods, and the name, type, and formal parameter lists of A and B are identical.
- A and B are properties, the name and type of A and B are identical, and A has the same accessors as B (A is permitted to have additional accessors if it is not an explicit interface member implementation).
- A and B are events, and the name and type of A and B are identical.
- A and B are indexers, the type and formal parameter lists of A and B are identical, and A has the same accessors as B (A is permitted to have additional accessors if it is not an explicit interface member implementation).

Notable implications of the interface-mapping algorithm are:

- Explicit interface member implementations take precedence over other members in the same class or struct when determining the class or struct member that implements an interface member.
- Neither non-public nor static members participate in interface mapping.

[Example: In the following code

```
interface ICloneable
{
   object Clone();
}
class C: ICloneable
{
   object ICloneable.Clone() {...}
   public object Clone() {...}
}
```

the I Cl oneable. Cl one member of C becomes the implementation of Cl one in I Cl oneable because explicit interface member implementations take precedence over other members. *end example*]

If a class or struct implements two or more interfaces containing a member with the same name, type, and parameter types, it is possible to map each of those interface members onto a single class or struct member. [*Example*:

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
interface IForm
{
    void Paint();
}
class Page: IControl, IForm
{
    public void Paint() {...}
}
```

Here, the Paint methods of both I Control and I Form are mapped onto the Paint method in Page. It is of course also possible to have separate explicit interface member implementations for the two methods. *end example*]

If a class or struct implements an interface that contains hidden members, then some members shall necessarily be implemented through explicit interface member implementations. [Example:

```
interface IBase
{
    int P { get; }
}
interface IDerived: IBase
{
    new int P();
}
```

An implementation of this interface would require at least one explicit interface member implementation, and would take one of the following forms

```
class C: IDerived
{
  int IBase.P { get {...} }
  int IDerived.P() {...}
}
class C: IDerived
{
  public int P { get {...} }
  int IDerived.P() {...}
}
class C: IDerived
{
  int IBase.P { get {...} }
  public int P() {...}
}
```

end example]

When a class implements multiple interfaces that have the same base interface, there can be only one implementation of the base interface. [*Example*: In the following code

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
```

```
interface ITextBox: IControl
{
    void SetText(string text);
}
interface IListBox: IControl
{
    void SetItems(string[] items);
}
class ComboBox: IControl, ITextBox, IListBox
{
    void IControl.Paint() {...}
    void ITextBox.SetText(string text) {...}
    void IListBox.SetItems(string[] items) {...}
}
```

it is not possible to have separate implementations for the I Control named in the base class list, the I Control inherited by I TextBox, and the I Control inherited by I Li stBox. Indeed, there is no notion of a separate identity for these interfaces. Rather, the implementations of I TextBox and I Li stBox share the same implementation of I Control, and ComboBox is simply considered to implement three interfaces, I Control, I TextBox, and I Li stBox. end example]

The members of a base class participate in interface mapping. [Example: In the following code

```
interface Interface1
{
    void F();
}
class Class1
{
    public void F() {}
    public void G() {}
}
class Class2: Class1, Interface1
{
    new public void G() {}
}
```

the method F in Class1 is used in Class2's implementation of Interface1. end example]

#### 20.4.3 Interface implementation inheritance

A class inherits all interface implementations provided by its base classes.

Without explicitly *re-implementing* an interface, a derived class cannot alter the interface mappings it inherits from its base classes. [*Example*: In the declarations

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
class Control: IControl
{
    public void Paint() {...}
}
class TextBox: Control
{
    new public void Paint() {...}
}
```

the Paint method in TextBox hides the Paint method in Control, but it does not alter the mapping of Control. Paint onto I Control. Paint, and calls to Paint through class instances and interface instances will have the following effects

However, when an interface method is mapped onto a virtual method in a class, it is possible for derived classes to override the virtual method and alter the implementation of the interface. [Example: Rewriting the declarations above to

end example]

Since explicit interface member implementations cannot be declared virtual, it is not possible to override an explicit interface member implementation. However, it is perfectly valid for an explicit interface member implementation to call another method, and that other method can be declared virtual to allow derived classes to override it. [Example:

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
class Control: IControl
{
    void IControl.Paint() { PaintControl(); }
    protected virtual void PaintControl() {...}
}
class TextBox: Control
{
    protected override void PaintControl() {...}
}
```

Here, classes derived from <code>Control</code> can specialize the implementation of <code>IControl</code>. Paint by overriding the <code>PaintControl</code> method. <code>end example</code>]

#### 20.4.4 Interface re-implementation

A class that inherits an interface implementation is permitted to *re-implement* the interface by including it in the base class list.

A re-implementation of an interface follows exactly the same interface mapping rules as an initial implementation of an interface. Thus, the inherited interface mapping has no effect whatsoever on the interface mapping established for the re-implementation of the interface. [Example: In the declarations

```
interface IControl
{
    void Paint();
}
class Control: IControl
{
    void IControl.Paint() {...}
}
class MyControl: Control, IControl
{
    public void Paint() {}
}
```

the fact that Control maps I Control. Paint onto Control. I Control. Paint doesn't affect the reimplementation in MyControl, which maps I Control. Paint onto MyControl. Paint. end example]

Inherited public member declarations and inherited explicit interface member declarations participate in the interface mapping process for re-implemented interfaces. [Example:

```
interface IMethods
{
    void F();
    void G();
    void H();
    void I();
}
class Base: IMethods
{
    void IMethods.F() {}
    void IMethods.G() {}
    public void H() {}
    public void I() {}
}
class Derived: Base, IMethods
{
    public void F() {}
    void IMethods.H() {}
}
```

Here, the implementation of I Methods in Deri ved maps the interface methods onto Deri ved. F, Base. I Methods. G, Deri ved. I Methods. H, and Base. I. end example]

When a class implements an interface, it implicitly also implements all that interface's base interfaces. Likewise, a re-implementation of an interface is also implicitly a re-implementation of all of the interface's base interfaces. [*Example*:

```
interface IBase
{
    void F();
}
interface IDerived: IBase
{
    void G();
}
class C: IDerived
{
    void IBase.F() {...}
```

```
void IDerived.G() {...}
}
class D: C, IDerived
{
   public void F() {...}
   public void G() {...}
}
```

Here, the re-implementation of I Deri ved also re-implements I Base, mapping I Base. F onto D. F. end example]

#### 20.4.5 Abstract classes and interfaces

Like a non-abstract class, an abstract class shall provide implementations of all members of the interfaces that are listed in the base class list of the class. However, an abstract class is permitted to map interface methods onto abstract methods. [*Example*:

```
interface IMethods
{
    void F();
    void G();
}
abstract class C: IMethods
{
    public abstract void F();
    public abstract void G();
}
```

Here, the implementation of I Methods maps F and G onto abstract methods, which shall be overridden in non-abstract classes that derive from C. end example]

Explicit interface member implementations cannot be abstract, but explicit interface member implementations are of course permitted to call abstract methods. [Example:

```
interface IMethods
{
    void F();
    void G();
}
abstract class C: IMethods
{
    void IMethods.F() { FF(); }
    void IMethods.G() { GG(); }
    protected abstract void FF();
    protected abstract void GG();
}
```

Here, non-abstract classes that derive from C would be required to override FF and GG, thus providing the actual implementation of I Methods. *end example*]

## 21. Enums

An *enum type* is a distinct type that declares a set of named constants. [Example: The example

```
enum Color {
    Red,
    Green,
    Blue
```

declares an enum type named Col or with members Red, Green, and Bl ue. end example]

#### 21.1 Enum declarations

An enum declaration declares a new enum type. An enum declaration begins with the keyword enum, and defines the name, accessibility, underlying type, and members of the enum.

```
enum-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> enum-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> enum identifier enum-base<sub>opt</sub> enum-body ; <sub>opt</sub>
enum-base:
    integral-type
enum-body:
    { enum-member-declarations<sub>opt</sub> }
    { enum-member-declarations , }
```

Each enum type has a corresponding integral type called the *underlying type* of the enum type. This underlying type shall be able to represent all the enumerator values defined in the enumeration. An enum declaration can explicitly declare an underlying type of byte, sbyte, short, ushort, int, uint, long or ulong. [*Note*: char cannot be used as an underlying type. *end note*] An enum declaration that does not explicitly declare an underlying type has an underlying type of int.

```
[Example: The example
enum Color: long
{
    Red,
    Green,
    Blue
}
```

declares an enum with an underlying type of l ong. end example] [Note: A developer might choose to use an underlying type of l ong, as in the example, to enable the use of values that are in the range of l ong but not in the range of int, or to preserve this option for the future. end note]

[Note: C# allows a trailing comma in an enum-body, just like it allows one in an array-initializer (§19.6). end note]

#### 21.2 Enum modifiers

An enum-declaration can optionally include a sequence of enum modifiers:

```
enum-modifiers:
enum-modifier
enum-modifiers enum-modifier
```

## C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
enum-modifier:
new
public
protected
internal
private
```

It is a compile-time error for the same modifier to appear multiple times in an enum declaration.

The modifiers of an enum declaration have the same meaning as those of a class declaration (§17.1.1). However, the abstract and seal ed modifiers are not permitted in an enum declaration. Enums cannot be abstract and do not permit derivation.

#### 21.3 Enum members

The body of an enum type declaration defines zero or more enum members, which are the named constants of the enum type. No two enum members can have the same name.

```
enum-member-declarations:
    enum-member-declaration
    enum-member-declarations , enum-member-declaration
enum-member-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> identifier
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> identifier = constant-expression
```

Each enum member has an associated constant value. The type of this value is the underlying type for the containing enum. The constant value for each enum member shall be in the range of the underlying type for the enum. [Example: The example

```
enum Color: uint
{
    Red = -1,
    Green = -2,
    Blue = -3
}
```

results in a compile-time error because the constant values - 1, - 2, and -3 are not in the range of the underlying integral type ui nt. end example]

Multiple enum members can share the same associated value. [Example: The example

```
enum Color
{
    Red,
    Green,
    Blue,

Max = Blue
}
```

shows an enum that has two enum members—Blue and Max—that have the same associated value. *end example*]

The associated value of an enum member is assigned either implicitly or explicitly. If the declaration of the enum member has a *constant-expression* initializer, the value of that constant expression, implicitly converted to the underlying type of the enum, is the associated value of the enum member. If the declaration of the enum member has no initializer, its associated value is set implicitly, as follows:

- If the enum member is the first enum member declared in the enum type, its associated value is zero.
- Otherwise, the associated value of the enum member is obtained by increasing the associated value of the textually preceding enum member by one. This increased value shall be within the range of values that can be represented by the underlying type.

```
[Example: The example
```

```
using System;
enum Color
   Red.
   Green = 10
   Bl ue
class Test
   static void Main() {
   Console. WriteLine(StringFromColor(Color. Red));
      Consol e. WriteLine(StringFromColor(Color. Green));
      Consol e. WriteLine(StringFromColor(Color. Blue));
   }
   static string StringFromColor(Color c) {
      switch (c) {
   case Color. Red:
             return String. Format("Red = {0}", (int) c);
          case Color. Green:
             return String.Format("Green = {0}", (int) c);
          case Color. Blue:
             return String. Format("Blue = {0}", (int) c);
             return "Invalid color";
      }
   }
}
```

prints out the enum member names and their associated values. The output is:

```
Red = 0
Green = 10
Blue = 11
```

for the following reasons:

- the enum member **Red** is automatically assigned the value zero (since it has no initializer and is the first enum member);
- the enum member Green is explicitly given the value 10;
- and the enum member Bl ue is automatically assigned the value one greater than the member that textually precedes it.

end example]

The associated value of an enum member shall not, directly or indirectly, use the value of its own associated enum member. Other than this circularity restriction, enum member initializers can freely refer to other enum member initializers, regardless of their textual position. Within an enum member initializer, values of other enum members are always treated as having the type of their underlying type, so that casts are not necessary when referring to other enum members.

[Example: The example

```
enum Circular
{
    A = B,
    B
}
```

results in a compile-time error because the declarations of A and B are circular. A depends on B explicitly, and B depends on A implicitly. *end example*]

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

Enum members are named and scoped in a manner exactly analogous to fields within classes. The scope of an enum member is the body of its containing enum type. Within that scope, enum members can be referred to by their simple name. From all other code, the name of an enum member shall be qualified with the name of its enum type. Enum members do not have any declared accessibility—an enum member is accessible if its containing enum type is accessible.

## 21.4 The System. Enum type

The type **System**. Enum is the abstract base class of all enum types (this is distinct and different from the underlying type of the enum type), and the members inherited from **System**. Enum are available in any enum type. A boxing conversion (§11.3.1) exists from any enum type to **System**. Enum, and an unboxing conversion (§11.3.2) exists from **System**. Enum to any enum type.

Note that System. Enum is not itself an *enum-type*. Rather, it is a *class-type* from which all *enum-types* are derived. The type System. Enum inherits from the type System. ValueType (§11.1.1), which, in turn, inherits from type object. At run-time, a value of type System. Enum can be null or a reference to a boxed value of any enum type.

## 21.5 Enum values and operations

Each enum type defines a distinct type; an explicit enumeration conversion (§13.2.2) is required to convert between an enum type and an integral type, or between two enum types. The set of values that an enum type can take on is not limited by its enum members. In particular, any value of the underlying type of an enum can be cast to the enum type, and is a distinct valid value of that enum type.

Enum members have the type of their containing enum type (except within other enum member initializers: see §21.3). The value of an enum member declared in enum type E with associated value v is (E) v.

The following operators can be used on values of enum types: ==, !=, <, >=, <=, >= (§14.9.5), + (§14.7.4), - (§14.7.5),  $^{\wedge}$ , &, | (§14.10.2),  $^{\wedge}$  (§14.6.4), ++, - (§14.5.9 and §14.6.5), and si zeof (§27.5.4).

Every enum type automatically derives from the class System. Enum (which, in turn, derives from System. ValueType and object). Thus, inherited methods and properties of this class can be used on values of an enum type.

# 22. Delegates

[*Note*: Delegates enable scenarios that some other languages have addressed with function pointers. However, unlike function pointers, delegates are object-oriented and type-safe. A delegate encapsulates both an object instance and a method. *end note*]

A delegate declaration defines a class that is derived from the class **System. Del egate**. A delegate instance encapsulates one or more methods, each of which is referred to as a *callable entity*. For instance methods, a callable entity consists of an instance and a method on that instance. For static methods, a callable entity consists of just a method. Given a delegate instance and an appropriate set of arguments, one can invoke all of that delegate instance's methods with that set of arguments.

[*Note*: An interesting and useful property of a delegate instance is that it does not know or care about the classes of the methods it encapsulates; all that matters is that those methods be consistent (§22.1) with the delegate's type. This makes delegates perfectly suited for "anonymous" invocation. *end note*]

## 22.1 Delegate declarations

A delegate-declaration is a type-declaration (§16.6) that declares a new delegate type.

```
delegate-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> delegate-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> del egate return-type identifier type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>
        (formal-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>) type-parameter-constraints-clauses<sub>opt</sub>;

delegate-modifiers:
    delegate-modifier
    delegate-modifiers delegate-modifier

delegate-modifier:
    new
    public
    protected
    internal
    private
```

It is a compile-time error for the same modifier to appear multiple times in a delegate declaration.

A delegate declaration shall not supply a *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* unless it also supplies a *type-parameter-list*.

A delegate declaration that supplies a type-parameter-list is a generic delegate declaration (§25.4).

The new modifier is only permitted on delegates declared within another type, in which case it specifies that such a delegate hides an inherited member by the same name, as described in §17.2.2.

The public, protected, internal, and private modifiers control the accessibility of the delegate type. Depending on the context in which the delegate declaration occurs, some of these modifiers might not be permitted (§10.5.1).

The delegate's type name is *identifier*.

The optional *formal-parameter-list* specifies the parameters of the delegate, and *return-type* indicates the return type of the delegate. A method and a delegate type are *consistent* if the following are true:

• For each parameter of the method:

- o If the parameter has no ref or out modifier, then the corresponding parameter of the delegate type has no ref or out modifier and there is an identity conversion or implicit reference conversion from the corresponding delegate parameter type to the method parameter type.
- o If the parameter has a ref or out modifier, then the corresponding parameter of the delegate type has the same modifier and the corresponding delegate parameter type is the same as the method parameter type.
- There is an identity conversion or implicit reference conversion from the return type of the method to the return type of the delegate type.

This definition of consistency allows covariance in return type and contravariance in parameter types.

Delegate types in C# are name equivalent, not structurally equivalent. Specifically, two delegate types that have the same parameter lists and return type are considered different delegate types. [Example:

```
delegate int D1(int i, double d);
class A
{
   public static int M1(int a, double b) {...}
}
class B
{
   delegate int D2(int c, double d);
   public static int M1(int f, double g) {...}
   public static void M2(int k, double l) {...}
   public static int M3(int g) {...}
   public static void M4(int g) {...}
   delegate object D3(string s);
   public static object M5(string s) {...}
   public static int[] M6(object o) {...}
}
```

The delegate types D1 and D2 are both consistent with the methods A. M1 and B. M1, since they have the same return type and parameter list; however, these delegate types are two different types, so they are not interchangeable. The delegate types D1 and D2 are not consistent with the methods B. M2, B. M3, and B. M4. The methods B. M5 and B. M6 are both consistent with delegate type D3. end example]

The only way to declare a delegate type is via a *delegate-declaration*. A delegate type is a reference type that is derived from System. Del egate. Delegate types are implicitly seal ed, so it is not permissible to derive any type from a delegate type. It is also not permissible to derive a non-delegate class type from System. Del egate. System. Del egate is not itself a delegate type; it is a class type from which all delegate types are derived.

C# provides special syntax for delegate instantiation and invocation. Except for instantiation, any operation that can be applied to a class or class instance can also be applied to a delegate class or instance, respectively. In particular, it is possible to access members of the System. Del egate type via the usual member access syntax.

The set of methods encapsulated by a delegate instance is called an *invocation list*. When a delegate instance is created (§22.2) from a single method, it encapsulates that method, and its invocation list contains only one entry. However, when two non-nul l delegate instances are combined, their invocation lists are concatenated—in the order left operand then right operand—to form a new invocation list, which contains two or more entries. An invocation list can never be empty.

Delegates are combined using the binary + ( $\S14.7.4$ ) and += operators ( $\S14.14.2$ ). A delegate can be removed from a combination of delegates, using the binary - ( $\S14.7.5$ ) and -= operators ( $\S14.14.2$ ). Delegates can be compared for equality ( $\S14.9.8$ ).

[Example: The following example shows the instantiation of a number of delegates, and their corresponding invocation lists:

```
delegate void D(int x);
class Test
{
    public static void M1(int i) {...}
    public static void M2(int i) {...}
}

class Demo
{
    static void Main() {
        D cd1 = new D(Test. M1); // M1
        D cd2 = new D(Test. M2); // M2
        D cd3 = cd1 + cd2; // M1 + M2
        D cd4 = cd3 + cd1; // M1 + M2 + M1
        D cd5 = cd4 + cd3; // M1 + M2 + M1 + M1 + M2
    }
}
```

When cd1 and cd2 are instantiated, they each encapsulate one method. When cd3 is instantiated, it has an invocation list of two methods, M1 and M2, in that order. cd4's invocation list contains M1, M2, and M1, in that order. Finally, cd5's invocation list contains M1, M2, M1, M1, and M2, in that order.

For more examples of combining (as well as removing) delegates, see §22.3. end example]

## 22.2 Delegate instantiation

An instance of a delegate is created by a *delegate-creation-expression* (§14.5.10.3) or by an implicit conversion from an anonymous method group to a delegate type (§13.5 and §13.6). The newly created delegate instance then refers to one or more of:

- A static method.
- A target object (which cannot be **nul 1**) and instance method.

When the argument of a *delegate-creation-expression* (§14.5.10.3) is a delegate instance the resulting delegate has the same invocation list as the argument, which may contain more than one entry.

[Example:

```
delegate void D(int x);
class Test
{
    public static void M1(int i) {...}
    public void M2(int i) {...}
}

class Demo
{
    static void Main() {
        D cd1 = new D(Test. M1); // static method
        Test t = new Test();
        D cd2 = new D(t. M2); // instance method
        D cd3 = new D(cd2); // another delegate
    }
}
```

end example]

Once instantiated, delegate instances always refer to the same list of target objects and methods. [*Note*: Remember, when two delegates are combined, or one is removed from another, a new delegate results with its own invocation list; the invocation lists of the delegates combined or removed remain unchanged. *end note*]

#### 22.3 Delegate invocation

C# provides special syntax for invoking a delegate. When a non-nul l delegate instance whose invocation list contains one entry, is invoked, it invokes the one method with the same arguments it was given, and returns the same value as the referred to method. (See §14.5.5.2 for detailed information on delegate

invocation.) If an exception occurs during the invocation of such a delegate, and that exception is not caught within the method that was invoked, the search for an exception catch clause continues in the method that called the delegate, as if that method had directly called the method to which that delegate referred.

Invocation of a delegate instance whose invocation list contains multiple entries, proceeds by invoking each of the methods in the invocation list, synchronously, in order. Each method so called is passed the same set of arguments as was given to the delegate instance. If such a delegate invocation includes reference parameters (§17.5.1.2), each method invocation will occur with a reference to the same variable; changes to that variable by one method in the invocation list will be visible to methods further down the invocation list. If the delegate invocation includes output parameters or a return value, their final value will come from the invocation of the last delegate in the list. If an exception occurs during processing of the invocation of such a delegate, and that exception is not caught within the method that was invoked, the search for an exception catch clause continues in the method that called the delegate, and any methods further down the invocation list are not invoked.

Attempting to invoke a delegate instance whose value is **null** results in an exception of type **System**. **NullReferenceException**.

[Example: The following example shows how to instantiate, combine, remove, and invoke delegates:

```
using System:
delegate void D(int x);
class Test
   public static void M1(int i) {
   Console.WriteLine("Test.M1: " + i);
   public static void M2(int i) {
   Console.WriteLine("Test.M2: " + i);
   public void M3(int i) {
   Console.WriteLine("Test.M3: " + i);
}
class Demo
   static void Main() {
       D \text{ cd1} = \text{new } D(\text{Test. M1});
       cd1(-1);
                     // call M1
       D cd2 = new D(Test. M2);
       cd2(-2);
                      // call M2
       D cd3 = cd1 + cd2;
                      // call M1 then M2
       cd3(10);
       cd3 += cd1;
       cd3(20);
                      // call M1, M2, then M1
       Test t = new Test();
       D cd4 = new D(t.M3);
       cd3 += cd4;
       cd3(30);
                      // call M1, M2, M1, then M3
       cd3 -= cd1; // remove last M1
       cd3(40);
                      // call M1, M2, then M3
       cd3 -= cd4:
                      // call M1 then M2
       cd3(50);
       cd3 -= cd2;
       cd3(60);
                      // call M1
                     // impossible removal is benign
       cd3 -= cd2;
                      // call M1
       cd3(60);
```

As shown in the statement cd3 += cd1;, a method can be present in an invocation list multiple times. In this case, it is simply invoked once per occurrence. In an invocation list such as this, when that method is removed, the last occurrence in the invocation list is the one actually removed.

Immediately prior to the execution of the final statement, cd3 - cd1; , the delegate cd3 is null. Attempting to subtract a delegate from null (or to subtract a non-existent delegate from a non-empty list) is not an error.

The output produced is:

Test. M1: -1 Test. M2: -2 Test. M1: 10 Test. M2: 10 Test. M1: 20 Test. M2: 20 Test. M1: Test. M1: 30 Test. M2: 30 Test. M1: 30 Test. M3: 30 Test. M1: 40 Test. M2: 40 Test. M3: Test. M1: 50 Test. M2: 50 Test. M1: 60 Test. M1: 60

*end example*]

# 23. Exceptions

Exceptions in C# provide a structured, uniform, and type-safe way of handling both system level and application-level error conditions. [*Note*: The exception mechanism in C# is quite similar to that of C++, with a few important differences:

- In C#, all exceptions shall be represented by an instance of a class type derived from **System. Exception.** In C++, any value of any type can be used to represent an exception.
- In C#, a finally block (§15.10) can be used to write termination code that executes in both normal execution and exceptional conditions. C++ has no equivalent construct.
- In C#, system-level exceptions such as overflow, divide-by-zero, and null dereferences have well defined exception classes and are on a par with application-level error conditions.

end note]

## 23.1 Causes of exceptions

Exception can be thrown in two different ways.

- A throw statement (§15.9.5) throws an exception immediately and unconditionally. Control never reaches the statement immediately following the throw.
- Certain exceptional conditions that arise during the processing of C# statements and expression cause an exception in certain circumstances when the operation cannot be completed normally. [Example: An integer division operation (§14.7.2) throws a System. Di vi deByZeroExcepti on if the denominator is zero. end example] See §23.4 for a list of the various exceptions that can occur in this way.

#### 23.2 The System. Exception class

The **System**. **Excepti** on class is the base type of all exceptions. This class has a few notable properties that all exceptions share:

- Message is a read-only property of type string that contains a human-readable description of the reason for the exception.
- InnerExcepti on is a read-only property of type Excepti on. If its value is non-null, it refers to the exception that caused the current exception. (That is, the current exception was raised in a catch block handling the type InnerException.) Otherwise, its value is null, indicating that this exception was not caused by another exception. (The number of exception objects chained together in this manner can be arbitrary.)

The value of these properties can be specified in calls to the instance constructor for System. Exception.

[Note: The Standard Library provides two types that inherit directly from System. Exception: System. System. System. System. System. Application Exception. These classes are provided as a means to differentiate between exceptions defined by the system versus exceptions defined by applications, respectively. As such, it is recommended that exception classes be derived from one of these classes as appropriate, rather than from System. Exception directly. end note]

#### 23.3 How exceptions are handled

Exceptions are handled by a try statement (§15.10).

When an exception occurs, the system searches for the nearest catch clause that can handle the exception, as determined by the run-time type of the exception. First, the current method is searched for a lexically

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

enclosing try statement, and the associated catch clauses of the try statement are considered in order. If that fails, the method that called the current method is searched for a lexically enclosing try statement that encloses the point of the call to the current method. This search continues until a catch clause is found that can handle the current exception, by naming an exception class that is of the same class, or a base class, of the run-time type of the exception being thrown. A catch clause that doesn't name an exception class can handle any exception.

Once a matching catch clause is found, the system prepares to transfer control to the first statement of the catch clause. Before execution of the catch clause begins, the system first executes, in order, any finally clauses that were associated with try statements more nested that than the one that caught the exception.

If no matching catch clause is found, one of two things occurs:

- If the search for a matching catch clause reaches a static constructor (§17.11) or static field initializer, then a System. TypeI nitializationException is thrown at the point that triggered the invocation of the static constructor. The inner exception of the System. TypeI nitializationException contains the exception that was originally thrown.
- If the search for matching catch clauses reaches the code that initially started the thread, then execution of the thread is terminated. The impact of such termination is implementation-defined.

The behavior of uncaught exceptions that occur during finalizer execution is unspecified.

## 23.4 Common exception classes

The following exceptions are thrown by certain C# operations.

System. Arithmetic Exception	A base class for exceptions that occur during arithmetic operations, such as System. Di vi deByZeroExcepti on and System. Overfl owExcepti on.
System. ArrayTypeMi smatchException	Thrown when a store into an array fails because the runtime type of the stored element is incompatible with the runtime type of the array.
System. Di vi deByZeroExcepti on	Thrown when an attempt to divide an integral value by zero occurs.
System. IndexOutOfRangeException	Thrown when an attempt to index an array via an index that is less than zero or outside the bounds of the array.
System. I nval i dCastExcepti on	Thrown when an explicit conversion from a base type or interface to a derived type fails at run time.
System. NullReferenceException	Thrown when a nul l reference is used in a way that causes the referenced object to be required.
System. OutOfMemoryException	Thrown when an attempt to allocate memory (via new) fails.
System. OverflowException	Thrown when an arithmetic operation in a checked context overflows.
System. StackOverflowException	Thrown when the execution stack is exhausted by having too many pending method calls; typically indicative of very deep or unbounded recursion.
System. TypeI nitializationException	Thrown when a static constructor throws an exception, and no catch clause exists to catch it.

## 24. Attributes

[*Note*: Much of the C# language enables the programmer to specify declarative information about the entities defined in the program. For example, the accessibility of a method in a class is specified by decorating it with the *method-modifiers* public, protected, internal, and private. *end note*]

C# enables programmers to invent new kinds of declarative information, called *attributes*. Programmers can then attach attributes to various program entities, and retrieve attribute information in a run-time environment. [*Note*: For instance, a framework might define a **Hel pAttribute** attribute that can be placed on certain program entities (such as classes and methods) to provide a mapping from those program entities to their documentation. *end note*]

Attributes are defined through the declaration of attribute classes (§24.1), which can have positional and named parameters (§24.1.2). Attributes are associated with program entities using attribute specifications (§24.2), and can be retrieved at run-time as attribute instances (§24.3).

#### 24.1 Attribute classes

A class that derives from the abstract class **System**. **Attribute**, whether directly or indirectly, is an *attribute class*. The declaration of an attribute class defines a new kind of attribute that can be placed on program entities. By convention, attribute classes are named with a suffix of **Attribute**. Uses of an attribute can either include or omit this suffix.

A generic class declaration shall not use **System**. Attri bute as a direct or indirect base class. [Example:

```
using System;
public class B : Attribute {}
public class C<T> : B {} // Error - generic cannot be an attribute
end example]
```

## 24.1.1 Attribute usage

The attribute Attri buteUsage (§24.4.1) is used to describe how an attribute class can be used.

Attri buteUsage has a positional parameter (§24.1.2) that enables an attribute class to specify the kinds of declarations on which it can be used. [*Example*: The example

```
using System;
[AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.Class | AttributeTargets.Interface)]
public class SimpleAttribute: Attribute
{}
```

defines an attribute class named **Si mpl eAttri bute** that can be placed on *class-declarations* and *interface-declarations* only. The example

```
[Simple] class Class1 {...}
[Simple] interface Interface1 {...}
```

shows several uses of the Si mpl e attribute. Although this attribute is defined with the name Si mpl eAttri bute, when this attribute is used, the Attri bute suffix can be omitted, resulting in the short name Si mpl e. Thus, the example above is semantically equivalent to the following

```
[SimpleAttribute] class Class1 {...}
[SimpleAttribute] interface Interface1 {...}

end example]
```

Attri buteUsage has a named parameter (§24.1.2), called AllowMultiple, which indicates whether the attribute can be specified more than once for a given entity. If AllowMultiple for an attribute class is true, then that class is a *multi-use attribute class*, and can be specified more than once on an entity. If AllowMultiple for an attribute class is false or it is unspecified, then that class is a *single-use attribute class*, and can be specified at most once on an entity.

```
[Example: The example
    using System;
    [AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.Class, AllowMultiple = true)]
    public class AuthorAttribute: Attribute
    {
        public AuthorAttribute(string name) {
            this.name = name;
        }
        public string Name { get { return name; } }
        private string name;
    }

defines a multi-use attribute class named AuthorAttribute. The example
    [Author("Brian Kernighan"), Author("Dennis Ritchie")]
    class Class1 {...}
```

shows a class declaration with two uses of the Author attribute. end example]

Attri buteUsage has another named parameter (§24.1.2), called I nheri ted, which indicates whether the attribute, when specified on a base class, is also inherited by classes that derive from that base class. If I nheri ted for an attribute class is true, then that attribute is inherited. If I nheri ted for an attribute class is false then that attribute is not inherited. If it is unspecified, its default value is true.

An attribute class X not having an Attri buteUsage attribute attached to it, as in

```
using System;
class X: Attribute { ... }

is equivalent to the following:
    using System;
    [AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.All, AllowMultiple = false, Inherited = true)]
    class X: Attribute { ... }
```

#### 24.1.2 Positional and named parameters

Attribute classes can have *positional parameters* and *named parameters*. Each public instance constructor for an attribute class defines a valid sequence of positional parameters for that attribute class. Each non-static public read-write field and property for an attribute class defines a named parameter for the attribute class. Both accessors of a property need to be public for the property to define a named parameter.

[Example: The example

```
using System;
[AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.Class)]
public class HelpAttribute: Attribute
{
    public HelpAttribute(string url) { // url is a positional parameter
        ...
    }
    public string Topic { // Topic is a named parameter
        get {...}
        set {...}
    }
    public string Url { get {...} }
}
```

defines an attribute class named **Hel pAttri bute** that has one positional parameter (**string url**) and one named parameter (**string Topic**). Although it is non-static and public, the property **Url** does not define a named parameter, since it is not read-write.

This attribute class might be used as follows:

### 24.1.3 Attribute parameter types

The types of positional and named parameters for an attribute class are limited to the *attribute parameter types*, which are:

- One of the following types: bool, byte, char, double, float, int, long, short, string.
- The type object.
- The type System. Type.
- An enum type, provided it has public accessibility and the types in which it is nested (if any) also have public accessibility.
- Single-dimensional arrays of the above types.

# 24.2 Attribute specification

Attribute specification is the application of a previously defined attribute to a program entity. An attribute is a piece of additional declarative information that is specified for a program entity. Attributes can be specified at global scope (to specify attributes on the containing assembly) and for type-declarations (§16.6), class-member-declarations (§17.1.4), struct-member-declarations (§18.2), interface-member-declarations (§20.2), enum-member-declarations (§21.1), accessor-declarations (§17.6.2), event-accessor-declarations (§17.7), elements of formal-parameter-lists (§17.5.1), and elements of type-parameter-lists (§25.1.1).

Attributes are specified in *attribute sections*. An attribute section consists of a pair of square brackets, which surround a comma-separated list of one or more attributes. The order in which attributes are specified in such a list, and the order in which sections attached to the same program entity are arranged, is not significant. For instance, the attribute specifications [A][B], [B][A], [A, B], and [B, A] are equivalent.

```
global-attributes:
    global-attribute-sections

global-attribute-sections:
    global-attribute-section
    global-attribute-sections global-attribute-section

global-attribute-section:
    [ global-attribute-target-specifier attribute-list ]
    [ global-attribute-target-specifier attribute-list , ]

global-attribute-target-specifier:
    global-attribute-target :

global-attribute-target:
    identifier
    keyword
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
attributes:
    attribute-sections
attribute-sections:
    attribute-section
    attribute-sections attribute-section
attribute-section:
    [ attribute-target-specifier_{opt} attribute-list ]
    [ attribute-target-specifier<sub>opt</sub> attribute-list , ]
attribute-target-specifier:
    attribute-target:
attribute-target:
    identifier
    keyword
attribute-list:
    attribute
    attribute-list, attribute
    attribute-name attribute-arguments<sub>opt</sub>
attribute-name:
    type-name
attribute-arguments:
    ( positional-argument-list<sub>ont</sub> )
    ( positional-argument-list , named-argument-list )
    ( named-argument-list )
positional-argument-list:
    positional-argument
    positional-argument-list , positional-argument
positional-argument:
    attribute-argument-expression
named-argument-list:
    named-argument
    named-argument-list, named-argument
named-argument:
    identifier = attribute-argument-expression
attribute-argument-expression:
    expression
```

An attribute consists of an *attribute-name* and an optional list of positional and named arguments. The positional arguments (if any) precede the named arguments. A positional argument consists of an *attribute-argument-expression*; a named argument consists of a name, followed by an equal sign, followed by an *attribute-argument-expression*, which, together, are constrained by the same rules as simple assignment. The order of named arguments is not significant.

[Note: For convenience, a trailing comma is allowed in a *global-attribute-section* and an *attribute-section*, just as one is allowed in an *array-initializer* (§19.6). *end note*]

The *attribute-name* identifies an attribute class. *type-name* shall refer to an attribute class. Otherwise, a compile-time error occurs. [*Example*: The example

```
class Class1 {}
[Class1] class Class2 {} // Error
```

results in a compile-time error because it attempts to use Class1 as an attribute class when Class1 is not an attribute class. *end example*]

When an attribute is placed at the global level, a *global-attribute-target-specifier* is required. The only standardized *global-attribute-target* name is **assembly**. This target name shall only be used in the context of an assembly.

The only standardized *attribute-target* names are event, field, method, param, property, return, type, and typevar. These target names shall only be used in the following contexts:

- event an event.
- **field** a field. A field-like event (i.e., one without accessors) can also have an attribute with this target.
- method a constructor, finalizer, method, operator, property get and set accessors, indexer get and set accessors, and event add and remove accessors. A field-like event (i.e., one without accessors) can also have an attribute with this target.
- param— a property set accessor, an indexer set accessor, event add and remove accessors, and a parameter in a constructor, method, and operator.
- property a property and an indexer.
- return a delegate, method, operator, property get accessor, and indexer get accessor.
- type a delegate, class, struct, enum, and interface.
- typevar a type parameter.

Certain contexts permit the specification of an attribute on more than one target. A program can explicitly specify the target by including an *attribute-target-specifier*. In the absence of an *attribute-target-specifier*, a reasonable default is applied, but an *attribute-target-specifier* can be used to affirm or override the default in certain ambiguous cases (or just to affirm the default in non-ambiguous cases). Thus, typically, *attribute-target-specifiers* can be omitted. The potentially ambiguous contexts are resolved as follows (using equality as defined in §9.4.2):

- An attribute specified on a delegate declaration can apply either to the delegate being declared or to its return value. In the absence of an *attribute-target-specifier*, the attribute applies to the delegate. An *attribute-target* equal to type indicates that the attribute applies to the delegate; an *attribute-target* equal to return indicates that the attribute applies to the return value.
- An attribute specified on a method declaration can apply either to the method being declared or to its return value. In the absence of an *attribute-target-specifier*, the attribute applies to the method. An *attribute-target* equal to **method** indicates that the attribute applies to the method; an *attribute-target* equal to **return** indicates that the attribute applies to the return value.
- An attribute specified on an operator declaration can apply either to the operator being declared or to its return value. In the absence of an *attribute-target-specifier*, the attribute applies to the operator. An *attribute-target* equal to **method** indicates that the attribute applies to the operator; an *attribute-target* equal to **return** indicates that the attribute applies to the return value.
- An attribute specified on a get accessor declaration for a property or indexer declaration can apply either to the associated method or to its return value. In the absence of an *attribute-target-specifier*, the attribute applies to the method. An *attribute-target* equal to **method** indicates that the attribute applies to the method; an *attribute-target* equal to **return** indicates that the attribute applies to the return value.
- An attribute specified on a set accessor for a property or indexer declaration can apply either to the associated method or to its lone implicit parameter. In the absence of an *attribute-target-specifier*, the attribute applies to the method. An *attribute-target* equal to method indicates that the attribute applies to the method; an *attribute-target* equal to paramindicates that the attribute applies to the parameter.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

- An attribute specified on an event declaration that omits *event-accessor-declarations* can apply to the event being declared, to the associated field (if the event is not abstract), or to the associated add and remove methods. In the absence of an *attribute-target-specifier*, the attribute applies to the event declaration. An *attribute-target* equal to event indicates that the attribute applies to the event; an *attribute-target* equal to field indicates that the attribute applies to the field; and an *attribute-target* equal to method indicates that the attribute applies to the methods.
- In the case of an event declaration that does not omit *event-accessor-declarations*, an attribute specified on an add or remove accessor declaration for an event declaration can apply either to the associated method or to its lone parameter. In the absence of an *attribute-target-specifier*, the attribute applies to the method. An *attribute-target* equal to **method** indicates that the attribute applies to the method; an *attribute-target* equal to **param** indicates that the attribute applies to the parameter.

An implementation can accept other attribute target specifiers, the purposes of which are implementation-defined. However, an implementation that does not recognize such a target, shall issue a warning.

By convention, attribute classes are named with a suffix of Attribute. An *attribute-name* can either include or omit this suffix. Specifically, an *attribute-name* is resolved as follows:

- If the right-most identifier of the *attribute-name* is a verbatim identifier (§9.4.2), then the *attribute-name* is resolved as a *type-name* (§10.8). If the result is not a type derived from **System**. Attribute, a compile-time error occurs.
- Otherwise,
  - The *attribute-name* is resolved as a *type-name* (§10.8) except any errors are suppressed. If this resolution is successful and results in a type derived from **System**. Attribute then the type is the result of this step.
  - The characters Attri bute are appended to the right-most identifier in the *attribute-name* and the resulting string of tokens is resolved as a *type-name* (§10.8) except any errors are suppressed. If this resolution is successful and results in a type derived from System. Attri bute then the type is the result of this step.

If exactly one of the two steps above results in a type derived from **System**. Attribute, then that type is the result of the *attribute-name*. Otherwise a compile-time error occurs.

[Example: Informally, when attempting to resolve an *attribute-name*, if an attribute class is found both with and without the Attribute suffix, an ambiguity is present, and a compile-time error is issued. If the *attribute-name* is spelled such that its right-most *identifier* is a verbatim identifier (§9.4.2), then only an attribute without a suffix is matched, thus enabling such an ambiguity to be resolved. The example

```
using System;
[Attri buteUsage(Attri buteTargets. All)]
public class X: Attribute
[Attri buteUsage(Attri buteTargets. All)]
public class XAttribute: Attribute {}
[X]
                   // error: ambiguity
class Class1 {}
[XAttri bute]
                   // refers to XAttribute
class Class2 {}
                   // refers to X
class Class3 {}
[@XAttri bute]
                   // refers to XAttribute
class Class4 {}
```

shows two attribute classes named X and XAttribute. The attribute reference [X] is ambiguous, since it could refer to either X or XAttribute. Using a verbatim identifier allows the exact intent to be specified in such rare cases. The attribute reference [XAttribute] is not ambiguous (although it would be if there were

an attribute class named XAttri buteAttri bute!). If the declaration for class X is removed, then both attributes refer to the attribute class named XAttri bute, as follows:

It is a compile-time error to use a single-use attribute class more than once on the same entity. [*Example*: The example

```
using System;
[AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.Class)]
public class HelpStringAttribute: Attribute
{
    string value;
    public HelpStringAttribute(string value) {
        this.value = value;
    }
    public string Value { get {...} }
}
[HelpString("Description of Class1")]
[HelpString("Another description of Class1")]
public class Class1 {}
```

results in a compile-time error because it attempts to use **Hel pStri ng**, which is a single-use attribute class, more than once on the declaration of **Cl ass1**. *end example*]

An expression E is an attribute-argument-expression if all of the following statements are true:

- The type of E is an attribute parameter type (§24.1.3).
- At compile-time, the value of E can be resolved to one of the following:
  - A constant value.
  - o A *typeof-expression* (§14.5.11) specifying a non-generic type, a closed constructed type (§25.5.2), or an unbound generic type (§25.5).
  - o A one-dimensional array of attribute-argument-expressions.

[Example:

```
using System;
[AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.Class)]
public class MyAttribute: Attribute
{
   public int P1 {
      get {...}
      set {...}
   }
   public Type P2 {
      get {...}
      set {...}
   }
}
```

```
public object P3 {
      get {...} set {...}
   }
}
[My(P1 = 1234, P3 = new int[]{1, 3, 5}, P2 = typeof(float))]
class MyClass {}
class C<T> {
   [My(P2 = typeof(T))]
                                // Error - T not a closed type.
   int x1;
                                // Error - C<T> not a closed type.
   [My(P2 = typeof(C < T >))]
   int x2;
   [My(P2 = typeof(C < int >))]
                                // 0k
   int x3;
   [My(P2 = typeof(C <>))]
                                 // 0k
   int x4;
}
```

end example]

The attributes of a type declared in multiple parts are determined by combining, in an unspecified order, the attributes of each of its parts. If the same attribute is placed on multiple parts, it is equivalent to specifying that attribute multiple times on the type. [Example: The two parts:

```
[Attr1, Attr2("hello")]
partial class A {}

[Attr3, Attr2("goodbye")]
partial class A {}
```

are equivalent to the following single declaration:

```
[Attr1, Attr2("hello"), Attr3, Attr2("goodbye")]
class A {}
```

end example]

Attributes on type parameters combine in the same way.

### 24.3 Attribute instances

An *attribute instance* is an instance that represents an attribute at run-time. An attribute is defined with an attribute class, positional arguments, and named arguments. An attribute instance is an instance of the attribute class that is initialized with the positional and named arguments.

Retrieval of an attribute instance involves both compile-time and run-time processing, as described in the following subclauses.

#### 24.3.1 Compilation of an attribute

The compilation of an *attribute* with attribute class T, *positional-argument-list* P, *named-argument-list* N, and specified on a program entity E is compiled into an assembly A via the following steps:

- Follow the compile-time processing steps for compiling an *object-creation-expression* of the form new T(P). These steps either result in a compile-time error, or determine an instance constructor on T that can be invoked at run-time. Call this instance constructor C.
- If C does not have public accessibility, then a compile-time error occurs.
- For each *named-argument* Arg in N:
  - o Let Name be the *identifier* of the *named-argument* Arg.
  - o Name shall identify a non-static read-write public field or property on T. If T has no such field or property, then a compile-time error occurs.

• Store the following information (for run-time instantiation of the attribute) in the assembly output by the compiler as a result of compiling the program containing the attribute: the attribute class T, the instance constructor C on T, the *positional-argument-list* P, the *named-argument-list* N, and the associated program entity E, with the values resolved completely at compile-time.

#### 24.3.2 Run-time retrieval of an attribute instance

The attribute instance represented by T, C, P, and N, and associated with E can be retrieved at run-time from the assembly A using the following steps:

- Follow the run-time processing steps for executing an *object-creation-expression* of the form new T(P), using the instance constructor C and values as determined at compile-time. These steps either result in an exception, or produce an instance of T. Call this instance 0.
- For each *named-argument* Arg in N, in order:
  - o Let Name be the *identifier* of the *named-argument* Arg. If Name does not identify a non-static public read-write field or property on **0**, then an exception is thrown.
  - o Let Val ue be the result of evaluating the attribute-argument-expression of Arg.
  - o If Name identifies a field on 0, then set this field to the value Value.
  - Otherwise, Name identifies a property on 0. Set this property to the value Value.
  - The result is **0**, an instance of the attribute class **T** that has been initialized with the *positional-argument-list* **P** and the *named-argument-list* **N**.

[Note: The format for storing T, C, P, N (and associating it with E) in A and the mechanism to specify E and retrieve T, C, P, N from A (and hence how an attribute instance is obtained at runtime) is beyond the scope of this standard. end note]

[*Example*: In an implementation of the CLI, the Help attribute instances in the assembly created by compiling the example program in §24.1.2 can be retrieved with the following program:

#### 24.4 Reserved attributes

The following attributes affect the language, as stated:

- System Attri buteUsageAttri bute (§24. 4. 1), which is used to describe the ways in which an attribute class can be used.
- System. Di agnostics. Conditional Attribute (§24. 4. 2), is a multi-use attribute class which is used to define conditional methods and conditional attribute classes. This attribute indicates a condition by testing a conditional compilation symbol.

• System. Obsol eteAttri bute (§24. 4. 3), which is used to mark a member as obsolete.

### 24.4.1 The AttributeUsage attribute

The attribute Attri buteUsage is used to describe the manner in which the attribute class can be used.

A class that is decorated with the Attri buteUsage attribute shall derive from System. Attri bute, either directly or indirectly. Otherwise, a compile-time error occurs.

[Note: For an example of using this attribute, see §24.1.1. end note]

#### 24.4.2 The Conditional attribute

The attribute Conditional enables the definition of *conditional methods* and *conditional attribute classes*.

#### 24.4.2.1 Conditional methods

A method decorated with the Conditional attribute is a conditional method. Each conditional method is thus associated with the conditional compilation symbols declared in its Conditional attributes. [Example:

declares Eg. Mas a conditional method associated with the two conditional compilation symbols ALPHA and BETA. *end example*]

A call to a conditional method is included if one or more of its associated conditional compilation symbols is defined at the point of call, otherwise the call is omitted.

A conditional method is subject to the following restrictions:

- The conditional method shall be a method in a *class-declaration* or *struct-declaration*. A compile-time error occurs if the Condi ti onal attribute is specified on an interface method.
- The conditional method shall have a return type of voi d.
- The conditional method shall not be marked with the **override** modifier. A conditional method can be marked with the **virtual** modifier, however. Overrides of such a method are implicitly conditional, and shall not be explicitly marked with a **Conditional** attribute.
- The conditional method shall not be an implementation of an interface method. Otherwise, a compile-time error occurs.

In addition, a compile-time error occurs if a conditional method is used in a *delegate-creation-expression*.

[Example: The example

```
#define DEBUG
using System;
using System. Diagnostics;
class Class1
{
    [Conditional("DEBUG")]
    public static void M() {
        Console. WriteLine("Executed Class1. M");
    }
}
```

```
class Class2
{
    public static void Test() {
        Class1.M();
    }
}
```

declares Cl ass1. Mas a conditional method. Cl ass2's Test method calls this method. Since the conditional compilation symbol DEBUG is defined, if Cl ass2. Test is called, it will call M If the symbol DEBUG had not been defined, then Cl ass2. Test would not call Cl ass1. M *end example*]

It is important to understand that the inclusion or exclusion of a call to a conditional method is controlled by the conditional compilation symbols at the point of the call. [Example: In the following code

```
// Begin class1.cs
  using System;
using System. Diagnostics;
  class Class1
      [Conditional("DEBUG")]
     public static void F() {
        Console. WriteLine("Executed Class1. F");
// End class1.cs
// Begin class2.cs
  #define DEBUG
  class Class2
     public static void G() {
// F is called
  }
// End class2.cs
// Begin class3.cs
   #undef DEBUG
  class Class3
     // End class3.cs
```

the classes Cl ass2 and Cl ass3 each contain calls to the conditional method Cl ass1. F, which is conditional based on whether or not DEBUG is defined. Since this symbol is defined in the context of Cl ass2 but not Cl ass3, the call to F in Cl ass2 is included, while the call to F in Cl ass3 is omitted. end example]

The use of conditional methods in an inheritance chain can be confusing. Calls made to a conditional method through base, of the form base. M, are subject to the normal conditional method call rules. [Example: In the following code

```
// Begin class1.cs
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;
```

```
class Class1
       [Conditional("DEBUG")]
public virtual void M() {
   Console. WriteLine("Class1. M executed");
   }
// End class1.cs
// Begin class2.cs
   using System;
   class Class2: Class1
       public override void M() {
   Console. WriteLine("Class2. M executed");
                                             // base. M is not called!
           base. M();
   }
// End class2.cs
// Begin class3.cs
   #define DEBUG
   using System;
   class Class3
       public static void Test() {
           Class2 c = new Class2();
           c. M();
                                              // Mis called
       }
   }
// End class3.cs
```

Class2 includes a call to the Mdefined in its base class. This call is omitted because the base method is conditional based on the presence of the symbol DEBUG, which is undefined. Thus, the method writes to the console "Class2. Mexecuted" only. Judicious use of *pp-declarations* can eliminate such problems. *end example*]

#### 24.4.2.2 Conditional attribute classes

An attribute class (§24.1) decorated with one or more Condi ti onal attributes is a *conditional attribute class*. A conditional attribute class is thus associated with the conditional compilation symbols declared in its Condi ti onal attributes.

[Example:

```
using System;
using System. Diagnostics;
[Conditional("ALPHA")]
[Conditional("BETA")]
public class TestAttribute : Attribute {}
```

declares **TestAttri bute** as a conditional attribute class associated with the conditional compilations symbols **ALPHA** and **BETA**. *end example*]

Attribute specifications (§24.2) of a conditional attribute are included if one or more of its associated conditional compilation symbols is defined at the point of specification, otherwise the attribute specification is omitted.

It is important to note that the inclusion or exclusion of an attribute specification of a conditional attribute class is controlled by the conditional compilation symbols at the point of the specification. [*Example*: In the example

the classes Class1 and Class2 are each decorated with attribute Test, which is conditional based on whether or not DEBUG is defined. Since this symbol is defined in the context of Class1 but not Class2, the specification of the Test attribute on Class1 is included, while the specification of the Test attribute on Class2 is omitted. *end example*]

### 24.4.3 The Obsolete attribute

The attribute **Obsol** ete is used to mark types and members of types that should no longer be used.

If a program uses a type or member that is decorated with the **Obsol** ete attribute, then the compiler shall issue a warning or error in order to alert the developer, so the offending code can be fixed. Specifically, the compiler shall issue a warning if no error parameter is provided, or if the error parameter is provided and has the value false. The compiler shall issue a compile-time error if the error parameter is specified and has the value true.

[Example: In the following code

```
[Obsolete("This class is obsolete; use class B instead")]
class A
{
   public void F() {}
}
class B
{
   public void F() {}
}
class Test
{
   static void Main() {
       A a = new A(); // warning
       a.F();
   }
}
```

the class A is decorated with the **Obsol ete** attribute. Each use of A in **Mai** n results in a warning that includes the specified message, "This class is obsolete; use class B instead." *end example*]

# 25. Generics

### 25.1 Generic class declarations

A generic class declaration is a declaration of a class that requires type arguments to be supplied in order to form runtime types.

[Note: A class declaration (§17.1), can optionally define type parameters and their associated constraints:

```
class-declaration:
```

```
attributes_{opt} class-modifiers_{opt} partial_{opt} class identifier type-parameter-list_{opt} class-base_{opt} type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt} class-body ; _{opt}
```

A class declaration shall not supply *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* (§25.7) unless it also supplies a *type-parameter-list* (§25.1.1).

A class declaration that supplies a type-parameter-list is a generic class declaration. end note]

Any class nested inside a generic class declaration or a generic struct declaration (§25.2) is itself a generic class declaration, since type parameters for the containing type shall be supplied to create a constructed type.

Generic class declarations follow the same rules as non-generic class declarations except where noted. Generic class declarations can be nested inside non-generic class declarations.

A generic class is referenced using a constructed type (§25.5). [Example: Given the generic class declaration

```
class List<T> {}
```

some examples of constructed types are Li st<T>, Li st<i nt> and Li st<Li st<stri ng>>. end example] A constructed type that uses one or more type parameters, such as Li st<T>, is called an *open constructed* type (§25.5). A constructed type that uses no type parameters, such as Li st<i nt>, is called a *closed* constructed type (§25.5).

Generic types can be "overloaded" on the number of type parameters; that is two type declarations within the same namespace or outer type declaration can use the same identifier as long as they have a different number of type parameters.

```
class C {} class C<V> {}  // OK struct C<U,V> {}  // OK class C<A,B> {}  // Error, C with two type parameters defined twice
```

The type lookup rules used during type name resolution (§10.8), simple name resolution (§14.5.2) and member access (§14.5.4) respect the number of type parameters.

The base interfaces of a generic class declaration shall satisfy the uniqueness rule described in §25.3.1.

#### 25.1.1 Type parameters

Type parameters can be supplied in a class declaration. Each type parameter is a simple identifier that denotes a placeholder for a type argument supplied to create a constructed type. A type parameter is a formal placeholder for a type that will be supplied later. By contrast, a type argument (§25.5.1) is the runtime type that is substituted for the type parameter when a constructed type is created.

### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
type-parameters:

attributes_{opt} type-parameter

type-parameters , attributes_{opt} type-parameter

type-parameter:

identifier
```

Each type parameter in a class declaration defines a name in the declaration space (§10.3) of that class. Thus, it cannot have the same name as another type parameter or a member declared in that class. A type parameter shall not have the same name as the type itself.

The scope (§10.7) of a type parameter on a class includes the *class-base*, *type-parameter-constraints-clauses*, and *class-body*. Unlike members of a class, this scope does not extend to derived classes. Within its scope, a type parameter can be used as a type.

Since a type parameter can be instantiated with many different runtime type arguments, type parameters have slightly different operations and restrictions than other types. [*Note*: These include the following:

- A type parameter cannot be used directly to declare a base class or interface (§17.1.2).
- The rules for member lookup on type parameters depend on the constraints, if any, applied to the type parameter. They are detailed in §25.7.2.
- The available conversions for a type parameter depend on the constraints, if any, applied to the type parameter. They are detailed in §25.7.4.
- The literal nul 1 cannot be converted to a value of a type given by a type parameter, except if the type parameter is known to be a reference type (§25.7.4). However, a default value expression (§14.5.14) can be used to generate the default value of a type parameter.
- A new expression (§14.5.10.1) can only be used with a type parameter if the type parameter is constrained by a *constructor-constraint* or the value type constraint (§25.7).
- A type parameter cannot be used anywhere within an attribute (§24.2).
- A type parameter cannot be used in a member access to identify a static member (§14.5.4), or in a type name to identify a nested type (§10.8).
- In unsafe code, a type parameter cannot be used as an *unmanaged-type* (§27.2).

end note]

As a type, type parameters are purely a compile-time construct. At run-time, each type parameter is bound to a run-time type that was specified by supplying a type argument to the generic type declaration. Thus, the type of a variable declared with a type parameter will, at run-time, be a closed constructed type (§25.5.2). The run-time execution of all statements and expressions involving type parameters uses the runtime type that was supplied as the type argument for that parameter.

#### 25.1.2 The instance type

Each class declaration has an associated constructed type, the *instance type*. For a generic class declaration, the instance type is formed by creating a constructed type (§25.5) from the type declaration, with each of the supplied type arguments being the corresponding type parameter. Since the instance type uses the type parameters, it can only be used where the type parameters are in scope; that is, inside the class declaration. The instance type is the type of this for code written inside the class declaration. For non-generic classes, the instance type is simply the declared class. [*Example*: The following shows several class declarations along with their instance types:

end example]

# 25.1.3 Members of generic classes

All members of a generic class can use type parameters from any enclosing class, either directly or as part of a constructed type. When a particular closed constructed type (§25.5.2) is used at run-time, each use of a type parameter is replaced with the runtime type argument supplied to the constructed type. [Example:

```
class C<V>
{
    public V F1;
    public C<V> F2 = null;

    public C(V x) {
        this.F1 = x;
        this.F2 = this;
    }
}

class Application
{
    static void Main() {
        C<int> x1 = new C<int>(1);
        Console. WriteLine(x1.F1); // Prints 1

        C<double> x2 = new C<double>(3.1415);
        Console. WriteLine(x2.F1); // Prints 3.1415
    }
}
```

end example]

Within instance function members, the type of this is the instance type (§25.1.2) of the containing declaration.

Apart from the use of type parameters as types, members in generic class declarations follow the same rules as members of non-generic classes. Additional rules that apply to particular kinds of members are discussed in the following subclauses.

### 25.1.4 Static fields in generic classes

A static variable in a generic class declaration is shared amongst all instances of the same closed constructed type (§25.5.2), but is not shared amongst instances of different closed constructed types. These rules apply regardless of whether the type of the static variable involves any type parameters or not.

[Example:

```
class C<V>
{
    static int count = 0;
    public C() {
        count++;
    }
    public static int Count {
            get { return count; }
    }
}

class Application
{
    static void Main() {
        C<int> x1 = new C<int>();
        Console. WriteLine(C<int>. Count); // Prints 1
        C<double> x2 = new C<double>();
        Console. WriteLine(C<int>. Count); // Prints 1
        Console. WriteLine(C<int>. Count); // Prints 1
```

### 25.1.5 Static constructors in generic classes

A static constructor in a generic class is used to initialize static fields and to perform other initialization for each different closed constructed type that is created from that generic class declaration. The type parameters of the generic type declaration are in scope, and can be used, within the body of the static constructor.

A new closed constructed class type is initialized the first time that either:

- An instance of the closed constructed type is created.
- Any of the static members of the closed constructed type are referenced.

To initialize a new closed constructed class type, first a new set of static fields (§25.1.4) for that particular closed constructed type is created. Each of the static fields is initialized to its default value (§12.2). Next, the static field initializers (§17.4.5.1) are executed for those static fields. Finally, the static constructor is executed.

Because the static constructor is executed exactly once for each closed constructed class type, it is a convenient place to enforce run-time checks on the type parameter that cannot be checked at compile-time via constraints (§25.7). [Example: The following type uses a static constructor to enforce that the type argument is an enum:

```
class Gen<T> where T: struct
{
    static Gen() {
        if (!typeof(T).IsEnum) {
            throw new ArgumentException("T must be an enum");
        }
    }
}
end example]
```

# 25.1.6 Accessing protected members

[Note: The accessibility domain (§10.5.2) of a protected member declared in a generic class includes the program text of all class declarations derived from any type constructed from that generic class. In the example:

```
class C<T>
{
    protected static T x;
}
class D: C<string>
{
    static void Main() {
        C<int>. x = 5;
    }
}
```

The reference to protected member C < i nt > . x in D is valid even though the class D derives from C < string > .

end note]

Within a generic class declaration, access to inherited protected instance members (§10.5.3) is permitted through an instance of any class type constructed from the generic class. [Example: In the following code

```
class C<T>
{
    protected T x;
}

class D<T>: C<T>
{
    static void F() {
        D<T> dt = new D<T>();
        D<int> di = new D<int>();
        D<string> ds = new D<string>();
        dt. x = default(T);
        di. x = 123;
        ds. x = "test";
    }
}
```

the three assignments to  $\mathbf{x}$  are permitted because they all take place through instances of class types constructed from the generic type. *end example*]

### 25.1.7 Overloading in generic classes

Methods, constructors, indexers, and operators within a generic class declaration can be overloaded. While signatures as declared must be unique, it is possible that substitution of type arguments results in identical signatures. In such a situation, overload resolution will pick the most specific one (§14.4.2.2).

[Example: The following examples show overloads that are valid according to this rule:

```
interface I1<T> {...}
interface I2<T> {...}
class G1<U>
    \begin{array}{l} l \; ong \; \; F1(U \; u) \; \; \{...\} \\ i \; nt \; \; F1(i \; nt \; \; i) \; \; \{...\} \end{array}
                                     // Overload resolution for G<int>. F1
                                     // will pick non-generic
    \begin{array}{lll} voi \ d \ F3(I \ 1 < U > \ a) & \{...\} \\ voi \ d \ F3(I \ 2 < U > \ a) & \{...\} \end{array}
                                     // Valid overload
class G2<U, V>
    voi d F5(U u, V v) {...}
                                              // Overload resolution for G2<int, int>
woul d
                                              // fail
    voi d F5(V v, U u) {...}
    voi d F6(U u, I1<V> v) {...}
                                              // Valid, overload resolution on
G2<I1<int>, int>
                                              // is ambiguous
    voi d F6(I1 < V > v, U u) \{...\}
    // Valid overload
    void F8(ref U u) {...}
                                              // Valid overload
    void F8(out V v) {...}
```

end example]

### 25.1.8 Parameter array methods and type parameters

Type parameters can be used in the type of a parameter array. [Example: Given the declaration

```
class C<V>
{
    static void F(int x, int y, params V[] args) { ... }
}
```

the following invocations of the expanded form of the method:

```
C<int>. F(10, 20);
    C<obj ect>. F(10, 20, 30, 40);
    C<string>. F(10, 20, "hello", "goodbye");

correspond exactly to:
    C<int>. F(10, 20, new int[] {});
    C<obj ect>. F(10, 20, new obj ect[] {30, 40});
    C<string>. F(10, 20, new string[] {"hello", "goodbye"});

end example]
```

### 25.1.9 Overriding and generic classes

Function members in generic classes can override function members in base classes, as usual. When determining the overridden base member, the members of the base classes shall be determined by substituting type arguments, as described in §25.5.4. Once the members of the base classes are determined, the rules for overriding are the same as for non-generic classes.

[Example: The following example demonstrates how the overriding rules work in the presence of generics:

```
abstract class C<T>
{
    public virtual T F() {...}
    public virtual C<T> G() {...}
    public virtual void H(C<T> x) {...}
}

class D: C<string>
{
    public override string F() {...} // Ok
    public override C<string> G() {...} // Ok
    public override void H(C<int> x) {...} // Error, should be C<string>
}

class E<T, U>: C<U>
{
    public override C<U> G() {...} // Ok
    public override C<U> G() {...} // Ok
    public override C<U> G() {...} // Ok
    public override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<T> x) {...} // Ok
    public Override V in H(C<
```

end example]

### 25.1.10 Operators in generic classes

Generic class declarations can define operators, following the same rules as non-generic class declarations. The instance type (§25.1.2) of the class declaration shall be used in the declaration of operators in a manner analogous to the normal rules for operators, as follows:

- A unary operator shall take a single parameter of the instance type. The unary ++ and -- operators shall return the instance type or a type derived from the instance type.
- At least one of the parameters of a binary operator shall be of the instance type.
- Either the parameter type or the return type of a conversion operator shall be of the instance type.

[Example: The following shows some examples of valid operator declarations in a generic class:

```
class X<T>
{
    public static X<T> operator ++(X<T> operand) {...}
    public static int operator *(X<T> op1, int op2) {...}
    public static explicit operator X<T>(T value) {...}
}
end example]
```

For a conversion operator that converts from a source type S to a target type T, when the rules specified in §17.9.3 are applied, any type parameters associated with S or T are considered to be unique types that have no inheritance relationship with other types, and any constraints on those type parameters are ignored.

[Example: In the following code

```
class C<T> {...}

class D<T>: C<T>
{
   public static implicit operator C<int>(D<T> value) {...} // 0k
   public static implicit operator C<string>(D<T> value) {...} // 0k
   public static implicit operator C<T>(D<T> value) {...} // Error
}
```

the first two operator declarations are permitted because, for the purposes of §17.9.3, T, and int and string, respectively, are considered unique types with no relationship. However, the third operator is an error because C<T> is the base class of D<T>. end example]

It is possible to declare operators that, for some type arguments, specify conversions that already exist as pre-defined conversions. [*Example*: In the following code

```
struct Convertible<T>
{
    public static implicit operator Convertible<T>(T value) {...}
    public static explicit operator T(Convertible<T> value) {...}
}
```

when type **obj ect** is specified as a type argument for T, the second operator declares a conversion that already exists (an implicit, and therefore also an explicit, conversion exists from any type to type **obj ect**). *end example*]

In cases where a pre-defined conversion exists between two types, any user-defined conversions between those types are ignored. Specifically:

- If a pre-defined implicit conversion (§13.1) exists from type S to type T, all user-defined conversions (implicit or explicit) from S to T are ignored.
- If a pre-defined explicit conversion (§13.2) exists from type S to type T, any user-defined explicit conversions from S to T are ignored. However, user-defined implicit conversions from S to T are still considered.

[*Example*: For all types but **obj ect**, the operators declared by the **Convertible** e<T> type above do not conflict with pre-defined conversions. For example:

However, for type obj ect, pre-defined conversions hide the user-defined conversions in all cases but one:

#### 25.1.11 Nested types in generic classes

*end example*]

A generic class declaration can contain nested type declarations. The type parameters of the enclosing class can be used within the nested types. A nested type declaration can contain additional type parameters that apply only to the nested type.

Every type declaration contained within a generic class declaration is implicitly a generic type declaration. When writing a reference to a type nested within a generic type, the containing constructed type, including its type arguments, shall be named. However, from within the outer class, the nested type can be used without qualification; the instance type of the outer class can be implicitly used when constructing the nested type. [*Example*: The following example shows three different correct ways to refer to a constructed type created from I nner; the first two are equivalent:

```
class Outer<T>
{
    class Inner<U>
        {
            public static void F(T t, U u) {...}
        }
        static void F(T t) {
            Outer<T>. Inner<string>. F(t, "abc"); // These two statements have Inner<string>. F(t, "abc"); // the same effect
            Outer<int>. Inner<string>. F(3, "abc"); // This type is different
            Outer. Inner<string>. F(t, "abc"); // Error, Outer needs type arg
        }
    }
}
```

end example]

Although it is bad programming style, a type parameter in a nested type can hide a member or type parameter declared in the outer type. [*Example*:

end example]

#### 25.2 Generic struct declarations

[Note: A struct declaration (§18.1), can optionally define type parameters and their associated constraints:

```
struct-declaration:
```

```
attributes_{opt} struct-modifiers_{opt} partial_{opt} struct identifier type-parameter-list_{opt} struct-interfaces_{opt} type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt} struct-body;
```

end note]

The rules for generic class declarations (§25.1 and its subclauses) apply equally to generic struct declarations, as do the exceptions noted in §18.3.

### 25.3 Generic interface declarations

[Note: An interface declaration (§20.1), can optionally define type parameters and their associated constraints:

```
interface-declaration: attributes_{opt} interface-modifiers_{opt} partial_{opt} interface identifier type-parameter-list_{opt} interface-base_{opt} type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt} interface-body; opt
```

end note]

Except where noted below, generic interface declarations follow the same rules as non-generic interface declarations.

Each type parameter in an interface declaration defines a name in the declaration space (§10.3) of that interface. The scope (§10.7) of a type parameter on an interface includes the *interface-base*, *type-parameter-constraints-clauses*, and *interface-body*. Within its scope, a type parameter can be used as a type. The same restrictions apply to type parameters on interfaces as apply to type parameter on classes (§25.1.1).

# 25.3.1 Uniqueness of implemented interfaces

The interfaces implemented by a generic type declaration shall remain unique for all possible constructed types. Without this rule, it would be impossible to determine the correct method to call for certain constructed types. [Example: Suppose a generic class declaration were permitted to be written as follows:

Were this permitted, it would be impossible to determine which code to execute in the following case:

```
I < i nt > x = new X < i nt, i nt > ();
x. F();
```

end example]

To determine if the interface list of a generic type declaration is valid, the following steps are performed:

- Let L be the list of interfaces directly specified in a generic class, struct, or interface declaration C.
- Add to L any base interfaces of the interfaces already in L.
- Remove any duplicates from L.
- If any possible constructed type created from C would, after type arguments are substituted into L, cause two interfaces in L to be identical, then the declaration of C is invalid. Constraint declarations are not considered when determining all possible constructed types.

[Note: In the class declaration X above, the interface list L consists of I < U > and I < V >. The declaration is invalid because any constructed type with U and V being the same type would cause these two interfaces to be identical types. end note]

[Example: It is possible for interfaces specified at different inheritance levels to unify:

```
interface I<T>
{
    void F();
}
class Base<U>: I<U>
{
    void I<U>.F() {...}
}
class Derived<U, V>: Base<U>, I<V> // Ok
{
    void I<V>.F() {...}
}
```

This code is valid even though Deri ved<U, V> implements both I <U> and I <V>. The code

```
I < i nt > x = new X < i nt, i nt > ();
x. F();
```

invokes the method in **Deri ved**, since **Deri ved**<int, int> effectively re-implements  $I < int > (\S 20.4.4)$ . end example]

### 25.3.2 Explicit interface member implementations

Explicit interface member implementations work with constructed interface types in essentially the same way as with simple interface types. As usual, an explicit interface member implementation shall be qualified by an *interface-type* indicating which interface is being implemented. This type can be a simple interface or a constructed interface [*Example*:

```
interface IList<ElementType>
{
    ElementType[] GetElements();
}
interface IDictionary<KeyType, ElementType>
{
    ElementType this[KeyType key] { get; }
    void Add(KeyType key, ElementType value);
}

class List<ElementType>: IList<ElementType>, IDictionary<int, ElementType>
{
    ElementType[] IList<ElementType>. GetElements() {...}

    // Return the element at index
    ElementType IDictionary<int, ElementType>. this[int index] {...}

    // Add value at the index
    void IDictionary<int, ElementType>. Add(int index, ElementType value)
    {...}
}

end example]
```

# 25.4 Generic delegate declarations

[Note: A delegate declaration (§22.1), can optionally define type parameters and their associated constraints: delegate-declaration:

```
attributes_{opt} delegate-modifiers_{opt} delegate return-type identifier type-parameter-list_{opt} (formal-parameter-list_{opt}) type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt};
```

end note]

Generic delegate declarations follow the same rules as non-generic delegate declarations, except where noted below. Each type parameter in a generic delegate declaration defines a name in a special declaration space (§10.3) that is associated with that delegate declaration. The scope (§10.7) of a type parameter in a delegate declaration includes the *return-type*, *formal-parameter-list*, and *type-parameter-constraints-clauses*.

Like other generic type declarations, type arguments shall be given to create a constructed delegate type. The parameter types and return type of a constructed delegate type are created by substituting, for each type parameter in the delegate declaration, the corresponding type argument of the constructed delegate type. The resulting return type and parameter types are used in determining what methods are consistent (§22.1) with a constructed delegate type. [*Example*:

# 25.5 Constructed types

A generic type declaration, by itself, denotes an *unbound generic type* that is used as a "blueprint" to form many different types, by way of applying *type arguments*. The type arguments are written within angle brackets (< and >) immediately following the name of the generic type declaration. A type that is named with at least one type argument is called a *constructed type*. A constructed type can be used in most places in the language in which a type name can appear. An unbound generic type can only be used within a *typeof-expression* (§14.5.11).

Constructed types can also be used in expressions as simple names (§14.5.2) or when accessing a member (§14.5.4).

When a *namespace-or-type-name* is evaluated, only generic types with the correct number of type parameters are considered. Thus, it is possible to use the same identifier to identify different types, as long as the types have different numbers of type parameters. This is useful when mixing generic and non-generic classes in the same program. [*Example*:

end example]

The detailed rules for name lookup in the *namespace-or-typename* productions is described in §10.8. The resolution of ambiguities in these productions is described in §9.2.3.

A *type-name* might identify a constructed type even though it doesn't specify type parameters directly. This can occur where a type is nested within a generic class declaration, and the instance type of the containing declaration is implicitly used for name lookup (§25.1.11). [*Example*:

end example]

[Note: In unsafe code, a constructed type shall not be used as an unmanaged-type (§25.2). end note]

### 25.5.1 Type arguments

Each argument in a type argument list is simply a type.

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
type-arguments:
    type-argument
    type-arguments , type-argument

type-argument:
    type
```

Type arguments can be constructed types or type parameters. [*Note*: In unsafe code (§27), a *type-argument* shall not be a *pointer-type. end note*] Each type argument shall satisfy any constraints on the corresponding type parameter (§25.7.1).

### 25.5.2 Open and closed types

All types can be classified as *open types* or *closed types*. An open type is a type that involves type parameters. More specifically:

- A type parameter defines an open type.
- An array type is an open type if and only if its element type is an open type.
- A constructed type is an open type if and only if one or more of its type arguments is an open type. A constructed nested type is an open type if and only if one or more of its type arguments or the type arguments of its containing type(s) is an open type.

A closed type is a type that is not an open type.

At run-time, all of the code within a generic type declaration is executed in the context of a closed constructed type that was created by applying type arguments to the generic declaration. Each type parameter within the generic type is bound to a particular run-time type. The run-time processing of all statements and expressions always occurs with closed types, and open types occur only during compile-time processing.

Each closed constructed type has its own set of static variables, which are not shared with any other closed constructed types. Since an open type does not exist at run-time, there are no static variables associated with an open type. Two closed constructed types are the same type if they are constructed from the same unbound generic type, and their corresponding type arguments are the same type.

# 25.5.3 Base classes and interfaces of a constructed type

A constructed class type has a direct base class, just like a simple class type. If the generic class declaration does not specify a base class, the base class is **obj ect**. If a base class is specified in the generic class declaration, the base class of the constructed type is obtained by substituting, for each *type-parameter* in the base class declaration, the corresponding *type-argument* of the constructed type. [*Example*: Given the generic class declarations

```
class B<U, V> {...}
class G<T>: B<string, T[]> {...}
```

the base class of the constructed type G<i nt> would be B<stri ng, i nt[]>. end example]

Similarly, constructed class, struct, and interface types have a set of explicit base interfaces. The explicit base interfaces are formed by taking the explicit base interface declarations on the generic type declaration, and substituting, for each *type-parameter* in the base interface declaration, the corresponding *type-argument* of the constructed type.

The set of all base classes and base interfaces for a type is formed, as usual, by recursively getting the base classes and interfaces of the immediate base classes and interfaces. [Example: Given the generic class declarations:

```
class A {...}
class B<T>: A {...}
class C<T>: B<IComparable<T>> {...}
```

```
class D < T >: C < T[] > {...}
```

the base classes of D<i nt> are C<i nt[]>, B<I Comparable<i nt[]>>, A, and object. end example]

# 25.5.4 Members of a constructed type

The non-inherited members of a constructed type are obtained by substituting, for each *type-parameter* in the member declaration, the corresponding *type-argument* of the constructed type. The substitution process is based on the semantic meaning of type declarations, and is not simply textual substitution.

[Example: Given the generic class declaration

```
class Gen<T, U>
{
    public T[,] a;
    public void G(int i, T t, Gen<U, T> gt) {...}
    public U Prop { get {...} set {...} }
    public int H(double d) {...}
}
```

the constructed type Gen<i nt[], I Comparabl e<stri ng>> has the following members:

```
public int[,][] a;
public void G(int i, int[] t, Gen<IComparable<string>,int[]> gt) {...}
public IComparable<string> Prop { get {...} set {...} }
public int H(double d) {...}
```

The type of the member a in the generic class declaration Gen is "two-dimensional array of T", so the type of the member a in the constructed type above is "two-dimensional array of one-dimensional array of int", or int[, ][]. end example]

The inherited members of a constructed type are obtained in a similar way. First, all the members of the immediate base class are determined. If the base class is itself a constructed type, this might involve a recursive application of the current rule. Then, each of the inherited members is transformed by substituting, for each *type-parameter* in the member declaration, the corresponding *type-argument* of the constructed type. [*Example*:

```
class B<U>
{
    public U F(long index) {...}
}
class D<T>: B<T[]>
{
    public T G(string s) {...}
}
```

In the above example, the constructed type D < i nt > has a non-inherited member publ i c i nt G(string s) obtained by substituting the type argument i nt for the type parameter T. D < i nt > also has an inherited member from the class declaration B. This inherited member is determined by first determining the members of the constructed type B < T[] > by substituting T[] for U, yielding public T[] F(l ong i ndex). Then, the type argument i nt is substituted for the type parameter T, yielding the inherited member public int[] F(l ong i ndex). end example]

### 25.5.5 Accessibility of a constructed type

A constructed type  $C < T_1, ..., T_N >$  is accessible when all of its components  $C, T_1, ..., T_N$  are accessible. More precisely, the accessibility domain for a constructed type is the intersection of the accessibility domain of the unbound generic type and the accessibility domains of the type arguments.

#### 25.5.6 Conversions

Constructed types follow the same conversion rules (§13) as do non-generic types. When applying these rules, the base classes and interfaces of constructed types shall be determined as described in §25.5.3.

No special conversions exist between constructed reference types other than those described in §13. In particular, unlike array types, constructed reference types do not permit co-variant conversions (§19.5). This means that a type Li st<B> has no conversion (either implicit or explicit) to Li st<A> even if B is derived from A. Likewise, no conversion exists from Li st<B> to Li st<obj ect>.

[Note: The rationale for this is simple: if a conversion to List<A> is permitted, then apparently, one can store values of type A into the list. However, this would break the invariant that every object in a list of type List<B> is always a value of type B, or else unexpected failures can occur when assigning into collection classes. end note]

[Example: The behavior of conversions and runtime type checks is illustrated below:

```
class A {...}
class B: A {...}
class Collection {...}
class List<T>: Collection {...}

class Test
{
    void F() {
        List<A> listA = new List<A>();
        List<B> listB = new List<B>();

        Collection c1 = listA;
        Collection c2 = listB;
        List<A> a1 = listB;
        List<A> a2 = (List<A>)listB;
        // Error, no implicit conversion
        // Error, no explicit conversion
    }
}
```

end example]

#### 25.5.7 Using alias directives

Using aliases can name a closed constructed type, but shall not name a generic type declaration without supplying type arguments. [Example:

end example]

### 25.6 Generic methods

A generic method is a method whose declaration includes a type-parameter-list (§17.5 and §20.2.1). Generic methods can be declared inside class, struct, or interface declarations, which can themselves, be either generic or non-generic. If a generic method is declared inside a generic type declaration, the body of the

method can refer to both the type parameters of the method, and the type parameters of the containing declaration.

The *type-parameter-list* and *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* of a generic method declaration have the same syntax and purpose as in a generic type declaration. The method's *type-parameters* are in scope throughout the *method-declaration*, and can be used to form types throughout that scope in *return-type*, *method-body*, and *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* but not in *attributes*.

The name of a method type parameter cannot be the same as the name of an ordinary parameter in the same method.

[Example: The following example finds the first element in an array, if any, that satisfies the given test delegate. (Generic delegates are described in §25.4.)

```
public delegate bool Test<T>(T item);
public class Finder
{
    public static T Find<T>(T[] items, Test<T> test) {
        foreach (T item in items) {
            if (test(item))
                return item;
        }
        throw new InvalidOperationException("Item not found");
    }
}
end example]
```

# 25.6.1 Generic method signatures

For the purposes of signature comparisons any *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* are ignored, as are the names of the method's *type-parameters*, but the number of generic type parameters is relevant, as are the ordinal positions of type-parameters in left-to-right ordering (§10.6). [*Example*: The following example shows how method signatures are affected by this rule:

```
class A {}
      class B {}
      interface IX
          T F1<T>(T[] a, int i);
                                        // Error, both declarations have the same
                                            signature because return type and type
parameter names are not significant
          void F1<U>(U[] a, int i);
          void F2 < T > (int x);
                                        // 0k, the number of type parameters is
          void F2(int x);
                                         // part of the signature
          void F3<T>(T t) where T: A;
                                            // Error, constraints are not
          void F3<T>(T t) where T: B;
                                            // considered in signatures
end example]
```

#### 25.6.2 Virtual generic methods

Generic methods can be declared using the abstract, virtual, and override modifiers. The signature matching rules described in §10.6 are used when matching methods for overriding or interface implementation. When a generic method overrides a generic method declared in a base class, or is an explicit interface member implementation of a method in a base interface, the method shall not specify any type-parameter-constraints-clauses. In these cases, the type parameters of the method inherit constraints from the method being overridden or implemented. [Example:

```
abstract class Base
{
    public abstract T F<T, U>(T t, U u) where U : T;
```

```
public abstract T G<T>(T t) where T: IComparable;
}
interface I
{
   bool M<T>(T a, T b) where T : class;
class Derived: Base, I
   public override X F < X, Y > (X x, Y y)
                                           // 0k
      // The implicit constraint Y : X is inherited
      // so y is implicitly convertible to type X.
      return y;
   }
   public override T G<T>(T t)
                                  // Error - constraints not allowed
      where T: I Comparable
   bool I. M<U>(U a, U b)
      // The implicit constraint U : class is inherited
      // so a and b can be compared using the reference type
      // equality operators.
      return a = b:
}
```

The override of F is valid because type parameter names are permitted to differ. Within **Deri ved**. F, the type parameter Y implicitly has the constraint Y: X as inherited from **Base**. F. The override of G is invalid because overrides are not permitted to specify type parameter constraints. The explicit method implementation I. Min **Deri ved** implicitly inherits the U: class constraint from the interface method. end example

When a generic method implicitly implements an interface method, the constraints given for each method type parameter shall be equivalent in both declarations (after any interface type parameters are replaced with the appropriate type arguments), where method type parameters are identified by ordinal positions, left to right. [Example:

```
interface I < A, B, C >
{
    void F < T > (T t) where T : A;
    void G < T > (T t) where T : B;
    void H < T > (T t) where T : C;
}
class Cls : I < object, Cls, string >
{
    public void F < T > (T t) where T : Cls {...} // 0k
    public void H < T > (T t) where T : string {...} // Error
}
```

The method Cl s. F<T> implicitly implements I <obj ect, Cl s, stri ng>. F<T>. In this case, Cl s. F<T> is not required (nor permitted) to specify the constraint T: obj ect since obj ect is an implicit constraint on all type parameters. The method Cl s. G<T> implicitly implements I <obj ect, Cl s, stri ng>. G<T> because the constraints match those in the interface, after the interface type parameters are replaced with the corresponding type arguments. The constraint for method Cl s. H<T> is an error since sealed types (string in this case) cannot be used as constraints. Omitting the constraint would also be an error since constraints of implicit interface method implementations are required to match. Thus, it's impossible to implicitly implement I <obj ect, Cl s, stri ng>. H<T>. This interface method needs to be implemented using an explicit interface member implementation:

```
class Cls : I < object, Cls, string>
{
          ...
          public void H < U > (U u) where U : class {...}
          void I < object, Cls, string>. H < T > (T t)
          {
               string s = t; // 0k
                H < T > (t);
          }
}
```

In this example, the explicit interface member implementation invokes a public method having strictly weaker constraints. Note that the assignment from t to s is valid since T inherits a constraint of T: string, even though this constraint is not expressible in source code. end example

# 25.6.3 Calling generic methods

A generic method invocation can explicitly specify a type argument list, or it can omit the type argument list and rely on type inference to determine the type arguments. The exact compile-time processing of a method invocation, including a generic method invocation, is described in §14.5.5.1. When a generic method is invoked without a type argument list, type inference takes place as described in §25.6.4.

[Example: The following example shows how overload resolution occurs after type inference and after type arguments are substituted into the parameter list:

```
class Test
           static void F<T>(int x, T y) {
   Console. WriteLine("one");
           static void F<T>(T x, long y) {
   Console. WriteLine("two");
           static void Main() {
                                            // 0k, prints "one"
               F < i nt > (5, 324);
                                            // Ok, prints "two"
               F < byte > (5, 324);
               F<double>(5, 324);
                                            // Error, ambi guous
                                            // 0k, prints "one"
               F(5, 324);
               F(5, 324L);
                                            // Error, ambi guous
           }
       }
end example]
```

# 25.6.4 Inference of type arguments

When a generic method is called without specifying type arguments, a *type inference* process attempts to infer type arguments for the call. The presence of type inference allows a more convenient syntax to be used for calling a generic method, and allows the programmer to avoid specifying redundant type information. [*Example*: Given the method declaration:

```
class Chooser
{
    static Random rand = new Random();
    public static T Choose<T>(T first, T second) {
        return (rand. Next(2) == 0) ? first : second;
    }
}
```

it is possible to invoke the Choose method without explicitly specifying a type argument:

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

Through type inference, the type arguments int and string are determined from the arguments to the method. *end example*]

Type inference occurs as part of the compile-time processing of a method invocation (§14.5.5.1) and takes place before the overload resolution step of the invocation. When a particular method group is specified in a method invocation, and no type arguments are specified as part of the method invocation, type inference is applied to each generic method in the method group. If type inference succeeds, then the inferred type arguments are used to determine the types of arguments for subsequent overload resolution. If overload resolution chooses a generic method as the one to invoke, then the inferred type arguments are used as the runtime type arguments for the invocation. If type inference for a particular method fails, that method does not participate in overload resolution. The failure of type inference, in and of itself, does not cause a compile-time error. However, it often leads to a compile-time error when overload resolution then fails to find any applicable methods.

If the supplied number of arguments is different from the number of parameters in the method, then inference immediately fails. Otherwise, type inference first occurs independently for each regular argument that is supplied to the method. Assume this argument has type A, and the corresponding parameter has type P. Type inferences are produced by relating the types A and P according to the following steps:

- Nothing is inferred from the argument (but type inference succeeds) if any of the following are true:
  - o P does not involve any method type parameters.
  - o The argument has the null type (§11.2.7).
  - o The argument is an anonymous method.
  - o The argument is a method group.
- If P is an array type, and A is an array type of the same rank, then replace A and P, respectively, with the element types of A and P, and repeat this step.
- If P is an array type, and A is an instantiation of ILi st<>, I Col lection<>, or I Enumerable<>>, then replace A and P, respectively, with the element types of A and P, and repeat this step.
- If P is an array type, and A is not an array type of the same rank, or an instantiation of I Li st<>, I Col lection<>, or I Enumerable <>, then type inference fails for the generic method.
- If P is a method type parameter, then type inference succeeds for this argument, and A is the type inferred for that type parameter.
- Otherwise, P shall be a constructed type. If, for each method type parameter  $M_X$  that occurs in P, exactly one type  $T_X$  can be determined such that replacing each  $M_X$  with each  $T_X$  produces a type to which A is convertible by a standard implicit conversion, then inferencing succeeds for this argument, and each  $T_X$  is the type inferred for each  $M_X$ . Method type parameter constraints, if any, are ignored for the purpose of type inference. If, for a given  $M_X$ , no  $T_X$  exists, or more than one  $T_X$  exists, then type inference fails for the generic method (a situation where more than one  $T_X$  exists can only occur if P is a generic interface type and A implements multiple constructed versions of that interface).

If all of the method arguments are processed successfully by the above algorithm, then all inferences that were produced from the arguments are pooled. Type inference is said to have succeeded for the given generic method and argument list if both of the following are true:

- Each type parameter of the method had a type argument inferred for it (in short, the set of inferences is *complete*).
- For each type parameter, all of the inferences for that type parameter infer the same type argument (in short, the set of inferences is *consistent*).

If the generic method was declared with a parameter array (§17.5.1.4), then type inference is first performed against the method in its normal form. If type inference succeeds, and the resultant method is applicable, then the method is eligible for overload resolution in its normal form. Otherwise, type inference is performed against the method in its expanded form (§14.4.2.1).

# 25.6.5 Using a generic method with a delegate

An instance of a delegate can be created that refers to a generic method declaration. The exact compile-time processing of a delegate creation expression, including a delegate creation expression that refers to a generic method, is described in §14.5.10.3.

The type arguments used when invoking a generic method through a delegate are determined when the delegate is instantiated. The type arguments can be given explicitly via a *type-argument-list*, or determined by type inference (§25.6.4). If type inference is used, the parameter types of the delegate are used as argument types in the inference process. The return type of the delegate is *not* used for inference. [*Example*: The following example shows both ways of supplying a type argument to a delegate instantiation expression:

```
delegate int D(string s, int i);
delegate int E();
class X
   public static T F<T>(string s, T t) {...}
   public static T G<T>() {...}
   static void Main() {
      D d1 = new D(F < int >);
                                  // 0k, type argument given explicitly
      D d2 = new D(F);
                                  // Ok, int inferred as type argument
                                  // 0k, type argument given explicitly
      E e1 = new E(G < int >);
      E e2 = new E(G);
                                  // Error, cannot infer from return type
   }
}
```

end example]

Whenever a generic method is used to create delegate instance, type arguments are given or inferred when the delegate instance is created, and a *type-argument-list* shall not be supplied when the delegate is invoked (§22.3).

#### 25.6.6 No generic properties, events, indexers, operators, constructors, or finalizers

Properties, events, indexers, operators, constructors, and finalizers shall not themselves have type parameters (although they can occur in generic types, and use the type parameters from an enclosing type).

#### 25.7 Constraints

Generic type and method declarations can optionally specify type parameter constraints by including a *type-parameter-constraints-clauses* in the declaration.

```
type-parameter-constraints-clauses:
    type-parameter-constraints-clauses type-parameter-constraints-clauses
type-parameter-constraints-clause:
    where type-parameter: type-parameter-constraints

type-parameter-constraints:
    primary-constraint
    secondary-constraints
    constructor-constraint
    primary-constraint , secondary-constraints
    primary-constraint , constructor-constraint
    secondary-constraint , constructor-constraint
    primary-constraint , secondary-constraint , constructor-constraint
    primary-constraint , secondary-constraint , constructor-constraint
```

#### C# LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION

```
primary-constraint:
    class-type
    cl ass
    struct

secondary-constraints:
    interface-type
    type-parameter
    secondary-constraints , interface-type
    secondary-constraints , type-parameter

constructor-constraint:
    new ( )
```

Each *type-parameter-constraints-clause* consists of the token where, followed by the name of a type parameter, followed by a colon and the list of constraints for that type parameter. There shall be at most one where clause for each type parameter, and the where clauses can be listed in any order. The where token is not a keyword.

The list of constraints given in a where clause can include any of the following components, in this order: a single primary constraint, one or more secondary constraints, and the constructor constraint, new().

A primary constraint can be a class type or the *reference type constraint* class or the *value type constraint* struct. A secondary constraint can be a *type-parameter* or *interface-type*.

The reference type constraint specifies that a type argument used for the type parameter must be a reference type (§25.7.1). Any class type, interface type, delegate type, array type, or type parameter *known to be a reference type* (as defined below) satisfies this constraint.

The value type constraint specifies that a type argument used for the type parameter must be a value type (§25.7.1). Any non-nullable struct type, enum type, or type parameter having the value type constraint satisfies this constraint. A type parameter having the value type constraint shall not also have the *constructor-constraint*. The System. Nullable<T> type specifies the non-nullable value type constraint for T. Thus, recursively constructed types of the forms T?? and Nullable<Nullable<T>> are prohibited.

Pointer types are never allowed to be type arguments so they are not considered to satisfy the reference type or value type constraints.

If a constraint is a class type, an interface type, or a type parameter, that type specifies a minimal "base type" that every type argument used for that type parameter shall support. Whenever a constructed type or generic method is used, the type argument is checked against the constraints on the type parameter at compile-time. The type argument supplied shall derive from or implement all of the constraints given for that type parameter.

A *class-type* constraint shall satisfy the following rules:

- The type shall be a class type.
- The type shall not be seal ed.
- The type shall not be one of the following types: System. Array, System. Del egate, System. Enum, or System. ValueType.
- The type shall not be **obj** ect. [*Note*: Since all types derive from **obj** ect, such a constraint would have no effect if it were permitted. *end note*]
- At most one constraint for a given type parameter can be a class type.

A type specified as an *interface-type* constraint shall satisfy the following rules:

- The type shall be an interface type.
- A type shall not be specified more than once in a given where clause.

In either case, the constraint can involve any of the type parameters of the associated type or method declaration as part of a constructed type, and can involve the type being declared.

Any class or interface type specified as a type parameter constraint shall be at least as accessible (§10.5.4) as the generic type or method being declared.

A type specified as a type-parameter constraint shall satisfy the following rules:

- The type shall be a type parameter.
- A type shall not be specified more than once in a given where clause.

In addition, there shall be no cycles in the dependency graph of type parameters, where dependency is a transitive relation defined by:

- If a type parameter T is used as a constraint for type parameter S then S depends on T.
- If a type parameter S depends on a type parameter T and T depends on a type parameter U then S *depends on* U.

Given this relation, it is a compile-time error for a type parameter to depend on itself (directly or indirectly).

Any constraints must be consistent among dependent type parameters. If type parameter S depends on type parameter T then:

- T must not have the value type constraint. Otherwise, T is effectively sealed so S would be forced to be the same type as T, eliminating the need for two type parameters.
- If S has the value type constraint then T must not have a *class-type* constraint.
- If S has a class-type constraint A and T has a class-type constraint B then there must be an identity conversion or implicit reference conversion from A to B or an implicit reference conversion from B to A.
- If S also depends on type parameter U and U has a *class-type* constraint A and T has a *class-type* constraint B then there must be an identity conversion or implicit reference conversion from A to B or an implicit reference conversion from B to A.

It is valid for S to have the value type constraint and T to have the reference type constraint. Effectively this limits T to the types System. Object, System. ValueType, System. Enum and any interface type.

If the where clause for a type parameter includes a constructor constraint (which has the form new()), it is possible to use the new operator to create instances of the type (§14.5.10.1). Any type argument used for a type parameter with a constructor constraint shall have a public parameterless constructor (this includes all value types) or be a type parameter having the value type constraint or constructor constraint (see §25.7.1 for details).

[Example: The following are examples of constraints:

```
interface IPrintable
{
    void Print();
}
interface IComparable<T>
{
    int CompareTo(T value);
}
interface IKeyProvider<T>
{
    T GetKey();
}
class Printer<T> where T: IPrintable {...}
class SortedList<T> where T: IComparable<T> {...}
```

```
class Dictionary<K, V>
   where K: IComparable<K>
   where V: IPrintable, IKeyProvider<K>, new()
{
    ...
}
```

The following example is in error because it causes a circularity in the dependency graph of the type parameters:

The following examples illustrate additional invalid situations:

end example]

The *effective base class* of a type parameter T is defined as follows:

- If T has no primary constraints or type parameter constraints, its effective base class is **object**.
- If T has the value type constraint, its effective base class is System. Val ueType.
- If T has the reference type constraint, but no *type-parameter* constraints, its effective base class is **object**.
- If T has a *class-type* constraint C but no *type-parameter* constraints, its effective base class is C.
- If T has no primary constraints but has one or more *type-parameter* constraints, its effective base class is the most encompassed type (§13.4.2) in the set of effective base classes of its *type-parameter* constraints. The consistency rules ensure that such a most encompassed type exists.
- If T has both a *class-type* constraint and one or more *type-parameter* constraints, its effective base class is the most encompassed type (§13.4.2) in the set consisting of the *class-type* constraint of T and the effective base classes of its *type-parameter* constraints. The consistency rules ensure that such a most encompassed type exists.
- If T has both a reference type constraint and one or more *type-parameter* constraints, its effective base class is the most encompassed type (§13.4.2) in the set consisting of the effective base classes of its *type-parameter* constraints. The consistency rules ensure that such a most encompassed type exists.

The *effective interface set* of a type parameter T is defined as follows:

- If T has no *secondary-constraints*, its effective interface set is empty.
- If T has *interface-type* constraints but no *type-parameter* constraints, its effective interface set is its set of *interface-type* constraints.

- If T has no *interface-type* constraints but has *type-parameter* constraints, its effective interface set is the union of the effective interface sets of its *type-parameter* constraints.
- If T has both *interface-type* constraints and *type-parameter* constraints, its effective interface set is the union of its set of *interface-type* constraints and the effective interface sets of its *type-parameter* constraints.

A type parameter is known to be a reference type if

- it has the reference type constraint, or
- its effective base class is not object or System. ValueType.

Values of a constrained type parameter type can be used to access the instance members implied by the constraints. [*Example*: In the following code

```
interface IPrintable
{
    void Print();
}
class Printer<T> where T: IPrintable
{
    void PrintOne(T x) {
        x. Print();
    }
}
```

the methods of IPrintable can be invoked directly on x because T is constrained to always implement IPrintable. *end example*]

Two generic partial type declarations (in the same program) contribute to the same unbound generic type if they have the same fully qualified name (which includes the number of type parameters) (§10.3). Two such partial type declarations shall specify the same name for each type parameter, in order.

When a partial generic type declaration includes constraints, the constraints shall agree with all other parts that include constraints. Specifically, each part that includes constraints shall have constraints for the same set of type parameters, and for each type parameter, the sets of primary, secondary, and constructor constraints shall be equivalent. Two sets of constraints are equivalent if they contain the same members. If no part of a partial generic type specifies type parameter constraints, the type parameters are considered unconstrained. [Example:

```
partial class Map<K, V>
    where K: IComparable<K>
    where V: IKeyProvider<K>, new()
{
    ...
}

partial class Map<K, V>
    where V: IKeyProvider<K>, new()
    where K: IComparable<K>
{
    ...
}

partial class Map<K, V>
{
    ...
}
```

is correct because those parts that include constraints (the first two) effectively specify the same set of primary, secondary, and constructor constraints for the same set of type parameters, respectively. *end example*]

### 25.7.1 Satisfying constraints

Whenever a constructed type or generic method is referenced, the supplied type arguments are checked against the type parameter constraints declared on the generic type or method. For each where clause, the type argument A that corresponds to the named type parameter is checked against each constraint as follows:

- If the constraint is a class type, an interface type, or a type parameter, let C represent that constraint with the supplied type arguments substituted for any type parameters that appear in the constraint. To satisfy the constraint, it shall be the case that type A is convertible to type C by one of the following:
  - o An identity conversion (§13.1.1)
  - o An implicit reference conversion (§13.1.4)
  - o A boxing conversion (§13.1.5), provided that type A is a non-nullable value type
  - o An implicit reference, boxing, or type parameter conversion from a type parameter A to C (§25.7.4).
- If the constraint is the reference type constraint, the type A must satisfy one of the following:
  - A is an interface type, class type, delegate type or array type. [Note: Note that System. ValueType and System. Enum are reference types so satisfy this constraint. end note]
  - o A is a type parameter that is known to be a reference type (§25.7).
- If the constraint is the value type constraint, the type A must satisfy one of the following:
  - A is a non-nullable struct type or enum type. [Note: Note that System. Val ueType and System. Enum are reference types so do not satisfy this constraint. end note]
  - A is a type parameter having the value type constraint (§25.7).
- If the constraint is the constructor constraint new(), the type argument A shall not be abstract and shall have a public parameterless constructor. This is satisfied if one of the following is true:
  - A is a value type, since all value types have a public default constructor (§11.1.2). A is a type parameter having the constructor constraint (§25.7).
  - o A is a type parameter having the value type constraint (§25.7).
  - A is a class that is not abstract, A contains an explicitly declared public constructor with no parameters.
  - o A is not abstract and has a default constructor (§17.10.4).

A compile-time error occurs if one or more of a type parameter's constraints are not satisfied by the given type arguments.

Since type parameters are not inherited, constraints are never inherited either. [Example: In the code below, D needs to specify the constraint on its type parameter T, so that T satisfies the constraint imposed by the base class B<T>. In contrast, class E need not specify a constraint, because Li st<T> implements I Enumerable for any T.

```
class B<T> where T: IEnumerable {...}
class D<T>: B<T> where T: IEnumerable {...}
class E<T>: B<List<T>> {...}
end example]
```

#### 25.7.2 Member lookup on type parameters

The results of member lookup in a type given by a type parameter T depends on the constraints, if any, specified for T. If T has no *class-type*, *interface-type* or *type-parameter* constraints, then member lookup on T returns the same set of members as member lookup on **obj** ect. Otherwise, the first stage of member lookup (§14.3) considers all the members in the effective base class of T and all the members in each

interface in the effective interface set of T. After performing the first stage of member lookup for each of theses types, the results are combined, and then hidden members are removed from the combined results.

Before the advent of generics, member lookup always returned either a set of members declared solely in classes, or a set of members declared solely in interfaces and possibly the type object. Member lookup on type parameters changes this somewhat. When a type parameter has both an effective base class other than object and a non-empty effective interface set, member lookup can return a set of members, some of which were declared in a class, and others of which were declared in an interface. The following additional rules handle this case.

- As specified in §14.3, during member lookup, members declared in a class other than **obj ect** hide members declared in interfaces.
- During overload resolution of methods (§14.5.5.1) and indexers (§14.5.6.2), if any applicable member was declared in a class other than **obj ect**, all members declared in an interface are removed from the set of considered members.

These rules only have effect when doing binding on a type parameter with both an effective base class other than **obj** ect and a non-empty effective interface set. [*Note*: Informally, members defined in a class type constraint are preferred over members in an interface constraint. *end note*]

# 25.7.3 Type parameters and boxing

When a struct type overrides a virtual method inherited from System. **Object** (such as **Equal s**, **GetHashCode**, or **ToStri ng**), invocation of the virtual method through an instance of the struct type doesn't cause boxing to occur. This is true even when the struct is used as a type parameter and the invocation occurs through an instance of the type parameter type. [*Example*:

```
using System;
struct Counter
{
   int value;
   public override string ToString() {
      value++;
      return value. ToString();
   }
}
class Program
{
   static void Test<T>() where T: new() {
      T x = new T();
      Console. WriteLine(x. ToString());
      Console. WriteLine(x. ToString());
      Console. WriteLine(x. ToString());
      Console. WriteLine(x. ToString());
   }
   static void Main() {
      Test<Counter>();
   }
}
```

The output of the program is:

1 2 3

Although it is bad style for ToString to have side effects, the example demonstrates that no boxing occurred for the three invocations of x. ToString(). end example]

Similarly, boxing never implicitly occurs when accessing a member on a constrained type parameter. [Example: Suppose an interface I Counter contains a method I ncrement, which can be used to modify a value. If I Counter is used as a constraint, the implementation of the I ncrement method is called with a reference to the variable that I ncrement was called on, never a boxed copy. This behavior is different from

the non-generic case. When making a call to an interface implementation on a struct type the argument is always boxed.

```
using System;
interface ICounter
   void Increment();
struct Counter: ICounter
   int value;
   public override string ToString() {
      return value. ToString();
   voi d ICounter.Increment() {
      val ue++;
}
class Program
   static void Test<T>() where T: ICounter, new() {
      T x = new T()
      Consol e. Wri teLi ne(x);
      x. Increment();
                                      // Modify x
      Consol e. WriteLine(x):
      ((ICounter)x).Increment();
                                      // Modify boxed copy of x
      Consol e. WriteLine(x);
   }
   static void Main() {
      Test<Counter>();
```

The first call to Increment modifies the value in the variable x. This is not equivalent to the second call to Increment, which modifies the value in a boxed copy of x. Thus, the output of the program is:

0 1 1

end example]

## 25.7.4 Conversions involving type parameters

The conversions that are allowed on a type parameter T depend on the constraints specified for T and are detailed in §13.

The conversion rules do not permit a direct explicit conversion from an unconstrained type parameter to an arbitrary non-interface type, which might be surprising. The reason for this rule is to prevent confusion and make the semantics of such conversions clear. [*Example*: Consider the following declaration:

If the direct explicit conversion of t to l ong were permitted, one might easily expect that X<i nt>. F(7) would return 7L. However, it would not, because the standard numeric conversions are only considered when the types are known to be numeric at compile time. In order to make the semantics clear, the above example should be written:

```
class X<T>
{
    public static long F(T t) {
        return (long)(object)t; // OK, conversions permitted
    }
}
```

This code will now compile but executing X < i nt >. F(7) would then throw an exception at runtime, since a boxed i nt cannot be converted directly to a l ong.

end example]

# 26. Iterators

An *iterator* is a means of implementing a function member whose return type is an enumerator interface or enumerable interface. The function member returns the ordered sequence of values as yielded by the iterator.

[Example: The following Stack<T> class implements its GetEnumerator method using an iterator. The iterator enumerates the elements of the stack in top to bottom order.

```
using System Collections.Generic;
public class Stack<T>: IEnumerable<T>
{
    T[] items;
    int count;
    public void Push(T data) {...}
    public T Pop() {...}
    public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator() {
        for (int i = count - 1; i >= 0; --i) {
            yield return items[i];
        }
    }
}
```

Iterators are implemented using yi eld statements, which can only be used in methods whose return type is an enumerator interface. The presence of the GetEnumerator method makes Stack<T> an enumerable type, allowing instances of Stack<T> to be used in a foreach statement. The following example pushes the values 0 through 9 onto an integer stack and then uses a foreach loop to display the values in top to bottom order.

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Stack<int> s = new Stack<int>();
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) s. Push(i);
        foreach (int i in s) Console. Write("{0} ", i);
        Console. WriteLine();
    }
}</pre>
```

The output of the example is:

```
9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
```

end example]

## 26.1 Iterator blocks

An *iterator block* is a *block* (§15.2) that yields an ordered sequence of values. An iterator block is distinguished from a normal statement block by the presence of one or more yi el d statements (§15.14).

- The yi el d return statement produces the next value of the iteration.
- The yi el d break statement indicates that the iteration is complete.

An iterator block can be used as a *method-body* (§17.5), *operator-body* (§17.9), or *accessor-body* (§17.6.2) as long as the return type of the corresponding function member is one of the enumerator interfaces (§26.1.1) or one of the enumerable interfaces (§26.1.2).

Iterator blocks are not a distinct element in the C# grammar. They are restricted in several ways and have a major effect on the semantics of a function member declaration; however, grammatically, they are just blocks.

When a function member is implemented using an iterator block, it is a compile-time error for the formal parameter list of the function member to specify any ref or out parameters.

It is a compile-time error for a return statement to appear in an iterator block (but yi eld return statements are permitted).

It is a compile-time error for an iterator block to contain an unsafe context (§27.1). An iterator block always defines a safe context, even when its declaration is nested in an unsafe context.

## 26.1.1 Enumerator interfaces

The *enumerator interfaces* are the non-generic interface System. Collections. I Enumerator and all instantiations of the generic interface System. Collections. Generic. I Enumerator<T>. For the sake of brevity, these interfaces are referenced in this specification as I Enumerator and I Enumerator<T>, respectively.

#### 26.1.2 Enumerable interfaces

The *enumerable interfaces* are the non-generic interface System. Collections. I Enumerable and all instantiations of the generic interface System. Collections. Generic. I Enumerable <T>. For the sake of brevity, these interfaces are referenced in this specification as I Enumerable and I Enumerable <T>, respectively.

# 26.1.3 Yield type

An iterator block produces a sequence of values, all of the same type. This type is called the *yield type* of the iterator block.

- The yield type of an iterator block used to implement a function member that returns **I Enumerator** or **I Enumerabl** e is **obj** ect.
- The yield type of an iterator block used to implement a function member that returns I Enumerator<T> or I Enumerabl e<T> is T.

### 26.1.4 This access

Within an iterator block of an instance member of a class, the expression this is classified as a value. The type of the value is the class within which the usage occurs, and the value is a reference to the object for which the member was invoked.

Within an iterator block of an instance member of a struct, the expression this is classified as a variable. The type of the variable is the struct within which the usage occurs. The variable represents a *copy* of the struct for which the member was invoked. The this variable in an iterator block of an instance member of a struct behaves exactly the same as a *value* parameter of the struct type. [*Note*: This is different than in a non-iterator function member body. *end note*]

## 26.2 Enumerator objects

When a function member returning an enumerator interface type is implemented using an iterator block, invoking the function member does not immediately execute the code in the iterator block. Instead, an *enumerator object* is created and returned. This object encapsulates the code specified in the iterator block, and execution of the code in the iterator block occurs when the enumerator object's MoveNext method is invoked. An enumerator object has the following characteristics:

- It implements I Enumerator and I Enumerator<T>, where T is the yield type of the iterator block.
- It implements System. I Di sposabl e.

- It is initialized with a copy of the argument values (if any) and instance value passed to the function member.
- It has four potential states, before, running, suspended, and after, and is initially in the before state.

An enumerator object is typically an instance of a compiler-generated enumerator class that encapsulates the code in the iterator block and implements the enumerator interfaces, but other methods of implementation are possible. If an enumerator type is generated by the compiler, that class shall be nested, directly or indirectly, in the type containing the function member, it shall have private accessibility, and it shall have a name reserved for compiler use (§9.4.2).

An enumerator object can implement more interfaces than those specified above.

The following subclauses describe the exact behavior of the MoveNext, Current, and Di spose members of the I Enumerabl e and I Enumerabl e<T> interface implementations provided by an enumerator object.

Enumerator objects do not support the I Enumerator. Reset method. Invoking this method causes a System. NotSupportedException to be thrown.

#### 26.2.1 The MoveNext method

The MoveNext method of an enumerator object encapsulates the code of an iterator block. Invoking the MoveNext method executes code in the iterator block and sets the Current property of the enumerator object as appropriate. The precise action performed by MoveNext depends on the state of the enumerator object when MoveNext is invoked:

- If the state of the enumerator object is *before*, invoking MoveNext:
  - o Changes the state to *running*.
  - o Initializes the parameters (including this) of the iterator block to the argument values and instance value saved when the enumerator object was initialized.
  - o Executes the iterator block from the beginning until execution is interrupted (as described below).
- If the state of the enumerator object is **running**, the result of invoking **MoveNext** is unspecified.
- If the state of the enumerator object is *suspended*, invoking MoveNext:
  - o Changes the state to *running*.
  - o Restores the values of all local variables and parameters (including this) to the values saved when execution of the iterator block was last suspended. (Note that the contents of any objects referenced by these variables might have changed since the previous call to MoveNext.)
  - o Resumes execution of the iterator block immediately following the yi eld return statement that caused the suspension of execution, and continues until execution is interrupted (as described below).
- If the state of the enumerator object is *after*, invoking MoveNext returns false.

When MoveNext executes the iterator block, execution can be interrupted in four ways: By a yi el d return statement, by a yi el d break statement, by encountering the end of the iterator block, or by an exception being thrown and propagated out of the iterator block.

- When a yi eld return statement is encountered (§15.14):
  - The expression given in the statement is evaluated, implicitly converted to the yield type, and assigned to the Current property of the enumerator object.
  - Execution of the iterator body is suspended. The values of all local variables and parameters (including this) are saved, as is the location of this yield return statement. If the yield return statement is within one or more try blocks, the associated finally blocks are not executed at this time.

- o The state of the enumerator object is changed to *suspended*.
- o The MoveNext method returns true to its caller, indicating that the iteration successfully advanced to the next value.
- When a yi el d break statement is encountered (§15.14):
  - o If the yi eld break statement is within one or more try blocks, the associated finally blocks are executed.
  - o The state of the enumerator object is changed to *after*.
  - o The MoveNext method returns fal se to its caller, indicating that the iteration is complete.
- When the end of the iterator body is encountered:
  - o The state of the enumerator object is changed to after.
  - o The MoveNext method returns fal se to its caller, indicating that the iteration is complete.
- When an exception is thrown and propagated out of the iterator block:
  - o Appropriate finally blocks in the iterator body will have been executed by the exception propagation.
  - o The state of the enumerator object is changed to *after*.
  - o The exception propagation continues to the caller of the MoveNext method.

# 26.2.2 The Current property

An enumerator object's Current property is affected by yi eld return statements in the iterator block.

When an enumerator object is in the *suspended* state, the value of Current is the value set by the previous call to **MoveNext**. When an enumerator object is in the *before*, *running*, or *after* states, the result of accessing Current is unspecified.

For an iterator block with a yield type other than **obj ect**, the result of accessing **Current** through the enumerator object's **I Enumerabl e** implementation corresponds to accessing **Current** through the enumerator object's **I Enumerator**<**T**> implementation and casting the result to **obj ect**.

## 26.2.3 The Dispose method

The Di spose method is used to clean up the iteration by bringing the enumerator object to the *after* state.

- If the state of the enumerator object is **before**, invoking **Di spose** changes the state to **after**.
- If the state of the enumerator object is *running*, the result of invoking **Di spose** is unspecified.
- If the state of the enumerator object is *suspended*, invoking **Di spose**:
  - o Changes the state to *running*.
  - Executes any finally blocks as if the last executed yi eld return statement were a yi eld break statement. If this causes an exception to be thrown and propagated out of the iterator body, the state of the enumerator object is set to after and the exception is propagated to the caller of the Di spose method.
  - o Changes the state to after.
- If the state of the enumerator object is *after*, invoking **Di spose** has no affect.

# 26.3 Enumerable objects

When a function member returning an enumerable interface type is implemented using an iterator block, invoking the function member does not immediately execute the code in the iterator block. Instead, an *enumerable object* is created and returned. The enumerable object's **Get Enumerator** method returns an

enumerator object that encapsulates the code specified in the iterator block, and execution of the code in the iterator block occurs when the enumerator object's **MoveNext** method is invoked. An enumerable object has the following characteristics:

- It implements I Enumerable and I Enumerable <T>, where T is the yield type of the iterator block.
- It is initialized with a copy of the argument values (if any) and instance value passed to the function member.

An enumerable object is typically an instance of a compiler-generated enumerable class that encapsulates the code in the iterator block and implements the enumerable interfaces, but other methods of implementation are possible. If an enumerable class is generated by the compiler, that class shall be nested, directly or indirectly, in the class containing the function member, it shall have private accessibility, and it shall have a name reserved for compiler use (§9.4.2).

[Note: An enumerable object can implement more interfaces than those specified above. In particular, an enumerable object can also implement I Enumerator and I Enumerator<T>, enabling it to serve as both an enumerable and an enumerator. In that type of implementation, the first time an enumerable object's GetEnumerator method is invoked, the enumerable object itself is returned. Subsequent invocations of the enumerable object's GetEnumerator, if any, return a copy of the enumerable object. Thus, each returned enumerator has its own state, and changes in one enumerator will not affect another. end note]

#### 26.3.1 The GetEnumerator method

An enumerable object provides an implementation of the GetEnumerator methods of the I Enumerable and I Enumerable e<T> interfaces. The two GetEnumerator methods share a common implementation that acquires and returns an available enumerator object. The enumerator object is initialized with the argument values and instance value saved when the enumerable object was initialized, but otherwise the enumerator object functions as described in §26.2.

# 26.4 Implementation example

[*Note*: This section describes a possible implementation of iterators in terms of standard C# constructs. The implementation described here is by no means a mandated implementation or the only one possible.

The following Stack<T> class implements its GetEnumerator method using an iterator. The iterator enumerates the elements of the stack in top to bottom order.

```
using System;
using System Collections;
using System Collections. Generic;
class Stack<T>: IEnumerable<T>
   T[] items;
int count;
   public void Push(T item) {
       if (items == null) {
          items = new T[4];
      else if (items. Length == count) {
   T[] newItems = new T[count * 2];
          Array. Copy(items, 0, newItems, 0, count);
          items = newItems;
       items[count++] = item;
   public T Pop() {
       T result = items[--count];
       items[count] = default(T);
       return result;
   }
```

```
public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator() {
    for (int i = count - 1; i >= 0; --i) yield return items[i];
}
}
```

The **GetEnumerator** method can be translated into an instantiation of a compiler-generated enumerator class that encapsulates the code in the iterator block, as shown in the following.

```
class Stack<T>: IEnumerable<T>
   public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator() {
       return new __Enumerator1(this);
   class __Enumerator1: IEnumerator<T>, IEnumerator
       int __state;
T __current;
       Stack<T> __this;
       int i;
       public __Enumerator1(Stack<T> __this) {
           this. _this = _this;
       public T Current {
           get { return __current; }
       object I Enumerator. Current {
           get { return __current; }
       public bool MoveNext() {
          switch (_state) {
    case 1: goto _state1;
    case 2: goto _state2;
          i = \underline{this}. count - 1;
         l oop:
          if (i < 0) goto __state2;</pre>
          __current = __this.items[i];
__state = 1;
          return true:
         state1:
          --i:
          goto
                   _l oop;
         state2:
            _state = 2;
           return false;
       }
       public void Dispose() {
           __state = 2;
       void IEnumerator.Reset() {
   throw new NotSupportedException();
   }
```

In the preceding translation, the code in the iterator block is turned into a state machine and placed in the **MoveNext** method of the enumerator class. Furthermore, the local variable i is turned into a field in the enumerator object so it can continue to exist across invocations of **MoveNext**.

The following example prints a simple multiplication table of the integers 1 through 10. The **FromTo** method in the example returns an enumerable object and is implemented using an iterator.

```
using System;
using System. Collections. Generic;
```

```
class Test
{
    static I Enumerable<int> FromTo(int from, int to) {
        while (from <= to) yield return from++;
    }
    static void Main() {
        I Enumerable<int> e = FromTo(1, 10);
        foreach (int x in e) {
            foreach (int y in e) {
                  Console. Write("{0, 3} ", x * y);
            }
            Console. WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

The FromTo method can be translated into an instantiation of a compiler-generated enumerable class that encapsulates the code in the iterator block, as shown in the following.

```
using System;
using System. Threading;
using System. Collections;
using System. Collections. Generic;
class Test
   static IEnumerable<int> FromTo(int from, int to) {
      return new __Enumerable1(from, to);
   }
   class __Enumerable1:
       I Enumerable <i nt>, I Enumerable,
      IEnumerator<int>, IEnumerator
      int __state;
      int __current;
             _from;
      i nt
      int from:
      int to;
      int i:
      public __Enumerable1(int __from, int to) {
   this. __from = __from;
          this. to = to:
      }
      public IEnumerator<int> GetEnumerator() {
    __Enumerable1 result = this;
          \overline{\text{if}} (Interlocked.CompareExchange(ref _state, 1, 0) != 0) {
             result = new __Enumerable1(__from, to);
             result. __state = 1;
          result. from = result. __from;
          return result;
      }
      IEnumerator IEnumerable.GetEnumerator() {
          return (IEnumerator)GetEnumerator();
      public int Current {
          get { return __current; }
      object I Enumerator. Current {
          get { return __current; }
```

```
public bool MoveNext() {
         switch (__state) {
         case 1:
            if (from > to) goto case 2;
              current = from++;
              state = 1;
            return true;
         case 2:
              _state = 2;
            return false;
         default:
            throw new InvalidOperationException();
      }
      public void Dispose() {
           _state = 2;
      voi d I Enumerator. Reset() {
         throw new NotSupportedException();
   }
}
```

The enumerable class implements both the enumerable interfaces and the enumerator interfaces, enabling it to serve as both an enumerable and an enumerator. The first time the **GetEnumerator** method is invoked, the enumerable object itself is returned. Subsequent invocations of the enumerable object's **GetEnumerator**, if any, return a copy of the enumerable object. Thus, each returned enumerator has its own state and changes in one enumerator will not affect another. The Interlocked. CompareExchange method is used to ensure thread-safe operation.

The from and to parameters are turned into fields in the enumerable class. Because from is modified in the iterator block, an additional \_\_from field is introduced to hold the initial value given to from in each enumerator.

The MoveNext method throws an Inval i d0perationException if it is called when \_\_state is 0. This protects against use of the enumerable object as an enumerator object without first calling GetEnumerator.

The following example shows a simple tree class. The Tree<T> class implements its GetEnumerator method using an iterator. The iterator enumerates the elements of the tree in infix order.

```
using System. Collections. Generic;
class Tree<T>: IEnumerable<T>
{
    T value;
    Tree<T> left;
    Tree<T> right;
    public Tree(T value, Tree<T> left, Tree<T> right) {
        this.value = value;
        this.left = left;
        this.right = right;
}

public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator() {
        if (left != null) foreach (T x in left) yield return x;
        yield return value;
        if (right != null) foreach (T x in right) yield return x;
}
```

```
class Program
          static Tree<T> MakeTree<T>(T[] items, int left, int right) {
              if (left > right) return null;
int i = (left + right) / 2;
              return new Tree<T>(items[i],
                                MakeTree(items, left, i - 1),
MakeTree(items, i + 1, right));
          static Tree<T> MakeTree<T>(params T[] items) {
              return MakeTree(items, 0, items. Length - 1);
          // The output of the program is: // 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 // Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun
          static void Main() {
   Tree<int> ints = MakeTree(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9);
   foreach (int i in ints) Console. Write("{0} ", i);
              Consol e. Wri teLi ne();
             Consol e. WriteLine();
          }
       }
The GetEnumerator method can be translated into an instantiation of a compiler-generated enumerator
class that encapsulates the code in the iterator block, as shown in the following.
       class Tree<T>: IEnumerable<T>
       {
          public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator() {
              return new __Enumerator1(this);
          sealed class __Enumerator1 : IEnumerator<T>, IEnumerator
              Node<T> _this;
              IEnumerator<T> __left, __right;
              int __state;
                  current:
              public __Enumerator1(Node<T> __this) { this. __this = __this; }
              public T Current { get { return __current; } }
              public bool MoveNext() {
                 try {
                     switch (__state) {
                     case 0:
                           _state = -1;
                         if (_this.left == null) goto _yield_value;
                          _left = __this.left.GetEnumerator();
                         goto case \overline{1};
                     case 1:
                           state = -2;
                         if (!__left.MoveNext()) goto __left_dispose;
                         __current = __left. Current;
                           _state = 1:
                         return true;
                     __l eft_di spose:
                        __state = -1;
__left. Di spose();
```

```
__yi el d_val ue:
               __current =
                                 this. value;
                  state = 2;
               return true:
           case 2:
               __state = -1;
if (__this.right == null) goto __end;
__right = __this.right.GetEnumerator();
goto case 3;
           case 3:
               __state = -3;
if (!__right.MoveNext()) goto __right_dispose;
               __current = __right.Current;
__state = 3;
               return true;
             _ri ght_di spose:
               __state = -1;
               \underline{\phantom{a}}ri ght. Di spose();
           __end:
                 _state = 4;
               break;
       } finally {
           if (__state < 0) Dispose();</pre>
       return false;
    }
    public void Dispose() {
       try {
           switch (__state) {
           case 1:
           case -2:
                 _l eft. Di spose();
               break;
           case 3:
           case -3:
                 _ri ght. Di spose();
               break;
       } finally {
            _state = 4;
       }
    }
    object I Enumerator. Current { get { return Current; } }
    voi d I Enumerator. Reset() {
       throw new NotSupportedException();
}
```

The compiler-generated temporaries used in the foreach statements are lifted into the \_\_left and \_\_right fields of the enumerator object. The \_\_state field of the enumerator object is carefully updated so that the correct Dispose() method will be called correctly if an exception is thrown. Note that it is not possible to write the translated code with simple foreach statements. end note]

# 27. Unsafe code

An implementation that does not support unsafe code is required to diagnose any usage of the keyword unsafe.

# The remainder of this clause, including all of its subclauses, is conditionally normative.

[*Note*: The core C# language, as defined in the preceding clauses, differs notably from C and C++ in its omission of pointers as a data type. Instead, C# provides references and the ability to create objects that are managed by a garbage collector. This design, coupled with other features, makes C# a much safer language than C or C++. In the core C #language, it is simply not possible to have an uninitialized variable, a "dangling" pointer, or an expression that indexes an array beyond its bounds. Whole categories of bugs that routinely plague C and C++ programs are thus eliminated.

While practically every pointer type construct in C or C++ has a reference type counterpart in C#, nonetheless, there are situations where access to pointer types becomes a necessity. For example, interfacing with the underlying operating system, accessing a memory-mapped device, or implementing a time-critical algorithm might not be possible or practical without access to pointers. To address this need, C# provides the ability to write *unsafe code*.

In unsafe code, it is possible to declare and operate on pointers, to perform conversions between pointers and integral types, to take the address of variables, and so forth. In a sense, writing unsafe code is much like writing C code within a C# program.

Unsafe code is in fact a "safe" feature from the perspective of both developers and users. Unsafe code shall be clearly marked with the modifier unsafe, so developers can't possibly use unsafe features accidentally, and the execution engine works to ensure that unsafe code cannot be executed in an untrusted environment. *end note*]

### 27.1 Unsafe contexts

The unsafe features of C# are available only in unsafe contexts. An unsafe context is introduced by including an **unsafe** modifier in the declaration of a type or member, or by employing an *unsafe-statement*:

- A declaration of a class, struct, interface, or delegate can include an unsafe modifier, in which case, the extent of that *type-declaration* is considered an unsafe context. [Note: If the *type-declaration* is partial, only that part is an unsafe context. end note]
- A declaration of a field, method, property, event, indexer, operator, instance constructor, finalizer, or static constructor can include an **unsafe** modifier, in which case, the entire textual extent of that member declaration is considered an unsafe context.
- An *unsafe-statement* enables the use of an unsafe context within a *block*. The entire textual extent of the associated *block* is considered an unsafe context.

The associated grammar extensions are shown below. For brevity, ellipses (...) are used to represent productions that appear in preceding clauses.

```
class-modifier:
...
unsafe
struct-modifier:
...
unsafe
```

```
interface-modifier:
          unsafe
       delegate-modifier:
          unsafe
       field-modifier:
          unsafe
       method-modifier:
          unsafe
       property-modifier:
          unsafe
       event-modifier:
          unsafe
       indexer-modifier:
          unsafe
       operator-modifier:
          unsafe
       constructor-modifier:
          unsafe
       finalizer-declaration:
          attributesopt externopt unsafeopt ~ identifier ( ) finalizer-body
          attributesopt unsafeopt externopt ~ identifier ( ) finalizer-body
       static-constructor-modifiers:
          externopt unsafeopt static
           unsafeopt externopt static
           externopt static unsafeopt
          unsafeopt static externopt
          static externopt unsafeopt
          static unsafeopt externopt
       embedded-statement:
          unsafe-statement
       unsafe-statement:
          unsafe block
[Example: In the following code
       public unsafe struct Node
          public int Value;
public Node* Left;
public Node* Right;
```

the unsafe modifier specified in the struct declaration causes the entire textual extent of the struct declaration to become an unsafe context. Thus, it is possible to declare the Left and Ri ght fields to be of a pointer type. The example above could also be written

```
public struct Node
{
    public int Value;
    public unsafe Node* Left;
    public unsafe Node* Right;
}
```

Here, the **unsafe** modifiers in the field declarations cause those declarations to be considered unsafe contexts. *end example*]

Other than establishing an unsafe context, thus permitting the use of pointer types, the unsafe modifier has no effect on a type or a member. [Example: In the following code

```
public class A
{
    public unsafe virtual void F() {
        char* p;
        ...
    }
}

public class B: A
{
    public override void F() {
        base. F();
        ...
    }
}
```

the unsafe modifier on the F method in A simply causes the textual extent of F to become an unsafe context in which the unsafe features of the language can be used. In the override of F in B, there is no need to re-specify the unsafe modifier—unless, of course, the F method in B itself needs access to unsafe features.

The situation is slightly different when a pointer type is part of the method's signature

```
public unsafe class A
{
    public virtual void F(char* p) {...}
}
public class B: A
{
    public unsafe override void F(char* p) {...}
}
```

Here, because F's signature includes a pointer type, it can only be written in an unsafe context. However, the unsafe context can be introduced by either making the entire class unsafe, as is the case in A, or by including an unsafe modifier in the method declaration, as is the case in B. *end example*]

When the unsafe modifier is used on a partial type declaration (§17.1.4), only that particular part is considered an unsafe context.

# 27.2 Pointer types

In an unsafe context, a type (§11) can be a pointer-type as well as a value-type, a reference-type, or a type-parameter.

```
type:
value-type
reference-type
type-parameter
pointer-type
```

A pointer-type is written as an unmanaged-type or the keyword voi d, followed by a \* token:

```
pointer-type:
    unmanaged-type *
    voi d *

unmanaged-type:
    type
```

The type specified before the \* in a pointer type is called the *referent type* of the pointer type. It represents the type of the variable to which a value of the pointer type points.

Unlike references (values of reference types), pointers are not tracked by the garbage collector—the garbage collector has no knowledge of pointers and the data to which they point. For this reason a pointer is not permitted to point to a reference or to a struct that contains references, and the referent type of a pointer shall be an *unmanaged-type*.

An *unmanaged-type* is any type that isn't a *reference-type*, a *type-parameter*, or a generic *struct-type* and contains no fields whose type is not an *unmanaged-type*. In other words, an *unmanaged-type* is one of the following:

- sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, char, float, double, decimal, or bool.
- Any enum-type.
- Any pointer-type.
- Any non-generic user-defined *struct-type* that contains fields of *unmanaged-types* only.

[Note: Constructed types and type-parameters are never unmanaged-types. end note]

The intuitive rule for mixing of pointers and references is that referents of references (objects) are permitted to contain pointers, but referents of pointers are not permitted to contain references.

T 7	7	<b>a</b>	1	c	• .				•	. 1	. 11	1 1
Hyam	nla·	Some	examples	$\alpha$ t	nointer	tunec	are	OIVAN	1n	the	table	helow.
Laum	pie.	Some	CAMINDICS	O1	pomici	LYDUS	arc	211011	111	uic	laule	DCIOW.

Example	Description	
byte*	Pointer to byte	
char*	Pointer to char	
int**	Pointer to pointer to i nt	
i nt*[]	Single-dimensional array of pointers to int	
voi d*	Pointer to unknown type	

end example]

For a given implementation, all pointer types shall have the same size and representation.

[*Note*: Unlike C and C++, when multiple pointers are declared in the same declaration, in C# the \* is written along with the underlying type only, not as a prefix punctuator on each pointer name. For example:

```
int* pi, pj; // NOT as int*pi, *pj;
```

end note]

The value of a pointer having type T\* represents the address of a variable of type T. The pointer indirection operator \* (§27.5.1) can be used to access this variable. [Example: Given a variable P of type i nt\*, the expression \*P denotes the i nt variable found at the address contained in P. end example]

Like an object reference, a pointer can be nul 1. Applying the indirection operator to a nul 1 pointer results in implementation-defined behavior. A pointer with value nul 1 is represented by all-bits-zero.

The  $\mathbf{voi} \, \mathbf{d}^*$  type represents a pointer to an unknown type. Because the referent type is unknown, the indirection operator cannot be applied to a pointer of type  $\mathbf{voi} \, \mathbf{d}^*$ , nor can any arithmetic be performed on such a pointer. However, a pointer of type  $\mathbf{voi} \, \mathbf{d}^*$  can be cast to any other pointer type (and vice versa) and compared to values of other pointer types.

Pointer types are a separate category of types. Unlike reference types and value types, pointer types do not inherit from **obj** ect and no conversions exist between pointer types and **obj** ect. In particular, boxing and unboxing (§11.3) are not supported for pointers. However, conversions are permitted between different pointer types and between pointer types and the integral types. This is described in §27.4.

A *pointer-type* can be used as the type of a volatile field (§17.4.3).

[*Note*: Although pointers can be passed as ref or out parameters, doing so can cause undefined behavior, since the pointer might well be set to point to a local variable that no longer exists when the called method returns, or the fixed object to which it used to point, is no longer fixed. For example:

```
using System;
class Test
   static int value = 20;
   unsafe static void F(out int* pi1, ref int* pi2) {
       int i = 10;
       pi 1 = &i;
       fixed (int* pj = &value) {
           pi 2 = pj;
       }
   }
   static void Main() {
       int i = 10:
       unsafe {
          int* px1;
int* px2 = &i;
           F(out px1, ref px2);
          Consol e. WriteLine("*px1 = {0}, *px2 = {1}", *px1, *px2); // undefined behavior
       }
   }
}
```

end note]

A method can return a value of some type, and that type can be a pointer. [*Example*: When given a pointer to a contiguous sequence of **i** nts, that sequence's element count, and some other **i** nt value, the following method returns the address of that value in that sequence, if a match occurs; otherwise it returns nul 1:

```
unsafe static int* Find(int* pi, int size, int value) {
   for (int i = 0; i < size; ++i) {
      if (*pi == value) {
        return pi;
      }
      ++pi;
   }
   return null;
}</pre>
```

end example]

In an unsafe context, several constructs are available for operating on pointers:

- The unary \* operator can be used to perform pointer indirection (§27.5.1).
- The -> operator can be used to access a member of a struct through a pointer (§27.5.2).
- The [] operator can be used to index a pointer (§27.5.3).
- The unary & operator can be used to obtain the address of a variable (§27.5.4).

- The ++ and -- operators can be used to increment and decrement pointers (§27.5.5).
- The binary + and operators can be used to perform pointer arithmetic (§27.5.6).
- The ==, !=, <, >, <=, and => operators can be used to compare pointers (§27.5.7).
- The stackal loc operator can be used to allocate memory from the call stack (§27.7).
- The fixed statement can be used to temporarily fix a variable so its address can be obtained (§27.6).

### 27.3 Fixed and moveable variables

The address-of operator (§27.5.4) and the **fixed** statement (§27.6) divide variables into two categories: *Fixed variables* and *moveable variables*.

Fixed variables reside in storage locations that are unaffected by operation of the garbage collector. (Examples of fixed variables include local variables, value parameters, and variables created by dereferencing pointers.) On the other hand, moveable variables reside in storage locations that are subject to relocation or disposal by the garbage collector. (Examples of moveable variables include fields in objects and elements of arrays.)

The & operator (§27.5.4) permits the address of a fixed variable to be obtained without restrictions. However, because a moveable variable is subject to relocation or disposal by the garbage collector, the address of a moveable variable can only be obtained using a **fixed** statement (§27.6), and that address remains valid only for the duration of that **fixed** statement.

In precise terms, a fixed variable is one of the following:

- A variable resulting from a *simple-name* (§14.5.2) that refers to a local variable or a value parameter, as long as the variable is not captured by an anonymous method (§14.5.15.3.1).
- A variable resulting from a *member-access* (§14.5.4) of the form V. I, where V is a fixed variable of a *struct-type*.
- A variable resulting from a *pointer-indirection-expression* (§27.5.1) of the form \*P, a *pointer-member-access* (§27.5.2) of the form P->I, or a *pointer-element-access* (§27.5.3) of the form P[E].

All other variables are classified as moveable variables.

A static field is classified as a moveable variable. Also, a ref or out parameter is classified as a moveable variable, even if the argument given for the parameter is a fixed variable. Finally, a variable produced by dereferencing a pointer is always classified as a fixed variable.

## 27.4 Pointer conversions

In an unsafe context, the set of available implicit conversions (§13.1) is extended to include the following implicit pointer conversions:

- From any *pointer-type* to the type **voi d**\*.
- From the null type (§11.2.7) to any *pointer-type*.

Additionally, in an unsafe context, the set of available explicit conversions (§13.2) is extended to include the following explicit pointer conversions:

- From any *pointer-type* to any other *pointer-type*.
- From sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, or ulong to any *pointer-type*.
- From any *pointer-type* to sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, or ulong.

Finally, in an unsafe context, the set of standard implicit conversions (§13.3.1) includes the following pointer conversion:

• From any *pointer-type* to the type **voi d**\*.

Conversions between two pointer types never change the actual pointer value. In other words, a conversion from one pointer type to another has no effect on the underlying address given by the pointer.

When one pointer type is converted to another, if the resulting pointer is not correctly aligned for the pointed-to type, the behavior is undefined if the result is dereferenced. In general, the concept "correctly aligned" is transitive: if a pointer to type A is correctly aligned for a pointer to type B, which, in turn, is correctly aligned for a pointer to type C, then a pointer to type A is correctly aligned for a pointer to type C. [Example: Consider the following case in which a variable having one type is accessed via a pointer to a different type:

end example]

When a pointer type is converted to a pointer to byte, the result points to the lowest addressed byte of the variable. Successive increments of the result, up to the size of the variable, yield pointers to the remaining bytes of that variable. [Example: The following method displays each of the eight bytes in a double as a hexadecimal value:

Of course, the output produced depends on byte ordering. end example]

Mappings between pointers and integers are implementation-defined. [*Note*: However, on 32- and 64-bit CPU architectures with a linear address space, conversions of pointers to or from integral types typically behave exactly like conversions of **ui nt** or **ul ong** values, respectively, to or from those integral types. *end note*]

# 27.5 Pointers in expressions

In an unsafe context, an expression can yield a result of a pointer type, but outside an unsafe context, it is a compile-time error for an expression to be of a pointer type. In precise terms, outside an unsafe context a compile-time error occurs if any *simple-name* (§14.5.2), *member-access* (§14.5.4), *invocation-expression* (§14.5.5), or *element-access* (§14.5.6) is of a pointer type.

The primary-no-array-creation-expression (§14.5) productions permit the following additional construct:

```
primary-no-array-creation-expression:
```

```
sizeof-expression
```

In an unsafe context, the *primary-no-array-creation-expression* (§14.5) and *unary-expression* (§14.5.14) productions permit the following additional constructs:

```
primary-no-array-creation-expression:
...
pointer-member-access
pointer-element-access
```

```
unary-expression:
...
pointer-indirection-expression
addressof-expression
```

These constructs are described in the following subclauses.

There are also several predefined unary and binary operators for pointers. When applying unary or binary operator overload resolution, if none of the actual operands is a pointer type, then any predefined unary or binary operator with a pointer parameter type is removed from consideration.

[*Note*: The precedence and associativity of the unsafe operators is implied by the grammar. *end note*]

## 27.5.1 Pointer indirection

A pointer-indirection-expression consists of an asterisk (\*) followed by a unary-expression.

```
pointer-indirection-expression:
* unary-expression
```

The unary \* operator denotes pointer indirection and is used to obtain the variable to which a pointer points. The result of evaluating \*P, where P is an expression of a pointer type  $T^*$ , is a variable of type T. It is a compile-time error to apply the unary \* operator to an expression of type  $voi\ d^*$  or to an expression that isn't of a pointer type.

The effect of applying the unary \* operator to a nul l pointer is implementation-defined. In particular, there is no guarantee that this operation throws a System. Nul l ReferenceException.

If an invalid value has been assigned to the pointer, the behavior of the unary \* operator is undefined. [*Note*: Among the invalid values for dereferencing a pointer by the unary \* operator are an address inappropriately aligned for the type pointed to (see example in §27.4), and the address of a variable after the end of its lifetime. *end note*]

For purposes of definite assignment analysis, a variable produced by evaluating an expression of the form \*P is considered initially assigned (§12.3.1).

### 27.5.2 Pointer member access

A *pointer-member-access* consists of a *primary-expression*, followed by a "->" token, followed by an *identifier*.

```
pointer-member-access:
primary-expression -> identifier type-argument-listopt
```

In a pointer member access of the form P->I, P shall be an expression of a pointer type other than  $voi\ d^*$ , and I shall denote an accessible member of the type to which P points.

A pointer member access of the form P->I is evaluated exactly as (\*P). I. For a description of the pointer indirection operator (\*), see §27.5.1. For a description of the member access operator (.), see §14.5.4.

[Example: In the following code

```
struct Point
{
    public int x;
    public int y;

    public override string ToString() {
        return "(" + x + "," + y + ")";
    }
}
using System;
```

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        Point point;
        unsafe {
            Point* p = &point;
            p->x = 10;
            p->y = 20;
            Consol e. WriteLine(p->ToString());
        }
    }
}
```

the -> operator is used to access fields and invoke a method of a struct through a pointer. Because the operation P->I is precisely equivalent to (\*P). I, the Main method could equally well have been written:

#### 27.5.3 Pointer element access

end example]

A *pointer-element-access* consists of a *primary-no-array-creation-expression* followed by an expression enclosed in "[" and "]".

```
pointer-element-access:
    primary-no-array-creation-expression [ expression ]
```

In a pointer element access of the form P[E], P shall be an expression of a pointer type other than  $voi\ d^*$ , and E shall be an expression of a type that can be implicitly converted to i nt, ui nt, l ong, or ul ong.

A pointer element access of the form P[E] is evaluated exactly as \*(P + E). For a description of the pointer indirection operator (\*), see §27.5.1. For a description of the pointer addition operator (+), see §27.5.6.

[Example: In the following code

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        unsafe {
            char* p = stackalloc char[256];
            for (int i = 0; i < 256; i++) p[i] = (char)i;
        }
    }
}</pre>
```

a pointer element access is used to initialize the character buffer in a for loop. Because the operation P[E] is precisely equivalent to \*(P + E), the example could equally well have been written:

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        unsafe {
            char* p = stackalloc char[256];
            for (int i = 0; i < 256; i++) *(p + i) = (char)i;
        }
    }
}</pre>
```

end example]

The pointer element access operator does not check for out-of-bounds errors and the behavior when accessing an out-of-bounds element is undefined. [*Note*: This is the same as C and C++. *end note*]

# 27.5.4 The address-of operator

An address of expression consists of an ampers and (&) followed by a unary-expression.

```
addressof-expression:
& unary-expression
```

Given an expression E which is of a type T and is classified as a fixed variable (§27.3), the construct &E computes the address of the variable given by E. The type of the result is T\* and is classified as a value. A compile-time error occurs if E is not classified as a variable, if E is a read-only variable, or if E denotes a moveable variable. In the last case, a fixed statement (§27.6) can be used to temporarily "fix" the variable before obtaining its address.

The & operator does not require its argument to be definitely assigned, but following an & operation, the variable to which the operator is applied is considered definitely assigned in the execution path in which the operation occurs. It is the responsibility of the programmer to ensure that correct initialization of the variable actually does take place in this situation.

[Example: In the following code

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        int i;
        unsafe {
            int* p = &i;
            *p = 123;
        }
        Console. WriteLine(i);
    }
}
```

i is considered definitely assigned following the &i operation used to initialize p. The assignment to p in effect initializes p, but the inclusion of this initialization is the responsibility of the programmer, and no compile-time error would occur if the assignment were removed. *end example* 

[*Note*: The rules of definite assignment for the & operator exist such that redundant initialization of local variables can be avoided. For example, many external APIs take a pointer to a structure which is filled in by the API. Calls to such APIs typically pass the address of a local struct variable, and without the rule, redundant initialization of the struct variable would be required. *end note*]

[*Note*: As stated in §14.5.4, outside an instance constructor or static constructor for a struct or class that defines a readonly field, that field is considered a value, not a variable. As such, its address cannot be taken. Similarly, the address of a constant cannot be taken. *end note*]

When a local variable, value parameter, or parameter array is captured by an anonymous method (§14.5.15.3.1), that local variable, parameter, or parameter array is no longer considered to be a fixed variable (§27.3), but is instead considered to be a moveable variable. Thus it is an error for any unsafe

code to take the address of a local variable, value parameter, or parameter array that has been captured by an anonymous method.

#### 27.5.5 Pointer increment and decrement

In an unsafe context, the ++ and -- operators (§14.5.9 and §14.6.5) can be applied to pointer variables of all types except voi d\*. Thus, for every pointer type T\*, the following operators are implicitly defined:

```
T* operator ++(T* x);
T* operator --(T* x);
```

The operators produce the same results as x+1 and x-1, respectively (§27.5.6). In other words, for a pointer variable of type  $T^*$ , the ++ operator adds sizeof(T) to the address contained in the variable, and the -- operator subtracts sizeof(T) from the address contained in the variable.

If a pointer increment or decrement operation overflows the domain of the pointer type, the result is implementation-defined, but no exceptions are produced.

#### 27.5.6 Pointer arithmetic

In an unsafe context, the + operator ( $\S14.7.4$ ) and - operator ( $\S14.7.5$ ) can be applied to values of all pointer types except voi  $d^*$ . Thus, for every pointer type  $T^*$ , the following operators are implicitly defined:

```
T* operator +(T* x, int y);
T* operator +(T* x, uint y);
T* operator +(T* x, long y);
T* operator +(T* x, ulong y);
T* operator +(int x, T* y);
T* operator +(uint x, T* y);
T* operator +(long x, T* y);
T* operator +(ulong x, T* y);
T* operator -(T* x, int y);
T* operator -(T* x, uint y);
T* operator -(T* x, ulong y);
T* operator -(T* x, ulong y);
long operator -(T* x, T* y);
```

Given an expression P of a pointer type  $T^*$  and an expression N of type i nt, ui nt, l ong, or ul ong, the expressions P + N and N + P compute the pointer value of type  $T^*$  that results from adding N \* sizeof(T) to the address given by P. Likewise, the expression P - N computes the pointer value of type  $T^*$  that results from subtracting N \* sizeof(T) from the address given by P.

Given two expressions, P and Q, of a pointer type  $T^*$ , the expression P - Q computes the difference between the addresses given by P and Q and then divides that difference by  $\operatorname{si} \operatorname{zeof}(T)$ . The type of the result is always l ong. In effect, P - Q is computed as  $((l \operatorname{ong})(P) - (l \operatorname{ong})(Q)) / \operatorname{si} \operatorname{zeof}(T)$ . [Example:

```
using System;
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        unsafe {
            int* values = stackalloc int[20];
            int* p = &values[1];
            int* q = &values[15];
            Console. WriteLine("p - q = {0}", p - q);
            Console. WriteLine("q - p = {0}", q - p);
        }
    }
}
```

which produces the output:

*end example*]

If a pointer arithmetic operation overflows the domain of the pointer type, the result is truncated in an implementation-defined fashion, but no exceptions are produced.

# 27.5.7 Pointer comparison

In an unsafe context, the ==, !=, <, >, <=, and => operators (§14.9) can be applied to values of all pointer types. The pointer comparison operators are:

```
bool operator ==(voi d^* x, voi d^* y);
bool operator !=(voi d^* x, voi d^* y);
bool operator <(voi d^* x, voi d^* y);
bool operator >(voi d^* x, voi d^* y);
bool operator <=(voi d^* x, voi d^* y);
bool operator >=(voi d^* x, voi d^* y);
```

Because an implicit conversion exists from any pointer type to the **voi d**\* type, operands of any pointer type can be compared using these operators. The comparison operators compare the addresses given by the two operands as if they were unsigned integers.

# 27.5.8 The sizeof operator

The **si zeof** operator returns the number of 8-bit bytes occupied by a variable of a given type. The type specified as an operand to **si zeof** shall be an *unmanaged-type* (§27.2).

```
sizeof-expression:
sizeof ( unmanaged-type )
```

For the predefined types specified in §14.5.12 the size of operator yields a constant int value, and the *size of expression* is allowed both inside and outside an unsafe context.

For all other types, the result of the **si zeof** operator is implementation-defined and is classified as an **i nt** value rather than an **i nt** constant, and the *sizeof-expression* shall be inside an unsafe context.

The order in which members are packed into a struct is unspecified.

For alignment purposes, there can be unnamed padding at the beginning of a struct, within a struct, and at the end of the struct. The contents of the bits used as padding are indeterminate.

When applied to an operand that has struct type, the result is the total number of bytes in a variable of that type, including any padding.

# 27.6 The fixed statement

In an unsafe context, the *embedded-statement* (§15) production permits an additional construct, the **fixed** statement, which is used to "fix" a moveable variable such that its address remains constant for the duration of the statement.

```
embedded-statement:
...
fixed-statement

fixed-statement:
fixed ( pointer-type fixed-pointer-declarators ) embedded-statement

fixed-pointer-declarators:
  fixed-pointer-declarator
  fixed-pointer-declarators , fixed-pointer-declarator

fixed-pointer-declarator:
  identifier = fixed-pointer-initializer
```

```
fixed-pointer-initializer:
& variable-reference
expression
```

Each *fixed-pointer-declarator* declares a local variable of the given *pointer-type* and initializes that local variable with the address computed by the corresponding *fixed-pointer-initializer*. A local variable declared in a **fixed** statement is accessible in any *fixed-pointer-initializers* occurring to the right of that variable's declaration, and in the *embedded-statement* of the **fixed** statement. A local variable declared by a **fixed** statement is considered read-only. A compile-time error occurs if the embedded statement attempts to modify this local variable (via assignment or the ++ and -- operators) or pass it as a **ref** or **out** parameter.

It is an error to use a captured local variable (§14.5.15.3.1), value parameter, or parameter array in a *fixed-pointer-initializer*.

A fixed-pointer-initializer can be one of the following:

- The token "&" followed by a *variable-reference* (§12.3.3.27) to a moveable variable (§27.3) of an unmanaged type T, provided the type T\* is implicitly convertible to the pointer type given in the fixed statement. In this case, the initializer computes the address of the given variable, and the variable is guaranteed to remain at a fixed address for the duration of the fixed statement.
- An expression of an *array-type* with elements of an unmanaged type T, provided the type T\* is implicitly convertible to the pointer type given in the fixed statement. In this case, the initializer computes the address of the first element in the array, and the entire array is guaranteed to remain at a fixed address for the duration of the fixed statement. The behavior of the fixed statement is implementation-defined if the array expression is null or if the array has zero elements.
- An expression of type string, provided the type char\* is implicitly convertible to the pointer type given in the fixed statement. In this case, the initializer computes the address of the first character in the string, and the entire string is guaranteed to remain at a fixed address for the duration of the fixed statement. The behavior of the fixed statement is implementation-defined if the string expression is null.

For each address computed by a *fixed-pointer-initializer* the **fixed** statement ensures that the variable referenced by the address is not subject to relocation or disposal by the garbage collector for the duration of the **fixed** statement. [*Example*: If the address computed by a *fixed-pointer-initializer* references a field of an object or an element of an array instance, the **fixed** statement guarantees that the containing object instance is not relocated or disposed of during the lifetime of the statement. *end example*]

It is the programmer's responsibility to ensure that pointers created by **fixed** statements do not survive beyond execution of those statements. [*Example*: When pointers created by **fixed** statements are passed to external APIs, it is the programmer's responsibility to ensure that the APIs retain no memory of these pointers. *end example*]

Fixed objects can cause fragmentation of the heap (because they can't be moved). For that reason, objects should be fixed only when necessary and then only for the shortest amount of time possible. [Example: The example

```
class Test
{
    static int x;
    int y;
    unsafe static void F(int* p) {
        *p = 1;
    }
}
```

```
static void Main() {
    Test t = new Test();
    int[] a = new int[10];
    unsafe {
        fixed (int* p = &x) F(p);
        fixed (int* p = &t.y) F(p);
        fixed (int* p = &a[0]) F(p);
        fixed (int* p = a) F(p);
        fixed (int* p = a) F(p);
    }
}
```

demonstrates several uses of the **fixed** statement. The first statement fixes and obtains the address of a static field, the second statement fixes and obtains the address of an instance field, and the third statement fixes and obtains the address of an array element. In each case, it would have been an error to use the regular & operator since the variables are all classified as moveable variables.

The third and fourth fixed statements in the example above produce identical results. In general, for an array instance a, specifying &a[0] in a fixed statement is the same as simply specifying a.

Here's another example of the fixed statement, this time using string:

```
class Test
{
    static string name = "xx";
    unsafe static void F(char* p) {
        for (int i = 0; p[i] != '\0'; ++i)
            Console. WriteLine(p[i]);
    }
    static void Main() {
        unsafe {
            fixed (char* p = name) F(p);
                fixed (char* p = "xx") F(p);
                }
        }
    }
}
```

end example]

In an unsafe context, array elements of single-dimensional arrays are stored in increasing index order, starting with index  $\bf 0$  and ending with index Length  $-\bf 1$ . For multi-dimensional arrays, array elements are stored such that the indices of the rightmost dimension are increased first, then the next left dimension, and so on to the left.

Within a fixed statement that obtains a pointer p to an array instance a, the pointer values ranging from p to p + a. Length - 1 represent addresses of the elements in the array. Likewise, the variables ranging from p[0] to p[a. Length - 1] represent the actual array elements. Given the way in which arrays are stored, we can treat an array of any dimension as though it were linear. [Example:

```
for (int i = 0; i < 2; ++i)
                                for (int j = 0; j < 3; ++j) {
  for (int k = 0; k < 4; ++k)
    Console. Write("[{0}, {1}, {2}] = {3,2} ", i, j, k,
                                       a[i,j,k]);
Consol e. WriteLine();
                                 }
                   }
             }
which produces the output:
                                          [0, 0, 1]
[0, 1, 1]
                                                                  1
5
                                                                       [0, 0, 2]
[0, 1, 2]
                                                           =
              [0, 1, 0]
                                                                                                6
                                      4
                                                          =
                                                                                                     [0, 1, 3]
              [0, 2, 0]
                                     8
                                          [0, 2, 1] =
                                                                 9 [0, 2, 2] = 10 [0, 2, 3]
                             =
              \begin{bmatrix} 1, 0, 0 \end{bmatrix} = 12 \begin{bmatrix} 1, 0, 1 \end{bmatrix} = 13 \begin{bmatrix} 1, 0, 2 \end{bmatrix} = 14 \\ \begin{bmatrix} 1, 1, 0 \end{bmatrix} = 16 \begin{bmatrix} 1, 1, 1 \end{bmatrix} = 17 \begin{bmatrix} 1, 1, 2 \end{bmatrix} = 18 \\ \begin{bmatrix} 1, 2, 0 \end{bmatrix} = 20 \begin{bmatrix} 1, 2, 1 \end{bmatrix} = 21 \begin{bmatrix} 1, 2, 2 \end{bmatrix} = 22 
                                                                                                    [1, 0, 3]
                                                                                             18 [1, 1, 3]
22 [1, 2, 3]
                                                                                                                     = 19
end example]
[Example: In the following code
             class Test
                   unsafe static void Fill(int* p, int count, int value) { for (; count != 0; count--) *p++ = value;
                   static void Main() {
                          int[] a = new int[100];
                          unsafe {
                                 fixed (int* p = a) Fill(p, 100, -1);
                   }
             }
```

a **fixed** statement is used to fix an array so its address can be passed to a method that takes a pointer. *end example*]

A char\* value produced by fixing a non-null string instance always points to a null-terminated string. Within a fixed statement that obtains a pointer p to a string instance s, the pointer values ranging from p to p + s. Length - 1 represent addresses of the characters in the string, and the pointer value p + s. Length always points to a null character (the character with value ' \0').

Modifying objects of managed type through fixed pointers can result in undefined behavior. [*Note*: For example, because strings are immutable, it is the programmer's responsibility to ensure that the characters referenced by a pointer to a fixed string are not modified. *end note*]

[*Note*: The automatic null-termination of strings is particularly convenient when calling external APIs that expect "C-style" strings. Note, however, that a string instance is permitted to contain null characters. If such null characters are present, the string will appear truncated when treated as a null-terminated char\*. *end note*]

#### 27.7 Stack allocation

In an unsafe context, a local variable declaration (§15.5.1) can include a stack allocation initializer, which allocates memory from the call stack.

```
local-variable-initializer:
    expression
    array-initializer
    stackalloc-initializer

stackalloc-initializer:
    stackalloc unmanaged-type [ expression ]
```

The *unmanaged-type* indicates the type of the items that will be stored in the newly allocated location, and the *expression* indicates the number of these items. Taken together, these specify the required allocation size. Since the size of a stack allocation cannot be negative, it is a compile-time error to specify the number of items as a *constant-expression* that evaluates to a negative value.

A stack allocation initializer of the form stackalloc T[E] requires T to be an unmanaged type (§27.2) and E to be an expression convertible to type int. The construct allocates E \* sizeof(T) bytes from the call stack and returns a pointer, of type T\*, to the newly allocated block. If E is a negative value, then the behavior is undefined. If E is zero, then no allocation is made, and the pointer returned is implementation-defined. If there is not enough memory available to allocate a block of the given size, a System. StackOverflowException is thrown.

The content of the newly allocated memory is undefined.

Stack allocation initializers are not permitted in catch or finally blocks (§15.10).

[*Note*: There is no way to explicitly free memory allocated using stackalloc. *end note*] All stack-allocated memory blocks created during the execution of a function member are automatically discarded when that function member returns. [*Note*: This corresponds to the alloca function, an extension commonly found in C and C++ implementations. *end note*]

[Example: In the following code

```
using System;
class Test
   static string IntToString(int value) {
      int n = value >= 0? value : -value;
      unsafe {
         char* buffer = stackal
char* p = buffer + 16;
                buffer = stackalloc char[16];
         do {
              --p = (char)(n \% 10 + '0');
             n = 10;
         \} while (n != 0);
         if (value < 0) *--p = '-'
         return new string(p, 0, (int)(buffer + 16 - p));
      }
   }
   static void Main() {
      Consol e. WriteLine(IntToString(12345));
      Consol e. WriteLine(IntToString(-999));
}
```

a stackal loc initializer is used in the IntToStri ng method to allocate a buffer of 16 characters on the stack. The buffer is automatically discarded when the method returns. *end example*]

# 27.8 Dynamic memory allocation

Except for the **stackalloc** operator, C# provides no predefined constructs for managing non-garbage collected memory. Such services are typically provided by supporting class libraries or imported directly from the underlying operating system. [*Example*: The **Memory** static class below illustrates how the heap functions of an underlying operating system might be accessed from C#:

```
using System;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;
public unsafe static class Memory
{
    // Handle for the process heap. This handle is used in all calls to
    // the HeapXXX APIs in the methods below.
    static int ph = GetProcessHeap();
```

```
// Allocates a memory block of the given size. The allocated memory is
// automatically initialized to zero.
public static void* Alloc(int size) {
  void* result = HeapAlloc(ph, HEAP_ZERO_MEMORY, size);
   if (result == null) throw new OutOfMemoryException();
   return result;
// Copies count bytes from src to dst. The source and destination
// blocks are permitted to overlap.
public static void Copy(void* src, void* dst, int count) {
   byte* ps = (byte*)src;
byte* pd = (byte*)dst;
   if (ps > pd) {
       for (; count != 0; count--) *pd++ = *ps++;
   else if (ps < pd) {
       for (ps += count, pd += count; count != 0; count--)
*--pd = *--ps;
   }
}
// Frees a memory block.
public static void Free(void* block) {
   if (!HeapFree(ph, 0, block)) throw new InvalidOperationException();
// Re-allocates a memory block. If the reallocation request is for a
// larger size, the additional region of memory is automatically
// initialized to zero.
public static void* ReAlloc(void* block, int size) {
   void* result = HeapReAlloc(ph, HEAP_ZERO_MEMORY, block, size);
   if (result == null) throw new OutOfMemoryException();
   return result;
}
// Returns the size of a memory block.
public static int SizeOf(void* block) {
  int result = HeapSize(ph, 0, block);
   if (result == -1) throw new InvalidOperationException();
   return result;
// Heap API flags
const int HEAP\_ZERO\_MEMORY = 0x000000008;
// Heap API functions
[DllImport("kernel32")]
static extern int GetProcessHeap();
[DllImport("kernel32")]
static extern void* HeapAlloc(int hHeap, int flags, int size);
[DllImport("kernel 32")]
static extern bool HeapFree(int hHeap, int flags, void* block);
[DllImport("kernel 32")]
static extern void* HeapReAlloc(int hHeap, int flags,
   void* block, int size);
[DllImport("kernel 32")]
static extern int HeapSize(int hHeap, int flags, void* block);
```

An example that uses the **Memory** class is given below:

```
class Test
{
    static void Main() {
        unsafe {
            byte* buffer = (byte*) Memory. Alloc(256);
            for (int i = 0; i < 256; i++) buffer[i] = (byte)i;
            byte[] array = new byte[256];
            fixed (byte* p = array) Memory. Copy(buffer, p, 256);
            Memory. Free(buffer);
            for (int i = 0; i < 256; i++) Console. WriteLine(array[i]);
        }
    }
}</pre>
```

The example allocates 256 bytes of memory through **Memory**. All oc and initializes the memory block with values increasing from 0 to 255. It then allocates a 256-element byte array and uses **Memory**. Copy to copy the contents of the memory block into the byte array. Finally, the memory block is freed using **Memory**. Free and the contents of the byte array are output on the console. *end example*]

End of conditionally normative text.

# Annex A. Grammar

## This clause is informative.

This annex contains summaries of the lexical and syntactic grammars found in the main document, and of the grammar extensions for unsafe code. Grammar productions appear here in the same order that they appear in the main document.

# A.1 Lexical grammar

```
input::
    input-section<sub>opt</sub>

input-section::
    input-section-part
    input-section input-section-part

input-section-part::
    input-elements<sub>opt</sub> new-line
    pp-directive

input-elements::
    input-element
    input-element
    input-element
    input-element
    input-element
    input-element
    input-element

input-element::
    whitespace
    comment
    token
```

# A.1.1 Line terminators

```
new-line::
```

Carriage return character (U+000D)
Line feed character (U+000A)
Carriage return character (U+000D) followed by line feed character (U+000A)
Next line character (U+2085)
Line separator character (U+2028)
Paragraph separator character (U+2029)

# A.1.2 White space

```
whitespace::
    whitespace-characters:
whitespace-character:
whitespace-character
whitespace-characters whitespace-character
whitespace-character::
Any character with Unicode class Zs
Horizontal tab character (U+0009)
Vertical tab character (U+000B)
Form feed character (U+000C)
```

## A.1.3 Comments

```
comment::
   single-line-comment
    delimited-comment
single-line-comment::
    // input-characters<sub>opt</sub>
input-characters::
   input-character
    input-characters input-character
input-character::
    Any Unicode character except a new-line-character
new-line-character::
   Carriage return character (U+000D)
   Line feed character (U+000A)
   Next line character (U+0085)
   Line separator character (U+2028)
    Paragraph separator character (U+2029)
delimited-comment::
    /* delimited-comment-text<sub>opt</sub> asterisks /
delimited-comment-text::
    delimited-comment-section
    delimited-comment-text delimited-comment-section
delimited-comment-section::
   not-asterisk
   asterisks not-slash
asterisks::
   asterisks *
not-asterisk::
    Any Unicode character except *
not-slash::
    Any Unicode character except /
```

# A.1.4 Tokens

```
token::
identifier
keyword
integer-literal
real-literal
character-literal
string-literal
operator-or-punctuator
```

# A.1.5 Unicode escape sequences

```
unicode-escape-sequence::
```

\u hex-digit hex-digit hex-digit hex-digit

\U hex-digit hex-digit hex-digit hex-digit hex-digit hex-digit hex-digit

#### A.1.6 Identifiers

# identifier::

available-identifier

@ identifier-or-keyword

# available-identifier::

An identifier-or-keyword that is not a keyword

# identifier-or-keyword::

identifier-start-character identifier-part-characters<sub>opt</sub>

# identifier-start-character::

letter-character

\_ (the underscore character U+005F)

#### identifier-part-characters::

identifier-part-character

identifier-part-characters identifier-part-character

# identifier-part-character::

letter-character

decimal-digit-character

connecting-character

combining-character

formatting-character

# letter-character::

A Unicode character of classes Lu, Ll, Lt, Lm, Lo, or Nl

A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of classes Lu, Ll, Lt, Lm, Lo, or Nl

# combining-character::

A Unicode character of classes Mn or Mc

A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of classes Mn or Mc

# decimal-digit-character::

A Unicode character of the class Nd

A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of the class Nd

# connecting-character::

A Unicode character of the class Pc

A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of the class Pc

#### formatting-character::

A Unicode character of the class Cf

A unicode-escape-sequence representing a character of the class Cf

# A.1.7 Keywords

keyword:: one of break abstract base bool as byte catch char checked case cl ass conti nue deci mal defaul t const del egate do doubl e else enum event explicit extern false finally fi xed float for foreach goto i f implicit i nt interface i n internal is lock long namespace new nul l obj ect operator out overri de params pri vate protected publ i c readonly ref return sbyte seal ed short si zeof stackal loc stati c string switch this true struct throw try typeof ui nt ul ong unchecked ushort vi rtual voi d unsafe usi ng volatile while

## A.1.8 Literals

```
literal::
    boolean-literal
    integer-literal
    real-literal
    character-literal
    string-literal
   null-literal
boolean-literal::
    true
   false
integer-literal::
    decimal-integer-literal
    hexadecimal-integer-literal
decimal-integer-literal::
    decimal-digits integer-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
decimal-digits::
    decimal-digit
    decimal-digits decimal-digit
decimal-digit:: one of
   0 1 2 3 4
                       5 6 7 8
integer-type-suffix:: one of
    U u L l
                   UL Ul
                               uL ul
                                          LU Lu lU lu
hexadecimal-integer-literal::
   0x hex-digits integer-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
    OX hex-digits integer-type-suffix<sub>ont</sub>
hex-digits::
   hex-digit
    hex-digits hex-digit
```

```
hex-digit:: one of
   0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F a b c d e
real-literal::
   decimal-digits . decimal-digits exponent-part<sub>opt</sub> real-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
    . decimal-digits exponent-part<sub>opt</sub> real-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
    decimal-digits exponent-part real-type-suffix<sub>opt</sub>
    decimal-digits real-type-suffix
exponent-part::
   e sign<sub>opt</sub> decimal-digits
   E sign<sub>opt</sub> decimal-digits
sign:: one of
   +
real-type-suffix:: one of
   F f D d M m
character-literal::
    ' character '
character::
   single-character
    simple-escape-sequence
    hexadecimal-escape-sequence
    unicode-escape-sequence
single-character::
    Any character except ' (U+0027), \ (U+005C), and new-line-character
simple-escape-sequence:: one of
    hexadecimal-escape-sequence::
    \xspace{\mathbf{x}} hex-digit hex-digit<sub>opt</sub> hex-digit<sub>opt</sub> hex-digit<sub>opt</sub>
string-literal::
   regular-string-literal
    verbatim-string-literal
regular-string-literal::
    " regular-string-literal-characters<sub>opt</sub> "
regular-string-literal-characters::
    regular-string-literal-character
    regular-string-literal-characters regular-string-literal-character
regular-string-literal-character::
    single-regular-string-literal-character
    simple-escape-sequence
    hexadecimal-escape-sequence
    unicode-escape-sequence
single-regular-string-literal-character::
    Any character except " (U+0022), \ (U+005C), and new-line-character
verbatim-string-literal::
    @" verbatim-string-literal-characters<sub>opt</sub> "
```

```
verbatim-string-literal-characters:
    verbatim-string-literal-character
    verbatim-string-literal-characters    verbatim-string-literal-character

verbatim-string-literal-character::
    single-verbatim-string-literal-character
    quote-escape-sequence
single-verbatim-string-literal-character::
    Any character except "

quote-escape-sequence::
    """

null-literal::
    null 1
```

#### A.1.9 Operators and punctuators

```
operator-or-punctuator:: one of
                                   (
   {
           }
                           ]
                           /
                                   %
   +
                           ?
                                   ??
                                           ::
                                                                   &&
           <
                           <=
   &=
                           <<
                                   <<=
right-shift::
   > >
right-shift-assignment::
   > >=
```

#### A.1.10 Pre-processing directives

```
pp-directive::
    pp-declaration
    pp-conditional
    pp-line
    pp-diagnostic
    pp-region
    pp-pragma
conditional-symbol::
    identifier
    Any keyword except true or fal se
pp-expression::
    whitespace_{opt} pp-or-expression whitespace_{opt}
pp-or-expression::
    pp-and-expression
    pp-or-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub> | | whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-and-expression
pp-and-expression::
    pp-equality-expression
    pp-and-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub> & whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-equality-expression
```

```
pp-equality-expression::
    pp-unary-expression
    pp-equality-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub> == whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-unary-expression
    pp-equality-expression whitespace<sub>opt</sub> != whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-unary-expression
pp-unary-expression::
    pp-primary-expression
     ! whitespace<sub>opt</sub> pp-unary-expression
pp-primary-expression::
    true
    false
    conditional-symbol
     ( whitespace_{opt} pp-expression whitespace_{opt} )
pp-declaration::
    whitespace_{opt} # whitespace_{opt} define whitespace conditional-symbol pp-new-line
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> undef whitespace conditional-symbol pp-new-line
pp-new-line::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> single-line-comment<sub>opt</sub> new-line
pp-conditional::
    pp-if-section pp-elif-sections<sub>opt</sub> pp-else-section<sub>opt</sub> pp-endif
pp-if-section::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> if whitespace pp-expression pp-new-line
         conditional-section<sub>opt</sub>
pp-elif-sections::
    pp-elif-section
    pp-elif-sections pp-elif-section
pp-elif-section::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> elif whitespace pp-expression pp-new-line
         conditional-section<sub>opt</sub>
pp-else-section::
    whitespace_{opt} # whitespace_{opt} else pp-new-line conditional-sectionopt
pp-endif::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> endi f pp-new-line
conditional-section::
    input-section
    skipped-section
skipped-section::
    skipped-section-part
    skipped-section skipped-section-part
skipped-section-part::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> skipped-characters<sub>opt</sub> new-line
    pp-directive
skipped-characters::
    not-number-sign input-characters<sub>opt</sub>
not-number-sign::
    Any input-character except #
```

```
pp-line::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> line whitespace line-indicator pp-new-line
line-indicator::
    decimal-digits whitespace file-name
    decimal-digits
    identifier-or-keyword
file-name::
    " file-name-characters "
file-name-characters::
    file-name-character
    file-name-characters file-name-character
file-name-character::
    Any character except " (U+0022), and new-line-character
pp-diagnostic::
    whitespace_{opt} # whitespace_{opt} error pp-message
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> warning pp-message
pp-message::
    new-line
    whitespace input-characters<sub>opt</sub> new-line
pp-region::
    pp-start-region conditional-section<sub>opt</sub> pp-end-region
pp-start-region::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> region pp-message
pp-end-region::
    whitespace<sub>opt</sub> # whitespace<sub>opt</sub> endregion pp-message
pp-pragma:
    whitespace_{opt} # whitespace_{opt} pragma pp-pragma-text
pp-pragma-text:
    new-line
    whitespace input-characters<sub>opt</sub> new-line
```

#### A.2 Syntactic grammar

#### A.2.1 Basic concepts

```
compilation-unit:
    extern-alias-directives<sub>opt</sub> using-directives<sub>opt</sub> global-attributes<sub>opt</sub>
    namespace-member-declarations<sub>opt</sub>

namespace-name:
    namespace-or-type-name

type-name:
    namespace-or-type-name

namespace-or-type-name:
    identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
    qualified-alias-member
    namespace-or-type-name . identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
```

#### A.2.2 Types

```
type:
    value-type
    reference-type
    type-parameter
value-type:
    struct-type
    enum-type
struct-type:
    type-name
    simple-type
    nullable-type
simple-type:
    numeric-type
    bool
numeric-type:
    integral-type
   floating-point-type
    deci mal
integral-type:
    sbyte
    byte
    short
    ushort
    i nt
    ui nt
    long
    ul ong
    char
floating-point-type:
    float
    doubl e
enum-type:
    type-name
nullable-type:
    non-nullable-value-type ?
non-nullable-value-type:
    enum-type
    type-name
    simple-type
reference-type:
    class-type
    interface-type
    array-type
    delegate-type
class-type:
    type-name
    obj ect
    string
```

```
interface-type:
   type-name
array-type:
   non-array-type rank-specifiers
non-array-type:
   value-type
   class-type
   interface-type
   delegate-type
   type-parameter
rank-specifiers:
   rank-specifier
   rank-specifiers rank-specifier
rank-specifier:
    [ dim-separators<sub>opt</sub> ]
dim-separators:
   dim-separators ,
delegate-type:
   type-name
```

#### A.2.3 Variables

variable-reference: expression

#### A.2.4 Expressions

```
argument-list:
    argument
    argument-list , argument

argument:
    expression
    ref variable-reference
    out variable-reference

primary-expression:
    array-creation-expression
    primary-no-array-creation-expression
```

```
primary-no-array-creation-expression:
    literal
    simple-name
    parenthesized-expression
    member-access
    invocation-expression
    element-access
    this-access
    base-access
    post-increment-expression
    post-decrement-expression
    object-creation-expression
    delegate-creation-expression
    typeof-expression
    checked-expression
    unchecked-expression
    default-value-expression
    anonymous-method-expression
simple-name:
    identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
parenthesized-expression:
    ( expression )
member-access:
    primary-expression . identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
    predefined-type . identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
    qualified-alias-member . identifier type-argument-listopt
predefined-type: one of
    bool
                byte
                                        deci mal
                                                    doubl e
                                                                float
                            char
                                                                            i nt
                                                                                        long
    obj ect
                sbyte
                            short
                                        string
                                                    ui nt
                                                                ul ong
                                                                            ushort
invocation-expression:
    primary-expression ( argument-list_{opt} )
element-access:
    primary-no-array-creation-expression [ expression-list ]
expression-list:
    expression
    expression-list, expression
this-access:
    this
base-access:
    base . identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
    base [ expression-list ]
post-increment-expression:
    primary-expression ++
post-decrement-expression:
    primary-expression --
object-creation-expression:
    new type ( argument-list_{opt} )
```

```
array-creation-expression:
   new non-array-type [ expression-list ] rank-specifiers<sub>opt</sub> array-initializer<sub>opt</sub>
    new array-type array-initializer
delegate-creation-expression:
    new delegate-type ( expression )
typeof-expression:
    typeof ( type )
    typeof ( unbound-type-name )
    typeof (void)
unbound-type-name:
   identifier generic-dimension-specifier<sub>opt</sub>
    identifier :: identifier generic-dimension-specifier opt
    unbound-type-name . identifier generic-dimension-specifier opt
generic-dimension-specifier:
    < commas<sub>opt</sub> >
commas:
   commas,
checked-expression:
    checked ( expression )
unchecked-expression:
   unchecked ( expression )
default-value-expression:
    default ( type )
anonymous-method-expression:
    delegate anonymous-method-signature<sub>opt</sub> block
anonymous-method-signature:
    ( anonymous-method-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub> )
anonymous-method-parameter-list:
   anonymous-method-parameter
   anonymous-method-parameter-list, anonymous-method-parameter
anonymous-method-parameter:
   parameter-modifier_{opt} type identifier
unary-expression:
   primary-expression
   + unary-expression
    - unary-expression
   ! unary-expression
    ~ unary-expression
   pre-increment-expression
   pre-decrement-expression
   cast-expression
pre-increment-expression:
    ++ unary-expression
pre-decrement-expression:
    -- unary-expression
cast-expression:
    ( type ) unary-expression
```

```
multiplicative-expression:
   unary-expression
   multiplicative-expression * unary-expression
   multiplicative-expression / unary-expression
   multiplicative-expression % unary-expression
additive-expression:
   multiplicative-expression
   additive-expression + multiplicative-expression
   additive-expression - multiplicative-expression
shift-expression:
   additive-expression
   shift-expression << additive-expression
   shift-expression right-shift additive-expression
relational-expression:
   shift-expression
   relational-expression < shift-expression
   relational-expression > shift-expression
   relational-expression <= shift-expression
   relational-expression >= shift-expression
   relational-expression is type
   relational-expression as type
equality-expression:
   relational-expression
   equality-expression == relational-expression
   equality-expression != relational-expression
and-expression:
   equality-expression
   and-expression & equality-expression
exclusive-or-expression:
   and-expression
   exclusive-or-expression ^ and-expression
inclusive-or-expression:
   exclusive-or-expression
   inclusive-or-expression | exclusive-or-expression
conditional-and-expression:
   inclusive-or-expression
   conditional-and-expression && inclusive-or-expression
conditional-or-expression:
   conditional-and-expression
   conditional-or-expression | | conditional-and-expression
null-coalescing-expression:
   conditional-or-expression
   conditional-or-expression ?? null-coalescing-expression
conditional-expression:
   null-coalescing-expression
   null-coalescing-expression? expression: expression
assignment:
   unary-expression assignment-operator expression
```

```
assignment-operator: one of
                                                                     right-shift-assignment
         +=
               -=
                                                             <<=
expression:
   conditional-expression
   assignment
constant-expression:
   expression
boolean-expression:
   expression
```

#### A.2.5 Statements

```
statement:
   labeled-statement
   declaration-statement
   embedded-statement
embedded-statement:
   block
   empty-statement
   expression-statement
   selection-statement
   iteration-statement
   jump-statement
   try-statement
   checked-statement
   unchecked-statement
   lock-statement
   using-statement
   yield-statement
block:
   { statement-list_{opt} }
statement-list:
   statement
   statement-list statement
empty-statement:
labeled-statement:
   identifier: statement
declaration-statement:
   local-variable-declaration:
   local-constant-declaration;
local-variable-declaration:
   type local-variable-declarators
local-variable-declarators:
   local-variable-declarator
   local-variable-declarators, local-variable-declarator
local-variable-declarator:
   identifier
   identifier = local-variable-initializer
```

```
local-variable-initializer:
   expression
   array-initializer
local-constant-declaration:
   const type constant-declarators
constant-declarators:
   constant-declarator
   constant-declarators, constant-declarator
constant-declarator:
   identifier = constant-expression
expression-statement:
   statement-expression;
statement-expression:
   invocation-expression
   object-creation-expression
   assignment
   post-increment-expression
   post-decrement-expression
   pre-increment-expression
   pre-decrement-expression
selection-statement:
   if-statement
   switch-statement
if-statement:
   if ( boolean-expression ) embedded-statement
   if (boolean-expression) embedded-statement else embedded-statement
switch-statement:
   switch ( expression ) switch-block
switch-block:
   { switch-sections<sub>opt</sub> }
switch-sections:
   switch-section
   switch-sections switch-section
switch-section:
   switch-labels statement-list
switch-labels:
   switch-label
   switch-labels switch-label
switch-label:
   case constant-expression:
   default:
iteration-statement:
   while-statement
   do-statement
   for-statement
   foreach-statement
while-statement:
   while (boolean-expression) embedded-statement
```

```
do-statement:
    do embedded-statement while (boolean-expression);
for-statement:
    for ( for-initializer_{opt} ; for-condition_{opt} ; for-iterator_{opt} ) embedded-statement
for-initializer:
    local-variable-declaration
    statement-expression-list
for-condition:
    boolean-expression
for-iterator:
    statement-expression-list
statement-expression-list:
    statement-expression
    statement-expression-list, statement-expression
foreach-statement:
    foreach (type identifier in expression) embedded-statement
jump-statement:
    break-statement
    continue-statement
    goto-statement
    return-statement
    throw-statement
break-statement:
    break ;
continue-statement:
    continue ;
goto-statement:
    goto identifier ;
    goto case constant-expression ;
    goto default;
return-statement:
    return expression<sub>opt</sub>;
throw-statement:
    throw expression<sub>opt</sub> ;
try-statement:
    try block catch-clauses
    try block catch-clauses<sub>opt</sub> finally-clause
catch-clauses:
    specific-catch-clauses
    specific-catch-clauses<sub>opt</sub> general-catch-clause
specific-catch-clauses:
    specific-catch-clause
    specific-catch-clauses specific-catch-clause
specific-catch-clause:
    catch ( class-type identifier_{opt} ) block
general-catch-clause:
    catch block
```

```
finally-clause:
    finally block
checked-statement:
    checked block
unchecked-statement:
    unchecked block
lock-statement:
   lock ( expression ) embedded-statement
using-statement:
    using ( resource-acquisition ) embedded-statement
resource-acquisition:
    local-variable-declaration
    expression
yield-statement:
   yield return expression;
   yield break;
namespace-declaration:
    namespace qualified-identifier namespace-body; opt
qualified-identifier:
   identifier
   qualified-identifier . identifier
namespace-body:
    \{\ extern-alias-directives_{opt}\ using-directives_{opt}\ namespace-member-declarations_{opt}\ \}
extern-alias-directives:
    extern-alias-directive
    extern-alias-directives extern-alias-directive
extern-alias-directive:
   extern alias identifier;
using-directives:
    using-directive
    using-directives using-directive
using-directive:
   using-alias-directive
    using-namespace-directive
using-alias-directive:
    using identifier = namespace-or-type-name;
using-namespace-directive:
    using namespace-name;
namespace-member-declarations:
   namespace-member-declaration
   namespace-member-declaration namespace-member-declaration
namespace-member-declaration:
   namespace-declaration
    type-declaration
```

```
type-declaration:
    class-declaration
    struct-declaration
    interface-declaration
    enum-declaration
    delegate-declaration

qualified-alias-member:
    identifier :: identifier type-argument-list<sub>opt</sub>
```

#### A.2.6 Classes

```
class-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> class-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> partial<sub>opt</sub> class identifier type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>
            class-base_{opt} type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt} class-body ; _{opt}
class-modifiers:
    class-modifier
    class-modifiers class-modifier
class-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
    abstract
    seal ed
    static
class-base:
    : class-type
    : interface-type-list
    : class-type , interface-type-list
interface-type-list:
    interface-type
    interface-type-list, interface-type
class-body:
    { class-member-declarations_{opt} }
class-member-declarations:
    class-member-declaration
    class-member-declarations class-member-declaration
```

```
class-member-declaration:
    constant-declaration
   field-declaration
    method-declaration
    property-declaration
    event-declaration
    indexer-declaration
    operator-declaration
    constructor-declaration
    finalizer-declaration
    static-constructor-declaration
    type-declaration
constant-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> constant-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> const type constant-declarators ;
constant-modifiers:
    constant-modifier
    constant-modifiers constant-modifier
constant-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
constant-declarators:
    constant-declarator
    constant-declarators, constant-declarator
constant-declarator:
    identifier = constant-expression
field-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> field-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> type variable-declarators ;
field-modifiers:
   field-modifier
   field-modifiers field-modifier
field-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    i nternal
    pri vate
    static
    readonly
    volatile
variable-declarators:
    variable-declarator
    variable-declarators, variable-declarator
variable-declarator:
    identifier
    identifier = variable-initializer
```

```
variable-initializer:
    expression
    array-initializer
method-declaration:
    method-header method-body
method-header:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> method-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> return-type member-name type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>
             ( formal-parameter-list_{opt} ) type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt}
method-modifiers:
    method-modifier
    method-modifiers method-modifier
method-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    i nternal
    pri vate
    stati c
    vi rtual
    seal ed
    overri de
    abstract
    extern
return-type:
    type
    voi d
member-name:
    identifier
    interface-type . identifier
method-body:
    block
formal-parameter-list:
   fixed-parameters
   fixed-parameters, parameter-array
    parameter-array
fixed-parameters:
   fixed-parameter
   fixed-parameters , fixed-parameter
fixed-parameter:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> parameter-modifier<sub>opt</sub> type identifier
parameter-modifier:
    ref
    out
parameter-array:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> params array-type identifier
property-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> property-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> type member-name { accessor-declarations }
```

```
property-modifiers:
   property-modifier
   property-modifiers property-modifier
property-modifier:
   new
   publ i c
   protected
   internal
   pri vate
   static
   vi rtual
   seal ed
   overri de
    abstract
    extern
accessor-declarations:
    get-accessor-declaration set-accessor-declaration<sub>out</sub>
    set-accessor-declaration get-accessor-declaration<sub>out</sub>
get-accessor-declaration:
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> accessor-modifier<sub>opt</sub> get accessor-body
set-accessor-declaration:
   attributes_{opt} accessor-modifier_{opt} set accessor-body
accessor-modifier:
   protected
   i nternal
   pri vate
    protected internal
   internal protected
accessor-body:
   block
event-declaration:
   attributes_{opt} event-modifiers_{opt} event type variable-declarators ;
    attributes_{opt} event-modifiers_{opt} event type member-name
            { event-accessor-declarations }
event-modifiers:
   event-modifier
   event-modifiers event-modifier
event-modifier:
   new
   publ i c
   protected
   internal
   pri vate
   stati c
   vi rtual
   seal ed
    overri de
   abstract
    extern
```

```
event-accessor-declarations:
   add-accessor-declaration remove-accessor-declaration
   remove-accessor-declaration add-accessor-declaration
add-accessor-declaration:
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> add block
remove-accessor-declaration:
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> remove block
indexer-declaration:
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> indexer-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> indexer-declarator { accessor-declarations }
indexer-modifiers:
   indexer-modifier
   indexer-modifiers indexer-modifier
indexer-modifier:
   new
   publ i c
   protected
   i nternal
   pri vate
   vi rtual
   seal ed
   overri de
   abstract
   extern
indexer-declarator:
   type this [ formal-parameter-list ]
   type interface-type . this [ formal-parameter-list ]
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> operator-modifiers operator-declarator operator-body
operator-modifiers:
   operator-modifier
   operator-modifiers operator-modifier
operator-modifier:
   publ i c
   static
   extern
operator-declarator:
   unary-operator-declarator
   binary-operator-declarator
   conversion-operator-declarator
unary-operator-declarator:
   type operator overloadable-unary-operator ( type identifier )
overloadable-unary-operator: one of
                                               false
           ! ~
                      ++
                                     true
binary-operator-declarator:
   type operator overloadable-binary-operator ( type identifier , type identifier )
```

```
overloadable-binary-operator: one of
            &
                    right-shift
            <<
        conversion-operator-declarator:
            implicit operator type ( type identifier )
            explicit operator type ( type identifier )
        operator-body:
            block
        constructor-declaration:
            attributes_{opt} constructor-modifiers_{opt} constructor-declarator constructor-body
        constructor-modifiers:
            constructor-modifier
            constructor-modifiers constructor-modifier
        constructor-modifier:
            publ i c
            protected
            internal
            pri vate
            extern
        constructor-declarator:
            identifier ( formal-parameter-list_{opt} ) constructor-initializer_{opt}
        constructor-initializer:
            : base ( argument-list<sub>opt</sub> )
            : this ( argument-list<sub>opt</sub> )
        constructor-body:
            block
        static-constructor-declaration:
            attributes<sub>opt</sub> static-constructor-modifiers identifier ( ) static-constructor-body
        static-constructor-modifiers:
            extern_{opt} static
            static extern<sub>ovt</sub>
        static-constructor-body:
            block
       finalizer-declaration:
            attributes_{opt} extern<sub>opt</sub> ~ identifier ( ) finalizer-body
       finalizer-body:
            block
A.2.7 Structs
        struct-declaration:
```

```
attributes<sub>opt</sub> struct-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> partial<sub>opt</sub> struct identifier type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>
          struct-interfaces_{opt} type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt} struct-body; _{opt}
```

```
struct-modifiers:
   struct-modifier
   struct-modifiers struct-modifier
struct-modifier:
   new
   publ i c
   protected
   internal
    pri vate
struct-interfaces:
    : interface-type-list
struct-body:
    { struct-member-declarations<sub>opt</sub> }
struct-member-declarations:
   struct-member-declaration
    struct-member-declarations struct-member-declaration
struct-member-declaration:
   constant-declaration
   field-declaration
   method-declaration
   property-declaration
   event-declaration
    indexer-declaration
   operator-declaration
   constructor-declaration
    static-constructor-declaration
   type-declaration
```

### A.2.8 Arrays

```
array-type:
    non-array-type rank-specifiers
non-array-type:
    value-type
    class-type
    interface-type
    delegate-type
    type-parameter
rank-specifiers:
    rank-specifier
    rank-specifiers rank-specifier
rank-specifier:
    [ dim-separators<sub>opt</sub> ]
dim-separators:
    dim-separators ,
array-initializer:
    { variable-initializer-list<sub>opt</sub> }
    { variable-initializer-list , }
```

```
variable-initializer-list:
variable-initializer
variable-initializer-list , variable-initializer
variable-initializer:
expression
array-initializer
```

#### A.2.9 Interfaces

```
interface-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> interface-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> partial<sub>opt</sub> interface identifier type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>
              interface-base<sub>opt</sub> type-parameter-constraints-clauses<sub>opt</sub> interface-body; <sub>opt</sub>
interface-modifiers:
    interface-modifier
    interface-modifiers interface-modifier
interface-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    internal
    pri vate
interface-base:
    : interface-type-list
interface-body:
    { interface-member-declarations<sub>opt</sub> }
interface-member-declarations:
    interface-member-declaration
    interface-member-declarations interface-member-declaration
interface-member-declaration:
    interface-method-declaration
    interface-property-declaration
    interface-event-declaration
    interface-indexer-declaration
interface-method-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> new<sub>opt</sub> return-type identifier type-parameter-list<sub>opt</sub>
              ( formal-parameter-list_{opt} ) type-parameter-constraints-clauses_{opt} ;
interface-property-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> new<sub>opt</sub> type identifier { interface-accessors }
interface-accessors:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> get ;
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> set ;
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> get ; attributes<sub>opt</sub> set ;
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> set ; attributes<sub>opt</sub> get ;
interface-event-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> new<sub>opt</sub> event type identifier ;
interface-indexer-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> new<sub>opt</sub> type this [ formal-parameter-list ] { interface-accessors }
```

#### **A.2.10 Enums**

```
enum-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> enum-modifiers<sub>opt</sub> enum identifier enum-base<sub>opt</sub> enum-body; <sub>opt</sub>
    : integral-type
enum-body:
    { enum-member-declarations<sub>opt</sub> }
    { enum-member-declarations , }
enum-modifiers:
    enum-modifier
    enum-modifiers enum-modifier
enum-modifier:
    new
    publ i c
    protected
    i nternal
    pri vate
enum-member-declarations:
    enum-member-declaration
    enum-member-declarations, enum-member-declaration
enum-member-declaration:
    attributes<sub>opt</sub> identifier
    attributes_{opt} identifier = constant-expression
```

#### A.2.11 Delegates

#### A.2.12 Attributes

```
global-attributes:
    global-attribute-sections

global-attribute-section

global-attribute-section

global-attribute-sections global-attribute-section
```

```
global-attribute-section:
    [ global-attribute-target-specifier attribute-list ]
    [ global-attribute-target-specifier attribute-list , ]
global-attribute-target-specifier:
    global-attribute-target :
global-attribute-target:
    identifier
    keyword
attributes:
    attribute-sections
attribute-sections:
    attribute-section
    attribute-sections attribute-section
attribute-section:
    [ attribute-target-specifier<sub>opt</sub> attribute-list ]
    [ attribute-target-specifier<sub>opt</sub> attribute-list , ]
attribute-target-specifier:
    attribute-target:
attribute-target:
    identifier
    keyword
attribute-list:
    attribute
    attribute-list, attribute
attribute:
    attribute-name attribute-arguments<sub>opt</sub>
attribute-name:
    type-name
attribute-arguments:
    ( positional-argument-list<sub>opt</sub> )
    ( positional-argument-list , named-argument-list )
    ( named-argument-list )
positional-argument-list:
    positional-argument
    positional-argument-list, positional-argument
positional-argument:
    attribute-argument-expression
named-argument-list:
    named-argument
    named-argument-list, named-argument
named-argument:
    identifier = attribute-argument-expression
attribute-argument-expression:
    expression
```

#### A.2.13 Generics

```
type-parameter-list:
   < type-parameters >
type-parameters:
   attributes<sub>opt</sub> type-parameter
   type-parameters , attributes<sub>opt</sub> type-parameter
type-parameter:
   identifier
type-argument-list:
   < type-arguments >
type-arguments:
   type-argument
   type-arguments, type-argument
type-argument:
   type
type-parameter-constraints-clauses:
   type\mbox{-}parameter\mbox{-}constraints\mbox{-}clause
   type-parameter-constraints-clauses type-parameter-constraints-clause
type-parameter-constraints-clause:
   where type-parameter: type-parameter-constraints
type-parameter-constraints:
   primary-constraint
   secondary-constraints
   constructor-constraint
   primary-constraint, secondary-constraints
   primary-constraint, constructor-constraint
   secondary-constraints, constructor-constraint
   primary-constraint, secondary-constraints, constructor-constraint
primary-constraint:
   class-type
   class
   struct
secondary-constraints:
   interface-type
   type-parameter
   secondary-constraints, interface-type
   secondary-constraints, type-parameter
constructor-constraint:
   new ()
```

#### A.3 Grammar extensions for unsafe code

```
class-modifier:
...
unsafe
struct-modifier:
...
unsafe
```

```
interface-modifier:
   unsafe
delegate-modifier:
   unsafe
field-modifier:
   unsafe
method-modifier:
   unsafe
property-modifier:
   unsafe
event-modifier:
   unsafe
indexer-modifier:
   unsafe
operator-modifier:
   unsafe
constructor-modifier:
   unsafe
finalizer-declaration:
   attributesopt externopt unsafeopt ~ identifier ( ) finalizer-body
   attributesopt unsafeopt externopt ~ identifier ( ) finalizer-body
static-constructor-modifiers:
   externopt unsafeopt static
   unsafeopt externopt static
   externopt static unsafeopt
   unsafeopt static externopt
   static externopt unsafeopt
   static unsafeopt externopt
embedded-statement:
   unsafe-statement
unsafe-statement:
   unsafe block
type:
   value-type
   reference-type
   type-parameter
   pointer-type
```

```
pointer-type:
    unmanaged-type *
    voi d *
unmanaged-type:
    type
primary-no-array-creation-expression:
    sizeof-expression
primary-no-array-creation-expression:
    pointer-member-access
    pointer-element-access
unary-expression:
    pointer-indirection-expression
    addressof-expression
pointer-indirection-expression:
    * unary-expression
pointer-member-access:
    primary-expression -> identifier type-argument-listopt
pointer-element-access:
    primary-no-array-creation-expression [ expression ]
addressof-expression:
    & unary-expression
sizeof-expression:
    sizeof ( unmanaged-type )
embedded-statement:
   fixed-statement
fixed-statement:
    fixed (pointer-type fixed-pointer-declarators) embedded-statement
fixed-pointer-declarators:
   fixed-pointer-declarator
   fixed-pointer-declarators, fixed-pointer-declarator
fixed-pointer-declarator:
    identifier = fixed-pointer-initializer
fixed-pointer-initializer:
    & variable-reference
    expression
local-variable-initializer:
    expression
    array-initializer
    stackalloc-initializer
stackalloc-initializer:
    stackalloc unmanaged-type [ expression ]
```

# **Annex B. Portability issues**

#### This clause is informative.

This annex collects some information about portability that appears in this International Standard.

#### B.1 Undefined behavior

A program that does not contain any occurrences of the unsafe modifier cannot exhibit any undefined behavior.

The behavior is undefined in the following circumstances:

- 1. When dereferencing the result of converting one pointer type to another and the resulting pointer is not correctly aligned for the pointed-to type. (§27.4)
- 2. When the unary \* operator is applied to a pointer containing an invalid value (§27.5.1).
- 3. When a pointer is subscripted to access an out-of-bounds element (§27.5.3).
- 4. Modifying objects of managed type through fixed pointers (§27.6)
- 5. The initial content of memory allocated by stackal loc (§27.7).
- 6. Attempting to allocate a negative number of items using stackal loc (§27.7).

#### **B.2 Implementation-defined behavior**

A conforming implementation is required to document its choice of behavior in each of the areas listed in this subclause. The following are implementation-defined:

- 1. The behavior when an identifier not in Normalization Form C is encountered (§9.4.2).
- 2. The purpose of a *line-indicator* with an *identifier-or-keyword* whose value does not equal **defaul** t (§9.5.7).
- 3. The interpretation of the *input-characters* in the *pp-pragma-text* of a **#pragma** directive (§9.5.8).
- 4. The values of any application parameters passed to **Mai** n by the host environment prior to application startup (§10.1).
- 5. Whether a **System**. **Ari thmeti cExcepti on** (or a subclass thereof) is thrown or the overflow goes unreported with the resulting value being that of the left operand, when in an **unchecked** context and the left operand of an integer division is the maximum negative **i** nt or **l** ong value and the right operand is -1 (§14.7.2).
- 6. When a **System**. **Ari thmeti cExcepti on** (or a subclass thereof) is thrown when performing a decimal remainder operation (§14.7.3).
- 7. The mechanism by which linkage to an external function is achieved (§17.5.7).
- 8. The impact of thread termination when no matching catch clause is found for an exception and the code that initially started that thread is reached. (§23.3)
- 9. The purpose of attribute target specifiers other than those identified by this standard (§24.2).
- 10. The mappings between pointers and integers (§27.4).
- 11. The effect of applying the unary \* operator to a nul 1 pointer (§27.5.1).
- 12. The behavior when pointer arithmetic overflows the domain of the pointer type (§27.5.5).

- 13. The result of the si zeof operator for non-pre-defined value types (§27.5.8).
- 14. The behavior of the **fixed** statement if the array expression is null or if the array has zero elements (§27.6).
- 15. The behavior of the fixed statement if the string expression is null (§27.6).
- 16. The value returned when a stack allocation of size zero is made (§27.7).

#### **B.3 Unspecified behavior**

- 1. The time at which the finalizer (if any) for an object is run, once that object has become eligible for finalization (§10.9).
- 2. The value of the result when converting out-of-range values from float or double values to an integral type in an unchecked context (§13.2.1).
- 3. The layout of arrays, except in an unsafe context (§14.5.10.2).
- 4. Whether there is any way to execute the *block* of an anonymous method other than through evaluation and invocation of the *anonymous-method-expression* (§14.5.15.2).
- 5. The invocation list of a delegate produced from an *anonymous-method-expression* contains a single entry. The exact target object and target method of the delegate are unspecified (§14.5.15.4).
- 6. The exact timing of static field initialization (§17.4.5.1).
- 7. The behavior of uncaught exceptions that occur during finalizer execution (§23.3).
- 8. The attributes of a type declared in multiple parts are determined by combining, in an unspecified order, the attributes of each of its parts (§24.2).
- 9. The order in which members are packed into a struct (§27.5.8).
- 10. When an enumerator object is in the *running* state, the result of invoking **MoveNext** is unspecified (§26.2.1).
- 11. When an enumerator object is in the *before*, *running*, or *after* states, the result of accessing Current is unspecified (§26.2.2).
- 12. When an enumerator object is in the *running* state, the result of invoking **Di spose** is unspecified (§26.2.3).

#### **B.4 Other Issues**

- 1. The exact results of floating-point expression evaluation can vary from one implementation to another, because an implementation is permitted to evaluate such expressions using a greater range and/or precision than is required. (§11.1.6)
- 2. The CLI reserves certain signatures for compatibility with other programming languages. (§17.2.7)

# **Annex C. Naming guidelines**

#### This annex is informative.

Information on this topic can be found at the following location: http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpgenref/html/cpconnetframeworkdesignguidelines.asp

## **Annex D. Standard Library**

A conforming C# implementation shall provide a minimum set of types having specific semantics. These types and their members are listed here, in alphabetical order by namespace and type. For a formal definition of these types and their members, refer to ISO/IEC 23271:2005 Common Language Infrastructure (CLI), Partition IV; Base Class Library (BCL), Extended Numerics Library, and Extended Array Library, which are included by reference in this International Standard.

Type names beginning with System. are intended for use by the Standard Library: Such names not currently in use might be defined in a future version of this International Standard.

#### This text is informative.

The standard library is intended to be the minimum set of types and members required by a conforming C# implementation. As such, it contains only those members which are explicitly required by the C# language specification.

It is expected that a conforming C# implementation will supply a significantly more extensive library that enables useful programs to be written. For example, a conforming implementation might extend this library by

- Adding namespaces.
- Adding types.
- Adding members to non-interface types.
- Having struct and class types implement additional interfaces.
- Adding attributes (other than the Condi ti onal Attri bute) to existing types and members.

```
namespace System
{
    public class ApplicationException : Exception
    {
        public ApplicationException();
        public ApplicationException(string message);
        public ApplicationException(string message, Exception innerException);
    }
}
namespace System
{
    public class ArgumentException : SystemException
    {
        public ArgumentException();
        public ArgumentException(string message);
        public ArgumentException(string message, Exception innerException);
    }
}
```

```
namespace System
   public class ArithmeticException : SystemException
      public ArithmeticException();
      public ArithmeticException(string message);
      public ArithmeticException(string message, Exception innerException);
}
namespace System
   public abstract class Array : IList, ICollection, IEnumerable
      public int Length { get; }
      public int Rank { get; }
      public int GetLength(int dimension);
}
namespace System
{
   public class ArrayTypeMismatchException: SystemException
      public ArrayTypeMismatchException();
      public ArrayTypeMismatchException(string message);
      public ArrayTypeMismatchException(string message,
         Exception innerException);
   }
}
namespace System
   [Attri buteUsageAttri bute(Attri buteTargets. All, Inherited = true,
      AllowMultiple = false)]
   public abstract class Attribute
      protected Attribute();
}
namespace System
   public enum AttributeTargets
      Assembly = 1,
      Modul e = 2,
      Class = 4,
      Struct = 8,
      Enum = 16,
      Constructor = 32,
      Method = 64,
      Property = 128,
Fi el d = 256,
Event = 512,
      Interface = 1024,
      Parameter = 2048,
      Delegate = 4096,
      ReturnValue = 8192,
      Generic Parameter = 16384,
      All = 32767
   }
}
```

```
namespace System
   [AttributeUsageAttribute(AttributeTargets.Class, Inherited = true)]
   public sealed class AttributeUsageAttribute: Attribute
       public\ AttributeUsageAttribute(AttributeTargets\ validOn);
       public Attribute(sageAttribute(Attribute
public bool AllowMultiple { get; set; }
public bool Inherited { get; set; }
public AttributeTargets ValidOn { get; }
   }
}
namespace System
   public struct Boolean
}
namespace System
   public struct Byte
}
namespace System
   public struct Char
}
namespace System
   public struct Decimal
}
namespace System
   public abstract class Delegate
}
namespace System
   public\ class\ Di\,vi\,deByZeroException\ :\ ArithmeticException
       public DivideByZeroException();
       public DivideByZeroException(string message);
       public DivideByZeroException(string message, Exception innerException);
}
namespace System
   public struct Double
}
```

```
namespace System
   public abstract class Enum: ValueType
      protected Enum();
namespace System
   public class Exception
      public Exception();
      public Exception(string message);
public Exception(string message, Exception innerException);
      public sealed Exception InnerException { get; }
      public virtual string Message { get; }
   }
}
namespace System
   public interface IDisposable
      public void Dispose();
}
namespace System
   public\ sealed\ class\ Index Out Of Range Exception:\ System Exception
      public IndexOutOfRangeException();
      public IndexOutOfRangeException(string message);
      public IndexOutOfRangeException(string message,
         Exception innerException);
}
namespace System
   public struct Int16
}
namespace System
   public struct Int32
}
namespace System
   public struct Int64
}
namespace System
   public\ class\ Invalid Cast Exception:\ System Exception
      public InvalidCastException();
      public InvalidCastException(string message);
      public InvalidCastException(string message, Exception innerException);
```

```
namespace System
   public\ class\ Invalid Operation Exception\ :\ System Exception
      public InvalidOperationException();
      public InvalidOperationException(string message);
      public InvalidOperationException(string message,
         Exception innerException);
   }
}
namespace System
   public abstract class MemberInfo
      protected MemberInfo();
}
namespace System
{
   public class NotSupportedException: SystemException
      public NotSupportedException();
      public NotSupportedException(string message);
      public NotSupportedException(string message, Exception innerException);
}
namespace System
   public struct Nullable<T>
      public bool HasValue { get; }
      public T Value { get; }
}
namespace System
   public class NullReferenceException: SystemException
      public NullReferenceException();
      public NullReferenceException(string message);
public NullReferenceException(string message, Exception innerException);
   }
}
namespace System
   public class Object
      public Object();
      ~0bj ect();
      public virtual bool Equals(object obj);
      public virtual int GetHashCode();
      public Type GetType();
      public virtual string ToString();
   }
}
```

```
namespace System
   [Attri buteUsageAttri bute(Attri buteTargets. Class
            AttributeTargets.Struct
AttributeTargets.Enum | AttributeTargets.Interface
            AttributeTargets. Constructor | AttributeTargets. Method
            AttributeTargets. Property | AttributeTargets. Field
            AttributeTargets. Event | AttributeTargets. Del egate, Inherited = false)]
   public sealed class ObsoleteAttribute: Attribute
       public ObsoleteAttribute();
      public ObsoleteAttribute(string message);
      public ObsoleteAttribute(string message, bool error);
      public bool IsError { get; }
      public string Message { get; }
   }
}
namespace System
   public\ class\ 0 ut 0 f {\tt MemoryException}\ :\ System {\tt Exception}
      public OutOfMemoryException();
      public OutOfMemoryException(string message);
      public OutOfMemoryException(string message, Exception innerException);
   }
}
namespace System
   public class OverflowException: ArithmeticException
      public OverflowException();
      public OverflowException(string message);
      public OverflowException(string message, Exception innerException);
}
namespace System
   public struct SByte
}
namespace System
   public struct Single
}
namespace System
   public sealed class StackOverflowException: SystemException
      public StackOverflowException();
      public StackOverflowException(string message);
public StackOverflowException(string message, Exception innerException);
   }
}
```

```
namespace System
   public sealed class String: IEnumerable<Char>, IEnumerable
      public int Length { get; }
public char this[int index] { get; }
}
namespace System
   public class SystemException: Exception
      public SystemException();
      public SystemException(string message);
      public SystemException(string message, Exception innerException);
}
namespace System
   public abstract class Type : MemberInfo
}
namespace System
   public sealed class TypeInitializationException: SystemException
      public TypeInitializationException(string fullTypeName,
         Exception innerException);
}
namespace System
   public struct UInt16
}
namespace System
   public struct UInt32
}
namespace System
   public struct UInt64
}
namespace System
   public abstract class ValueType
      protected ValueType();
}
```

```
namespace System. Collections
   public interface ICollection: IEnumerable
       public int Count { get; }
public bool IsSynchronized { get; }
       public object SyncRoot { get; }
       public void CopyTo(Array array, int index);
}
namespace System. Collections
   public interface IEnumerable
       public IEnumerator GetEnumerator();
}
namespace System. Collections
   public interface IEnumerator
       public object Current { get; }
       public bool MoveNext();
       public void Reset();
}
namespace System. Collections
   public\ interface\ IList\ :\ ICollection,\ IEnumerable
       public bool IsFixedSize { get; }
public bool IsReadOnly { get; }
public object this[int index] { get; set; }
       public int Add(object value);
       public void Clear();
       public bool Contains(object value);
       public int IndexOf(object value);
public void Insert(int index, object value);
       public void Remove(object value);
       public void RemoveAt(int index);
   }
}
namespace System. Collections. Generic
   public\ interface\ ICollection < T>:\ IEnumerable < T>
       public int Count { get;
       public bool IsReadOnly { get; }
       public void Add(T item);
public void Clear();
       public bool Contains(T item);
       public void CopyTo(T[] array, int arrayIndex);
       public bool Remove(T item);
}
namespace System. Collections. Generic
   public interface IEnumerable<T> : IEnumerable
       public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator();
   }
}
```

```
namespace System. Collections. Generic
   public interface IEnumerator<T> : IDisposable, IEnumerator
       public T Current { get; }
}
namespace System. Collections. Generic
   public\ interface\ IList< T>:\ ICollection< T>
       public T this[int index] { get; set; }
public int IndexOf(T item);
public void Insert(int index, T item);
       public void RemoveAt(int index);
}
namespace System. Diagnostics
    [Attri\,bute Usage Attri\,bute (Attri\,bute Targets.\,Method
   | AttributeTargets.Class, AllowMultiple = true)]
public sealed class ConditionalAttribute : Attribute
       public ConditionalAttribute(string conditionString);
       public string ConditionString { get; }
}
namespace System. Threading
   public static class Monitor
       public static void Enter(object obj);
       public static void Exit(object obj);
}
```

# **Annex E. Documentation Comments**

#### This annex is informative.

C# provides a mechanism for programmers to document their code using a special comment syntax that contains XML text. Comments using such syntax are called *documentation comments*. The XML generation tool is called the *documentation generator*. (This generator could be, but need not be, the C# compiler itself.) The output produced by the documentation generator is called the *documentation file*. A documentation file is used as input to a *documentation viewer*; a tool intended to produce some sort of visual display of type information and its associated documentation.

A conforming C# compiler is not required to check the syntax of documentation comments; such comments are simply ordinary comments. A conforming compiler is permitted to do such checking, however.

This specification suggests a set of standard tags to be used in documentation comments. For C# implementations targeting the CLI, it also provides information about the documentation generator and the format of the documentation file. No information is provided about the documentation viewer.

#### **E.1 Introduction**

Comments having a special form can be used to direct a tool to produce XML from those comments and the source code elements, which they precede. Such comments are single-line comments of the form /// ... or delimited comments of the form /\*\* ... \*/. They must immediately precede a user-defined type (such as a class, delegate, or interface) or a member (such as a field, event, property, or method) that they annotate. Attribute sections are considered part of declarations, so documentation comments must precede attributes applied to a type or member.

# **Syntax:**

```
single-line-doc-comment::
/// input-characters<sub>opt</sub>

delimited-doc-comment::
/** delimited-comment-characters<sub>opt</sub> */
```

In a *single-line-doc-comment*, if there is a *whitespace* character following the /// characters on each of the *single-line-doc-comments* adjacent to the current *single-line-doc-comment*, then that *whitespace* character is not included in the XML output.

In a *delimited-doc-comment*, if the first non-whitespace character on the second line is an *asterisk* and the same pattern of optional *whitespace* characters and an *asterisk* character is repeated at the beginning of each of the lines within the *delimited-doc-comment*, then the characters of the repeated pattern are not included in the XML output. The pattern can include *whitespace* characters after, as well as before, the *asterisk* character.

```
/**
  * <remarks>
  * Class <c>Point</c> models a point in a two-dimensional plane.
  * </remarks>
  */
public class Point
{
    /// <remarks>Method <c>Draw</c> renders the point.</remarks>
    void Draw() { ... }
}
```

The text within documentation comments must be well formed according to the rules of XML (http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml). If the XML is ill formed, a warning is generated and the documentation file will contain a comment saying that an error was encountered.

Although developers are free to create their own set of tags, a recommended set is defined in §E.2. Some of the recommended tags have special meanings:

- The cref attribute can be attached to any tag to provide a reference to a code element. The documentation generator must verify that this code element exists. If the verification fails, the documentation generator issues a warning. When looking for a name described in a cref attribute, the documentation generator must respect namespace visibility according to usi ng statements appearing within the source code. For code elements that contain code that uses generics, the normal generics syntax, for instance Li st<T>, cannot be used because it produces invalid XML. Instead, curly braces can be used, such as <see cref="List{T}"/>, or the normal XML escape syntax &lt; and &gt; for instance as in List&lt; T&gt; . Members of generic types are referred to as List{T}. Add(T). The variable T in Add(T) is bound by the type parameter T in List{T}. Similarly, the parameter type T of the generic method Sort{T}(T[]) is bound by the type-parameter T. In general, a generic method in a generic class is referred to as C{S}. F{T}(S, List{T}, U), here the parameter S is bound by the type parameter of the class C{S} and the T in List{T} is bound by the type parameter of the generic method F{T}, the parameter type U is free.
- The <summary> tag is intended to be used by a documentation viewer to display additional information about a type or member.

Note carefully that the documentation file does not provide full information about the type and members (for example, it does not contain any type information). To get such information about a type or member, the documentation file must be used in conjunction with reflection on the runtime type or member.

#### E.2 Recommended tags

The documentation generator must accept and process any tag that is valid according to the rules of XML. The following tags provide commonly used functionality in user documentation. (Of course, other tags are possible.)

Tag	Reference	Purpose
<c></c>	§E.2.1	Set text in a code-like font
<code></code>	§E.2.2	Set one or more lines of source code or program output
<exampl e=""></exampl>	§E.2.3	Indicate an example
<exception></exception>	§E.2.4	Identifies the exceptions a method can throw
<li>st&gt;</li>	§E.2.5	Create a list or table
<para></para>	§E.2.6	Permit structure to be added to text
<pre><param/></pre>	§E.2.7	Describe a parameter for a method or constructor
<pre><paramref></paramref></pre>	§E.2.8	Identify that a word is a parameter name
<pre><permi on="" ssi=""></permi></pre>	§E.2.9	Document the security accessibility of a member
<remarks></remarks>	§E.2.10	Describe a type
<returns></returns>	§E.2.11	Describe the return value of a method
<see></see>	§E.2.12	Specify a link
<seeal so=""></seeal>	§E.2.13	Generate a See Also entry
<summary></summary>	§E.2.14	Describe a member of a type
<typeparam></typeparam>	§E.2.15	Describe a type parameter for a generic type or method
<typeparamref></typeparamref>	§E.2.16	Identify that a word is a type parameter name
<val ue=""></val>	§E.2.15	Describe a property

# E.2.1 <c>

This tag provides a mechanism to indicate that a fragment of text within a description should be set in a special font such as that used for a block of code. For lines of actual code, use <code> (§E.2.2).

# **Syntax:**

```
<c>text to be set like code</c>
```

# **Example:**

```
/// <remarks>
/// Class <c>Point</c> models a point in a two-dimensional plane.
/// </remarks>
public class Point
{
....
}
```

#### E.2.2 < code>

This tag is used to set one or more lines of source code or program output in some special font. For small code fragments in narrative, use  $\langle c \rangle$  (§E.2.1).

# **Syntax:**

```
<code>source code or program output</code>
```

```
/// <summary>
      Changes the Point's location by the given x- and y-offsets.
/// </summary>
/// <example>
      The following code: <code>
///
///
        Point p = new Point(3, 5);
///
        p. Transl ate(-1, 3);
///
      </code>
      results in < c > p < /c > 's having the value (2,8).
///
/// </example>
public void Translate(int xor, int yor) {
   X += xor;
   Y += yor;
```

#### E.2.3 <example>

This tag allows example code within a comment, to specify how a method or other library member might be used. Ordinarily, this would also involve use of the tag <code> (§E.2.2) as well.

#### **Syntax:**

```
<exampl e>description</exampl e>
```

#### **Example:**

See <code> (§E.2.2) for an example.

# E.2.4 <exception>

This tag provides a way to document the exceptions a method can throw.

#### **Syntax:**

```
<exception cref="member">description</exception>
where
    cref="member"
```

The name of a member. The documentation generator checks that the given member exists and translates *member* to the canonical element name in the documentation file.

#### description

A description of the circumstances in which the exception is thrown.

# **Example:**

```
public class DataBaseOperations
{
    /// <exception cref="MasterFileFormatCorruptException"></exception>
    /// <exception cref="MasterFileLockedOpenException"></exception>
    public static void ReadRecord(int flag) {
        if (flag == 1)
            throw new MasterFileFormatCorruptException();
        else if (flag == 2)
            throw new MasterFileLockedOpenException();
        // ...
    }
}
```

## E.2.5 < list>

This tag is used to create a list or table of items. It can contain a stheader> block to define the heading row of either a table or definition list. (When defining a table, only an entry for *term* in the heading need be supplied.)

Each item in the list is specified with an <i tem> block. When creating a definition list, both *term* and *description* must be specified. However, for a table, bulleted list, or numbered list, only *description* need be specified.

## **Syntax:**

```
<list type="style">
    stheader>
              <term>term</term>
              <descri pti on>descri pti on</descri pti on>
          <item>
              <term>term</term>
              <descri pti on>descri pti on</descri pti on>
          </item>
          <item>
             <term>term</term>
              <descri pti on>descri pti on</descri pti on>
          </item>
      where
   style
      The style of the list. Must be bullet, number, or table.
      The term to define, whose definition is in description.
   description
      Either an item in a bullet or numbered list, or the definition of a term
```

#### **Example:**

```
public class MyClass
       <remarks>
          Here is an example of a bulleted list: type="bullet">
   111
            <item⊳
   ///
               <description>First item. </description>
            </item>
   ///
            <item>
   ///
              <description>Second item. </description>
   ///
            </item>
          </list>
   ///
   /// </remarks>
   public static void Main () {
   }
}
```

#### E.2.6 <para>

This tag is for use inside other tags, such as <remarks> (§E.2.10) or <returns> (§E.2.11), and permits structure to be added to text.

#### **Syntax:**

```
<para>content</para>
where
  content
  The text of the paragraph.
```

```
/// <summary>
///
      <para>
111
        This is the entry point of the Point class testing program.
///
      </para>
///
      <para>
        This program tests each method and operator, and is intended
///
///
        to be run after any non-trvial maintenance has been performed
///
        on the Point class.
///
      </para>
/// </summary>
public static void Main() {
```

#### **E.2.7 < param >**

This tag is used to describe a parameter for a method, constructor, or indexer.

# **Syntax:**

```
<param name="name">description</param>
where
    name
    The name of the parameter.
    description
    A description of the parameter.
```

#### **Example:**

```
/// <summary>
/// This method changes the Point's location to the given coordinates.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="xor">The new x-coordinate.</param>
/// <param name="yor">The new y-coordinate.</param>
public void Move(int xor, int yor) {
    X = xor;
    Y = yor;
}
```

#### E.2.8 <paramref>

This tag is used to indicate that a word is a parameter. The documentation file can be processed to format this parameter in some distinct way.

# **Syntax:**

```
<paramref name="name"/>
where
    name
```

The name of the parameter.

```
/// <summary>
/// This constructor initializes the new Point to
/// (<paramref name="xor"/>, <paramref name="yor"/>).
/// </summary>
/// <param name="xor">The new Point's x-coordinate. </param>
/// <param name="yor">The new Point's y-coordinate. </param>
public Point(int xor, int yor) {
    X = xor;
    Y = yor;
}
```

#### E.2.9 <permission>

This tag allows the security accessibility of a member to be documented.

#### **Syntax:**

```
<permi ssi on cref="member">description</permi ssi on>
```

where

#### member

The name of a member. The documentation generator checks that the given code element exists and translates *member* to the canonical element name in the documentation file.

#### description

A description of the access to the member.

#### **Example:**

```
/// <permission cref="System. Security. PermissionSet">
/// Everyone can access this method.
/// </permission>
public static void Test() {
    ...
}
```

#### E.2.10 < remarks>

This tag is used to specify overview information about a type. Use **<summary>** (§E.2.14) to describe the members of a type.

#### **Syntax:**

```
<remarks>text</remarks>
```

where

text

The text of the remarks.

#### **Example:**

```
/// <remarks>
/// Class <c>Point</c> models a point in a two-dimensional plane.
/// </remarks>
public class Point
{
    ...
}
```

#### E.2.11 < returns>

This tag is used to describe the return value of a method.

#### **Syntax:**

```
<returns>description</returns>
```

where

```
description
```

A description of the return value.

```
/// <summary>
/// Report a Point's location as a string.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>
/// A string representing a Point's location, in the form (x, y),
/// without any leading, training, or embedded whitespace.
/// </returns>
public override string ToString() {
    return "(" + X + "," + Y + ")";
}
```

# E.2.12 <see>

This tag allows a link to be specified within text. Use **<seeal so>** (§E.2.13) to indicate text that is to appear in a *See Also* subclause.

#### **Syntax:**

where

```
<see cref="member"/>
```

member

The name of a member. The documentation generator checks that the given code element exists and passes *member* to the element name in the documentation file.

#### **Example:**

```
/// <summary>
/// This method changes the Point's location to the given coordinates.
/// Use the <see cref="Translate"/> method to apply a relative change.
/// </summary>
public void Move(int xor, int yor) {
    X = xor;
    Y = yor;
}

/// <summary>
    This method changes the Point's location by the given offsets.
/// Use the <see cref="Move"/> method to directly set the coordinates.
/// </summary>
public void Translate(int xor, int yor) {
    X += xor;
    Y += yor;
}
```

#### E.2.13 <seealso>

This tag allows an entry to be generated for the *See Also* subclause. Use <see> (§E.2.12) to specify a link from within text.

# **Syntax:**

```
<seeal so cref="member"/>
where
member
```

The name of a member. The documentation generator checks that the given code element exists and passes *member* to the element name in the documentation file.

```
/// <summary>
/// This method determines whether two
/// </summary>
/// <seeal so cref="operator =="/>
/// <seeal so cref="operator !="/>
public override bool Equals(object o) {
             This method determines whether two Points have the same location.
```

# E.2.14 <summary>

This tag can be used to describe a member for a type. Use < remarks > (§E.2.10) to describe the type itself.

This constructor initializes the new Point to (0,0).

#### **Syntax:**

```
<summary>description</summary>
where
   description
       A summary of the member.
Example:
       /// <summary>
/// This co
```

public Point(): this(0,0){

# E.2.15 <typeparam>

/// </summary>

This tag is used to describe a type parameter for a generic type or method.

#### Syntax:

```
<typeparam name="name">description</typeparam>
where
   name
      The name of the type parameter.
   description
      A description of the parameter.
```

#### **Example:**

```
/// <summary>
       This method creates a new array of arbitrary type.
/// </summary>
/// <typeparam name="T">The element type of the array</typeparam>
public static T[] MakeArray<T>(int n) {
   return new T[n];
```

# E.2.16 <typeparamref>

This tag is used to indicate that a word is a type parameter. The documentation file can be processed to format this parameter in some distinct way.

#### **Syntax:**

```
<typeparamref name="name"/>
where
   name
```

The name of the parameter.

#### **Example:**

```
/// <summary>
/// This method creates a new array of arbitrary type
/// <typeparamref name="T"/>
/// </summary>
/// <typeparam name="T">The element type of the array</typeparam>
public static T[] MakeArray<t>(int n) {
    return new T[n];
}
```

#### E.2.17 < value>

This tag allows a property to be described.

#### **Syntax:**

```
<value>property description</value>
```

where

```
property description
```

A description for the property.

#### **Example:**

```
/// <value>
/// The point's x-coordinate.
/// </value>
public int X
{
    get { return x; }
    set { x = value; }
}
```

# E.3 Processing the documentation file

The following information is intended for C# implementations targeting the CLI.

The documentation generator generates an ID string for each element in the source code that is tagged with a documentation comment. This ID string uniquely identifies a source element. A documentation viewer can use an ID string to identify the corresponding metadata/reflection item to which the documentation applies.

The documentation file is not a hierarchical representation of the source code; rather, it is a flat list with a generated ID string for each element.

#### E.3.1 ID string format

The documentation generator observes the following rules when it generates the ID strings:

- No white space is placed in the string.
- The first part of the string identifies the kind of member being documented, via a single character followed by a colon. The following kinds of members are defined:

Character	Description
Е	Event
F	Field
M	Method (including constructors, finalizers, and operators)
N	Namespace
P	Property (including indexers)
T	Type (such as class, delegate, enum, interface, and struct)
!	Error string; the rest of the string provides information about the error. For example, the documentation generator generates error information for links that cannot be resolved.

- The second part of the string is the fully qualified name of the element, starting at the root of the namespace. The name of the element, its enclosing type(s), and namespace are separated by periods. If the name of the item itself has periods, they are replaced by the NUMBER SIGN # (U+0023). (It is assumed that no element has this character in its name.)
- For methods and properties with arguments, the argument list follows, enclosed in parentheses. For those without arguments, the parentheses are omitted. The arguments are separated by commas. The encoding of each argument is the same as a CLI signature, as follows: Arguments are represented by their complete documentation name, which is based on their fully qualified name. For example, int becomes System. Int32, string becomes System. String, object becomes System. Object. and so on. Arguments that define generic type parameters have an appended grave accent character "`", followed by the number of type parameters; for example, C`1. For nested types, the number is based upon the of new type parameters on the nested type; for example, C`1. NestedC`2. Arguments having the out or ref modifier have an @ following their type name. Arguments passed by value or via params have no special notation. Arguments that are arrays are represented as [lowerbound: size, ... , lowerbound: size] where the number of commas is the rank less one, and the lower bounds and size of each dimension, if known, are represented in decimal. If a lower bound or size is not specified, it is omitted. If the lower bound and size for a particular dimension are omitted, the ": " is omitted as well. Jagged arrays are represented by one "[]" per level. Arguments that have pointer types other than void are represented using a \* following the type name. A void pointer is represented using a type name of System. Voi d. Arguments that refer to generic type parameters on types are encoded using a single grave accent character "" "followed by the zero-based index of the type parameter. Arguments that use generic parameters on methods use double grave accent characters "``" followed by the zero-based index of the type-parameter instead of the single grave accent used for parameters on types. Arguments that refer to constructed generic typs are encoded using the generic type followed by a comma-separated list of type arguments, enclosed by braces "{" and "}".

# E.3.2 ID string examples

The following examples each show a fragment of C# code, along with the ID string produced from each source element capable of having a documentation comment:

• Types are represented using their fully qualified name.

```
enum Color { Red, Blue, Green }
namespace Acme
{
  interface IProcess { ... }
  struct ValueType { ... }
  class Widget: IProcess
  {
    public class NestedClass { ... }
```

```
public interface IMenuItem { ... }
             public delegate void Del(int i);
             public enum Direction { North, South, East, West }
        }
        class MyList<T>
             class Helper<U, V>{ ... }
    }
    "T: Col or"
    "T: Acme. I Process"
    "T: Acme. Val ueType"
    "T: Acme. Wi dget
    "T: Acme. Wi dget. NestedCl ass"
"T: Acme. Wi dget. I MenuI tem"
    "T: Acme. Widget. Del"
    "T: Acme. Widget. Di rection"
"T: Acme. MyList`1"
"T: Acme. MyList`1. Helper`2"
Fields are represented by their fully qualified name.
    namespace Acme
        struct ValueType
             private int total;
        class Widget: IProcess
             public class NestedClass
                 private int value;
            private string message;
private static Color defaultColor;
private const double PI = 3.14159;
             protected readonly double monthly Average;
            pri vate long[] array1;
pri vate Widget[,] array2;
            private unsafe int *pCount;
private unsafe float **ppValues;
    }
    "F: Acme. Wi dget. NestedCl ass. value"
    "F: Acme. Widget. message"
    "F: Acme. Widget. defaultColor"
"F: Acme. Widget. PI"
    "F: Acme. Widget. monthly Average"
    "F: Acme. Wi dget. array1"
"F: Acme. Wi dget. array2"
    "F: Acme. Wi dget. pCount"
    "F: Acme. Wi dget. ppVal ues"
Constructors.
    namespace Acme
        class Widget: IProcess
             static Widget() { ... }
             public Widget() { ... }
```

```
public Widget(string s) { ... }
      }
      "M: Acme. Widget. #cctor"
      "M: Acme. Wi dget. #ctor'
      "M: Acme. Widget. #ctor(System. String)"
Finalizers.
      namespace Acme
            class Widget: IProcess
                  ~Widget() { ... }
      "M: Acme. Widget. Finalize"
Methods.
      namespace Acme
            struct ValueType
                  public void M(int i) { ... }
            class Widget: IProcess
                  public class NestedClass
                        public void M(int i) { ... }
                  public static void MO() { ... } public void M1(char c, out float f, ref ValueType v) { ... } public void M2(short[] x1, int[,] x2, long[][] x3) { ... } public void M3(long[][] x3, Widget[][,,] x4) { ... } public unsafe void M4(char *pc, Color **pf) { ... } public unsafe void M5(void *pv, double *[][,] pd) { ... } public void M6(int i, params object[] args) { ... }
            class MyList<T>
                  public void Test(T t) { ... }
            class UseList
                  }
      "M: Acme. ValueType. M(System. Int32)"
      "M: Acme. Widget. NestedClass. M(System. Int32)"
      "M: Acme. Widget. MO
      "M: Acme. Wi dget. M1 (System. Char, System. Si ngl e@, Acme. Val ueType@) "
     "M. Acme. Wi dget. MI (System. Char, System. Singlew, Acme. Valuelypew)

"M. Acme. Wi dget. M2 (System. Int16[], System. Int32[0:, 0:], System. Int64[][]) "

"M. Acme. Wi dget. M3 (System. Int64[][], Acme. Wi dget[0:, 0:, 0:][]) "

"M. Acme. Wi dget. M4 (System. Char*, Color**) "

"M. Acme. Wi dget. M5 (System. Void*, System. Double*[0:, 0:][]) "

"M. Acme. Wi dget. M6 (System. Int32, System. Object[]) "

"M. Acme. MyList`1. Test(`0)"

"M. Acme. MyList`2. Process(Acme. MyList(System. Int32))"
      "M: Acme. UseList. Process(Acme. MyList{System. Int32})"
"M: Acme. UseList. getValues`1(``0)"
```

Properties and indexers.

```
namespace Acme
       class Widget: IProcess
          public int Width {get { ... } set { ... }}
public int this[int i] {get { ... } set { ... }}
public int this[string s, int i] {get { ... } set { ... }}
   }
   "P: Acme. Widget. Width"
   "P: Acme. Widget. Item(System. Int32)"
   "P: Acme. Widget. Item (System. String, System. Int32)"
Events
   namespace Acme
       class Widget: IProcess
           public event Del AnEvent;
   "E: Acme. Widget. AnEvent"
Unary operators.
   namespace Acme
       class Widget: IProcess
           public static Widget operator+(Widget x) { ... }
   "M: Acme. Wi dget. op_UnaryPl us(Acme. Wi dget)"
   The complete set of unary operator function names used is as follows: op_UnaryPlus,
   op_UnaryNegation, op_Logical Not, op_OnesComplement, op_Increment,
   op_Decrement, op_True, and op_Fal se.
Binary operators.
   namespace Acme
       class Widget: IProcess
           public static Widget operator+(Widget x1, Widget x2) { return x1; }
       }
   "M: Acme. Wi dget. op_Addi ti on(Acme. Wi dget, Acme. Wi dget)"
   The complete set of binary operator function names used is as follows: op_Addi ti on,
   op_Subtracti on, op_Mul ti pl y, op_Di vi si on, op_Modul us, op_Bi twi seAnd,
   op BitwiseOr, op ExclusiveOr, op LeftShift, op RightShift, op Equality,
   op_I nequal i ty, op_LessThan, op_LessThan0rEqual, op_GreaterThan, and
   op_GreaterThanOrEqual.
Conversion operators have a trailing "~" followed by the return type.
   namespace Acme
       class Widget: IProcess
           public static explicit operator int(Widget x) { ... }
           public static implicit operator long(Widget x) { ... }
   }
```

```
"M: Acme. Wi dget. op_Explicit(Acme. Wi dget) ~System. I nt32"
"M: Acme. Wi dget. op_I mplicit(Acme. Wi dget) ~System. I nt64"
```

# E.4 An example

#### E.4.1 C# source code

The following example shows the source code of a Point class:

```
namespace Graphics
/// <remarks>
/// Class <c
/// </remarks>
      Class <c>Point</c> models a point in a two-dimensional plane.
public class Point
   /// <summary> /// Instance variable <c>x</c> represents the Point's x-coordinate.
   /// </summary>
   private int x;
    /// <summary>
   /// Instance
/// </summary>
          Instance variable <c>y</c> represents the Point's y-coordinate.
   private int y;
    /// <val ue>
   /// The Po /// </value>
           The Point's x-coordinate.
   public int X
       get { return x; }
       set \{ x = value; \}
   /// <value> /// The Point's y-coordinate.
    /// </value>
    public int Y
       get { return y; }
set { y = value; }
   }
   /// <summary>
           This constructor initializes the new Point to (0,0).
   /// </summary>
   public Point(): this(0,0) {}
           This constructor initializes the new Point to ((constructor initializes the new Point to ((paramref name="yor"/>).
   ///
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="xor">The new Point's x-coordinate. </param>
   /// /// coordinate. 
/// public Point(int xor, int yor) {
       x = xor;
       y = yor;
   }
    /// <summary>
           This method changes the point's location to the given
           coordinates.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="xor">The new x-coordinate. </param>
/// <param name="yor">The new y-coordinate. </param>
/// <seeal so cref="Translate"/>
   public void Move(int xor, int yor) {
       x = xor;
       y = yor;
   }
```

```
/// <summary>
                 This method changes the point's location by the given
///
///
                 x- and y-offsets.
/// </summary>
/// <example>
///
                 The following code:
///
                 <code>
///
                       Point p = new Point(3, 5);
p. Translate(-1, 3);
///
///
                 </code>
///
                 results in \langle c \rangle p \langle c \rangle's having the value (2, 8).
/// </example>
/// <param name="xor">The relative x-offset.</param>
/// <param name="yor">The relative y-offset.</param>
/// <seealso cref="Move"/>
public void Translate(int xor, int yor) {
        x += xor;
        y += yor;
}
/// <summary>
                 This method determines whether two Points have the same
///
///
                 location.
/// </summary>
/// /// sparam name="o">
/// The object to be a continuous co
                 The object to be compared to the current object.
/// </param>
/// <returns>
/// True if
                 True if the Points have the same location; otherwise, false.
/// </returns>
/// <seeal so cref="operator =="/>
/// <seeal so cref="operator !="/>
public override bool Equals(object o) {
        Point p = o as Point;
        if (p == null) return false;
        return x == p. x \&\& y == p. y;
/// <summary>
            Computes the hash code for a Point.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>
                 A hash code computed from the x and y coordinates.
/// </returns>
public override int GetHashCode() {
        return x ^ y;
/// <summary>
                 Report a point's location as a string.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>
///
                 A string representing a point's location, in the form (x, y),
                 without any leading, training, or embedded whitespace.
/// </returns>
public override string ToString() {
   return "(" + x + ", " + y + ")";
```

```
/// <summary>
           This operator determines whether two Points have the same
    ///
           location.
    /// </summary>
   /// <param name="p1">The first Point to be compared. </param>
/// <param name="p2">The second Point to be compared. </param>
    /// <returns>
           True if the Points have the same location; otherwise, false.
    ///
    /// </returns>
   /// <seeal so cref="Equals"/>
/// <seeal so cref="operator !="/>
    public static bool operator ==(Point p1, Point p2) {
       if ((object)p1 == null \mid | (object)p2 == null) return false; return p1. x == p2. x && p1. y == p2. y;
   }
   /// <summary>
           This operator determines whether two Points have the same
           l ocati on.
    /// </summary>
   /// <param name="p1">The first Point to be compared. </param> /// <param name="p2">The second Point to be compared. </param>
    /// <returns>
           True if the Points do not have the same location;
           otherwise, false.
    ///
    /// </returns>
   /// <seeal so cref="Equals"/>
/// <seeal so cref="operator =="/>
public static bool operator !=(Point p1, Point p2) {
       return !(p1 == p2);
   }
    /// <summary>
   ///
           <para>
    111
              This is the entry point of the Point class testing program.
    ///
           </para>
    ///
           <para>
    ///
              This program tests each method and operator, and is intended
    ///
              to be run after any non-trvial maintenance has been performed
    ///
              on the Point class.
    ///
           </para>
    /// </summary>
   public static void Main() {
       // class test code goes here
}
}
```

# E.4.2 Resulting XML

Here is the output produced by one documentation generator when given the source code for class **Poi** nt, shown above:

```
<summary>
       Instance variable <c>y</c> represents the Point's y-coordinate.
     </summary>
    </member>
   <member name="M: Graphics. Point. #ctor">
     <summary>
       This constructor initializes the new Point to (0,0).
     </summary>
    </member>
    <member name="M: Graphics. Point. #ctor(System. Int32, System. Int32)">
      <summary>
       This constructor initializes the new Point to
        (<paramref name="xor"/>, <paramref name="yor"/>).
     </summary>
     <param name="xor">The new Point's x-coordinate.
     </member>
    <member name="M: Graphics. Point. Move(System. Int32, System. Int32)">
     <summary>
       This method changes the point's location to the given
       coordinates.
     </summary>
     </member>
    <member name="M: Graphi cs. Point. Transl ate(System. Int32, System. Int32)">
     <summary>
       This method changes the point's location by the given
       x- and y-offsets.
     </summary>
     <example>
       The following code:
       <code>
         Point p = new Point(3, 5);
p. Transl ate(-1, 3);
       </code>
       results in \langle c \rangle p \langle c \rangle's having the value (2, 8).
     </example>
     </member>
    <member name="M: Graphics. Point. Equals(System. Object)">
     <summary>
       This method determines whether two Points have the same
       location.
     </summary>
     <param name="o">
       The object to be compared to the current object.
     </param>
     <returns>
       True if the Points have the same location; otherwise, false.
     </returns>
      <seeal so
cref="M: Graphi cs. Point. op Equal i ty(Graphi cs. Point, Graphi cs. Point)"/>
      <seeal so
cref="M: Graphi cs. Poi nt. op_I nequal i ty(Graphi cs. Poi nt, Graphi cs. Poi nt) "/>
   </member>
    <member name="M: Graphi cs. Poi nt. GetHashCode">
     <summary>
       Computes the hash code for a Point.
     </summary>
     <returns>
       A hash code computed from the x and y coordinates.
   </member>
    <member name="M: Graphi cs. Poi nt. ToStri ng">
     <summary>
```

```
Report a point's location as a string.
       </summary>
       <returns>
         A string representing a point's location, in the form (x, y),
         without any leading, training, or embedded whitespace.
    </member>
    <member name="M: Graphi cs. Poi nt. op_Equal i ty(Graphi cs. Poi nt, Graphi cs. Poi nt)">
       <summary>
         This operator determines whether two Points have the same
         location.
       </summary>
       <param name="p1">The first Point to be compared.</param>
<param name="p2">The second Point to be compared.</param></param>
         True if the Points have the same location; otherwise, false.
       </returns>
       <seeal so cref="M: Graphi cs. Poi nt. Equal s(System. Obj ect) "/>
       <seeal so
cref="M: Graphi cs. Poi nt. op_I nequal i ty(Graphi cs. Poi nt, Graphi cs. Poi nt) "/>
    </member>
    <member
name="M: Graphi cs. Poi nt. op_I nequal i ty(Graphi cs. Poi nt, Graphi cs. Poi nt)">
       <summarv>
         This operator determines whether two Points have the same
         location.
       </summary>
       <param name="p1">The first Point to be compared. </param>
<param name="p2">The second Point to be compared. </param></param>
       <returns>
         True if the Points do not have the same location;
         otherwise, false.
       </returns>
       <seeal so cref="M: Graphics. Point. Equal s(System. Object)"/>
       <seeal so
cref="M: Graphi cs. Point. op Equal i ty(Graphi cs. Point, Graphi cs. Point)"/>
    </member>
    <member name="M: Graphi cs. Poi nt. Mai n">
       <summary>
         <para>
            This is the entry point of the Point class testing program.
         </para>
         <para>
           This program tests each method and operator, and is intended
           to be run after any non-trvial maintenance has been performed
           on the Point class.
         </para>
       </summary>
    </member>
    <member name="P: Graphics. Point. X">
       <val ue>
         The Point's x-coordinate.
       </val ue>
    </member>
    <member name="P: Graphics. Point. Y">
       <val ue>
         The Point's y-coordinate.
       </value>
     </member>
  </members>
</doc>
```

End of informative text.

# **Annex F. Bibliography**

# This annex is informative.

ANSI X3.274-1996, *Programming Language REXX*. (This document is useful in understanding floating-point decimal arithmetic rules.)

ISO 31-0:1992, Annex B (informative), *Guide to the rounding of numbers* (This document defines "banker's rounding.")

ISO/IEC 9899:1999, *Programming languages — C*.

ISO/IEC 14882:2003 *Programming languages* — *C*++.

# End of informative text.

# **Annex G. Index**

_	base class
binary202	base interface
unary <b>194</b>	?: 217
	?? <b>216</b>
pointer and435	@ identifier prefix71
postfix <b>175</b>	@ verbatim string prefix75
prefix <b>195</b>	
! 195	array element access173
!=205	base access
# See pre-processing directive, format of	element access173
% 199	indexer access173
%= <b>220</b>	overloading element accessSee indexer
&	pointer element access
binary213	\u See escape sequence, Unicode
unary	\USee escape sequence, Unicode
&& <b>215</b>	^ 213
& versus215	^=220
&=220	213
()	215
cast operator	versus
grouping parentheses. See precedence, grouping	= <b>220</b>
parentheses and	~ 195
method call operator171	+
*	binary200
binary <b>197</b>	unary 194
unary	++
*=220	pointer and435
/ 198	postfix 175
/* */See comment, delimited	prefix195
// See comment, single-line	+=220
/// See documentation comment	event handler addition
/= 220	< 205
:	<< 204

<<=220	protected internalSee protected internal
<=205	public
= 218	restrictions on90
-=	struct member91
event handler removal36	accessibility domain91
-=220	accessor149
-=	event312
event handler removal221	add . 312, See also +=, event handler addition
-= event handler removal308	remove <b>312</b> , <i>See also</i> –=, event handler removal
==205	indexer
> 205	get315, 346
-> <b>432</b>	set315, 346
>=205	interface346
>>204	property299, <b>30</b> 0
arithmetic	get300
logical	side-effects in a304
>>=	set300
0x integer literal prefix	address
0X integer literal prefix	address-of operator See &, unary
abstract	analysis
class and	lexical66
event and	static flow
indexer and	application7
method and	application domain7
property and300	application entry point85
accessibility	application parameter85
class member	application startup85
compilation unit type91	application termination86
constraints on94	exit status code86
enumeration member	finalizers and86
interface member91	static variable and119
internal	ApplicationException369
Main 's	argument7
namespace type91	argument list
private	ArrayTypeMismatchException and 161
protected	expression evaluation order160
protected	method call 171

overload resolution and161	compound	218, <b>220</b>
variable lengthSee parameter array	overloading	152
ArithmeticException371	definite	122
integer division and198, 199, 200, 473	try and	127
array	when required	122
array of20, <b>179</b>	event	218
base type of an338	simple	122, 218
creation of an See new, array creation	associativity	28, <b>151</b>
dimension of an21, <b>178</b>	grouping parentheses and	28, <b>151</b>
length of a337	atomicity	133
element120	attribute51, <b>37</b>	3, See also Attribute
definite assignment and120	class naming convention	373
life of an120	compilation of an	380
type of an337	delegate	377
element access in an173	event	378
initializer for an20, <b>340</b>	add accessor	378
jagged See array, array of	remove accessor	378
multi-dimensional20	instance of an	380
rank of an20, <b>178</b> , <b>337</b>	method	377
rectangular21	name of an	376
single-dimensional20	property	
subscript	get accessor	377
types permitted in an173	set accessor	377
subscripting See also array, element access in	reserved	381
an	specification of an	375
Array90, 140, 338	Attribute	373
conversion to136	attribute class	373
members of <b>90</b> , 338	multi-use	374
array covariance	parameter	
array element337	named	374
ArrayTypeMismatchException	positional	374
argument list and160, 161	single-use	374
array covariance and339	attribute section	375
simple assignment and218, 219	Attribute suffix	378
as 205, <b>212</b>	attribute target	377
cast versus	assembly	
assembly7, 46, 251	event	
assignment		

field377	duplicate local variables in a	96
method377	simple name in a	168
param377	try	244
property377	bool17, 109, <b>112</b> , See also B	oolean
return377	Boolean	109
type377	boxing2	2, 114
AttributeUsage See AttributeUsageAttribute	break 3	0, <b>240</b>
AttributeUsageAttribute373, <b>382</b>	do/while and	235
banker's rounding112, <b>507</b>	finally and	240
base175	for and	236
. and175	inside nested iteration statements	240
[] and <b>175</b>	reachability and	240
access member of175	target of	240
constructor call	while and	235
explicit322	byte17, 109, <b>110</b> , See als	o Byte
implicit322	Byte	109
base class	<c></c>	489
base interface	C standard	507
behavior7	C++ standard	507
implementation-defined7	case	231
documenting4	gotoSee got	to case
summary of all473	case label	232
undefined7	null as a	234
unspecified7	cast19, 13	8, <b>196</b>
summary of all474	as versus	212
#define <b>80</b>	redundant	138
block29, <b>227</b>	catch	244
catch244	general	244
declaration in a227	char 17, 109, <b>110</b> , See also	o Char
declaration space of aSee declaration space, block and	integer literal and	
empty227	character	109
exiting a239		67
finally239, 240, 241, 242, <b>244</b>	carriage return	
exception thrown from246	encoding of	
iterator415	form feed	
nested	horizontal tab	
duplicate labels in a87	line feed	6/

line separator67	initialization of a284
null439	initialization of a40
paragraph separator67	interface implementations and a267
Unicode class Zs69	member89
Unicode escape sequence69	accessibility of a259, 272
vertical tab69	constant
checked111	constructor
constant expression and222	instanceSee constructor, instance
explicit numeric conversion and139	static
integer addition and201	eventSee even
integer division and198	fieldSee field
integer multiplication and197	finalizerSee finalize
integer subtraction and202	hiding a271
operator184	indexerSee indexe
shift operations and205	instance
statement31, <b>246</b>	methodSee method
checked operator versus246	operator
unary minus and194	property
class	static
abstract42, <b>264</b>	typeSee type
attribute	members
base113, <b>266</b>	nested263
direct	non-abstract
accessibility of a266	permitted modifiers on a263
classes which cannot be a266	sealed <b>264</b> , 267
type accessibility94	static42, 264
circular dependence	overloading in391
Console	struct versus
declaration of87	assignment
declaration space of aSee declaration space, class and	boxing and unboxing334
generic	constructors335
members of	default values
	field initializers
nested type in	finalizers
operator and 392	inheritance
overriding and	meaning of this334
static constructor in	static constructors
static field in <b>389</b>	

value semantics332	readonly versus2	78, <b>281</b>
class declaration	restrictions on type of a	278
generic387	type accessibility of a	94
class library7	versioning of a	281
CLIxix, 15	constant expression	
CLS11	default integral overflow checking	185
<code>489</code>	constant folding	110
collection	constraint	54, 405
enumerating elements in a See foreach	class	406
comment67, 69	constructor	55, <b>406</b>
delimited67	interface	406
documentation See documentation comment	constructor	
single-line68	execution	
Common Language InfrastructureSee CLI	semantics of	323
Common Language SpecificationSee CLS	instance	39, <b>321</b>
compilation unit251	accessibility of a	321
attributes of a251	default	324
interdependency of251	initializer and	322
type accessibility and259	private	325
ConditionalSee ConditionalAttribute	invocation of a	159
conditional compilation	overloading of a	95
ConditionalAttribute	parameterless	
conditional compilation symbol	struct and	335
defining a	signature of a	95
scope of a	static	40, <b>326</b>
undefining a	struct	
Conditional Attribute	this in a	335
conformance3	value type	108
Console	continue	30, <b>241</b>
const	do/while and	235
constant	finally and	241
accessibility of a278	for and	236
initializer for a278	inside nested iteration statements	241
interdependency of279	reachability and	
local29	target of	
declaration of229	while and	
scope of <b>230</b> , 234	conversion	
named See enum		

anonymous method145	evaluation of a143
better163	worse
boxing114, 137	conversion operatorSee operator, conversion
explicit19, <b>13</b> 8	creation of an instance See new, object creation
enumeration140	cref
numeric138	Current
reference140	d real literal suffix73
standard142	D real literal suffix
user-defined142	decimal17, 109, <b>111</b> , <i>See also</i> Decimal
using a cast196	Decimal
using as212	declaration86
identity	
implicit	typeSee type, declaration of a
constant expression138	declaration space
constant int to byte138	_
constant int to sbyte138	
constant int to short	
constant int to ushort138	_
decimal to/from floating-point112	for statement and87
enumeration136	
numeric135	
pre-defined and exceptions135	C
reference	
standard142	
to/from char110, 136	
user-defined	
zero to enumeration	
lifted62, 148	
method group146	
null propagating form of62	-
nullable	
standard142	•
to/from bool112	e e
unboxing115, 141	
incompatible type and116	
null and	
user-defined	

definitions7	<pre><para>See <para></para></para></pre>
delegate 17, 36, 45, 363, See also Delegate, See	<pre><param/>See <param/></pre>
also Delegate	<pre><paramref>See <paramref></paramref></paramref></pre>
accessibility of a	<pre><permission>See <permission></permission></permission></pre>
combination of a202	<remarks></remarks>
creation of a See new, delegate creation	<returns></returns>
equality ofSee operator, equality, delegate	<see></see>
invocation of a	<seealso>See <seealso></seealso></seealso>
removal of a203	<summary>See <summary></summary></summary>
sealedness of a	<typeparam></typeparam>
Delegate45, 90, 140, 363	<typeparamref>See <typeparamref></typeparamref></typeparamref>
conversion to136	<value>See <value></value></value>
members of90	cref
delegate declaration	documentation file487
generic	ID string <b>49</b> 6
derived class	processing of
design goalsxix	documentation generator487
destructor	documentation viewer
diagnostic message7	double
Dispose	precision111
DivideByZeroException369	range111
decimal division199	Double
decimal remainder and200	element access
integer division and198	#elif80
integer remainder and199	#else
do/while30, <b>235</b>	else
break and235	#endif
continue and235	#endregion
reachability and235	enum17, 46, <b>359</b> , <i>See also</i> Enum
documentation comment487	accessibility and
recommended tags in488	declaration of an
XML output from503	declaration of an See declaration space.
documentation comment tag	enumeration
<c>See <c></c></c>	member
<code>See <code></code></code>	initialization of an360
<example>See <example></example></example>	value of an360
<exception>See <exception></exception></exception>	members of an89
<li>See <list></list></li>	permitted operations on an362

underlying type of an359	interface and346
value of an	override313
Enum	sealed
enumerable object418	static313
enumerator object416	type accessibility of an94
states of an417	virtual313
#error	event access expression See expression, event
error	access
compile-time7	<example>490</example>
escape sequence	examples
alert75	<exception>490</exception>
backslash75	exception7, 369, See also Exception
backspace	catching from other languages See catching general
carriage return75	handling of an
double quote75	propagation of an
form feed <b>75</b>	rethrow an See throw, with no expression
hexadecimal74	types thrown by certain C# operations 370
regular string literal and75	Exception
verbatim string literal and75	catch and
horizontal tab75	throw and
list of75	Exception.Exception
new line75	Exception.InnerException
null75	Exception.Message
simple	Execution Order 105
regular string literal and75	expanded form See function member, applicable,
verbatim string literal and75	expanded form
single quote75	explicit320
Unicode <b>69</b> , 70	expression149
vertical tab75	array creationSee new, array creation
event36, <b>307</b>	Boolean222
abstract313	constant221
accessibility of a308	default value187
accessing an158	delegate creation See new, delegate creation
external308	event access
handler307	indexer access149
inhibiting overriding of an313	invocation171
instance	kinds of149

method group149	instance variable and119
namespace	invocation of a328
nothing149	struct and
object creationSee new, object creation	finally
parenthesized168	break and240
primary165	continue and
property access149	goto and242
type <b>149</b>	jump statement and
value149	return and
value of an150	financial calculations See decima
variable <b>149</b>	float17, 109, <b>111</b> , See also Single
extensions3	precision111
documenting4	range111
extern297	for
event and308	break and236
indexer and314	continue and
property and299, <b>300</b>	reachability and236
f real literal suffix73	for condition236
F real literal suffix73	for initializer236
false72, 112	for iterator
field23, 33, <b>279</b>	for statement
accessibility of a280	declaration space of a See declaration space, for
initialization of a283	statement and
initializer for a280	foreach
instance	foreach statement
initialization of an285	declaration space of a See declaration space foreach statement and
public	function member
property versus302	applicable
readonly33	expanded form
versioning of a281	normal form
static	better
initialization of a284	invocation of a
type accessibility of a94	naming restrictions on a270
volatile	function pointer
finalization	garbage collection
suppression of86	finalizer call and
finalizer40, <b>327</b>	fixed variables and

movable variables and430	IEnumerator
pointer tracking and428	IEnumerator.Reset
garbage collector103	IEnumerator <t>59, 416</t>
generic method	#if <b>80</b>
generics	if/else
get accessor35	reachability and231
attribute property377	implementation8
indexer315, 346	conforming3
property300	implicit320
GetEnumerator419	indexer
global <b>260</b>	accessibility of an
global nameSee declaration space, global	accessing an
goto29, <b>241</b>	interface and346
finally and242	output parameter and160
label and	overloading of an95
reachability and242	property versus315
target of241	reference parameter and160
goto case233, 234, <b>241</b>	signature of an95
goto default233, 234, <b>241</b>	type accessibility of an94
grammar65	indexer access
lexical <b>9</b> , 65	indexer access expression. See expression, indexer
syntactic9, 65	access
grammar ambiguities66	IndexOutOfRangeException
HasValue	array access and
ICloneable136	infinity
conversion to136	negative111
identifier	positive111
beginning with two underscores71	informative text
verbatim71	inheritance
IDisposable247	initializer
IECSee International Electrotechnical Commission	array
IEC 60559 standard5	local
IEEESee Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers	constructor
IEEE 754 standard See IEC 60559 standard	instance
IEnumerable59, 416	static
IEnumerable <t>59, 416</t>	field

fixed pointer437	generic394
for <b>236</b>	internal
stack allocation439	International Electrotechnical Commission 11
struct	International Organization for Standardization . 11
variable	InvalidCastException
instance322	explicit reference conversion
local229	unboxing and116
static326	InvalidOperationException 116, 122, 147
initially assigned See variable, initially assigned	is 115, 205, <b>211</b>
initially unassignedSee variable, initially unassigned	ISOSee International Organization for Standardization
instance	ISO/IEC 10646
absence of	iterator
Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers11	possible implementation of419
int	keyword 69, <b>71</b>
Int16109	use as an identifier71
Int3218, 109	1 integer literal suffix72
Int64109	L integer literal suffix72
interface	label
abstract class and	declaration of a87
accessibility of an	goto and
base	scope of a228
type accessibility94	library
declaration of87	#line83
declaration space of aSee declaration space, interface	line terminator
implementation of an349	literal
inheritance and354	Boolean
mapping to an351	character
member90, 345	decimal
accessibility of an345	floating-point
event346	integer
indexer346	decimal
method346	hexadecimal
property346	type of an
name of an	null
re-implementation of an356	real
interface declaration	string
	ouring

duplicate memory sharing <b>76</b>	accessibility of a286
regular75	anonymous56, 187
verbatim <b>75</b>	block
lock31, <b>247</b>	evaluation of191
long 17, 109, <b>110</b> , See also Int64	outer variables188
lu integer literal suffix72	possible implementation of
lU integer literal suffix72	signature
Lu integer literal suffix72	calling a 171
LU integer literal suffix <b>72</b>	conditional See Conditional Attribute
lvalueSee variable reference	external297
m real literal suffix73	generic
M real literal suffix73	inhibiting overriding of a See sealed, method
Main	instance
accessibility of85	invocation of a
command-line arguments and85	non-void
optional parameter in85	overloading of a
overloading of85	overridden base
recognized signatures for85	override
return type int86	overriding
return type void86	sealed296
selecting from multiple <b>85</b>	signature of a
member	static
nested91	virtual
overloading of a	void <b>286</b> , 298
scope of a	return and242
top-level <b>91</b>	method group expression See expression, method
unsafe	group
member access	modifier
member lookup	? 62
member name	abstract
form of a <b>89</b>	default See modifier, none
forward reference97	extern
memory management103	internal See internal
automatic25	newSee new
direct25, 440	none90
method	outSee out
abstract	override
	paramsSee parameter array

partialSee partial	NaN111
private	nested member
protected	nested scope
protected internalSee protected internal	new176
public	array creation
readonlySee readonly	class member hiding and272
refSee ref	delegate creation
sealed	dimension length evaluation order178
staticSee static	object creation176
virtualSee virtual	value type and109
volatileSee volatile	new, array creation21
monetary calculationsSee decimal	normal form See function member, applicable,
MoveNext417	normal form
mutex	normative text
mutual exclusion lock See lock	conditionally <b>3</b> , 13
name	Not-a-Number See NaN
hiding96, 98	notes
via inheritance99	nothing expression See expression, nothing
via nesting98	null
qualified <b>100</b>	representation of
fully	NullReferenceException
simple	array access and
visibility of a98	delegate creation and180, 181
namespace <b>8</b> , 15, 46, 86, <b>90</b> , <b>251</b>	delegate invocation and
accessibilitySee accessibility, namespace	foreach and
alias for a	function member
declaration of a251	invocation and165
global251, 252	throw null and
import members from a257	unboxing and116
members of a	object17, 22, 89, 90, <b>107</b> , 113, See also Object
modifiers and	aliasing of 107
name	as a direct base class
form of a252	conversion of value type to137
nested	conversion to136
	conversion to value type141
type accessibility and259	inaccessible103
•	live 103
namespace expression. See expression, namespace	Object90, 113

members of90	See
object creationSee new, object creation	= <i>See</i>  =
ObsoleteSee ObsoleteAttribute	~ See ~
ObsoleteAttribute385	+
operand	binary See +, binary
mixing decimal and floating-point112	unary See +, unary
operator27, 37, 38, 69, <b>77</b> , <b>150</b> , 151, <b>317</b>	++
binarySee -, binary	postfix See ++, postfix
unarySee -, unary	prefixSee ++, prefix
	+= <i>See</i> +=
postfix	< See <
prefix	<< <i>See</i> <<
! See !	<<=See <<=
!= <i>See</i> !=	<= <i>See</i> <=
% See %	= <i>See</i> =
%=See %=	-= <i>See</i> -=
&	== <i>See</i> ==
binarySee &:binary	> See >
unarySee &, unary	->See ->
&&See &&	>= <i>See</i> >=
&=See &=	>> <i>See</i> >>
()	>>=See >>=
castSee (), cast operator	address-of See &, unary
method callSee (), method call operator	arithmetic
*	as See as
binary	assignment
unarySee *, unary	associativity of an
*=See *=	binary
. See .	integral types and110
/ See /	overload resolution
/= See /=	overloadable
?: See ?:	bitwise complement
[] See []	cast
pointer element accessSee [], pointer element	overloading See conversion, user-defined
access	checked
^ See ^	comparison
^=See ^=	decimal207
See	

enumeration	typeof
floating-point207	unary
integer206	integer types and110
conditional	overload resolution
conversion142, <b>320</b>	overloadable
equality	overloading
Boolean208	unchecked
delegate210	user-defined
string210	output parameter and160
external318	reference parameter and160
floating-point	order of declarations See declaration, order of
exceptions and111	order of evaluation
integral overflow checking and185	argument list expressions160
invocation of an159	operands in an expression150
is 115, <i>See</i> is	operators See operator, order of evaluation of
lifted62, 155	out24, 120, <b>160</b> , 289
logical213	signature and95
Boolean214	OutOfMemoryException
conditional215	array creation and179
Boolean215	delegate creation and 180, 181
user-defined216	object creation and177, 178
enumeration214	string concatenation and
integer213	output
newSee new	formatted17
null coalescing63, <b>216</b>	overflow20
order of evaluation of150	checking of integer111, <b>184</b> , <b>246</b>
overloading an18	pointer increment or decrement 435, 473
restrictions on152	OverflowException
overloading of an95, 150, 151	array creation and178
restrictions on152	checked operator and 185, 186
overloadingan317	decimal addition and201
precedence of	decimal and112
relational205	decimal division199
shift204	decimal subtraction and
signature of an95	explicit numeric conversion and 139, 140
sizeof See sizeof	integer addition and201
ternary150	integer subtraction and

integral types and111	permitted operations on a	429
multiplication and197, 198	referent type of a	428
unary minus and194	string	
overload resolution158, 161	writing through a	439
overloading95	type of a	427
override165, <b>294</b>	#pragma	84
base access and175	precedence	27, <b>150</b>
<pre><para>491</para></pre>	grouping parentheses and	151
<pre><param/>492</pre>	precedence table	150
parameter	pre-processing declaration	79
output24, <b>120</b> , 122, <b>160</b> , <b>289</b>	permitted placement of	79
definite assignment and120	pre-processing directive	67
this as an121	#define	See #define
reference23, <b>120</b> , 122, <b>160</b> , <b>288</b>	#elif	<i>See</i> #elif
definite assignment and120	#else	See #else
this as a120	#endif	See #endif
type accessibility of a94	#endregion	See #endregion
value23, <b>120</b> , <b>160</b> , <b>288</b>	#error	See #error
definite assignment and120	#if	See #if
life of a120	#line	See #line
parameter array24, <b>160</b> , <b>290</b>	#pragma	See #pragma
signature and95	#region	See #region
type parameter and391	#undef	See #undef
<pre><paramref></paramref></pre>	#warning	See #warning
params24, 290, See parameter array	conditional compilation	80
partial43, 263, <b>268</b> , 331, 343	nesting of	81
<pre><permission>493</permission></pre>	ordering of in a set	81
pointer	format of	77
address difference of	pre-processing expression	78
arithmetic and	evaluation rules	79
comparison of436	grouping parentheses in	78
decrementing a435	operators permitted in	78
fixed	private	31, <b>90</b> , 91, 92
initializer437	production	9
incrementing a435	program	8, 65, 251
indirection of a432	conforming	4
member access via a432	strictly conforming	3

valid <b>8</b>	readonly
program entry point15	constant versus
program instantiation8	recommended practice
programming language	ref23, 120, 160, 288
interfacing with another71	signature and95
promotion	reference
numeric	reference parameter See parameter, reference
binary154	#region
unary154	region
property35, <b>299</b>	<remarks></remarks>
abstract306	reserved word
accessibility of a299	Reset
accessing a158	resource
external299	disposal of a247
indexer versus315	return
inhibiting overriding of a306	finally and242
inlining possibilities of303	from void Main86
instance300	reachability and
interface and346	with expression242
output parameter and160	with no expression242
override <b>306</b>	return type
public field versus302	type accessibility of a94
read-only301	<returns></returns>
read-write301	sbyte 17, 109, <b>110</b> , <i>See also</i> SByte
reference parameter and160	SByte 109
sealed306	scope96
static300	class member96
type accessibility of a94	enum member96
virtual306	inner96
write-only301	label97
property access expression See expression,	local variable97
property access	local variable in for97
protected31, <b>90</b> , 91, 92, 93	namespace member96
protected internal31, <b>90</b> , 91, 92, 93	nested
public31, <b>90</b> , 91, 92	parameter
punctuator	struct member96
qualified alias member	using name96
reachability225	5

sealed	declaration228
abstract class and264	do/whileSee do/while
class and264	embedded225
event and308	empty
indexer and314	end point of225
method and296	reachability of226
property and299	expression230
string types and113	forSee for
value types and108	foreach
<see></see>	gotoSee goto
<seealso></seealso>	if/else
set accessor35	iteration234
attribute property377	jump239
indexer315, 346	target of a239
property300	try statement and239
short 17, 109, <b>110</b> , <i>See also</i> Int16	labeled228
side effect105	lockSee lock
signature95	reachable225
Single109	return
sizeof150, <b>184</b> , <b>436</b>	selection
source file <b>8, 65</b> , 251	switch
declaration space and multiple86	throw
line number in a83	try
name of a83	unchecked See unchecked, statemen
type suffix .cs15	unreachable225
source text	unsafe425
exclusion of <b>80</b>	usingSee using statemen
inclusion of80	whileSee while
stackalloc440	yield See yield statemen
freeing memory obtained via440	statement list
StackOverflowException371	static
stackalloc and440	class and264
statement	static flow analysis122, 226
break	string17, 113, See also String
checkedSee checked, statement	concatenation of201
composite	C-style
continue	equality of See operator, quality, string

null-terminated439	string as
String	reachability and234
members of90	switch block
struct17, 43, <b>331</b>	declaration space of a See declaration space,
advice for using over class331	switch block and
assignment and333	simple name in a
boxing and334	switch label
class versus331, <b>332</b>	switch section
assignment333	end point of
boxing and unboxing334	reachability of227
constructors335	symbol
default values333	non-terminal9
field initializers334	terminal9
finalizers335	System
inheritance333	System. Diagnostics.ConditionalAttributeSee ConditionalAttribute
meaning of this334	
static constructors335	System.ApplicationExceptionSee ApplicationException
value semantics332	System.ArithmeticExceptionSee
declaration of87	ArithmeticException
declaration space of aSee declaration space,	System.Array See Array
struct	System.ArrayTypeMismatchExceptionSee
field alignment in a436	ArrayTypeMismatchException
field initializers and	System.Attribute
inheritance and333	System.AttributeUsageAttributeSee AttributeUsageAttribute
interfaces and332	System.Boolean See Boolean
member	System.Byte
accessibility of a259	System.Char
padding in a	System.Collections.Generic.IEnumerable <t>.See</t>
pass by reference	IEnumerable <t></t>
pass by value333	System.Collections.Generic.IEnumerator <t>See</t>
permitted modifiers on a331	IEnumerator <t></t>
return by value	System.Collections.IEnumerable See IEnumerable
unboxing and	System.Collections.IEnumerator See IEnumerator
struct declaration	System.Console
generic	System.Decimal
<summary></summary>	System.DelegateSee Delegate, See Delegate
switch	System.DivideByZeroExceptionSee
governing type of232	DivideByZeroException

System.Double	assignment to in struct	334
System.EnumSee Enum, See Enum	constructor call	
System.ExceptionSee Exception	explicit	322
System.ICloneableSee ICloneable	indexer and	314
System.IndexOutOfRangeException See	this access	174
IndexOutOfRangeException	throw	30, <b>24</b> 3
System.Int16See Int16	reachability and	243
System.Int32See Int32	with expression	243
System.Int64See Int64	with no expression	243
System.InvalidCastException	throw point	
System.InvalidOperationExceptionSee	token	
InvalidOperationException	separation of	
System.NotSupportedException	top-level member See me	-
enumerator objects and417	ToString	
System.Nullable <t>116</t>	string concatenation and	
System.NullReferenceException	true try	
System.ObsoleteAttribute See ObsoleteAttribute	jump statement and	
System.OutOfMemoryException	reachability and	
System.OverflowException	try block	. See block, try
OverflowException	type	107
System.SByte See SByte	array	114, 337
System.SingleSee Single	array element	337
System.StackOverflowExceptionSee	base	157
StackOverflowException	Boolean	112
System.SystemException See SystemException	versus integer types	112
System.TypeSee Type	class	See class
System.TypeInitializationException	closed	
System.UInt16See UInt16	compile-time	
System.UInt32See UInt32	constituent	
System.UInt64See UInt64	constructed	
System.ValueType	accessibility of	
conversion of value type to137	bases of	
conversion to value type141	conversions and	
System.ValueType108	members of	
SystemException369	decimal	
this120, 121, <b>174</b>	precision	111

range111	base class and	266
representation of112	interface implementation and	267
versus floating-point112	members of	270
declaration of a86, <b>259</b>	modifier abstract and	264
delegate114	modifier internal and	263
dynamic115	modifier new and	272
check	modifier private and	263
enum	modifier protected and	263
enumeration107	modifier public and	263
enumeration112	modifier sealed and	264, 265
enumeration	modifier unsafe and	427
representation of112	pointer107, See po	ointer, type
floating-point	reference10	6, 107, <b>112</b>
versus decimal112	null compatibility with	113
floating-point17, <b>111</b>	value versus	107
representation of111	referent	428
generic53	run-time	292
heap allocation and331	compatibility check	See is
initialization of	sealed	108
static variable and119	simple	<b>107</b> , 109
instance	alias for predefined struct type	109
integer17, <b>110</b>	mapping to system class	89
char differences110	members of a	<b>89</b> , 109
representation of110	struct type and	331
interface113	string	113
memory occupied by See sizeof	struct107, 109	, See struct
nested259, <b>273</b>	constructors in a	109
non-nested273	predefined	109
null114	type-parameter	107
conversion from136	unmanaged	428
nullable62, 116	unsafe	425
underlying type of116	value	16, 107
object113	constructor and	108
object as base class of every107	conversion to/from a reference typ	e 114
open <b>398</b>	sealed	108
partial42, 268	struct	332
attributes and380	value versus reference	107, 108

void*	429	shift operations and	205
volatile	282	statement	31, <b>246</b>
yield	See yield type	unchecked operator versus	246
Type	182	unary minus and	194
type argument	53, 397	#undef	79
inference of	403	applying to undefined name	80
type expression	pression, type	Unicode	18, 65
type inferencing	56	char type and	110
type parameter	53, 387	string type and	113
boxing and	411	Unicode standard	3, 5
conversion and	412	unsafe	26, <b>425</b>
member lookup on	410	unsafe code	<b>8</b> , 26, <b>425</b>
TypeInitializationException		stack allocation and	439
no matching catch clause and	370	unsafe context	425
typeof	182	unwrapping	147
<typeparam></typeparam>	495	ushort17, 109, <b>110</b> ,	See also UInt16
<typeparamref></typeparamref>	495	using directive15, 47	7, 251, <b>252</b> , <b>253</b>
u integer literal suffix	72	order of multiple	253, 256
U integer literal suffix	72	permitted location of a	252
uint 17, 109, <b>110</b> , Se	e also UInt32	scope of a	253
UInt16	109	using statement	31, <b>247</b>
UInt32	109	declaration space of a See de	claration space,
UInt64	109	using statement and	
ul integer literal suffix	72	using-directive	
uL integer literal suffix	72	order of multiple	253
Ul integer literal suffix	72	UTF-8	3
UL integer literal suffix	72	<value></value>	496
ulong 17, 109, <b>110</b> , Se	e also UInt64	value	150
unboxing	22, 114	default	121
unchecked	111	value type	108
constant expression and	222	enum member	360
explicit numeric conversion and	139	Not-a-Number	See NaN
integer addition and	201	null	114
integer division and	198	reference type	See instance
integer subtraction and		set accessor and	36, <b>300</b> , <b>315</b>
multiplication and		Value	116
operator		value expression See expression, value	sion, value, See

value parametersSee parameter, value	void*	429
ValueType333	casting to/from a	429
variable22, <b>119</b>	volatile	282
definitely assigned <b>119</b> , 122	#warning	82
exception244	warning	
catch without an244	compile-time	8
fixed430	warning	
initially assigned <b>119</b> , 122, 123	user-defined	82
initially unassigned <b>119</b> , 122, 123	warning	
instance23, 119, See field, instance	hiding an accessible name	99
definite assignment and119, 120	warning	
in a class	hiding an accessible name	99
in a struct	warning	
initializer322	unreachable statement	226
life of an119, 120	warning	
iteration	hiding an accessible name	272
local16, 22, 29, <b>121</b>	warning	
declaration87, 229	unnecessary new usage	272
for and	warning	
declaration of multiple229, 230	hiding an accessible name	346
definite assignment and229	warning	
instantiation of189	unnecessary new usage	346
scope of <b>229</b> , 234	where	406
movable	while	29, <b>234</b>
outer	break and	235
captured	continue and	235
reference	reachability and	235
static	white space	67, <b>69</b>
definite assignment and119	wrapping	147
variable expression See expression, variable	XML	487
variable reference133	yield statement	249
versioning48	yield type	416
virtual41, <b>292</b>	zero	
base access and175	negative	111
void149, <b>286</b>	positive	111